

# **$\mu$ PD789489 Subseries**

## **8-Bit Single-Chip Microcontrollers**

---

**$\mu$ PD789488**

**$\mu$ PD789489**

**$\mu$ PD78F9488**

**$\mu$ PD78F9489**

**[MEMO]**

**① VOLTAGE APPLICATION WAVEFORM AT INPUT PIN**

Waveform distortion due to input noise or a reflected wave may cause malfunction. If the input of the CMOS device stays in the area between  $V_{IL}$  (MAX) and  $V_{IH}$  (MIN) due to noise, etc., the device may malfunction. Take care to prevent chattering noise from entering the device when the input level is fixed, and also in the transition period when the input level passes through the area between  $V_{IL}$  (MAX) and  $V_{IH}$  (MIN).

**② HANDLING OF UNUSED INPUT PINS**

Unconnected CMOS device inputs can be cause of malfunction. If an input pin is unconnected, it is possible that an internal input level may be generated due to noise, etc., causing malfunction. CMOS devices behave differently than Bipolar or NMOS devices. Input levels of CMOS devices must be fixed high or low by using pull-up or pull-down circuitry. Each unused pin should be connected to  $V_{DD}$  or GND via a resistor if there is a possibility that it will be an output pin. All handling related to unused pins must be judged separately for each device and according to related specifications governing the device.

**③ PRECAUTION AGAINST ESD**

A strong electric field, when exposed to a MOS device, can cause destruction of the gate oxide and ultimately degrade the device operation. Steps must be taken to stop generation of static electricity as much as possible, and quickly dissipate it when it has occurred. Environmental control must be adequate. When it is dry, a humidifier should be used. It is recommended to avoid using insulators that easily build up static electricity. Semiconductor devices must be stored and transported in an anti-static container, static shielding bag or conductive material. All test and measurement tools including work benches and floors should be grounded. The operator should be grounded using a wrist strap. Semiconductor devices must not be touched with bare hands. Similar precautions need to be taken for PW boards with mounted semiconductor devices.

**④ STATUS BEFORE INITIALIZATION**

Power-on does not necessarily define the initial status of a MOS device. Immediately after the power source is turned ON, devices with reset functions have not yet been initialized. Hence, power-on does not guarantee output pin levels, I/O settings or contents of registers. A device is not initialized until the reset signal is received. A reset operation must be executed immediately after power-on for devices with reset functions.

**⑤ POWER ON/OFF SEQUENCE**

In the case of a device that uses different power supplies for the internal operation and external interface, as a rule, switch on the external power supply after switching on the internal power supply. When switching the power supply off, as a rule, switch off the external power supply and then the internal power supply. Use of the reverse power on/off sequences may result in the application of an overvoltage to the internal elements of the device, causing malfunction and degradation of internal elements due to the passage of an abnormal current.

The correct power on/off sequence must be judged separately for each device and according to related specifications governing the device.

**⑥ INPUT OF SIGNAL DURING POWER OFF STATE**

Do not input signals or an I/O pull-up power supply while the device is not powered. The current injection that results from input of such a signal or I/O pull-up power supply may cause malfunction and the abnormal current that passes in the device at this time may cause degradation of internal elements. Input of signals during the power off state must be judged separately for each device and according to related specifications governing the device.

**EEPROM and FIP are trademarks of NEC Electronics Corporation.**

**Windows and Windows NT are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.**

**PC/AT is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.**

**HP9000 series 700 and HP-UX are trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.**

**SPARCstation is a trademark of SPARC International, Inc.**

**Solaris and SunOS are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc.**

These commodities, technology or software, must be exported in accordance with the export administration regulations of the exporting country.

Diversion contrary to the law of that country is prohibited.

- **The information in this document is current as of July, 2005. The information is subject to change without notice. For actual design-in, refer to the latest publications of NEC Electronics data sheets or data books, etc., for the most up-to-date specifications of NEC Electronics products. Not all products and/or types are available in every country. Please check with an NEC Electronics sales representative for availability and additional information.**

- No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means without the prior written consent of NEC Electronics. NEC Electronics assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this document.
- NEC Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of NEC Electronics products listed in this document or any other liability arising from the use of such products. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of NEC Electronics or others.
- Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided for illustrative purposes in semiconductor product operation and application examples. The incorporation of these circuits, software and information in the design of a customer's equipment shall be done under the full responsibility of the customer. NEC Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by customers or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software and information.
- While NEC Electronics endeavors to enhance the quality, reliability and safety of NEC Electronics products, customers agree and acknowledge that the possibility of defects thereof cannot be eliminated entirely. To minimize risks of damage to property or injury (including death) to persons arising from defects in NEC Electronics products, customers must incorporate sufficient safety measures in their design, such as redundancy, fire-containment and anti-failure features.
- NEC Electronics products are classified into the following three quality grades: "Standard", "Special" and "Specific".

The "Specific" quality grade applies only to NEC Electronics products developed based on a customer-designated "quality assurance program" for a specific application. The recommended applications of an NEC Electronics product depend on its quality grade, as indicated below. Customers must check the quality grade of each NEC Electronics product before using it in a particular application.

"Standard": Computers, office equipment, communications equipment, test and measurement equipment, audio and visual equipment, home electronic appliances, machine tools, personal electronic equipment and industrial robots.

"Special": Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.), traffic control systems, anti-disaster systems, anti-crime systems, safety equipment and medical equipment (not specifically designed for life support).

"Specific": Aircraft, aerospace equipment, submersible repeaters, nuclear reactor control systems, life support systems and medical equipment for life support, etc.

The quality grade of NEC Electronics products is "Standard" unless otherwise expressly specified in NEC Electronics data sheets or data books, etc. If customers wish to use NEC Electronics products in applications not intended by NEC Electronics, they must contact an NEC Electronics sales representative in advance to determine NEC Electronics' willingness to support a given application.

(Note)

- (1) "NEC Electronics" as used in this statement means NEC Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.
- (2) "NEC Electronics products" means any product developed or manufactured by or for NEC Electronics (as defined above).

# Regional Information

Some information contained in this document may vary from country to country. Before using any NEC Electronics product in your application, please contact the NEC Electronics office in your country to obtain a list of authorized representatives and distributors. They will verify:

- Device availability
- Ordering information
- Product release schedule
- Availability of related technical literature
- Development environment specifications (for example, specifications for third-party tools and components, host computers, power plugs, AC supply voltages, and so forth)
- Network requirements

In addition, trademarks, registered trademarks, export restrictions, and other legal issues may also vary from country to country.

## [GLOBAL SUPPORT]

<http://www.necel.com/en/support/support.html>

### **NEC Electronics America, Inc. (U.S.)**

Santa Clara, California  
Tel: 408-588-6000  
800-366-9782

### **NEC Electronics (Europe) GmbH**

Duesseldorf, Germany  
Tel: 0211-65030

- **Sucursal en España**  
Madrid, Spain  
Tel: 091-504 27 87
- **Succursale Française**  
Vélizy-Villacoublay, France  
Tel: 01-30-67 58 00
- **Filiale Italiana**  
Milano, Italy  
Tel: 02-66 75 41
- **Branch The Netherlands**  
Eindhoven, The Netherlands  
Tel: 040-265 40 10
- **Tyskland Filial**  
Taeby, Sweden  
Tel: 08-63 87 200
- **United Kingdom Branch**  
Milton Keynes, UK  
Tel: 01908-691-133

### **NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.**

Hong Kong  
Tel: 2886-9318

### **NEC Electronics Hong Kong Ltd.**

Seoul Branch  
Seoul, Korea  
Tel: 02-558-3737

### **NEC Electronics Shanghai Ltd.**

Shanghai, P.R. China  
Tel: 021-5888-5400

### **NEC Electronics Taiwan Ltd.**

Taipei, Taiwan  
Tel: 02-2719-2377

### **NEC Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.**

Novena Square, Singapore  
Tel: 6253-8311

## Major Revisions in This Edition

| Page                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Throughout                                                   | Change of descriptions of $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change of status from under development to development completed</li> <li>• Change of the subseries name to “<math>\mu</math>PD789489 subseries”</li> </ul> |
| pp.31 to 33                                                  | Update of <b>1.5 78K/0S Series Lineup</b> to latest version                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| p.123                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 7-2 Block Diagram of Timer 50</b>                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| p.124                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 7-3 Block Diagram of Timer 60</b>                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| p.126                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 7-5 Block Diagram of Output control circuit (Timer 60)</b>                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                              | Addition of descriptions in <b>7.2 (2) 8-bit compare register 60</b>                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| p.127                                                        | Addition of descriptions in <b>7.2 (4) 8-bit H width compare registers 60 and 61</b>                                                                                                                                                                   |
| p.136                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 7-11 8-bit Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (Basic Operation)</b>                                                                                                                                    |
| p.137                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 7-13. Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (When CRnm Is Set to FFH)</b>                                                                                                                                 |
| p.140                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 7-17. Timing of Operation of External Event Counter with 8-Bit Resolution</b>                                                                                                                                                |
| p.150                                                        | Addition of descriptions of setting sequence in <b>7.4.3 Operation as carrier generator</b>                                                                                                                                                            |
| p.151                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 7-22. Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = N, CRH60 = M (M &gt; N))</b>                                                                                                                                        |
| p.152                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 7-23. Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = N, CRH60 = M (M &lt; N))</b>                                                                                                                                        |
| p.153                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 7-24. Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = CRH60 = N)</b>                                                                                                                                                      |
| pp.154 to 157                                                | Modification of the mode name in <b>7.4.4 PWM output mode operation (timer 50)</b>                                                                                                                                                                     |
| pp.158, 159                                                  | Modification of the mode name in <b>7.4.5 PPG output mode operation (timer 60 and 61)</b>                                                                                                                                                              |
| p.160                                                        | Modification of <b>(1) Error on starting timer</b> in <b>7.5 Cautions on Using 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61</b>                                                                                                                                         |
| p.174                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 10-1. Block Diagram of 10-bit A/D converter</b>                                                                                                                                                                              |
| p.182                                                        | Modification of <b>(1) Current consumption in standby mode</b> in <b>10.5 Cautions Related to 10-Bit A/D Converter</b>                                                                                                                                 |
| p.187                                                        | Modification of <b>Figure 11-1. Block Diagram of Serial Interface 20</b>                                                                                                                                                                               |
| p.190                                                        | Addition of <b>Caution</b> in <b>Figure 11-3 Format of Serial Operation Mode Register 20</b>                                                                                                                                                           |
| p.194                                                        | Modification of <b>Cautions</b> in <b>Figure 11-6 Format of Baud Rate Generator Control Register 20</b>                                                                                                                                                |
| pp.195, 203                                                  | Modification of <b>Caution</b> in <b>Table 11-3 and 11-5. Example of Relationship Between System Clock and Baud Rate</b>                                                                                                                               |
| p.222                                                        | Modification of descriptions in <b>Figure 12-4. Format of Automatic Data Transmit/Receive Interval Specification Register 0</b>                                                                                                                        |
| pp.342 to 361                                                | Addition of formal specifications of $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 in <b>CHAPTER 22 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (<math>\mu</math>PD789488, 78F9488, 789489, 78F9489)</b>                                                                                    |
| pp.366, 367                                                  | Addition of recommended conditions for $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 in <b>CHAPTER 25 RECOMMENDED SOLDERING CONDITIONS</b>                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Major Revisions in Modified Edition (U15331EJ4V1UD00)</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Throughout                                                   | Addition of the lead-free products                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| pp.254, 257                                                  | Modification of descriptions of the voltage boost wait time in <b>CHAPTER 13 LCD CONTROLLER/DRIVER</b>                                                                                                                                                 |
| pp.328                                                       | Modification of <b>Figure 19-9. Wiring Example for Flash Writing Adapter with 3-Wire Serial I/O with Handshake</b>                                                                                                                                     |

The mark ★ shows major revised points.

## INTRODUCTION

### Target Readers

This manual is intended for user engineers who wish to understand the functions of the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries and design and develop application systems and programs for these devices.

Target products:

- $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries:  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489, 78F9488, 78F9489

### Purpose

This manual is intended to give users an understanding of the functions described in the **Organization** below.

### Organization

Two manuals are available for the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries:

This manual and the instruction manual (common to the 78K/0S Series).

$\mu$ PD789489 Subseries  
User's Manual

- Pin functions
- Internal block functions
- Interrupts
- Other on-chip peripheral functions
- Electrical specifications

78K/0S Series  
User's Manual  
Instructions

- CPU function
- Instruction set
- Instruction description

### How to Use This Manual

It is assumed that the readers of this manual have general knowledge of electrical engineering, logic circuits, and microcontrollers.

- To understand the overall functions of the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries  
→ Read this manual in the order of the **CONTENTS**.
- How to read register formats  
→ The name of a bit whose number is enclosed with <> is reserved in the assembler and is defined as an sfr variable by the #pragma sfr directive for the C compiler.
- To learn the detailed functions of a register whose register name is known  
→ See **APPENDIX C REGISTER INDEX**.
- To learn the details of the instruction functions of the 78K/0S series  
→ Refer to **78K/0S Series Instructions User's Manual (U11047E)** separately available.
- To learn about the electrical specifications of the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries  
→ Refer to **CHAPTER 22 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS ( $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488, 789489, 78F9489)**



**Conventions**

|                            |                                                             |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Data significance:         | Higher digits on the left and lower digits on the right     |
| Active low representation: | $\overline{\text{xxx}}$ (overscore over pin or signal name) |
| <b>Note:</b>               | Footnote for item marked with <b>Note</b> in the text       |
| <b>Caution:</b>            | Information requiring particular attention                  |
| <b>Remark:</b>             | Supplementary information                                   |
| Numerical representation:  | Binary ... xxxx or xxxxB                                    |
|                            | Decimal ... xxxx                                            |
|                            | Hexadecimal ... xxxxH                                       |

- ★ **Related Documents** The related documents indicated in this publication may include preliminary versions. However, preliminary versions are not marked as such.

**Documents Related to Devices**

| Document Name                           | Document No. |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------|
| μPD789489 Subseries User's Manual       | This manual  |
| 78K0S Series Instructions User's Manual | U11047E      |

**Documents Related to Development Software Tools (User's Manuals)**

| Document Name                            | Document No.                                    |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| RA78K0S Assembler Package                | Operation                                       |
|                                          | Language                                        |
|                                          | Structured Assembly Language                    |
| CC78K0S C Compiler                       | Operation                                       |
|                                          | Language                                        |
| SM+ System Simulator                     | Operation                                       |
|                                          | User Open Interface                             |
| SM78K Series Ver. 2.52 System Simulator  | Operation                                       |
|                                          | External Part User Open Interface Specification |
| ID78K0S-NS Ver. 2.52 Integrated Debugger | Operation                                       |
| PM plus Ver.5.20                         |                                                 |

**Documents Related to Development Tools (Hardware) (User's Manuals)**

| Document Name                     | Document No. |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| IE-78K0S-NS In-Circuit Emulator   | U13549E      |
| IE-78K0S-NS-A In-Circuit Emulator | U15207E      |
| IE-789488-NS-EM1 Emulation Board  | U16492E      |

**Caution** The related documents listed above are subject to change without notice. Be sure to use the latest version of each document for designing.

### Documents Related to Flash Memory Writing

| Document Name                                | Document No. |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------|
| PG-FP3 Flash Memory Programmer User's Manual | U13502E      |
| PG-FP4 Flash Memory Programmer User's Manual | U15260E      |

### Other Related Documents

| Document Name                                                                      | Document No. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| SEMICONDUCTOR SELECTION GUIDE - Products and Packages -                            | X13769X      |
| Semiconductor Device Mount Manual                                                  | <b>Note</b>  |
| Quality Grades on NEC Semiconductor Devices                                        | C11531E      |
| NEC Semiconductor Device Reliability/Quality Control System                        | C10983E      |
| Guide to Prevent Damage for Semiconductor Devices by Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) | C11892E      |

**Note** See the "Semiconductor Device Mount Manual" website (<http://www.necel.com/pkg/en/mount/index.html>)

**Caution** The related documents listed above are subject to change without notice. Be sure to use the latest version of each document for designing.

## CONTENTS

|                                                                             |               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>CHAPTER 1 GENERAL .....</b>                                              | <b>26</b>     |
| <b>1.1 Features .....</b>                                                   | <b>26</b>     |
| <b>1.2 Applications .....</b>                                               | <b>26</b>     |
| <b>1.3 Ordering Information .....</b>                                       | <b>27</b>     |
| <b>1.4 Pin Configuration (Top View) .....</b>                               | <b>28</b>     |
| <b>1.5 78K/0S Series Lineup .....</b>                                       | <b>31</b>     |
| <b>1.6 Block Diagram .....</b>                                              | <b>34</b>     |
| <b>1.7 Overview of Functions .....</b>                                      | <b>35</b>     |
| <br><b>CHAPTER 2 PIN FUNCTIONS .....</b>                                    | <br><b>37</b> |
| <b>2.1 List of Pin Functions .....</b>                                      | <b>37</b>     |
| <b>2.2 Description of Pin Functions .....</b>                               | <b>40</b>     |
| 2.2.1 P00 to P07 (Port 0) .....                                             | 40            |
| 2.2.2 P10, P11 (Port 1) .....                                               | 40            |
| 2.2.3 P20 to P25 (Port 2) .....                                             | 40            |
| 2.2.4 P30 to P34 (Port 3) .....                                             | 41            |
| 2.2.5 P50 to P53 (Port 5) .....                                             | 41            |
| 2.2.6 P60 to P67 (Port 6) .....                                             | 42            |
| 2.2.7 P70 to P73 (Port 7) .....                                             | 42            |
| 2.2.8 P80 to P87 (Port 8) .....                                             | 42            |
| 2.2.9 S0 to S27 .....                                                       | 42            |
| 2.2.10 COM0 to COM3 .....                                                   | 42            |
| 2.2.11 V <sub>LC0</sub> to V <sub>LC2</sub> .....                           | 42            |
| 2.2.12 CAPH, CAPL .....                                                     | 42            |
| 2.2.13 $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ .....                                      | 43            |
| 2.2.14 X1, X2 .....                                                         | 43            |
| 2.2.15 XT1, XT2 .....                                                       | 43            |
| 2.2.16 AV <sub>DD</sub> .....                                               | 43            |
| 2.2.17 AV <sub>SS</sub> .....                                               | 43            |
| 2.2.18 V <sub>DD</sub> .....                                                | 43            |
| 2.2.19 V <sub>SS</sub> .....                                                | 43            |
| 2.2.20 V <sub>PP</sub> (flash memory version only) .....                    | 43            |
| 2.2.21 IC0 (mask ROM version only) .....                                    | 44            |
| <b>2.3 Pin I/O Circuits and Recommended Connection of Unused Pins .....</b> | <b>45</b>     |
| <br><b>CHAPTER 3 CPU ARCHITECTURE .....</b>                                 | <br><b>48</b> |
| <b>3.1 Memory Space .....</b>                                               | <b>48</b>     |
| 3.1.1 Internal program memory space .....                                   | 52            |
| 3.1.2 Internal data memory space .....                                      | 53            |
| 3.1.3 Special function register (SFR) area .....                            | 53            |

|                  |                                                    |            |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 3.1.4            | Data memory addressing .....                       | 54         |
| <b>3.2</b>       | <b>Processor Registers .....</b>                   | <b>58</b>  |
| 3.2.1            | Control registers.....                             | 58         |
| 3.2.2            | General-purpose registers.....                     | 61         |
| 3.2.3            | Special function registers (SFRs).....             | 62         |
| <b>3.3</b>       | <b>Instruction Address Addressing .....</b>        | <b>66</b>  |
| 3.3.1            | Relative addressing.....                           | 66         |
| 3.3.2            | Immediate addressing .....                         | 67         |
| 3.3.3            | Table indirect addressing .....                    | 68         |
| 3.3.4            | Register addressing .....                          | 68         |
| <b>3.4</b>       | <b>Operand Address Addressing .....</b>            | <b>69</b>  |
| 3.4.1            | Direct addressing .....                            | 69         |
| 3.4.2            | Short direct addressing .....                      | 70         |
| 3.4.3            | Special function register (SFR) addressing .....   | 71         |
| 3.4.4            | Register addressing .....                          | 72         |
| 3.4.5            | Register indirect addressing.....                  | 73         |
| 3.4.6            | Based addressing .....                             | 74         |
| 3.4.7            | Stack addressing.....                              | 74         |
| <b>CHAPTER 4</b> | <b>PORT FUNCTIONS .....</b>                        | <b>75</b>  |
| <b>4.1</b>       | <b>Port Functions .....</b>                        | <b>75</b>  |
| <b>4.2</b>       | <b>Port Configuration .....</b>                    | <b>76</b>  |
| 4.2.1            | Port 0 .....                                       | 77         |
| 4.2.2            | Port 1 .....                                       | 78         |
| 4.2.3            | Port 2 .....                                       | 79         |
| 4.2.4            | Port 3 .....                                       | 84         |
| 4.2.5            | Port 5 .....                                       | 86         |
| 4.2.6            | Port 6 .....                                       | 87         |
| 4.2.7            | Port 7 .....                                       | 89         |
| 4.2.8            | Port 8 .....                                       | 90         |
| <b>4.3</b>       | <b>Registers Controlling Port Function .....</b>   | <b>91</b>  |
| <b>4.4</b>       | <b>Port Function Operation.....</b>                | <b>94</b>  |
| 4.4.1            | Writing to I/O port.....                           | 94         |
| 4.4.2            | Reading from I/O port.....                         | 94         |
| 4.4.3            | Arithmetic operation of I/O port .....             | 94         |
| <b>CHAPTER 5</b> | <b>CLOCK GENERATOR .....</b>                       | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>5.1</b>       | <b>Clock Generator Functions .....</b>             | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>5.2</b>       | <b>Clock Generator Configuration .....</b>         | <b>95</b>  |
| <b>5.3</b>       | <b>Registers Controlling Clock Generator .....</b> | <b>98</b>  |
| <b>5.4</b>       | <b>System Clock Oscillators .....</b>              | <b>101</b> |
| 5.4.1            | Main system clock oscillator.....                  | 101        |
| 5.4.2            | Subsystem clock oscillator .....                   | 102        |
| 5.4.3            | Example of incorrect resonator connection .....    | 103        |
| 5.4.4            | Divider circuit.....                               | 104        |

|                  |                                                                     |            |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 5.4.5            | When subsystem clock is not used .....                              | 104        |
| 5.4.6            | Subsystem clock ×4 multiplication circuit .....                     | 104        |
| <b>5.5</b>       | <b>Clock Generator Operation .....</b>                              | <b>105</b> |
| <b>5.6</b>       | <b>Changing Setting of System Clock and CPU Clock .....</b>         | <b>106</b> |
| 5.6.1            | Time required for switching between system clock and CPU clock..... | 106        |
| 5.6.2            | Switching between system clock and CPU clock .....                  | 107        |
| <b>CHAPTER 6</b> | <b>16-BIT TIMER 20.....</b>                                         | <b>108</b> |
| <b>6.1</b>       | <b>16-Bit Timer 20 Functions .....</b>                              | <b>108</b> |
| <b>6.2</b>       | <b>16-Bit Timer 20 Configuration .....</b>                          | <b>108</b> |
| <b>6.3</b>       | <b>Registers Controlling 16-Bit Timer 20 .....</b>                  | <b>110</b> |
| <b>6.4</b>       | <b>16-Bit Timer 20 Operation .....</b>                              | <b>113</b> |
| 6.4.1            | Operation as timer interrupt .....                                  | 113        |
| 6.4.2            | Operation as timer output.....                                      | 115        |
| 6.4.3            | Capture operation .....                                             | 116        |
| 6.4.4            | 16-bit timer counter 20 readout .....                               | 117        |
| <b>6.5</b>       | <b>Cautions on Using 16-Bit Timer 20 .....</b>                      | <b>118</b> |
| 6.5.1            | Restrictions when rewriting 16-bit compare register 20.....         | 118        |
| <b>CHAPTER 7</b> | <b>8-BIT TIMERS 50, 60, AND 61 .....</b>                            | <b>120</b> |
| <b>7.1</b>       | <b>Functions of 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61 .....</b>               | <b>120</b> |
| <b>7.2</b>       | <b>Configuration of 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61 .....</b>           | <b>122</b> |
| <b>7.3</b>       | <b>Control Registers for 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61 .....</b>      | <b>128</b> |
| <b>7.4</b>       | <b>Operation of 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61 .....</b>               | <b>134</b> |
| 7.4.1            | Operation as 8-bit timer counter.....                               | 134        |
| 7.4.2            | Operation as 16-bit timer counter.....                              | 143        |
| 7.4.3            | Operation as carrier generator .....                                | 150        |
| 7.4.4            | PWM output mode operation (timer 50) .....                          | 154        |
| 7.4.5            | PPG output mode operation (timer 60 and timer 61).....              | 158        |
| <b>7.5</b>       | <b>Cautions on Using 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61.....</b>           | <b>160</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 8</b> | <b>WATCH TIMER .....</b>                                            | <b>161</b> |
| <b>8.1</b>       | <b>Watch Timer Functions .....</b>                                  | <b>161</b> |
| <b>8.2</b>       | <b>Configuration of Watch Timer .....</b>                           | <b>162</b> |
| <b>8.3</b>       | <b>Control Registers for Watch Timer .....</b>                      | <b>163</b> |
| <b>8.4</b>       | <b>Watch Timer Operation .....</b>                                  | <b>165</b> |
| 8.4.1            | Operation as watch timer .....                                      | 165        |
| 8.4.2            | Operation as interval timer .....                                   | 165        |
| <b>CHAPTER 9</b> | <b>WATCHDOG TIMER .....</b>                                         | <b>167</b> |
| <b>9.1</b>       | <b>Watchdog Timer Functions .....</b>                               | <b>167</b> |
| <b>9.2</b>       | <b>Watchdog Timer Configuration .....</b>                           | <b>168</b> |
| <b>9.3</b>       | <b>Watchdog Timer Control Registers .....</b>                       | <b>169</b> |
| <b>9.4</b>       | <b>Watchdog Timer Operation.....</b>                                | <b>171</b> |

|                   |                                                                                               |            |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 9.4.1             | Operation as watchdog timer .....                                                             | 171        |
| 9.4.2             | Operation as interval timer .....                                                             | 172        |
| <b>CHAPTER 10</b> | <b>10-BIT A/D CONVERTER .....</b>                                                             | <b>173</b> |
| 10.1              | 10-Bit A/D Converter Functions.....                                                           | 173        |
| 10.2              | 10-Bit A/D Converter Configuration .....                                                      | 173        |
| 10.3              | 10-Bit A/D Converter Control Registers .....                                                  | 176        |
| 10.4              | 10-Bit A/D Converter Operation .....                                                          | 178        |
| 10.4.1            | Basic operation of 10-bit A/D converter .....                                                 | 178        |
| 10.4.2            | Input voltage and conversion result.....                                                      | 179        |
| 10.4.3            | Operation mode of 10-bit A/D converter.....                                                   | 181        |
| 10.5              | Cautions Related to 10-Bit A/D Converter .....                                                | 182        |
| <b>CHAPTER 11</b> | <b>SERIAL INTERFACE 20 .....</b>                                                              | <b>186</b> |
| 11.1              | Serial Interface 20 Functions .....                                                           | 186        |
| 11.2              | Serial Interface 20 Configuration.....                                                        | 186        |
| 11.3              | Serial Interface 20 Control Registers .....                                                   | 190        |
| 11.4              | Serial Interface 20 Operation .....                                                           | 197        |
| 11.4.1            | Operation stop mode.....                                                                      | 197        |
| 11.4.2            | Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode .....                                               | 199        |
| 11.4.3            | 3-wire serial I/O mode .....                                                                  | 211        |
| <b>CHAPTER 12</b> | <b>SERIAL INTERFACE 1A0 .....</b>                                                             | <b>216</b> |
| 12.1              | Function of Serial Interface 1A0 .....                                                        | 216        |
| 12.2              | Configuration of Serial Interface 1A0.....                                                    | 217        |
| 12.3              | Control Registers for Serial Interface 1A0 .....                                              | 219        |
| 12.4              | Serial Interface 1A0 Operation.....                                                           | 224        |
| 12.4.1            | Operation stop mode.....                                                                      | 224        |
| 12.4.2            | 3-wire serial I/O mode .....                                                                  | 225        |
| 12.4.3            | 3-wire serial I/O mode with automatic transmit/receive function.....                          | 230        |
| <b>CHAPTER 13</b> | <b>LCD CONTROLLER/DRIVER.....</b>                                                             | <b>250</b> |
| 13.1              | LCD Controller/Driver Functions .....                                                         | 250        |
| 13.2              | LCD Controller/Driver Configuration .....                                                     | 250        |
| 13.3              | Registers Controlling LCD Controller/Driver .....                                             | 253        |
| 13.4              | Setting LCD Controller/Driver .....                                                           | 257        |
| 13.5              | LCD Display Data Memory .....                                                                 | 257        |
| 13.6              | Common and Segment Signals .....                                                              | 258        |
| 13.7              | Display Modes .....                                                                           | 260        |
| 13.7.1            | Three-time-slice display example.....                                                         | 260        |
| 13.7.2            | Four-time-slice display example.....                                                          | 263        |
| 13.8              | Supplying LCD Drive Voltages V <sub>LC0</sub> , V <sub>LC1</sub> , and V <sub>LC2</sub> ..... | 266        |
| <b>CHAPTER 14</b> | <b>MULTIPLIER .....</b>                                                                       | <b>267</b> |

|                                                                                            |                                                               |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 14.1                                                                                       | Multiplier Function .....                                     | 267        |
| 14.2                                                                                       | Multiplier Configuration .....                                | 267        |
| 14.3                                                                                       | Multiplier Control Register .....                             | 269        |
| 14.4                                                                                       | Multiplier Operation .....                                    | 270        |
| <b>CHAPTER 15 REMOTE CONTROLLER RECEIVER (<math>\mu</math>PD789489, 78F9489 ONLY).....</b> |                                                               | <b>271</b> |
| 15.1                                                                                       | Remote Controller Receiver Functions .....                    | 271        |
| 15.2                                                                                       | Remote Controller Receiver Configuration.....                 | 271        |
| 15.3                                                                                       | Registers to Control Remote Controller Receiver.....          | 277        |
| 15.4                                                                                       | Operation of Remote Controller Receiver .....                 | 279        |
| 15.4.1                                                                                     | Format of type A reception mode .....                         | 279        |
| 15.4.2                                                                                     | Operation flow of type A reception mode .....                 | 279        |
| 15.4.3                                                                                     | Timing .....                                                  | 281        |
| 15.4.4                                                                                     | Compare register setting.....                                 | 283        |
| 15.4.5                                                                                     | Error interrupt generation timing .....                       | 285        |
| 15.4.6                                                                                     | Noise elimination.....                                        | 287        |
| <b>CHAPTER 16 INTERRUPT FUNCTIONS .....</b>                                                |                                                               | <b>290</b> |
| 16.1                                                                                       | Interrupt Function Types.....                                 | 290        |
| 16.2                                                                                       | Interrupt Sources and Configuration.....                      | 290        |
| 16.3                                                                                       | Registers Controlling Interrupt Function .....                | 294        |
| 16.4                                                                                       | Interrupt Servicing Operation .....                           | 301        |
| 16.4.1                                                                                     | Non-maskable interrupt request acknowledgment operation ..... | 301        |
| 16.4.2                                                                                     | Maskable interrupt request acknowledgment operation .....     | 303        |
| 16.4.3                                                                                     | Multiple interrupt servicing .....                            | 304        |
| 16.4.4                                                                                     | Putting interrupt requests on hold .....                      | 306        |
| <b>CHAPTER 17 STANDBY FUNCTION.....</b>                                                    |                                                               | <b>307</b> |
| 17.1                                                                                       | Standby Function and Configuration .....                      | 307        |
| 17.1.1                                                                                     | Standby function .....                                        | 307        |
| 17.1.2                                                                                     | Register controlling standby function .....                   | 308        |
| 17.2                                                                                       | Standby Function Operation.....                               | 309        |
| 17.2.1                                                                                     | HALT mode.....                                                | 309        |
| 17.2.2                                                                                     | STOP mode .....                                               | 312        |
| <b>CHAPTER 18 RESET FUNCTION .....</b>                                                     |                                                               | <b>315</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 19 FLASH MEMORY VERSION .....</b>                                               |                                                               | <b>319</b> |
| 19.1                                                                                       | Flash Memory Characteristics.....                             | 320        |
| 19.1.1                                                                                     | Programming environment.....                                  | 320        |
| 19.1.2                                                                                     | Communication mode .....                                      | 321        |
| 19.1.3                                                                                     | On-board pin processing.....                                  | 324        |
| 19.1.4                                                                                     | Connection of adapter for flash writing.....                  | 327        |
| 19.2                                                                                       | Cautions on $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489 .....                 | 330        |

|                                                                                                        |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS .....</b>                                                                   | <b>331</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 21 INSTRUCTION SET .....</b>                                                                | <b>332</b> |
| <b>21.1 Operation .....</b>                                                                            | <b>332</b> |
| 21.1.1 Operand identifiers and description methods .....                                               | 332        |
| 21.1.2 Description of "Operation" column .....                                                         | 333        |
| 21.1.3 Description of "Flag" column .....                                                              | 333        |
| <b>21.2 Operation List .....</b>                                                                       | <b>334</b> |
| <b>21.3 Instructions Listed by Addressing Type .....</b>                                               | <b>339</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 22 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (<math>\mu</math>PD789488, 78F9488, 789489, 78F9489) .....</b> | <b>342</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 23 CHARACTERISTICS CURVES OF LCD CONTROLLER/DRIVER .....</b>                                | <b>362</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 24 PACKAGE DRAWINGS .....</b>                                                               | <b>364</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 25 RECOMMENDED SOLDERING CONDITIONS .....</b>                                               | <b>366</b> |
| <b>APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT TOOLS .....</b>                                                              | <b>369</b> |
| <b>A.1 Software Package .....</b>                                                                      | <b>371</b> |
| <b>A.2 Language Processing Software .....</b>                                                          | <b>371</b> |
| <b>A.3 Control Software .....</b>                                                                      | <b>372</b> |
| <b>A.4 Flash Memory Writing Tools .....</b>                                                            | <b>372</b> |
| <b>A.5 Debugging Tools (Hardware) .....</b>                                                            | <b>373</b> |
| <b>A.6 Debugging Tools (Software) .....</b>                                                            | <b>374</b> |
| <b>APPENDIX B NOTES ON TARGET SYSTEM DESIGN .....</b>                                                  | <b>375</b> |
| <b>APPENDIX C REGISTER INDEX .....</b>                                                                 | <b>379</b> |
| <b>C.1 Register Index (Register Names in Alphabetic Order) .....</b>                                   | <b>379</b> |
| <b>C.2 Register Index (Register Symbols Alphabetic Order) .....</b>                                    | <b>382</b> |
| <b>APPENDIX D REVISION HISTORY .....</b>                                                               | <b>385</b> |



## LIST OF FIGURES (1/6)

| Figure No. | Title                                                           | Page |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 2-1        | I/O Circuit Types .....                                         | 46   |
| 3-1        | Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD789488).....                               | 48   |
| 3-2        | Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78F9488).....                              | 49   |
| 3-3        | Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD789489).....                               | 50   |
| 3-4        | Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78F9489).....                              | 51   |
| 3-5        | Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD789488) .....                  | 54   |
| 3-6        | Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78F9488) .....                 | 55   |
| 3-7        | Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD789489) .....                  | 56   |
| 3-8        | Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78F9489) .....                 | 57   |
| 3-9        | Program Counter Configuration .....                             | 58   |
| 3-10       | Program Status Word Configuration .....                         | 58   |
| 3-11       | Stack Pointer Configuration .....                               | 60   |
| 3-12       | Data to Be Saved to Stack Memory .....                          | 60   |
| 3-13       | Data to Be Restored from Stack Memory.....                      | 60   |
| 3-14       | General-Purpose Register Configuration .....                    | 61   |
| 4-1        | Port Types.....                                                 | 75   |
| 4-2        | Block Diagram of P00 to P07 .....                               | 77   |
| 4-3        | Block Diagram of P10 and P11 .....                              | 78   |
| 4-4        | Block Diagram of P20 .....                                      | 79   |
| 4-5        | Block Diagram of P21 .....                                      | 80   |
| 4-6        | Block Diagram of P22 and P25 .....                              | 81   |
| 4-7        | Block Diagram of P23 .....                                      | 82   |
| 4-8        | Block Diagram of P24 .....                                      | 83   |
| 4-9        | Block Diagram of P30 to P33 .....                               | 84   |
| 4-10       | Block Diagram of P34 .....                                      | 85   |
| 4-11       | Block Diagram of P50 to P53 .....                               | 86   |
| 4-12       | Block Diagram of P60 to P67 .....                               | 87   |
| 4-13       | Block Diagram of P70 to P73 .....                               | 89   |
| 4-14       | Block Diagram of P80 to P87 .....                               | 90   |
| 4-15       | Port Mode Register Format.....                                  | 91   |
| 4-16       | Format of Pull-Up Resistor Option Registers .....               | 93   |
| 4-17       | Port Function Register Format .....                             | 93   |
| 5-1        | Clock Generator Block Diagram ( $\mu$ PD789488, 789489).....    | 96   |
| 5-2        | Clock Generator Block Diagram ( $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489) ..... | 97   |
| 5-3        | Format of Processor Clock Control Register.....                 | 98   |
| 5-4        | Format of Subclock Oscillation Mode Register.....               | 99   |

## LIST OF FIGURES (2/6)

| Figure No. | Title                                                                                                                               | Page |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 5-5        | Format of Subclock Control Register.....                                                                                            | 99   |
| 5-6        | Subclock Selection Register Format .....                                                                                            | 100  |
| 5-7        | External Circuit of Main System Clock Oscillator.....                                                                               | 101  |
| 5-8        | External Circuit of Subsystem Clock Oscillator.....                                                                                 | 102  |
| 5-9        | Examples of Incorrect Resonator Connection .....                                                                                    | 103  |
| 5-10       | Switching Between System Clock and CPU Clock.....                                                                                   | 107  |
| 6-1        | Block Diagram of 16-Bit Timer 20 .....                                                                                              | 109  |
| 6-2        | Format of 16-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 20.....                                                                                | 111  |
| 6-3        | Format of Port Mode Register 3 .....                                                                                                | 112  |
| 6-4        | Settings of 16-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 20 for Timer Interrupt Operation .....                                               | 113  |
| 6-5        | Timing of Timer Interrupt Operation .....                                                                                           | 114  |
| 6-6        | Settings of 16-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 20 for Timer Output Operation .....                                                  | 115  |
| 6-7        | Timer Output Timing .....                                                                                                           | 115  |
| 6-8        | Settings of 16-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 20 for Capture Operation.....                                                        | 116  |
| 6-9        | Capture Operation Timing (with Both Edges of CPT20 Pin Specified).....                                                              | 116  |
| 6-10       | 16-Bit Timer Counter 20 Readout Timing.....                                                                                         | 117  |
| 7-1        | Block Diagram of 24-Bit Event Counter.....                                                                                          | 121  |
| 7-2        | Block Diagram of Timer 50.....                                                                                                      | 123  |
| 7-3        | Block Diagram of Timer 60.....                                                                                                      | 124  |
| 7-4        | Block Diagram of Timer 61.....                                                                                                      | 125  |
| 7-5        | Block Diagram of Output Controller (Timer 60) .....                                                                                 | 126  |
| 7-6        | Format of 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 50 .....                                                                                | 128  |
| 7-7        | Format of 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 60.....                                                                                 | 130  |
| 7-8        | Format of Carrier Generator Output Control Register 60 .....                                                                        | 131  |
| 7-9        | Format of 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 61.....                                                                                 | 132  |
| 7-10       | Format of Port Mode Register 3 .....                                                                                                | 133  |
| 7-11       | Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (Basic Operation).....                                                     | 136  |
| 7-12       | Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (When CRnm Is Set to 00H).....                                             | 136  |
| 7-13       | Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (When CRnm Is Set to FFH).....                                             | 137  |
| 7-14       | Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (When CRnm Changes from N to M (N < M))....                                | 137  |
| 7-15       | Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (When CRnm Changes from N to M (N > M))....                                | 138  |
| 7-16       | Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (When Timer 60 Match Signal Is Selected<br>for Timer 50 Count Clock) ..... | 139  |
| 7-17       | Timing of Operation of External Event Counter with 8-Bit Resolution .....                                                           | 140  |
| 7-18       | Timing of Square-Wave Output with 8-Bit Resolution .....                                                                            | 142  |
| 7-19       | Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 16-Bit Resolution .....                                                                     | 145  |
| 7-20       | Timing of External Event Counter Operation with 16-Bit Resolution .....                                                             | 147  |

## LIST OF FIGURES (3/6)

| Figure No. | Title                                                                                                  | Page |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 7-21       | Timing of Square-Wave Output with 16-Bit Resolution .....                                              | 149  |
| 7-22       | Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = N, CRH60 = M (M > N)).....                          | 151  |
| 7-23       | Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = N, CRH60 = M (M < N)).....                          | 152  |
| 7-24       | Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = CRH60 = N) .....                                    | 153  |
| 7-25       | Operation Timing in PWM Output Mode (When Rising Edge Is Selected).....                                | 154  |
| 7-26       | Operation Timing When Overwriting CR50 (When Rising Edge Is Selected).....                             | 155  |
| 7-27       | Operation Timing in PWM Output Mode (When Both Edges Are Selected).....                                | 156  |
| 7-28       | Operation Timing in PWM Output Mode (When Both Edges Are Selected)<br>(When CR50 Is Overwritten) ..... | 157  |
| 7-29       | PPG Output Mode Timing (Basic Operation) .....                                                         | 159  |
| 7-30       | PPG Output Mode Timing (When CR6m and CRH6m Are Overwritten).....                                      | 159  |
| 7-31       | Case in Which Error of 1.5 Clocks (Max.) Occurs .....                                                  | 160  |
| 7-32       | Timing of Operation as External Event Counter (8-Bit Resolution) .....                                 | 160  |
| 8-1        | Block Diagram of Watch Timer .....                                                                     | 161  |
| 8-2        | Format of Watch Timer Mode Control Register.....                                                       | 163  |
| 8-3        | Format of Watch Timer Interrupt Time Selection Register .....                                          | 164  |
| 8-4        | Watch Timer/Interval Timer Operation Timing .....                                                      | 166  |
| 9-1        | Block Diagram of Watchdog Timer.....                                                                   | 168  |
| 9-2        | Format of Watchdog Timer Clock Selection Register.....                                                 | 169  |
| 9-3        | Format of Watchdog Timer Mode Register .....                                                           | 170  |
| 10-1       | Block Diagram of 10-Bit A/D Converter.....                                                             | 174  |
| 10-2       | Format of A/D Converter Mode Register 0 .....                                                          | 176  |
| 10-3       | Format of Analog Input Channel Specification Register 0 .....                                          | 177  |
| 10-4       | Basic Operation of 10-Bit A/D Converter.....                                                           | 179  |
| 10-5       | Relationship Between Analog Input Voltage and A/D Conversion Result .....                              | 180  |
| 10-6       | Software-Started A/D Conversion .....                                                                  | 181  |
| 10-7       | How to Reduce Current Consumption in Standby Mode .....                                                | 182  |
| 10-8       | Conversion Result Read Timing (if Conversion Result Is Undefined) .....                                | 183  |
| 10-9       | Conversion Result Read Timing (if Conversion Result Is Normal) .....                                   | 183  |
| 10-10      | Analog Input Pin Handling.....                                                                         | 184  |
| 10-11      | A/D Conversion End Interrupt Request Generation Timing.....                                            | 185  |
| 10-12      | AV <sub>DD</sub> Pin Handling.....                                                                     | 185  |
| 11-1       | Block Diagram of Serial Interface 20.....                                                              | 187  |
| 11-2       | Block Diagram of Baud Rate Generator 20.....                                                           | 188  |
| 11-3       | Format of Serial Operation Mode Register 20.....                                                       | 190  |

## LIST OF FIGURES (4/6)

| Figure No. | Title                                                                                                             | Page |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 11-4       | Format of Asynchronous Serial Interface Mode Register 20 .....                                                    | 191  |
| 11-5       | Format of Asynchronous Serial Interface Status Register 20 .....                                                  | 193  |
| 11-6       | Format of Baud Rate Generator Control Register 20 .....                                                           | 194  |
| 11-7       | Format of Asynchronous Serial Interface Transmit/Receive Data .....                                               | 204  |
| 11-8       | Asynchronous Serial Interface Transmission Completion Interrupt Timing .....                                      | 206  |
| 11-9       | Asynchronous Serial Interface Reception Completion Interrupt Timing .....                                         | 207  |
| 11-10      | Receive Error Timing .....                                                                                        | 208  |
| 11-11      | 3-Wire Serial I/O Mode Timing .....                                                                               | 214  |
| 12-1       | Block Diagram of Serial Interface 1A0 .....                                                                       | 217  |
| 12-2       | Format of Serial Operation Mode Register 1A0 .....                                                                | 220  |
| 12-3       | Format of Automatic Data Transmit/Receive Control Register 0 .....                                                | 221  |
| 12-4       | Format of Automatic Data Transmit/Receive Interval Specification Register 0 .....                                 | 222  |
| 12-5       | 3-Wire Serial I/O Mode Timing .....                                                                               | 227  |
| 12-6       | Circuit of Switching in Transfer Bit Order .....                                                                  | 229  |
| 12-7       | Basic Transmit/Receive Mode Operation Timing .....                                                                | 236  |
| 12-8       | Basic Transmit/Receive Mode Flowchart .....                                                                       | 237  |
| 12-9       | Buffer RAM Operation in 6-Byte Transmission/Reception (in Basic Transmit/Receive Mode) .....                      | 238  |
| 12-10      | Basic Transmit Mode Operation Timing .....                                                                        | 240  |
| 12-11      | Basic Transmit Mode Flowchart .....                                                                               | 241  |
| 12-12      | Buffer RAM Operation in 6-Byte Transmission (in Basic Transmit Mode) .....                                        | 242  |
| 12-13      | Repeat Transmit Mode Operation Timing .....                                                                       | 244  |
| 12-14      | Repeat Transmit Mode Flowchart .....                                                                              | 245  |
| 12-15      | Buffer RAM Operation in 6-Byte Transmission (in Repeat Transmit Mode) .....                                       | 246  |
| 12-16      | Automatic Transmission/Reception Suspension and Restart .....                                                     | 248  |
| 12-17      | Interval Time of Automatic Transmission/Reception .....                                                           | 249  |
| 13-1       | Correspondence with LCD Display RAM .....                                                                         | 251  |
| 13-2       | LCD Controller/Driver Block Diagram .....                                                                         | 252  |
| 13-3       | Format of LCD Display Mode Register 0 .....                                                                       | 254  |
| 13-4       | Format of LCD Clock Control Register 0 .....                                                                      | 255  |
| 13-5       | Format of LCD Voltage Boost Control Register 0 .....                                                              | 256  |
| 13-6       | Relationship Between LCD Display Data Memory Contents and Segment/Common Outputs<br>(When Using S16 to S27) ..... | 257  |
| 13-7       | Common Signal Waveforms .....                                                                                     | 259  |
| 13-8       | Voltages and Phases of Common and Segment Signals .....                                                           | 259  |
| 13-9       | Three-Time-Slice LCD Display Pattern and Electrode Connections .....                                              | 260  |
| 13-10      | Example of Connecting Three-Time-Slice LCD Panel .....                                                            | 261  |
| 13-11      | Three-Time-Slice LCD Drive Waveform Examples (1/3 Bias Method) .....                                              | 262  |

## LIST OF FIGURES (5/6)

| Figure No. | Title                                                                                                                      | Page |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 13-12      | Four-Time-Slice LCD Display Pattern and Electrode Connections .....                                                        | 263  |
| 13-13      | Example of Connecting Four-Time-Slice LCD Panel .....                                                                      | 264  |
| 13-14      | Four-Time-Slice LCD Drive Waveform Examples (1/3 Bias Method) .....                                                        | 265  |
| 13-15      | Example of Connecting Pins for LCD Driver .....                                                                            | 266  |
| 14-1       | Block Diagram of Multiplier .....                                                                                          | 268  |
| 14-2       | Format of Multiplier Control Register 0.....                                                                               | 269  |
| 14-3       | Multiplier Operation Timing (Example of AAH × D3H).....                                                                    | 270  |
| 15-1       | Block Diagram of Remote Controller Receiver.....                                                                           | 272  |
| 15-2       | Operation Examples of RMSR, RMSCR, and RMDR Registers When Receiving<br>1010101011111111B (16 Bits).....                   | 273  |
| 15-3       | Format of Remote Controller Receive Control Register .....                                                                 | 277  |
| 15-4       | Example of Type A Data Format .....                                                                                        | 279  |
| 15-5       | Operation Flow of Type A Reception Mode.....                                                                               | 280  |
| 15-6       | Setting Example (Where n1 = 1, n2 = 2) .....                                                                               | 284  |
| 15-7       | Generation Timing of INTRERR Signal.....                                                                                   | 286  |
| 15-8       | Noise Elimination Operation Example .....                                                                                  | 288  |
| 16-1       | Basic Configuration of Interrupt Function .....                                                                            | 293  |
| 16-2       | Format of Interrupt Request Flag Registers .....                                                                           | 295  |
| 16-3       | Format of Interrupt Mask Flag Registers .....                                                                              | 296  |
| 16-4       | Format of External Interrupt Mode Registers .....                                                                          | 297  |
| 16-5       | Program Status Word Configuration .....                                                                                    | 298  |
| 16-6       | Format of Key Return Mode Register 00.....                                                                                 | 299  |
| 16-7       | Block Diagram of Falling Edge Detector .....                                                                               | 299  |
| 16-8       | Format of Key Return Mode Register 01.....                                                                                 | 300  |
| 16-9       | Block Diagram of Falling Edge Detector .....                                                                               | 300  |
| 16-10      | Flow from Generation of Non-Maskable Interrupt Request to Acknowledgment .....                                             | 302  |
| 16-11      | Timing of Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Acknowledgment.....                                                               | 302  |
| 16-12      | Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Acknowledgment .....                                                                        | 302  |
| 16-13      | Interrupt Request Acknowledgment Program Algorithm.....                                                                    | 303  |
| 16-14      | Interrupt Request Acknowledgment Timing (Example: MOV A, r).....                                                           | 304  |
| 16-15      | Interrupt Request Acknowledgment Timing (When Interrupt Request Flag Is Generated in Final<br>Clock Under Execution) ..... | 304  |
| 16-16      | Example of Multiple Interrupt Servicing .....                                                                              | 305  |
| 17-1       | Format of Oscillation Stabilization Time Selection Register .....                                                          | 308  |
| 17-2       | Releasing HALT Mode by Interrupt .....                                                                                     | 310  |

## LIST OF FIGURES (6/6)

| Figure No. | Title                                                                               | Page |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 17-3       | Releasing HALT Mode by $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Input.....                         | 311  |
| 17-4       | Releasing STOP Mode by Interrupt.....                                               | 313  |
| 17-5       | Releasing STOP Mode by $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Input.....                         | 314  |
| 18-1       | Block Diagram of Reset Function.....                                                | 315  |
| 18-2       | Reset Timing by $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Input .....                               | 316  |
| 18-3       | Reset Timing by Overflow in Watchdog Timer .....                                    | 316  |
| 18-4       | Reset Timing by $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Input in STOP Mode .....                  | 316  |
| 19-1       | Environment for Writing Program to Flash Memory.....                                | 320  |
| 19-2       | Communication Mode Selection Format .....                                           | 321  |
| 19-3       | Example of Connection with Dedicated Flash Programmer .....                         | 322  |
| 19-4       | V <sub>PP</sub> Pin Connection Example .....                                        | 324  |
| 19-5       | Signal Conflict (Input Pin of Serial Interface).....                                | 325  |
| 19-6       | Abnormal Operation of Other Device .....                                            | 325  |
| 19-7       | Signal Conflict ( $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Pin).....                               | 326  |
| 19-8       | Wiring Example for Flash Writing Adapter with 3-Wire Serial I/O .....               | 327  |
| 19-9       | Wiring Example for Flash Writing Adapter with 3-Wire Serial I/O with Handshake..... | 328  |
| 19-10      | Wiring Example for Flash Writing Adapter with UART.....                             | 329  |
| A-1        | Development Tools .....                                                             | 370  |
| B-1        | Distance Between In-Circuit Emulator and Conversion Socket (80GC) .....             | 375  |
| B-2        | Connection Conditions of Target System (When NP-80GC-TQ Is Used).....               | 376  |
| B-3        | Connection Conditions of Target System (When NP-H80GC-TQ Is Used).....              | 376  |
| B-4        | Distance Between In-Circuit Emulator and Conversion Adapter (80GK).....             | 377  |
| B-5        | Connection Conditions of Target System (When NP-80GK Is Used).....                  | 378  |
| B-6        | Connection Conditions of Target System (When NP-H80GK-TQ Is Used) .....             | 378  |

## LIST OF TABLES (1/3)

| Table No. | Title                                                                              | Page |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 2-1       | Types of Pin I/O Circuits .....                                                    | 45   |
| 3-1       | Internal ROM Capacity .....                                                        | 52   |
| 3-2       | Vector Table .....                                                                 | 52   |
| 3-3       | Internal High-Speed RAM, Internal Low-Speed RAM Capacity .....                     | 53   |
| 3-4       | Special Function Registers .....                                                   | 63   |
| 4-1       | Port Functions .....                                                               | 76   |
| 4-2       | Configuration of Port .....                                                        | 76   |
| 4-3       | Port Mode Registers and Output Latch Settings When Using Alternate Functions ..... | 92   |
| 5-1       | Configuration of Clock Generator .....                                             | 95   |
| 5-2       | Maximum Time Required for Switching CPU Clock .....                                | 106  |
| 6-1       | 16-Bit Timer 20 Configuration .....                                                | 108  |
| 6-2       | Interval Time of 16-Bit Timer 20 .....                                             | 113  |
| 6-3       | Settings of Capture Edge .....                                                     | 116  |
| 7-1       | Operation Modes .....                                                              | 120  |
| 7-2       | Configuration of 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61 .....                                 | 122  |
| 7-3       | Interval Time of Timer 50 .....                                                    | 135  |
| 7-4       | Interval Time of Timer 60 .....                                                    | 135  |
| 7-5       | Interval Time of Timer 61 .....                                                    | 135  |
| 7-6       | Square-Wave Output Range of Timer 50 .....                                         | 141  |
| 7-7       | Square-Wave Output Range of Timer 60 .....                                         | 142  |
| 7-8       | Square-Wave Output Range of Timer 61 .....                                         | 142  |
| 7-9       | Interval Time with 16-Bit Resolution .....                                         | 144  |
| 7-10      | Square-Wave Output Range with 16-Bit Resolution .....                              | 148  |
| 8-1       | Interval Time of Interval Timer .....                                              | 162  |
| 8-2       | Configuration of Watch Timer .....                                                 | 162  |
| 8-3       | Interval Time of Interval Timer .....                                              | 165  |
| 9-1       | Watchdog Timer Program Loop Detection Time .....                                   | 167  |
| 9-2       | Interval Time .....                                                                | 167  |
| 9-3       | Configuration of Watchdog Timer .....                                              | 168  |
| 9-4       | Watchdog Timer Program Loop Detection Time .....                                   | 171  |
| 9-5       | Interval Time of Interval Timer .....                                              | 172  |

## LIST OF TABLES (2/3)

| Table No. | Title                                                                                           | Page |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 10-1      | Configuration of 10-Bit A/D Converter .....                                                     | 173  |
| 11-1      | Configuration of Serial Interface 20 .....                                                      | 186  |
| 11-2      | Serial Interface 20 Operation Mode Settings .....                                               | 192  |
| 11-3      | Example of Relationship Between System Clock and Baud Rate .....                                | 195  |
| 11-4      | Relationship Between ASCK20 Pin Input Frequency and Baud Rate (When BRGC20 Is Set to 80H) ..... | 196  |
| 11-5      | Example of Relationship Between System Clock and Baud Rate .....                                | 203  |
| 11-6      | Relationship Between ASCK20 Pin Input Frequency and Baud Rate (When BRGC20 Is Set to 80H) ..... | 203  |
| 11-7      | Receive Error Causes .....                                                                      | 208  |
| 12-1      | Configuration of Serial Interface 1A0 .....                                                     | 217  |
| 12-2      | Timing of Interrupt Request Signal Generation .....                                             | 249  |
| 13-1      | Maximum Number of Display Pixels .....                                                          | 250  |
| 13-2      | Configuration of LCD Controller/Driver .....                                                    | 250  |
| 13-3      | Frame Frequencies (Hz) .....                                                                    | 255  |
| 13-4      | COM Signals .....                                                                               | 258  |
| 13-5      | Select and Deselect Voltages (COM0 to COM2) .....                                               | 260  |
| 13-6      | Select and Deselect Voltages (COM0 to COM3) .....                                               | 263  |
| 13-7      | Output Voltages of V <sub>LC0</sub> to V <sub>LC2</sub> Pins .....                              | 265  |
| 15-1      | Remote Controller Receiver Configuration .....                                                  | 271  |
| 15-2      | Noise Elimination Width .....                                                                   | 287  |
| 16-1      | Interrupt Sources ( $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488) .....                                              | 291  |
| 16-2      | Interrupt Sources ( $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489) .....                                              | 292  |
| 16-3      | Flags Corresponding to Interrupt Request Signal Names .....                                     | 294  |
| 16-4      | Time from Generation of Maskable Interrupt Request to Servicing .....                           | 303  |
| 17-1      | Operation Statuses in HALT Mode .....                                                           | 309  |
| 17-2      | Operation After Releasing HALT Mode .....                                                       | 311  |
| 17-3      | Operation Statuses in STOP Mode .....                                                           | 312  |
| 17-4      | Operation After Releasing STOP Mode .....                                                       | 314  |
| 18-1      | Status of Hardware After Reset .....                                                            | 317  |
| 19-1      | Differences Between $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489, and Mask ROM Version .....                        | 319  |
| 19-2      | Communication Mode List .....                                                                   | 321  |
| 19-3      | Pin Connection List .....                                                                       | 323  |



### LIST OF TABLES (3/3)

| Table No. | Title                                                  | Page |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 21-1      | Operand Identifiers and Description Methods .....      | 332  |
| 25-1      | Surface Mounting Type Soldering Conditions .....       | 366  |
| B-1       | Distance Between IE System and Conversion Adapter..... | 375  |

## CHAPTER 1 GENERAL

### 1.1 Features

- ROM and RAM capacities

| <div>Item</div> <div>Part Number</div> | Program Memory (ROM) |       | Data Memory  |                 |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------|-------|--------------|-----------------|
|                                        |                      |       | Internal RAM | LCD Display RAM |
| μPD789488                              | Mask ROM             | 32 KB | 1024 bytes   | 28 × 4 bits     |
| μPD78F9488                             | Flash memory         |       |              |                 |
| ★ μPD789489                            | Mask ROM             | 48 KB | 1536 bytes   |                 |
| ★ μPD78F9489                           | Flash memory         |       |              |                 |

- Minimum instruction execution time can be selected from high speed (0.4  $\mu$ s: @5.0 MHz operation with main system clock), low speed (1.6  $\mu$ s: @5.0 MHz operation with main system clock), and ultra low speed (122  $\mu$ s: @32.768 kHz operation with subsystem clock)
- A circuit to multiply the subsystem clock by 4 is selectable (15.26  $\mu$ s: @131 kHz operation: 32.768 kHz subsystem clock × 4)
- I/O ports: 45 (N-ch open-drain: 4)
- Timer: 6 channels
- Serial interface: 2 channels
- 10-bit resolution A/D converter: 8 channels
- LCD controller/driver (on-chip voltage booster)  
Segment signals: 28, common signals: 4
- On-chip multiplier: 8 bits × 8 bits = 16 bits
- On-chip infrared remote controller receiver ( $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 only)
- On-chip key return signal detector
- Supply voltage:  $V_{DD}$  = 1.8 to 5.5 V

### 1.2 Applications

CD radio-cassette players, portable audio, compact cameras, healthcare equipment, etc.

### 1.3 Ordering Information

|   | Part Number                | Package                                    | Internal ROM |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------|
|   | $\mu$ PD789488GC-xxx-8BT   | 80-pin plastic QFP (14 × 14)               | Mask ROM     |
|   | $\mu$ PD789488GK-xxx-9EU   | 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12 × 12) | Mask ROM     |
|   | $\mu$ PD78F9488GC-8BT      | 80-pin plastic QFP (14 × 14)               | Flash memory |
|   | $\mu$ PD78F9488GK-9EU      | 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12 × 12) | Flash memory |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD789489GC-xxx-8BT   | 80-pin plastic QFP (14 × 14)               | Mask ROM     |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD789489GK-xxx-9EU   | 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12 × 12) | Mask ROM     |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD78F9489GC-8BT      | 80-pin plastic QFP (14 × 14)               | Flash memory |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD78F9489GK-9EU      | 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12 × 12) | Flash memory |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD789488GC-xxx-8BT-A | 80-pin plastic QFP (14 × 14)               | Mask ROM     |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD789488GK-xxx-9EU-A | 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12 × 12) | Mask ROM     |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD78F9488GC-8BT-A    | 80-pin plastic QFP (14 × 14)               | Flash memory |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD78F9488GK-9EU-A    | 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12 × 12) | Flash memory |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD789489GC-xxx-8BT-A | 80-pin plastic QFP (14 × 14)               | Mask ROM     |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD789489GK-xxx-9EU-A | 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12 × 12) | Mask ROM     |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD78F9489GC-8BT-A    | 80-pin plastic QFP (14 × 14)               | Flash memory |
| ★ | $\mu$ PD78F9489GK-9EU-A    | 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12 × 12) | Flash memory |

**Remarks 1.** xxx indicates ROM code suffix.

**2.** Products that have the part numbers suffixed by "-A" are lead-free products.



- Cautions**
1. Connect the IC (Internally Connected) pin directly to V<sub>ss</sub>.
  2. Connect the AV<sub>DD</sub> pin to V<sub>DD</sub>.
  3. Connect the AV<sub>ss</sub> pin to V<sub>ss</sub>.

**Remark** The parenthesized values apply to the  $\mu$ PD78F9488

★

**(2)  $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489**

80-pin plastic QFP (14 × 14)

$\mu$ PD789489GC-xxx-8BT

$\mu$ PD78F9489GC-8BT

$\mu$ PD789489GC-xxx-8BT-A

$\mu$ PD78F9489GC-8BT-A

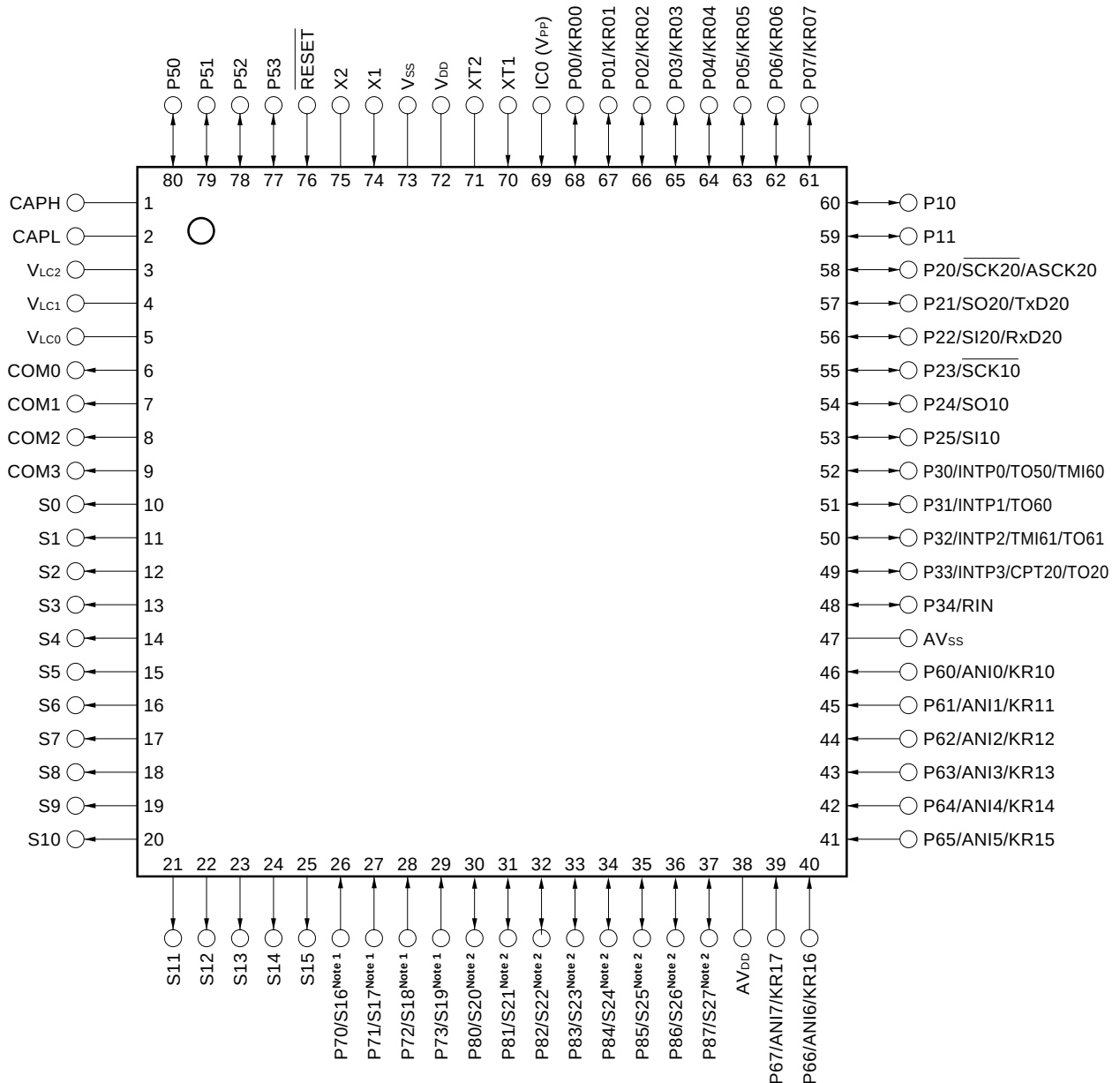
80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12 × 12)

$\mu$ PD789489GK-xxx-9EU

$\mu$ PD78F9489GK-9EU

$\mu$ PD789489GK-xxx-9EU-A

$\mu$ PD78F9489GK-9EU-A



- Notes**
1. Whether to use these pins as input port pins (P70 to P73) or segment outputs (S16 to S19) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option or port function register (refer to **4.3 (3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).
  2. Whether to use these pins as I/O port pins (P80 to P87) or segment outputs (S20 to S27) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option or port function register (refer to **4.3 (3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).

- Cautions**
1. Connect the IC (Internally Connected) pin directly to V<sub>ss</sub>.
  2. Connect the AV<sub>DD</sub> pin to V<sub>DD</sub>.
  3. Connect the AV<sub>ss</sub> pin to V<sub>ss</sub>.

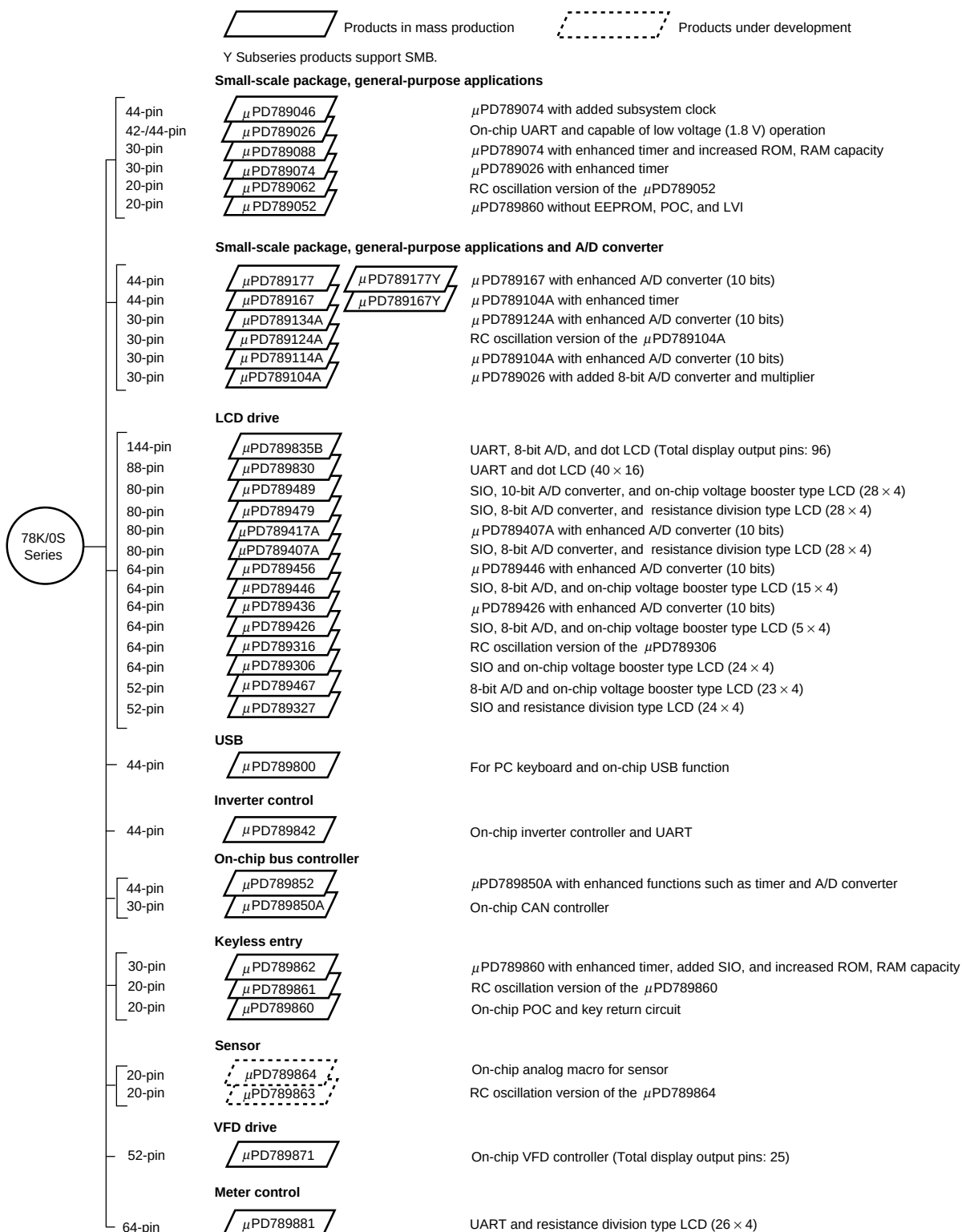
**Remark** The parenthesized values apply to the  $\mu$ PD78F9489.

#### Pin Name

|                    |                                      |                                        |                             |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ANI0 to ANI7:      | Analog input                         | RESET:                                 | Reset                       |
| ASCK20:            | Asynchronous serial input            | RIN:                                   | Remote control input        |
| AV <sub>DD</sub> : | Analog power supply                  | RxD0:                                  | Receive data                |
| AV <sub>ss</sub> : | Analog ground                        | S0 to S27:                             | Segment output              |
| CAPH, CAPL:        | LCD power supply capacitance control | SCK10:                                 | Serial clock input/output   |
| COM0 to COM3:      | Common output                        | SI10:                                  | Serial data input           |
| CPT20:             | Capture trigger input                | SO10:                                  | Serial data output          |
| IC0:               | Internally connected                 | SCK20:                                 | Serial block input/output   |
| INTP0 to INTP3:    | External interrupt input             | SI20:                                  | Serial data input           |
| KR0 to KR7:        | Key return                           | SO20:                                  | Serial data output          |
| KR00 to KR07:      | Key return                           | TMI60, 61:                             | Timer input                 |
| KR10 to KR17:      | Key return                           | TO20,50,60,61:                         | Timer output                |
| P00 to P07:        | Port 0                               | TxD0:                                  | Transmit data               |
| P10, P11:          | Port 1                               | V <sub>DD</sub> :                      | Power supply                |
| P20 to P25:        | Port 2                               | V <sub>LC0</sub> to V <sub>LC2</sub> : | Power supply for LCD        |
| P30 to P34:        | Port 3                               | V <sub>PP</sub> :                      | Programming power supply    |
| P60 to P67:        | Port 6                               | V <sub>ss</sub> :                      | Ground                      |
| P70 to P73:        | Port 7                               | X1, X2:                                | Crystal (Main system clock) |
| P80 to P87:        | Port 8                               | XT1, XT2:                              | Crystal (Subsystem clock)   |

## 1.5 78K/0S Series Lineup

The products in the 78K/0S Series are listed below. The names enclosed in boxes are subseries names.



**Remark** VFD (Vacuum Fluorescent Display) is referred to as FIP<sup>TM</sup> (Fluorescent Indicator Panel) in some documents, but the functions of the two are the same.

The major functional differences between the subseries are listed below.

Series for General-purpose applications and LCD drive

| Function<br>Subseries Name                                                             |            | ROM<br>Capacity   | Timer |        |            |      | 8-Bit<br>A/D | 10-Bit<br>A/D | Serial<br>Interface  | I/O | V <sub>DD</sub>       | Remarks                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-------------------|-------|--------|------------|------|--------------|---------------|----------------------|-----|-----------------------|---------------------------|
|                                                                                        |            |                   | 8-Bit | 16-Bit | Watch<br>h | WDT  |              |               |                      |     | MIN.<br>Value         |                           |
| Small-scale<br>package,<br>general-<br>purpose<br>applications                         | μPD789046  | 16 KB             | 1 ch  | 1 ch   | 1 ch       | 1 ch | –            | –             | 1 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 34  | 1.8 V                 | –                         |
|                                                                                        | μPD789026  | 4 KB to 16 KB     |       |        | –          |      |              |               |                      |     |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789088  | 16 KB to<br>32 KB | 3 ch  |        |            |      |              |               |                      | 24  |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789074  | 2 KB to 8 KB      | 1 ch  |        |            |      |              |               |                      |     |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789062  | 4 KB              | 2 ch  | –      |            |      |              |               | –                    | 14  |                       | RC oscillation<br>version |
|                                                                                        | μPD789052  |                   |       |        |            |      |              |               |                      |     |                       | –                         |
| Small-scale<br>package,<br>general-<br>purpose<br>applications<br>and A/D<br>converter | μPD789177  | 16 KB to<br>24 KB | 3 ch  | 1 ch   | 1 ch       | 1 ch | –            | 8 ch          | 1 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 31  | 1.8 V                 | –                         |
|                                                                                        | μPD789167  |                   |       |        |            |      | 8 ch         | –             |                      |     |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789134A | 2 KB to 8 KB      | 1 ch  |        | –          |      | –            | 4 ch          |                      | 20  |                       | RC oscillation<br>version |
|                                                                                        | μPD789124A |                   |       |        |            |      | 4 ch         | –             |                      |     |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789114A |                   |       |        |            |      | –            | 4 ch          |                      |     |                       | –                         |
|                                                                                        | μPD789104A |                   |       |        |            |      | 4 ch         | –             |                      |     |                       |                           |
| LCD drive                                                                              | μPD789835B | 24 KB to<br>60 KB | 6 ch  | –      | 1 ch       | 1 ch | 3 ch         | –             | 1 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 37  | 1.8 V <sup>Note</sup> | Dot LCD<br>supported      |
|                                                                                        | μPD789830  | 24 KB             | 1 ch  | 1 ch   |            |      | –            |               |                      | 30  | 2.7 V                 |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789489  | 32 KB to<br>48 KB | 3 ch  |        |            |      |              | 8 ch          | 2 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 45  | 1.8 V                 | –                         |
|                                                                                        | μPD789479  | 24 KB to<br>48 KB |       |        |            |      | 8 ch         | –             |                      |     |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789417A | 12 KB to<br>24 KB |       |        |            |      | –            | 7 ch          | 1 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 43  |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789407A |                   |       |        |            |      | 7 ch         | –             |                      |     |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789456  | 12 KB to<br>16 KB | 2 ch  |        |            |      | –            | 6 ch          |                      | 30  |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789446  |                   |       |        |            |      | 6 ch         | –             |                      |     |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789436  |                   |       |        |            |      | –            | 6 ch          |                      | 40  |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789426  |                   |       |        |            |      | 6 ch         | –             |                      |     |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789316  | 8 KB to 16 KB     |       |        |            |      | –            |               | 2 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 23  |                       | RC oscillation<br>version |
|                                                                                        | μPD789306  |                   |       |        |            |      |              |               |                      |     |                       | –                         |
|                                                                                        | μPD789467  | 4 KB to 24 KB     |       | –      |            |      | 1 ch         |               | –                    | 18  |                       |                           |
|                                                                                        | μPD789327  |                   |       |        |            |      | –            |               | 1 ch                 | 21  |                       |                           |

**Note** Flash memory version: 3.0 V

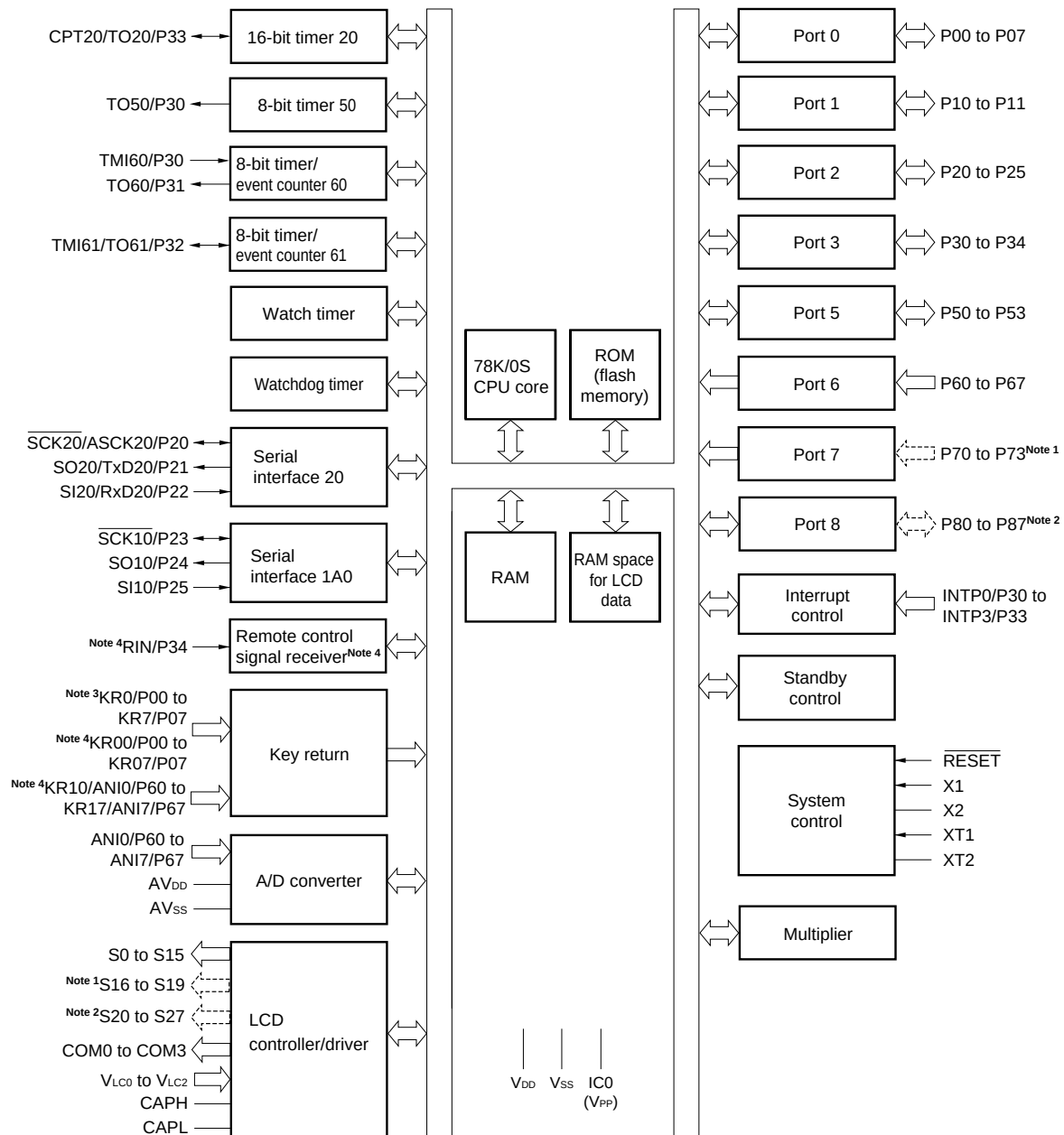


## Series for ASSP

| Function<br>Subseries Name |            | ROM<br>Capacity   | Timer |               |            |      | 8-Bit<br>A/D | 10-Bit<br>A/D | Serial<br>Interface  | I/O | V <sub>DD</sub>         | Remarks                                       |
|----------------------------|------------|-------------------|-------|---------------|------------|------|--------------|---------------|----------------------|-----|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
|                            |            |                   | 8-Bit | 16-Bit        | Watch<br>h | WDT  |              |               |                      |     | MIN.<br>Value           |                                               |
| USB                        | μPD789800  | 8 KB              | 2 ch  | –             | –          | 1 ch | –            | –             | 2 ch<br>(USB: 1 ch)  | 31  | 4.0 V                   | –                                             |
| Inverter<br>control        | μPD789842  | 8 KB to 16 KB     | 3 ch  | <b>Note 1</b> | 1 ch       | 1 ch | 8 ch         | –             | 1 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 30  | 4.0 V                   | –                                             |
| On-chip bus<br>controller  | μPD789852  | 24 KB to<br>32 KB | 3 ch  | 1 ch          | –          | 1 ch | –            | 8 ch          | 3 ch<br>(UART: 2 ch) | 31  | 4.0 V                   | –                                             |
|                            | μPD789850A | 16 KB             | 1 ch  |               |            |      | 4 ch         | –             | 2 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 18  |                         |                                               |
| Keyless<br>entry           | μPD789861  | 4 KB              | 2 ch  | –             | –          | 1 ch | –            | –             | –                    | 14  | 1.8 V                   | RC oscillation<br>version, on-<br>chip EEPROM |
|                            | μPD789860  |                   |       |               |            |      |              |               |                      |     |                         | On-chip<br>EEPROM                             |
|                            | μPD789862  | 16 KB             | 1 ch  | 2 ch          |            |      |              |               | 1 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 22  |                         |                                               |
| Sensor                     | μPD789864  | 4 KB              | 1 ch  | <b>Note 2</b> | –          | 1 ch | –            | 4 ch          | –                    | 5   | 1.9 V                   | On-chip<br>EEPROM                             |
|                            | μPD789863  |                   |       |               |            |      |              |               |                      |     |                         | RC oscillation<br>version, on-<br>chip EEPROM |
| VFD drive                  | μPD789871  | 4 KB to 8 KB      | 3 ch  | –             | 1 ch       | 1 ch | –            | –             | 1 ch                 | 33  | 2.7 V                   | –                                             |
| Meter<br>control           | μPD789881  | 16 KB             | 2 ch  | 1 ch          | –          | 1 ch | –            | –             | 1 ch<br>(UART: 1 ch) | 28  | 2.7 V <sup>Note 3</sup> | –                                             |

- Notes**
1. 10-bit timer: 1 channel
  2. 12-bit timer: 1 channel
  3. Flash memory version: 3.0 V

## 1.6 Block Diagram



- Notes**
- Whether to use these pin as input ports (P70 to P73) or segment outputs (S16 to S19) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or a port mode register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 (refer to **4.3 (3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).
  - Whether to use these pins as I/O port pins (P80 to P87) or segment outputs (S20 to S27) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488 or a port mode register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 (refer to **4.3 (3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).
  - When  $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488 is used.
  - When  $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 is used.

**Remark** The parenthesized values apply to the flash memory version.

## 1.7 Overview of Functions

(1/2)

| Item                                       |                 | $\mu$ PD789488                                                                                                                                                                | $\mu$ PD78F9488      | $\mu$ PD789489 | $\mu$ PD78F9489           |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| Internal memory                            | ROM             | 32 KB                                                                                                                                                                         | 32 KB (flash memory) | 48 KB          | 48 KB (flash memory)      |
|                                            | High-speed RAM  | 1024 bytes                                                                                                                                                                    |                      |                |                           |
|                                            | Low-speed RAM   | —                                                                                                                                                                             |                      |                | 512 bytes                 |
|                                            | LCD display RAM | 28 bytes                                                                                                                                                                      |                      |                |                           |
| Main system clock (oscillation frequency)  |                 | Ceramic/crystal oscillation (1.0 to 5.0 MHz)                                                                                                                                  |                      |                |                           |
| Subsystem clock (oscillation frequency)    |                 | Crystal oscillation (32.768 kHz)                                                                                                                                              |                      |                |                           |
| Minimum instruction execution time         |                 | 0.4 $\mu$ s/1.6 $\mu$ s (@5.0 MHz operation with main system clock)                                                                                                           |                      |                |                           |
|                                            |                 | 122 $\mu$ s (@32.768 kHz operation with subsystem clock)                                                                                                                      |                      |                |                           |
|                                            |                 | 15.26 $\mu$ s (@131 kHz operation with $\times 4$ subsystem clock)                                                                                                            |                      |                |                           |
| Subsystem clock multiplication function    |                 | $\times 4$ multiplication circuit (operating supply voltage: $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V) <sup>Note 1</sup>                                                                     |                      |                |                           |
| General-purpose registers                  |                 | 8 bits $\times$ 8 registers                                                                                                                                                   |                      |                |                           |
| Instruction set                            |                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>16-bit operations</li> <li>Bit manipulation (set, reset, test) etc.</li> </ul>                                                         |                      |                |                           |
| Multiplier                                 |                 | 8 bits $\times$ 8 bits = 16 bits                                                                                                                                              |                      |                |                           |
| I/O ports                                  |                 | Total: 45 <sup>Note 2</sup><br>CMOS I/O: 29<br>CMOS input: 12<br>N-ch open-drain I/O: 4                                                                                       |                      |                |                           |
| Timers                                     |                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>16-bit timer: 1 channel</li> <li>8-bit timer: 3 channels</li> <li>Watch timer: 1 channel</li> <li>Watchdog timer: 1 channel</li> </ul> |                      |                |                           |
| Timer outputs                              |                 | 4                                                                                                                                                                             |                      |                |                           |
| Serial interface                           |                 | UART/3-wire serial I/O mode: 1 channel<br>3-wire serial I/O mode (with automatic transfer function): 1 channel                                                                |                      |                |                           |
| A/D converter                              |                 | 10-bit resolution $\times$ 8 channels                                                                                                                                         |                      |                |                           |
| LCD controller/driver                      |                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Segment signal outputs: 28<sup>Note 3</sup></li> <li>Common signal outputs: 4</li> </ul>                                               |                      |                |                           |
| Power supply method for LCD drive          |                 | Internal voltage amplification method                                                                                                                                         |                      |                |                           |
| Infrared remote control reception function |                 | Not provided                                                                                                                                                                  |                      |                | Provided                  |
| Key return detection function              |                 | 8 pins                                                                                                                                                                        |                      |                | 16 pins                   |
| Vectored interrupt sources                 | Maskable        | Internal: 11, External: 5                                                                                                                                                     |                      |                | Internal: 16, External: 6 |
|                                            | Non-maskable    | Internal: 1                                                                                                                                                                   |                      |                |                           |
| Reset                                      |                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reset by <math>\overline{\text{RESET}}</math> signal input</li> <li>Internal reset by watchdog timer</li> </ul>                        |                      |                |                           |

**Notes** 1. Whether a circuit to multiply the clock by 4 is used or not is selected by a mask option or the subclock selection register.

2. 12 pins are used either as a port function or LCD segment output selected by a mask option or port function register.

(2/2)

| Item                          | $\mu$ PD789488                                                                                                                                                         | $\mu$ PD78F9488 | $\mu$ PD789489 | $\mu$ PD78F9489 |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Supply voltage                | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                                                                                                                                              |                 |                |                 |
| Operating ambient temperature | $T_A = -40$ to $+85^\circ\text{C}$                                                                                                                                     |                 |                |                 |
| Package                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>80-pin plastic QFP (<math>14 \times 14</math>)</li> <li>80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (<math>12 \times 12</math>)</li> </ul> |                 |                |                 |

An outline of the timer is shown below.

|                   |                           | 16-Bit<br>Timer 20 | 8-Bit<br>Timer 50 | 8-Bit<br>Timer 60 | 8-Bit<br>Timer 61 | Watch<br>Timer              | Watchdog<br>Timer           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Operation<br>mode | Interval timer            | –                  | 1 channel         | 1 channel         | 1 channel         | 1 channel <sup>Note 1</sup> | 1 channel <sup>Note 2</sup> |
|                   | External event<br>counter | –                  | –                 | 1 channel         | 1 channel         | –                           | –                           |
| Function          | Timer outputs             | 1 output           | 1 output          | 1 output          | 1 output          | –                           | –                           |
|                   | Square-wave<br>outputs    | –                  | 1 output          | 1 output          | 1 output          | –                           | –                           |
|                   | Capture                   | 1 input            | –                 | –                 | –                 | –                           | –                           |
|                   | Interrupt sources         | 1                  | 1                 | 1                 | 1                 | 2                           | 2                           |

- Notes**
1. The watch timer can perform both watch timer and interval timer functions at the same time.
  2. The watchdog timer has watchdog timer and interval timer functions. However, use the watchdog timer by selecting either the watchdog timer function or interval timer function.

## CHAPTER 2 PIN FUNCTIONS

### 2.1 List of Pin Functions

#### (1) Port pins (1/2)

| Pin Name   | I/O   | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | After Reset | Alternate Function                                                            |
|------------|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| P00 to P07 | I/O   | Port 0.<br>8-bit I/O port.<br>Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>When used as an input port, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified in 1-bit units by pull-up resistor option register B0 (PUB0) or the key return mode register (KRM00). | Input       | KR0 to KR7 <sup>Note 1</sup><br>KR00 to KR07 <sup>Note 2</sup>                |
| P10, P11   | I/O   | Port 1.<br>2-bit I/O port.<br>Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>When used as an input port, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified in 1-bit units by pull-up resistor option register B1 (PUB1).                                         | Input       | —                                                                             |
| P20        | I/O   | Port 2.<br>6-bit I/O port.<br>Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>When used as an input port, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified in 1-bit units by pull-up resistor option register B2 (PUB2).                                         | Input       | SCK20/ASCK20                                                                  |
| P21        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             | SO20/TxD20                                                                    |
| P22        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             | SI20/RxD20                                                                    |
| P23        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             | SCK10                                                                         |
| P24        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             | SO10                                                                          |
| P25        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             | SI10                                                                          |
| P30        | I/O   | Port 3.<br>5-bit I/O port.<br>Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>When used as an input port, on-chip pull-up resistors can be specified in 1-bit units by pull-up resistor option register B3 (PUB3).                                           | Input       | INTP0/TO50/TMI60                                                              |
| P31        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             | INTP1/TO60                                                                    |
| P32        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             | INTP2/TMI61/TO61                                                              |
| P33        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             | INTP3/CPT20/TO20                                                              |
| P34        |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             | RIN <sup>Note 2</sup>                                                         |
| P50 to P53 | I/O   | Port 5.<br>4-bit N-ch open-drain I/O port.<br>Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>For mask ROM version, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified by mask option.                                                                             | Input       | —                                                                             |
| P60 to P67 | Input | Port 6.<br>8-bit input port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Input       | ANI0 to ANI7 <sup>Note 1</sup><br>ANI0/KR10 to<br>ANI7/KR17 <sup>Note 2</sup> |

**Notes** 1.  $\mu$ PD789488 and 78F9488 only

2.  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

(1) Port pins (2/2)

| Pin Name                     | I/O   | Function                                                                                                    | After Reset | Alternate Function |
|------------------------------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| P70 to P73 <sup>Note 1</sup> | Input | Port 7.<br>4-bit input port.<br>(Only when input port is selected by mask option or port function register) | Input       | –                  |
| P80 to P87 <sup>Note 2</sup> | I/O   | Port 8.<br>8-bit I/O port.<br>(Only when I/O port is selected by mask option or port function register)     | Input       | –                  |

- Notes**
- Whether to use these pins as input port pins (P70 to P73) or segment outputs (S16 to S19) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or a port mode register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 (refer to **4.3 (3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).
  - Whether to use these pins as I/O port pins (P80 to P87) or segment outputs (S20 to S27) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or a port mode register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 (refer to **4.3 (3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).

(2) Non-port pins (1/2)

| Pin Name                       | I/O    | Function                                                                                                                          | After Reset | Alternate Function             |
|--------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| INTP0                          | Input  | External interrupt input for which the valid edge (rising edge, falling edge, or both rising and falling edges) can be specified. | Input       | P30/TO50/TMI60                 |
| INTP1                          |        |                                                                                                                                   |             | P31/TO60                       |
| INTP2                          |        |                                                                                                                                   |             | P32/TMI61/TO61                 |
| INTP3                          |        |                                                                                                                                   |             | P33/CPT20/TO20                 |
| KR0 to KR7 <sup>Note 1</sup>   | Input  | Key return signal detection                                                                                                       | Input       | P00 to P07                     |
| KR00 to KR07 <sup>Note 2</sup> | Input  | Key return signal detection                                                                                                       | Input       | P00 to P07                     |
| KR10 to KR17 <sup>Note 2</sup> |        |                                                                                                                                   |             | P60/ANI0 to P67/ANI7           |
| TO20                           | Output | 16-bit timer 20 output                                                                                                            | Input       | P33/INTP3/CPT20                |
| CPT20                          | Output | Capture edge input of 16-bit timer 20                                                                                             | Input       | P33/INTP3/TO20                 |
| TO50                           | Output | 8-bit timer 50 output                                                                                                             | Input       | P30/INTP0/TMI60                |
| TO60                           | Output | 8-bit timer 60 output                                                                                                             | Input       | P31/INTP1                      |
| TO61                           | Output | 8-bit timer 61 output                                                                                                             | Input       | P32/INTP2/TMI61                |
| TMI60                          | Input  | External count clock input to 8-bit timer 60                                                                                      | Input       | P30/INTP0/TO50                 |
| TMI61                          | Input  | External count clock input to 8-bit timer 61                                                                                      | Input       | P32/INTP2/TO61                 |
| SCK20                          | I/O    | Serial clock input/output of serial interface                                                                                     | Input       | P20/ASCK20                     |
| SCK10                          |        |                                                                                                                                   |             | P23                            |
| SO20                           | Output | Serial data output of serial interface                                                                                            | Input       | P21/TxD20                      |
| SO10                           |        |                                                                                                                                   |             | P24                            |
| SI20                           | Input  | Serial data input of serial interface                                                                                             | Input       | P22/RxD20                      |
| SI10                           |        |                                                                                                                                   |             | P25                            |
| ASCK20                         | Input  | Serial clock input of asynchronous serial interface                                                                               | Input       | P20/ $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ |
| TxD20                          | Output | Serial data output of asynchronous serial interface                                                                               | Input       | P21/SO20                       |
| RxD20                          | Input  | Serial data input of asynchronous serial interface                                                                                | Input       | P22/SI20                       |
| RIN <sup>Note 2</sup>          | Input  | Remote control reception data input                                                                                               | Input       | P34                            |

- Notes**
- $\mu$ PD789488 and 78F9488 only
  - $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

(2) Non-port pins (2/2)

| Pin Name                             | I/O    | Function                                                                                              | After Reset      | Alternate Function                                                     |
|--------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S0 to S15                            | Output | LCD controller/driver segment signal outputs                                                          | Low-level output | —                                                                      |
| S16 to S19 <sup>Note 1</sup>         |        | Only when segment output is selected by mask option                                                   |                  | —                                                                      |
| S20 to S27 <sup>Note 2</sup>         |        | Only when segment output is selected by mask option                                                   |                  | —                                                                      |
| COM0 to COM3                         | Output | LCD controller/driver common signal outputs                                                           | Low-level output | —                                                                      |
| V <sub>LC0</sub> to V <sub>LC2</sub> | —      | LCD drive voltage                                                                                     | —                | —                                                                      |
| CAPH, CAPL                           | —      | LCD drive voltage booster capacitor connection pin                                                    | —                | —                                                                      |
| ANI0 to ANI7                         | —      | A/D converter analog input                                                                            | —                | P60 to P67 <sup>Note 3</sup><br>P60/KR10 to P67/KR17 <sup>Note 4</sup> |
| AV <sub>SS</sub>                     | —      | A/D converter ground potential                                                                        | —                | —                                                                      |
| AV <sub>DD</sub>                     | —      | A/D converter analog power supply                                                                     | —                | —                                                                      |
| X1                                   | Input  | Connecting crystal resonator for main system clock oscillation                                        | —                | —                                                                      |
| X2                                   | —      |                                                                                                       | —                | —                                                                      |
| XT1                                  | Input  | Connecting crystal resonator for subsystem clock oscillation                                          | —                | —                                                                      |
| XT2                                  | —      |                                                                                                       | —                | —                                                                      |
| RESET                                | Input  | System reset input                                                                                    | Input            | —                                                                      |
| V <sub>DD</sub>                      | —      | Positive power supply                                                                                 | —                | —                                                                      |
| V <sub>SS</sub>                      | —      | Ground potential                                                                                      | —                | —                                                                      |
| IC0                                  | —      | Internally connected. Connect directly to V <sub>SS</sub> .                                           | —                | —                                                                      |
| V <sub>PP</sub>                      | —      | Sets flash memory programming mode. Used to apply high voltage when a program is written or verified. | —                | —                                                                      |

- Notes**
- Whether to use these pins as input ports pins (P70 to P73) or segment outputs (S16 to S19) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or a port mode register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 (refer to **4.3(3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).
  - Whether to use these pins as I/O port pins (P80 to P87) or segment outputs (S20 to S27) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or a port mode register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 (refer to **4.3(3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).
  - $\mu$ PD789488 and 78F9488 only
  - $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

## 2.2 Description of Pin Functions

### 2.2.1 P00 to P07 (Port 0)

These pins constitute an 8-bit I/O port. In addition, these pins enable key return signal detection.

Port 0 can be specified in the following operation modes in 1-bit units.

**(1) Port mode**

These pins constitute an 8-bit I/O port and can be set in the input or output port mode in 1-bit units by port mode register 0 (PM0). When used as an input port, use of an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified by pull-up resistor option register B0 (PUB0) in 1-bit units.

**(2) Control mode**

In this mode, P00 to P07 function as key return signal detection pins (KR0 to KR7 ( $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488), KR00 to KR07 ( $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489)).

### 2.2.2 P10, P11 (Port 1)

These pins constitute a 2-bit I/O port and can be set in the input or output port mode in 1-bit units by port mode register 1 (PM1). When used as an input port, use of an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified by pull-up resistor option register B1 (PUB1) in 1-bit units.

### 2.2.3 P20 to P25 (Port 2)

These pins constitute a 6-bit I/O port. In addition, these pins enable serial interface data I/O and serial clock I/O.

Port 2 can be specified in the following operation modes in 1-bit units.

**(1) Port mode**

In this mode, P20 to P25 function as a 6-bit I/O port. Port 2 can be set in the input or output port mode in 1-bit units by port mode register 2 (PM2). When used as an input port, use of an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified by pull-up resistor option register B2 (PUB2) in 1-bit units.

**(2) Control mode**

In this mode, P20 to P25 function as the serial interface data I/O and serial clock I/O.

**(a) SI20, SO20, SI10, SO10**

These are the serial data I/O pins of the serial interface.

**(b)  $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ ,  $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$**

These are the serial clock I/O pins of the serial interface.

**(c) RxD20, TxD20**

These are the serial data I/O pins of the asynchronous serial interface.

**(d) ASCK20**

This is the serial clock input pin of the asynchronous serial interface.

**Caution** When using P20 to P25 as serial interface pins, the I/O mode and output latch must be set according to the functions to be used. For the details of the setting, refer to Table 11-2 Serial Interface 20 Operation Mode Setting and 12.3 (1) Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0).



### 2.2.4 P30 to P34 (Port 3)

These pins constitute a 5-bit I/O port. In addition, they also function as timer I/O, external interrupt input, and remote control receive data input<sup>Note</sup>.

Port 3 can be specified in the following operation modes in 1-bit units.

**(1) Port mode**

In this mode, P30 to P34 function as a 5-bit I/O port. Port 3 can be set in the input or output port mode in 1-bit units by port mode register 3 (PM3). When used as an input port, use of an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified by pull-up resistor option register B3 (PUB3) in 1-bit units.

**(2) Control mode**

In this mode, P30 to P34 function as timer I/O, external interrupt input, and remote control receive data input<sup>Note</sup>.

**(a) TMI60, TMI61**

These are the external clock input pins of timers 60 and 61.

**(b) TO20, TO50, TO60, TO61**

These are the timer output pins of timers 20, 50, 60, and 61.

**(c) CPT20**

This is the capture edge input pin of 16-bit timer 20.

**(d) INTP0 to INTP3**

These are external interrupt input pins for which valid edges (rising edge, falling edge, or both rising and falling edges) can be specified.

**(e) RIN<sup>Note</sup>**

This is the data input pin of the remote controller receiver.

**Note**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

### 2.2.5 P50 to P53 (Port 5)

These pins constitute as a 4-bit N-ch open-drain I/O port. Port 5 can be set in the input or output port mode in 1-bit units by port mode register 5 (PM5). In the mask ROM version, use of an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified by a mask option in 1-bit units.

### 2.2.6 P60 to P67 (Port 6)

This is an 8-bit input-only port. In addition to a general-purpose input port function, it has A/D converter input and key return signal detection<sup>Note</sup> functions.

**(1) Port mode**

In this mode, P60 to P67 function as an 8-bit input-only port.

**(2) Control mode**

In this mode, P60 to P67 function as the analog inputs of the A/D converter and key return signal detection pins<sup>Note</sup>.

**(a) ANI0 to ANI7**

These are the analog input pins of the A/D converter.

**(b) KR10 to KR17<sup>Note</sup>**

These are the key return signal detection pins.

**Note**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

### 2.2.7 P70 to P73 (Port 7)

These pins constitute a 4-bit input-only port. This port can be used only when the port function is selected by a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or by a port function register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489.

### 2.2.8 P80 to P87 (Port 8)

These pins constitute an 8-bit I/O port. Port 8 can be set in the input or output mode in 1-bit units by port mode register 8 (PM8). This port can be used only when the port function is selected by a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or by a port function register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489.

### 2.2.9 S0 to S27<sup>Note</sup>

These pins are the segment signal output pins for the LCD controller/driver.

**Note** Pins S16 through S27 can be used only when segment output is selected by a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or by a port function register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489.

### 2.2.10 COM0 to COM3

These pins are the common signal output pins for the LCD controller/driver.

### 2.2.11 VLc0 to VLc2

These pins are the power supply voltage pins for driving the LCD.

### 2.2.12 CAPH, CAPL

These pins are the capacitor connection pins for driving the LCD.

### 2.2.13 RESET

This pin inputs an active-low system reset signal.

### 2.2.14 X1, X2

These pins are used to connect a crystal resonator for main system clock oscillation.

To supply an external clock, input the clock to X1 and input the inverted signal to X2.

### 2.2.15 XT1, XT2

These pins are used to connect a crystal resonator for subsystem clock oscillation.

To supply an external clock, input the clock to XT1 and input the inverted signal to XT2.

### 2.2.16 AV<sub>DD</sub>

This is the analog power supply pin of the A/D converter. Always use the same potential as that of the V<sub>DD</sub> pin even when the A/D converter is not used.

### 2.2.17 AV<sub>SS</sub>

This is the ground potential pin of the A/D converter. Always use the same potential as that of the V<sub>SS</sub> pin even when the A/D converter is not used.

### 2.2.18 V<sub>DD</sub>

This is the positive power supply pin.

### 2.2.19 V<sub>SS</sub>

This is the ground pin.

### 2.2.20 V<sub>PP</sub> (flash memory version only)

A high voltage should be applied to this pin when the flash memory programming mode is set and when the program is written or verified.

Handle the pins in either of the following ways.

- Independently connect a 10 k $\Omega$  pull-down resistor.
- Switch this pin to be directly connected to the dedicated flash programmer in programming mode or to V<sub>SS</sub> in normal operation mode using a jumper on the board.

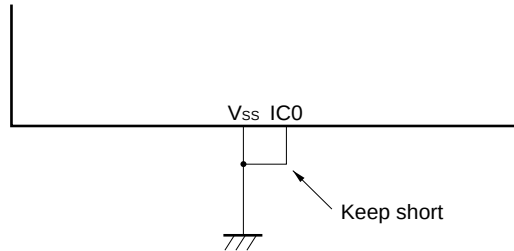
If the wiring between the V<sub>PP</sub> pin and V<sub>SS</sub> pin is very long or external noise is superimposed on the V<sub>PP</sub> pin, the user program may not run correctly.

### 2.2.21 IC0 (mask ROM version only)

The IC0 (Internally Connected) pin is used to set the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries in the test mode before shipment. In the normal operation mode, directly connect this pin to the V<sub>SS</sub> pin with as short a wiring length as possible.

If there is a potential difference between the IC0 pin and V<sub>SS</sub> pin due to a long wiring length or external noise superimposed on the IC0 pin, the user program may not run correctly.

- Directly connect the IC0 pin to the V<sub>SS</sub> pin.



## 2.3 Pin I/O Circuits and Recommended Connection of Unused Pins

The I/O circuit type of each pin and recommended connection of unused pins are shown in Table 2-1.  
For the I/O circuit configuration of each type, see Figure 2-1.

**Table 2-1. Types of Pin I/O Circuits (1/2)**

| Pin Name                                            | I/O Circuit Type | I/O                                                                                    | Recommended Connection of Unused Pins                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| P00/KR0 to P07/KR7 <sup>Note 1</sup>                | 8-A              | I/O                                                                                    | Input: Independently connect to V <sub>DD</sub> or V <sub>SS</sub> via a resistor.<br>Output: Leave open. |
| P00/KR00 to P07/KR07 <sup>Note 2</sup>              |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P10, P11                                            |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P20/SCK20/ASCK20                                    | 5-A              |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P21/SO20/TxD20                                      | 8-A              |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P22/SI20/RxD20                                      | 5-A              |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P23/SCK10                                           | 8-A              |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P24/SO10                                            | 5-A              |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P25/SI10                                            | 8-A              |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P30/INTP0/TO50/<br>TMI60                            |                  |                                                                                        | Input: Independently connect to V <sub>SS</sub> via a resistor.<br>Output: Leave open.                    |
| P31/INTP1/TO60                                      |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P32/INTP2/TO61/<br>TMI61                            |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P33/INTP3/CPT20/<br>TO20                            |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P34 <sup>Note 1</sup>                               |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P34/RIN <sup>Note 2</sup>                           |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P50 to P53<br>(mask ROM version)                    | 13-W             | Input: Independently connect to V <sub>DD</sub> via a resistor.<br>Output: Leave open. |                                                                                                           |
| P50 to P53<br>(flash memory version)                | 13-V             |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P60/ANI0 to P67/ANI7 <sup>Note 1</sup>              | 9-C              | Input                                                                                  | Connect to V <sub>DD</sub> or V <sub>SS</sub> .                                                           |
| P60/ANI0/KR10 to<br>P67/ANI7/KR17 <sup>Note 2</sup> |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P70 to P73 <sup>Note 3</sup>                        | 2-H              |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| P80 to P87 <sup>Note 3</sup>                        | 5-K              | I/O                                                                                    | Input: Independently connect to V <sub>DD</sub> or V <sub>SS</sub> via a resistor.<br>Output: Leave open. |
| COM0 to COM3                                        | 18               | Output                                                                                 | Leave open.                                                                                               |
| S0 to S15                                           | 17               |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| S16 to S19 <sup>Note 4</sup>                        |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| S20 to S27 <sup>Note 4</sup>                        |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| CAPH, CAPL                                          | —                | —                                                                                      | Connect directly to V <sub>DD</sub>                                                                       |
| V <sub>LC0</sub> to V <sub>LC2</sub>                |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| AV <sub>DD</sub>                                    |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |
| AV <sub>SS</sub>                                    |                  |                                                                                        |                                                                                                           |

**Notes** 1. When  $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488 is used.

2. When  $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 is used.

3. Only when port pin is selected by mask option or port function register.

4. Only when segment output pin is selected by mask option or port function register.

Table 2-1. Types of Pin I/O Circuits (2/2)

| Pin Name        | I/O Circuit Type | I/O   | Recommended Connection of Unused Pins                                                      |
|-----------------|------------------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| XT1             | —                | Input | Connect to V <sub>SS</sub> .                                                               |
| XT2             |                  | —     | Leave open.                                                                                |
| RESET           | 2                | Input | —                                                                                          |
| IC0             | —                | —     | Connect directly to V <sub>SS</sub> .                                                      |
| V <sub>PP</sub> |                  |       | Independently connect a 10 kΩ pull-down resistor, or connect directly to V <sub>SS</sub> . |

Figure 2-1. I/O Circuit Types (1/2)

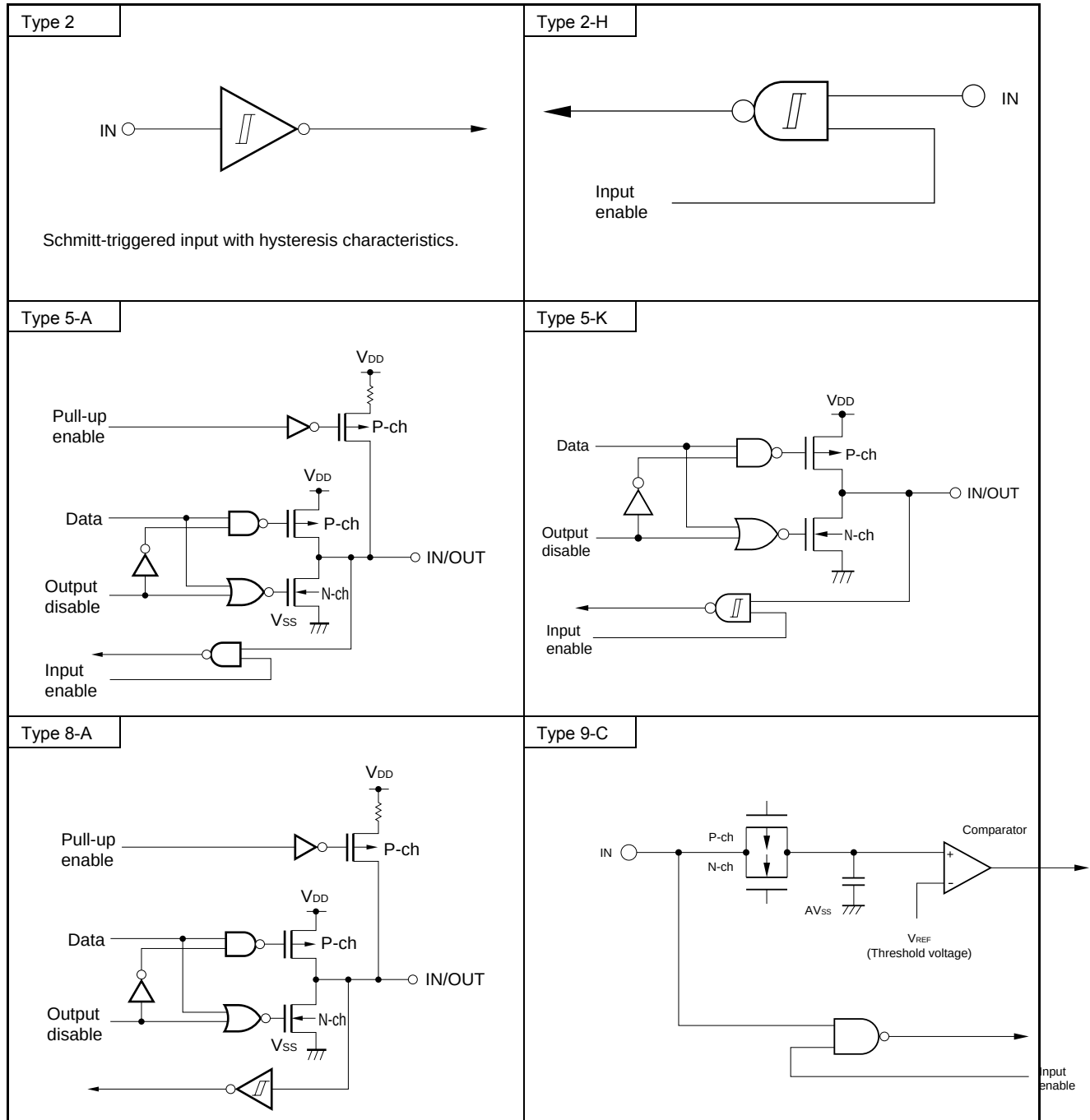
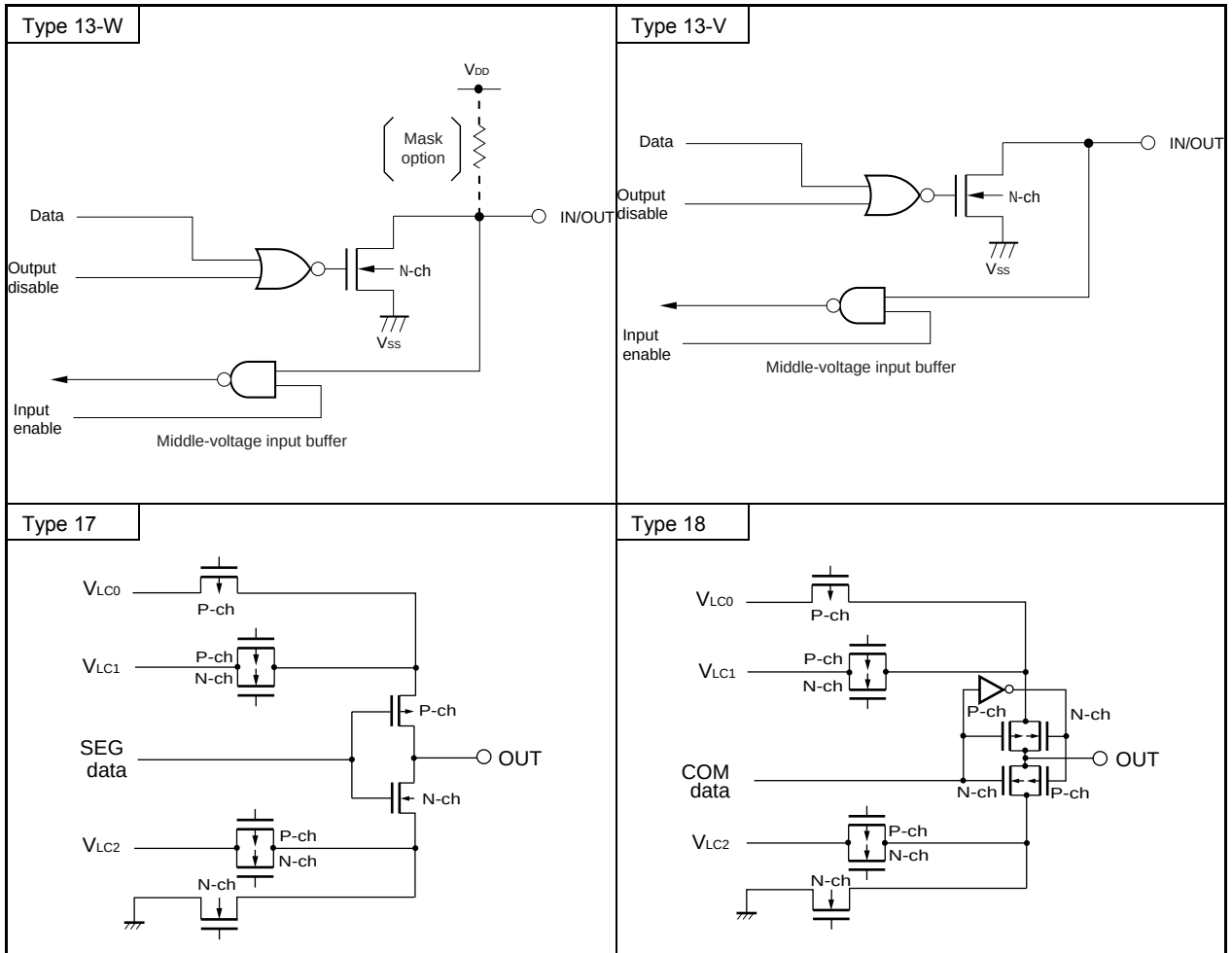


Figure 2-1. I/O Circuit Types (2/2)



## CHAPTER 3 CPU ARCHITECTURE

### 3.1 Memory Space

The  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries can access 64 KB of memory space. Figures 3-1 to 3-4 show the memory maps.

Figure 3-1. Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD789488)

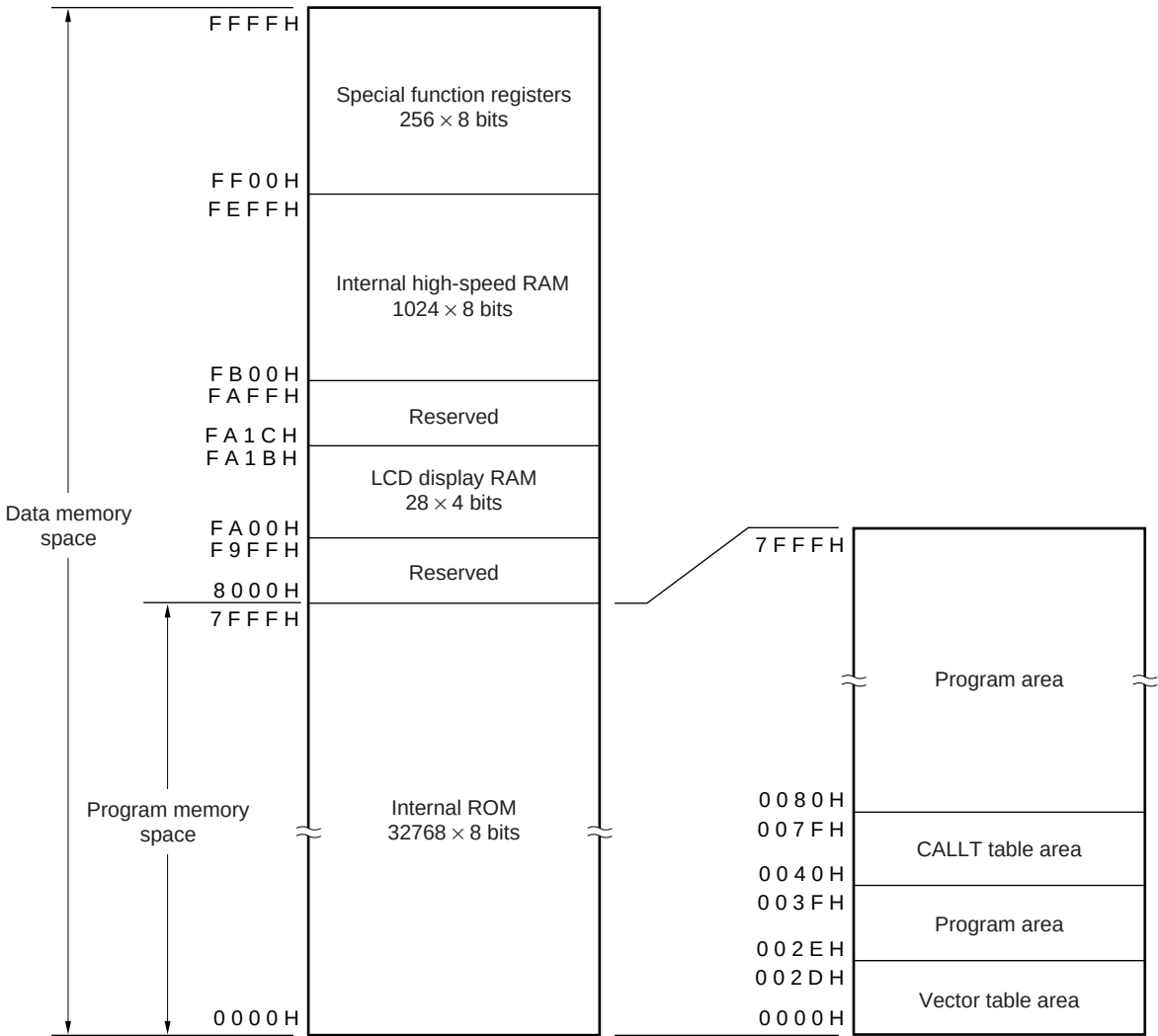




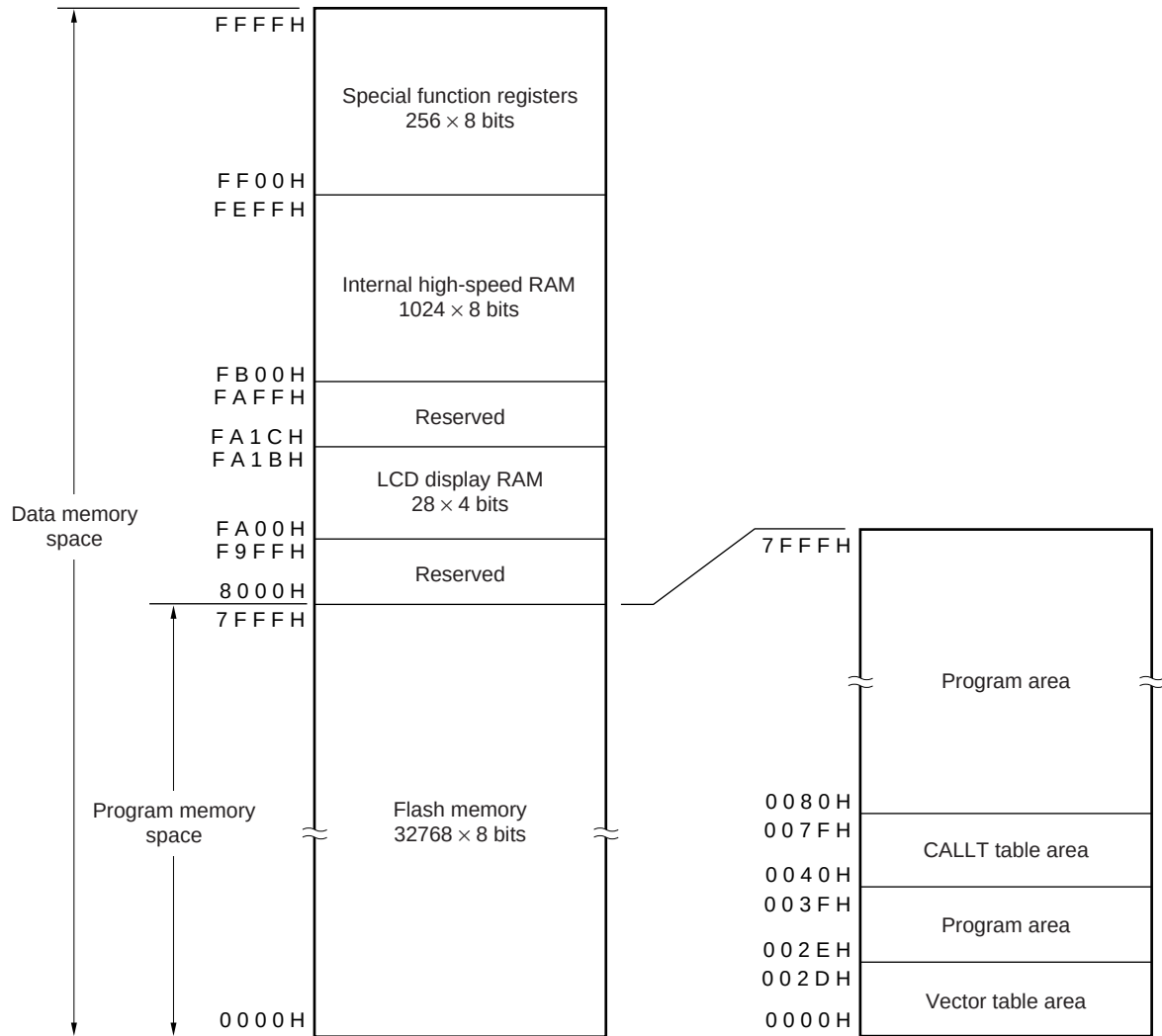
Figure 3-2. Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78F9488)

Figure 3-3. Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD789489)

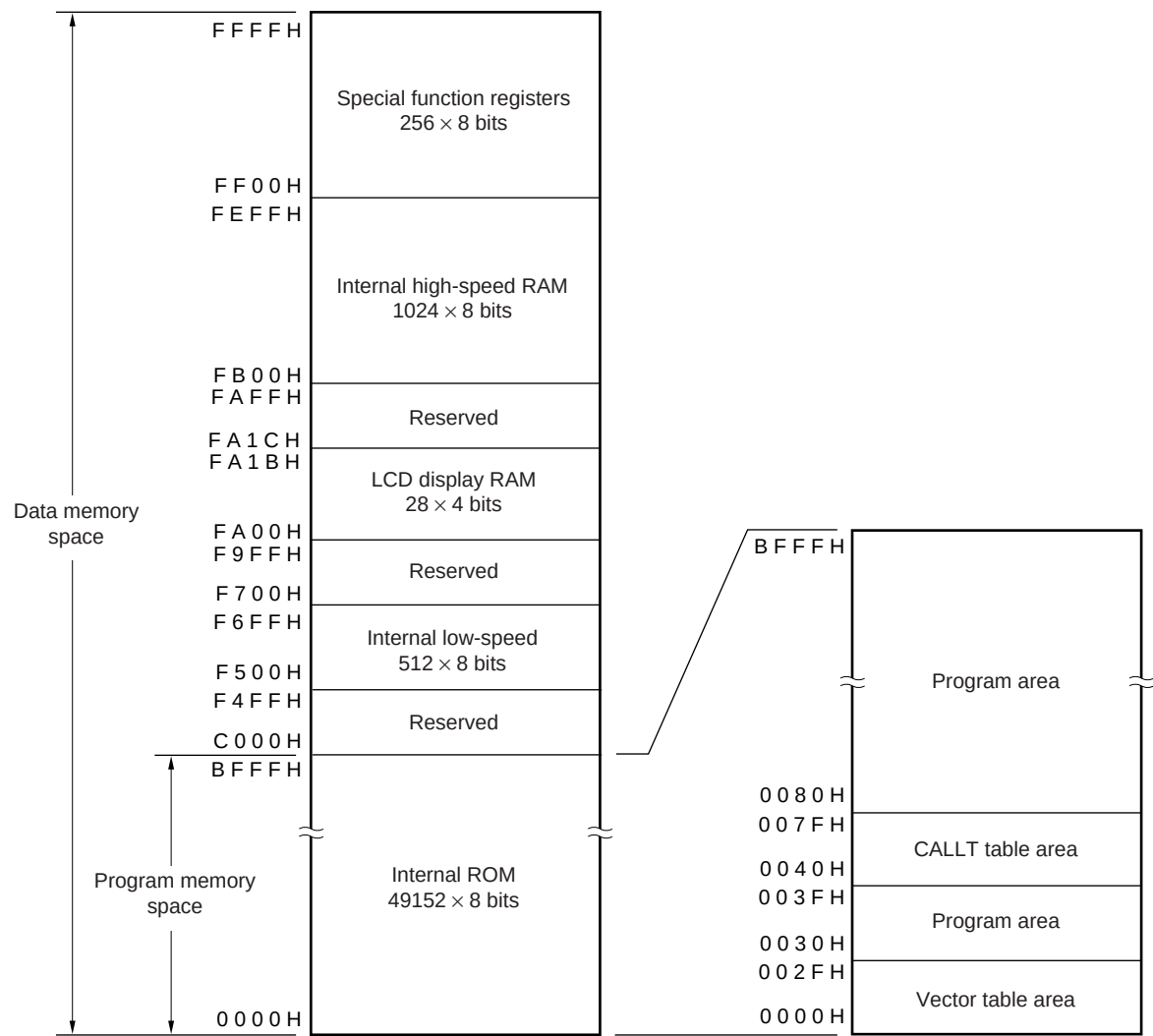
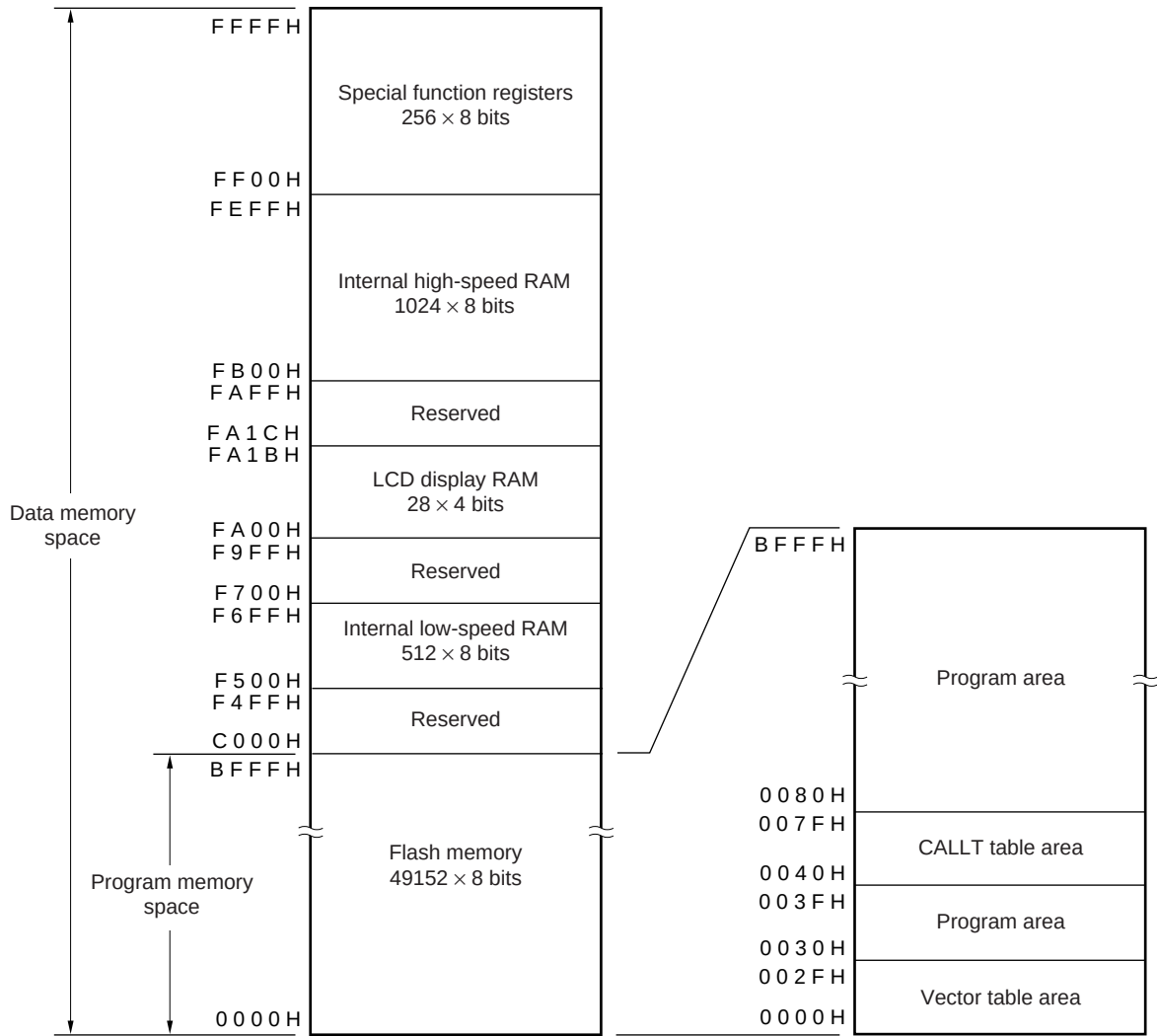


Figure 3-4. Memory Map ( $\mu$ PD78F9489)

### 3.1.1 Internal program memory space

The internal program memory space stores programs and table data. This space is usually addressed by the program counter (PC).

The  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries provide internal ROM (or flash memory) with the following capacity for each product.

**Table 3-1. Internal ROM Capacity**

| Part Number     | Internal ROM |                       |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------------|
|                 | Structure    | Capacity              |
| $\mu$ PD789488  | Mask ROM     | $32768 \times 8$ bits |
| $\mu$ PD78F9488 | Flash memory |                       |
| $\mu$ PD789489  | Mask ROM     | $49152 \times 8$ bits |
| $\mu$ PD78F9489 | Flash memory |                       |

The following areas are allocated to the internal program memory space.

#### (1) Vector table area

The 46-byte area of addresses 0000H to 002DH is reserved in the  $\mu$ PD789488 and 78F9488, and the 48-byte area of address 0000H to 002FH is reserved in the  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 as a vector table area. This area stores program start addresses to be used when branching by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input or interrupt request generation. Of a 16-bit program address, the lower 8 bits are stored in an even address, and the higher 8 bits are stored in an odd address.

**Table 3-2. Vector Table**

| Vector Table Address | Interrupt Request               | Vector Table Address | Interrupt Request        |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 0000H                | $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input | 0018H                | INTTM20                  |
| 0004H                | INTWDT                          | 001AH                | INTTM50                  |
| 0006H                | INTP0                           | 001CH                | INTTM60                  |
| 0008H                | INTP1                           | 001EH                | INTTM61                  |
| 000AH                | INTP2                           | 0020H                | INTAD0                   |
| 000CH                | INTP3                           | 0022H                | INTWT                    |
| 000EH                | INTRIN <sup>Note</sup>          | 0024H                | INTKR00                  |
| 0010H                | INTSR20/INTCSI20                | 0026H                | INTRERR <sup>Note</sup>  |
| 0012H                | INTCSI10                        | 0028H                | INTGP <sup>Note</sup>    |
| 0014H                | INTST20                         | 002AH                | INTREND <sup>Note</sup>  |
| 0016H                | INTWTI                          | 002CH                | INTDFULL <sup>Note</sup> |
|                      |                                 | 002EH                | INTKR01 <sup>Note</sup>  |

**Note**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only. There are no interrupt requests corresponding to vector table addresses 000EH, and 0026H through 002EH for  $\mu$ PD789488 and 78F9488.

#### (2) CALLT instruction table area

The subroutine entry address of a 1-byte call instruction (CALLT) can be stored in the 64-byte area of addresses 0040H to 007FH.

### 3.1.2 Internal data memory space

#### (1) Internal high-speed RAM and internal low-speed RAM

The  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries products incorporate the internal high-speed RAM and internal low-speed RAM of the following capacity for each product.

The internal high-speed RAM can also be used as a stack.

The internal low-speed RAM cannot be used as a stack.

**Table 3-3. Internal High-Speed RAM, Internal Low-Speed RAM Capacity**

| Part Number     | Internal High-Speed RAM | Internal Low-Speed RAM |
|-----------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| $\mu$ PD789488  | 1024 $\times$ 8 bits    | —                      |
| $\mu$ PD78F9488 |                         |                        |
| $\mu$ PD789489  |                         | 512 $\times$ 8 bits    |
| $\mu$ PD78F9489 |                         |                        |

#### (2) LCD display RAM

LCD display RAM is incorporated in the area between FA00H and FA1BH.

The LCD display RAM can also be used as ordinary RAM.

### 3.1.3 Special function register (SFR) area

Special function registers (SFRs) of on-chip peripheral hardware are allocated in the area between FF00H and FFFFH (see **Table 3-4**).

### 3.1.4 Data memory addressing

The  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries is provided with a variety of addressing modes to make memory manipulation as efficient as possible. At the addresses corresponding to data memory area (FB00H to FFFFH) especially, specific addressing modes that correspond to the particular function of an area, such as the special function registers, are available. Figures 3-5 to 3-8 show the data memory addressing modes.

**Figure 3-5. Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD789488)**

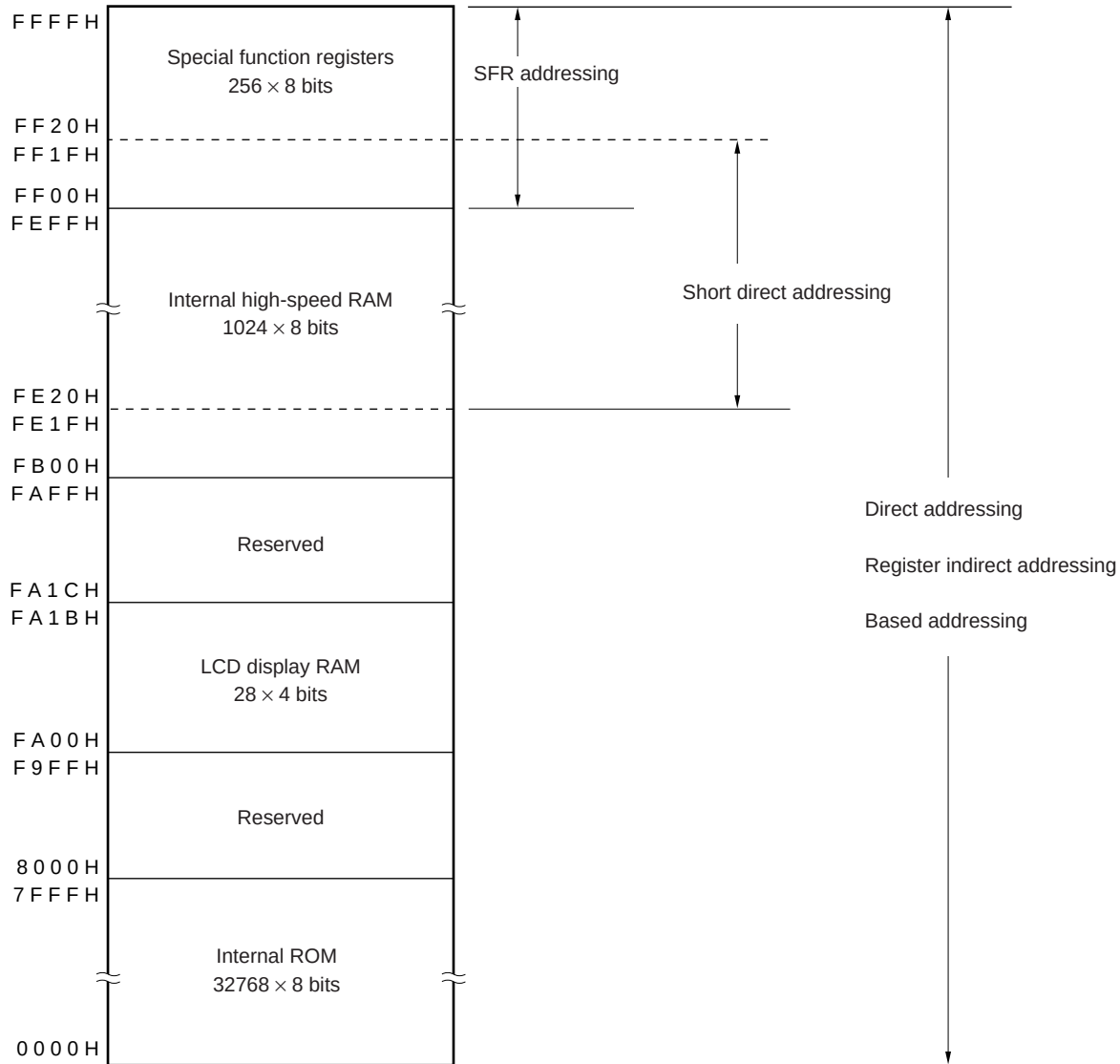


Figure 3-6. Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78F9488)

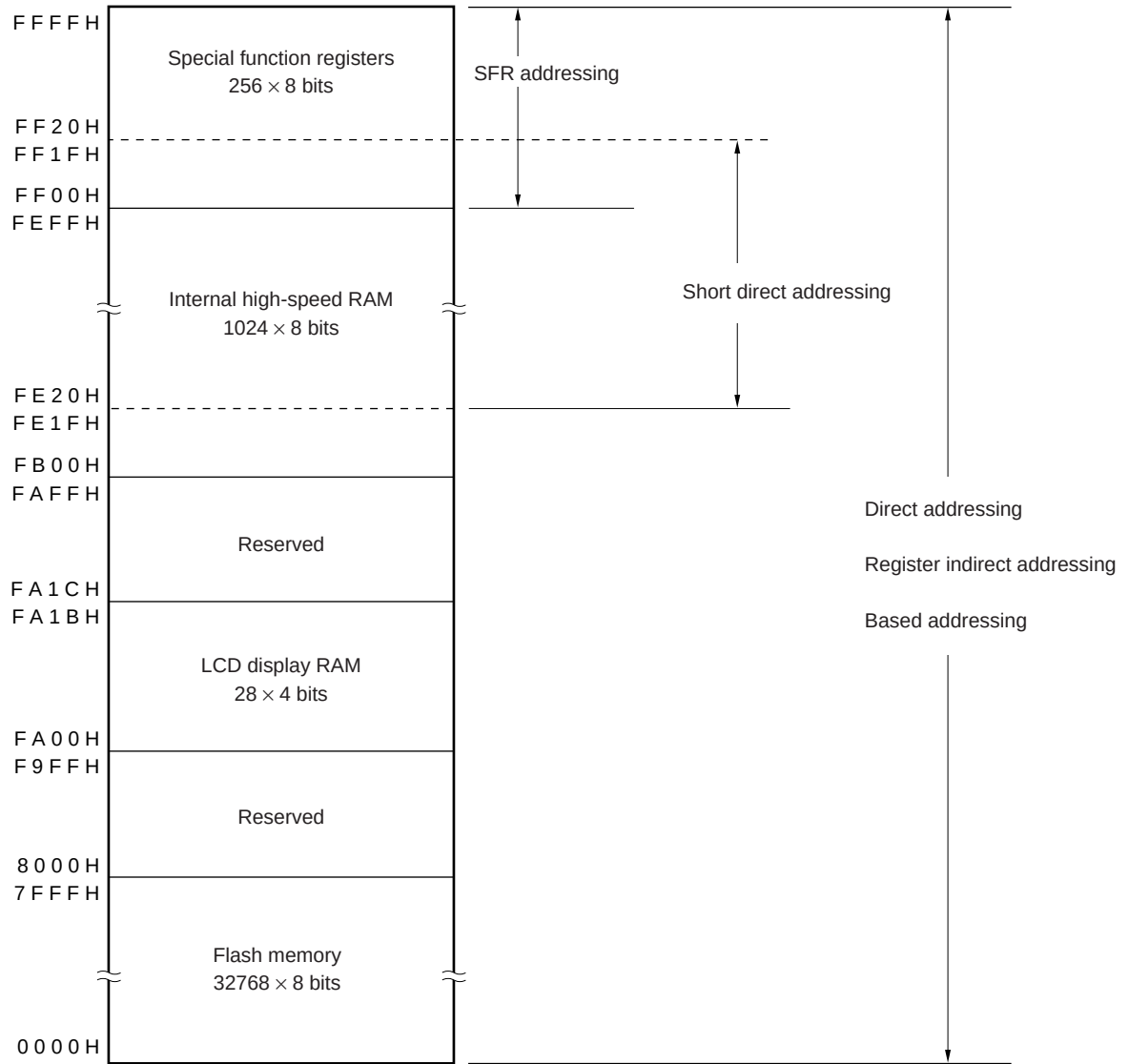


Figure 3-7. Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD789489)

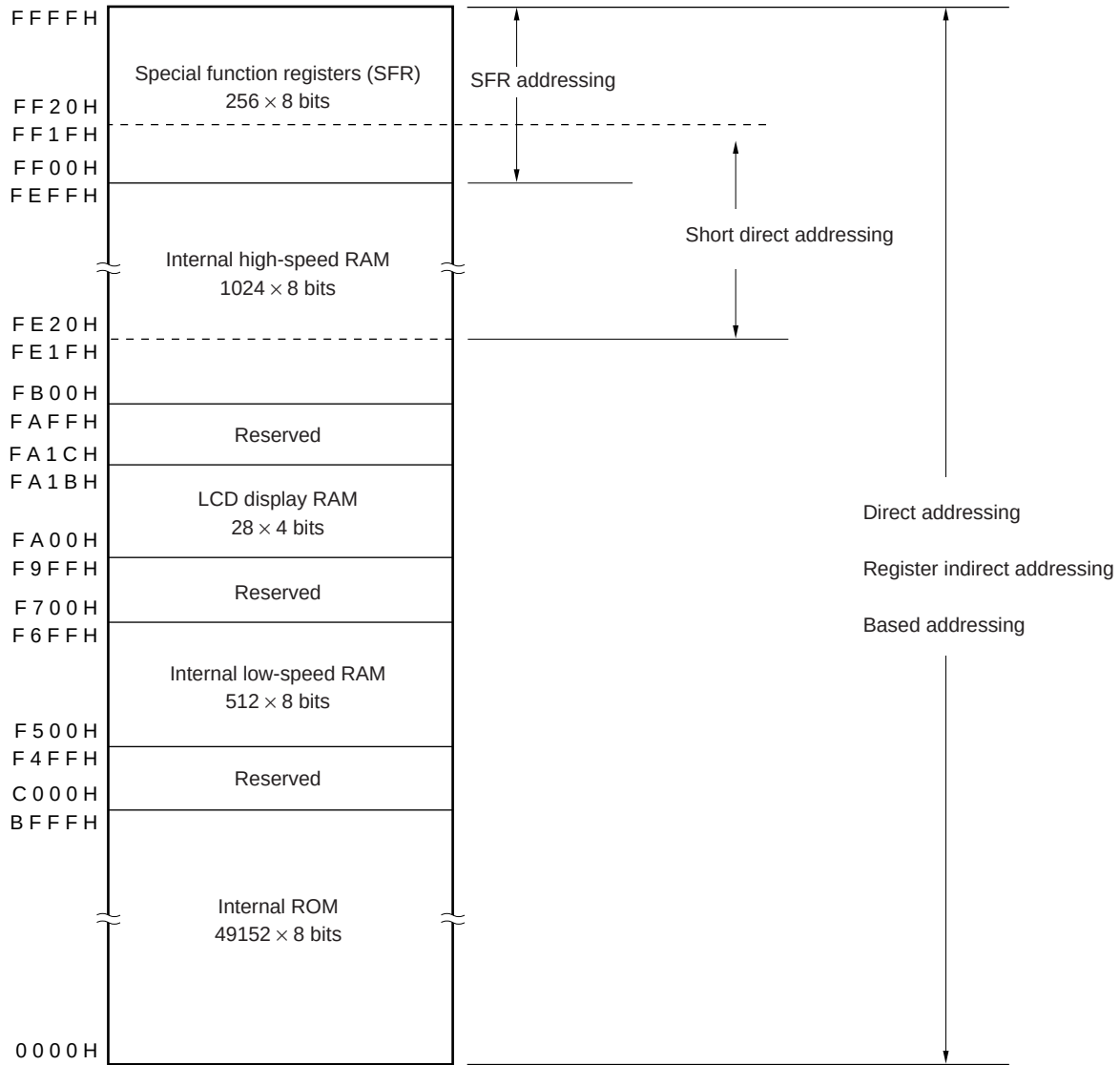
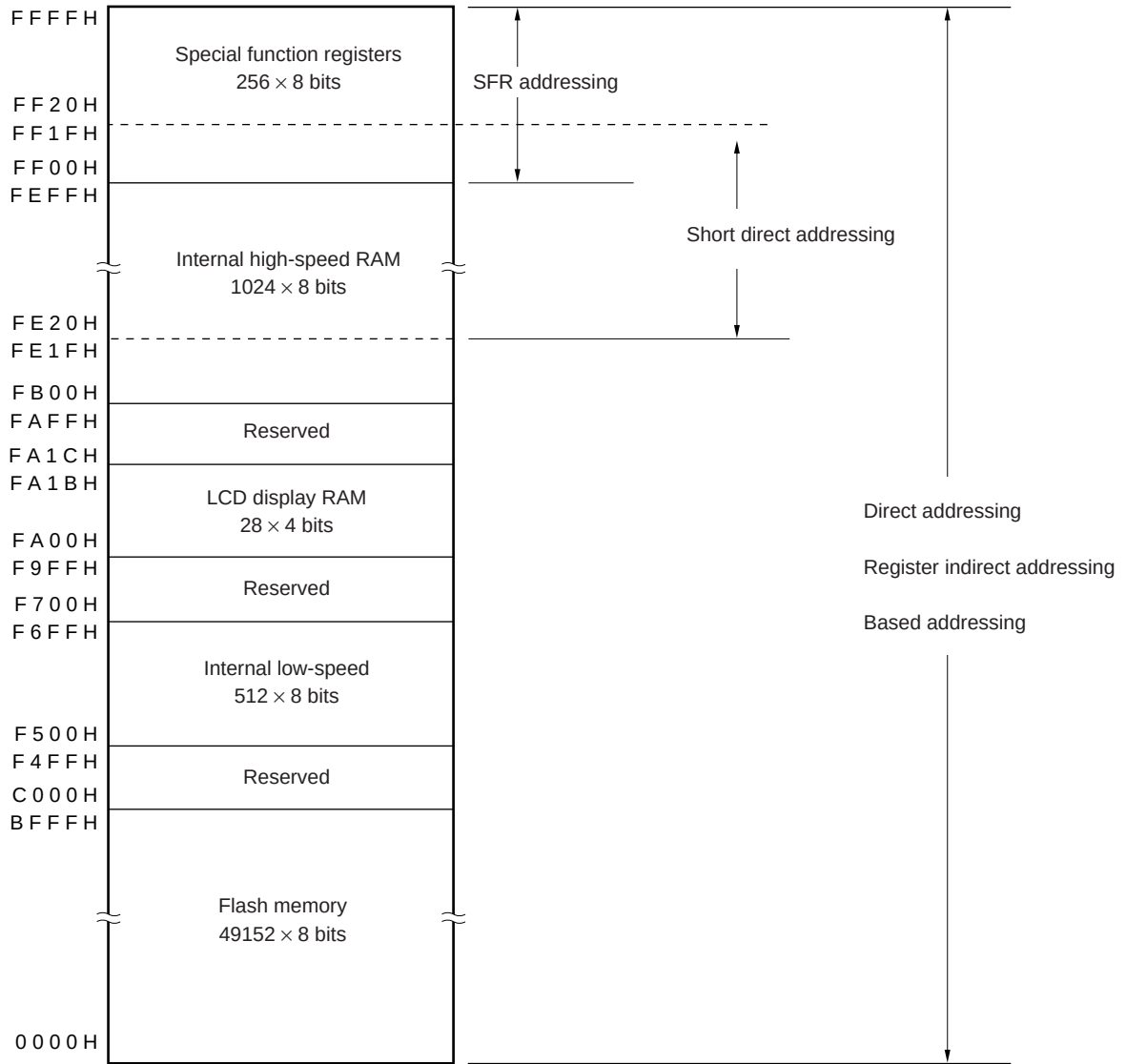




**Figure 3-8. Data Memory Addressing ( $\mu$ PD78F9489)**

## 3.2 Processor Registers

The  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries is provided with the following on-chip processor registers.

### 3.2.1 Control registers

The control registers contain special functions to control the program sequence status and stack memory. The program counter, program status word, and stack pointer are control registers.

#### (1) Program counter (PC)

The program counter is a 16-bit register that holds the address information of the next program to be executed.

In normal operation, the PC is automatically incremented according to the number of bytes of the instruction to be fetched. When a branch instruction is executed, immediate data or register contents are set.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets the reset vector table values at addresses 0000H and 0001H to the program counter.

**Figure 3-9. Program Counter Configuration**

|    |      |      |      |      |      |      |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|----|------|------|------|------|------|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|    | 15   |      |      |      |      |      |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | 0   |
| PC | PC15 | PC14 | PC13 | PC12 | PC11 | PC10 | PC9 | PC8 | PC7 | PC6 | PC5 | PC4 | PC3 | PC2 | PC1 | PC0 |

#### (2) Program status word (PSW)

The program status word is an 8-bit register consisting of various flags to be set/reset by instruction execution.

The program status word contents are automatically stacked upon interrupt request generation or PUSH PSW instruction execution and are automatically restored upon execution of the RETI and POP PSW instructions.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets PSW to 02H.

**Figure 3-10. Program Status Word Configuration**

|     |    |   |   |    |   |   |   |    |
|-----|----|---|---|----|---|---|---|----|
|     | 7  |   |   |    |   |   |   | 0  |
| PSW | IE | Z | 0 | AC | 0 | 0 | 1 | CY |

**(a) Interrupt enable flag (IE)**

This flag controls interrupt request acknowledgement operations of the CPU.

When 0, IE is set to the interrupt disabled status (DI), and interrupt requests other than non-maskable interrupts are all disabled.

When 1, IE is set to the interrupt enabled status (EI). Interrupt request acknowledgement enable is controlled by the interrupt mask flag for the corresponding interrupt source.

IE is reset (0) upon DI instruction execution or interrupt acknowledgment and is set (1) upon EI instruction execution.

**(b) Zero flag (Z)**

When the operation result is zero, this flag is set (1). It is reset (0) in all other cases.

**(c) Auxiliary carry flag (AC)**

If the operation result has a carry from bit 3 or a borrow at bit 3, this flag is set (1). It is reset (0) in all other cases.

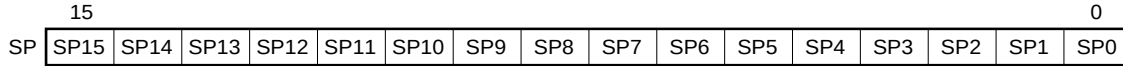
**(d) Carry flag (CY)**

This flag stores an overflow or underflow upon add/subtract instruction execution. It stores the shift-out value upon rotate instruction execution and functions as a bit accumulator during bit manipulation instruction execution.

### (3) Stack pointer (SP)

This is a 16-bit register that holds the start address of the memory stack area. Only the internal high-speed RAM area can be set as the stack area.

**Figure 3-11. Stack Pointer Configuration**



The SP is decremented ahead of write (save) to the stack memory and is incremented after read (restore) from the stack memory.

Each stack operation saves/restores data as shown in Figures 3-12 and 3-13.

**Caution** Since **RESET** input makes the SP contents undefined, be sure to initialize the SP before instruction execution.

**Figure 3-12. Data to Be Saved to Stack Memory**

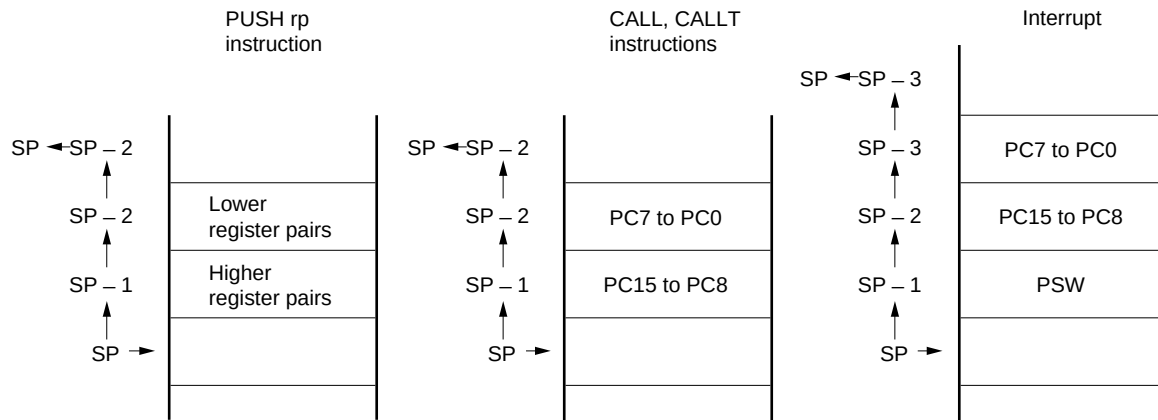
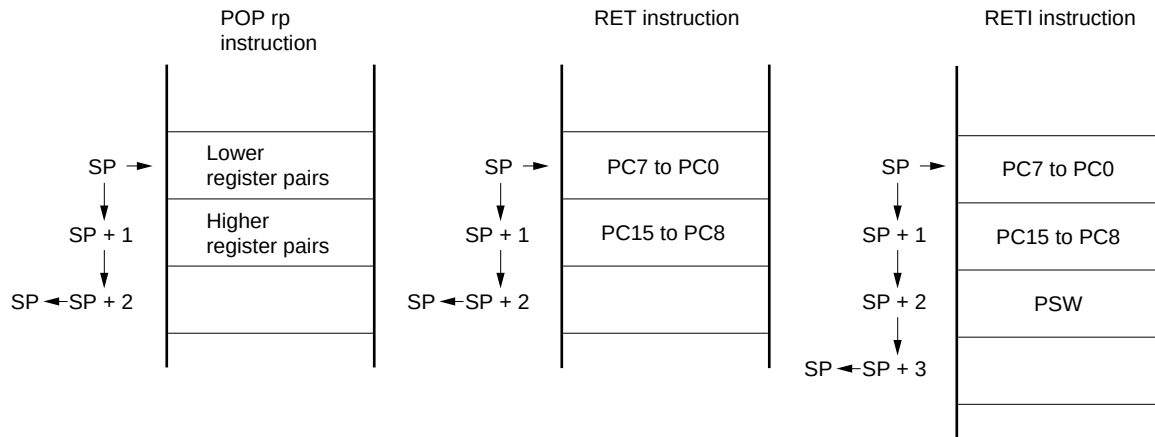


**Figure 3-13. Data to Be Restored from Stack Memory**



### 3.2.2 General-purpose registers

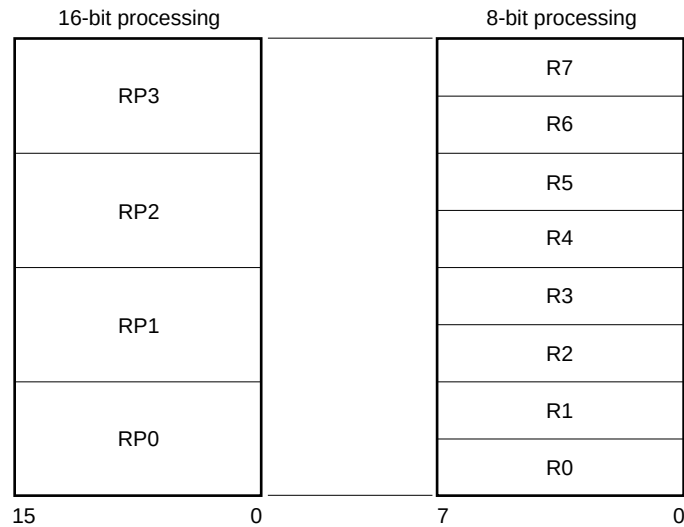
The general-purpose registers consist of eight 8-bit registers (X, A, C, B, E, D, L, and H).

Each register can be used as an 8-bit register, or two 8-bit registers in pairs can be used as a 16-bit register (AX, BC, DE, and HL).

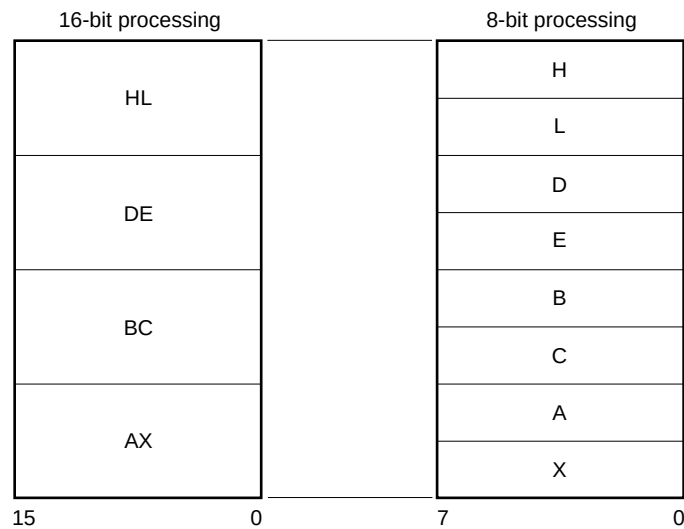
General-purpose registers can be described in terms of function names (X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H, AX, BC, DE, or HL) or absolute names (R0 to R7 and RP0 to RP3).

**Figure 3-14. General-Purpose Register Configuration**

**(a) Absolute names**



**(b) Function names**



### 3.2.3 Special function registers (SFRs)

Unlike a general-purpose register, each special function register has a special function.

The special function registers are allocated in the 256-byte area of FF00H to FFFFH.

Special function registers can be manipulated, like general-purpose registers, by operation, transfer, and bit manipulation instructions. The manipulatable bit units (1, 8, and 16) differ depending on the special function register type.

The manipulatable bits can be specified as follows.

- 1-bit manipulation

Describe the symbol reserved by the assembler for the 1-bit manipulation instruction operand (sfr.bit). This manipulation can also be specified with an address.

- 8-bit manipulation

Describe the symbol reserved by the assembler for the 8-bit manipulation instruction operand (sfr). This manipulation can also be specified with an address.

- 16-bit manipulation

Describe the symbol reserved by the assembler for the 16-bit manipulation instruction operand. When addressing an address, describe an even address.

Table 3-4 lists the special function registers. The meanings of the symbols in this table are as follows.

- Symbol

Indicates the addresses of the implemented special-function registers. The symbols shown in this column are reserved words in the assembler, and have already been defined as sfr variables by the #pragma sfr directive in the C compiler. Therefore, these symbols can be used as instruction operands if an assembler or integrated debugger is used.

- R/W

Indicates whether the special function register in question can be read or written.

R/W: Read/write

R: Read only

W: Write only

- Bit unit for manipulation

Indicates the bit units (1, 8, 16) in which the special function register in question can be manipulated.

- After reset

Indicates the status of the special function register when the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal is input.

Table 3-4. Special Function Registers (1/3)

| Address | Special Function Register (SFR) Name          | Symbol |      | R/W | Bit Unit for Manipulation |        |         | After Reset |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------|--------|------|-----|---------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|
|         |                                               |        |      |     | 1 Bit                     | 8 Bits | 16 Bits |             |
| FF00H   | Port 0                                        | P0     |      | R/W | √                         | √      | –       | 00H         |
| FF01H   | Port 1                                        | P1     |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF02H   | Port 2                                        | P2     |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF03H   | Port 3                                        | P3     |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF05H   | Port 5                                        | P5     |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF06H   | Port 6                                        | P6     |      | R   | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF07H   | Port 7 <sup>Note</sup>                        | P7     |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF08H   | Port 8 <sup>Note</sup>                        | P8     |      | R/W | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF0AH   | 8-bit compare register 61                     | CR61   |      | W   | –                         | √      | –       | Undefined   |
| FF0BH   | 8-bit timer counter 61                        | TM61   |      | R   | –                         | √      | –       | 00H         |
| FF0CH   | 8-bit compare register 60                     | CR60   | CR6  | W   | –                         | √      | √       | Undefined   |
| FF0DH   | 8-bit compare register 50                     | CR50   |      |     | –                         | √      |         |             |
| FF0EH   | 8-bit timer counter 60                        | TM60   | TM6  | R   | –                         | √      | √       | 00H         |
| FF0FH   | 8-bit timer counter 50                        | TM50   |      |     | –                         | √      |         |             |
| FF11H   | Serial I/O shift register 1A0                 | SIO1A0 |      | R/W | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF12H   | 16-bit multiplication result store register L | MUL0L  | MUL0 | R   | –                         | √      | √       | Undefined   |
| FF13H   | 16-bit multiplication result store register H | MUL0H  |      |     | –                         | √      |         |             |
| FF14H   | A/D conversion result register 0              | ADCRL0 |      |     | –                         | –      | √       | 0000H       |
| FF15H   |                                               |        |      |     |                           |        |         |             |
| FF16H   | 16-bit compare register 20                    | CR20   |      | W   | –                         | –      | √       | FFFFH       |
| FF17H   |                                               |        |      |     |                           |        |         |             |
| FF18H   | 16-bit timer counter 20                       | TM20   |      | R   | –                         | –      | √       | 0000H       |
| FF19H   |                                               |        |      |     |                           |        |         |             |
| FF1AH   | 16-bit capture register 20                    | TCP20  |      |     | –                         | –      | √       | Undefined   |
| FF1BH   |                                               |        |      |     |                           |        |         |             |
| FF20H   | Port mode register 0                          | PM0    |      | R/W | √                         | √      | –       | FFH         |
| FF21H   | Port mode register 1                          | PM1    |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF22H   | Port mode register 2                          | PM2    |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF23H   | Port mode register 3                          | PM3    |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF25H   | Port mode register 5                          | PM5    |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF28H   | Port mode register 8 <sup>Note</sup>          | PM8    |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF30H   | Pull-up resistor option register B0           | PUB0   |      |     | √                         | √      | –       | 00H         |
| FF31H   | Pull-up resistor option register B1           | PUB1   |      |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF32H   | Pull-up resistor option register B2           | PUB2   |      | √   | √                         | –      |         |             |
| FF33H   | Pull-up resistor option register B3           | PUB3   |      | √   | √                         | –      |         |             |

**Note** When used as port function by mask option or port function register.

Table 3-4. Special Function Registers (2/3)

| Address | Special Function Register (SFR) Name                                        | Symbol  | R/W | Bit Unit for Manipulation |        |         | After Reset |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----|---------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|
|         |                                                                             |         |     | 1 Bit                     | 8 Bits | 16 Bits |             |
| FF40H   | 8-bit H width compare register 61                                           | CRH61   | W   | –                         | √      | –       | Undefined   |
| FF41H   | 8-bit timer mode control register 61                                        | TMC61   | R/W | √                         | √      | –       | 00H         |
| FF42H   | Watchdog timer clock selection register                                     | WDSCS   |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF46H   | Subclock selection register <sup>Note 1</sup>                               | SSCK    |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF48H   | 16-bit timer mode control register 20                                       | TMC20   |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF4AH   | Watch timer mode control register                                           | WTM     |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF4BH   | Watch timer interrupt time selection register                               | WTIM    |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF4CH   | 8-bit H width compare register 60                                           | CRH60   | W   | –                         | √      | –       | Undefined   |
| FF4DH   | 8-bit timer mode control register 50                                        | TMC50   | R/W | √                         | √      | –       | 00H         |
| FF4EH   | 8-bit timer mode control register 60                                        | TMC60   |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF4FH   | Carrier generator output control register 60                                | TCA60   |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF57H   | Port function register 7 <sup>Note 1</sup>                                  | PF7     | W   | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF58H   | Port function register 8 <sup>Note 1</sup>                                  | PF8     |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF60H   | Remote controller receive control register <sup>Note 2</sup>                | RMCN    | R/W | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF61H   | Remote controller receive data register <sup>Note 2</sup>                   | RMDR    | R   | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF62H   | Remote controller shift register receive counter register <sup>Note 2</sup> | RMSCR   |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF63H   | Remote controller receive shift register <sup>Note 2</sup>                  | RMSR    |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF66H   | Remote controller receive GPHS compare register <sup>Note 2</sup>           | RMGPHS  | R/W | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF67H   | Remote controller receive GPHL compare register <sup>Note 2</sup>           | RMGPHL  |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF68H   | Remote controller receive DLS compare register <sup>Note 2</sup>            | RMDLS   |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF69H   | Remote controller receive DLL compare register <sup>Note 2</sup>            | RMDLL   |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF6AH   | Remote controller receive DH0S compare register <sup>Note 2</sup>           | RMDH0S  |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF6BH   | Remote controller receive DH0L compare register <sup>Note 2</sup>           | RMDH0L  |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF6CH   | Remote controller receive DH1S compare register <sup>Note 2</sup>           | RMDH1S  |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF6DH   | Remote controller receive DH1L compare register <sup>Note 2</sup>           | RMDH1L  |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF6EH   | Remote controller receive end width select register <sup>Note 2</sup>       | RMER    |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF70H   | Asynchronous serial interface mode register 20                              | ASIM20  |     | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF71H   | Asynchronous serial interface status register 20                            | ASIS20  | R   | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF72H   | Serial operation mode register 20                                           | CSIM20  | R/W | √                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF73H   | Baud rate generator control register 20                                     | BRGC20  |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF74H   | Transmit shift register 20                                                  | TXS20   | W   | –                         | √      | –       | FFH         |
|         | Receive buffer register 20                                                  | RXB20   | R   | –                         | √      | –       | Undefined   |
| FF78H   | Serial operation mode register 1A0                                          | CSIM1A0 | R/W | √                         | √      | –       | 00H         |
| FF79H   | Automatic data transmit/receive control register 0                          | ADTC0   |     | √                         | √      | –       | Undefined   |
| FF7AH   | Automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0                           | ADTP0   |     | –                         | √      | –       |             |
| FF7BH   | Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0           | ADTI0   |     | √                         | √      | –       | 00H         |

**Notes 1.** These registers function only in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489; however, writing to these registers in the  $\mu$ PD789488 and 789489 will not affect the operation.

**2.**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only



Table 3-4. Special Function Registers (3/3)

| Address | Special Function Register (SFR) Name              | Symbol | R/W | Bit Unit for Manipulation |        |         | After Reset |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------|--------|-----|---------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|
|         |                                                   |        |     | 1 Bit                     | 8 Bits | 16 Bits |             |
| FF80H   | A/D converter mode register 0                     | ADML0  | R/W | √                         | √      | —       | 00H         |
| FF84H   | Analog input channel specification register 0     | ADS0   |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFA0H   | Serial interface buffer memory 0                  | SBMEM0 |     | —                         | √      | —       | Undefined   |
| FFA1H   | Serial interface buffer memory 1                  | SBMEM1 |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFA2H   | Serial interface buffer memory 2                  | SBMEM2 |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFA3H   | Serial interface buffer memory 3                  | SBMEM3 |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFA4H   | Serial interface buffer memory 4                  | SBMEM4 |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFA5H   | Serial interface buffer memory 5                  | SBMEM5 |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFA6H   | Serial interface buffer memory 6                  | SBMEM6 |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFA7H   | Serial interface buffer memory 7                  | SBMEM7 |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFA8H   | Serial interface buffer memory 8                  | SBMEM8 |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFA9H   | Serial interface buffer memory 9                  | SBMEM9 |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFAAH   | Serial interface buffer memory A                  | SBMEMA |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFABH   | Serial interface buffer memory B                  | SBMEMB |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFACH   | Serial interface buffer memory C                  | SBMEMC |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFADH   | Serial interface buffer memory D                  | SBMEMD |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFAEH   | Serial interface buffer memory E                  | SBMEME |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFAFH   | Serial interface buffer memory F                  | SBMEMF |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFB0H   | LCD mode register 0                               | LCDM0  |     | √                         | √      | —       | 00H         |
| FFB2H   | LCD clock control register 0                      | LCDC0  |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFB3H   | LCD voltage boost control register 0              | LCDVA0 |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFD0H   | Multiplication data register A0                   | MRA0   | W   | —                         | √      | —       | Undefined   |
| FFD1H   | Multiplication data register B0                   | MRB0   |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFD2H   | Multiplier control register 0                     | MULC0  | R/W | √                         | √      | —       | 00H         |
| FFE0H   | Interrupt request flag register 0                 | IF0    |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFE1H   | Interrupt request flag register 1                 | IF1    |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFE2H   | Interrupt request flag register 2                 | IF2    |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFE4H   | Interrupt mask flag register 0                    | MK0    |     | √                         | √      | —       | FFH         |
| FFE5H   | Interrupt mask flag register 1                    | MK1    |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFE6H   | Interrupt mask flag register 2                    | MK2    |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFECH   | External interrupt mode register 0                | INTM0  |     | —                         | √      | —       | 00H         |
| FFEDH   | External interrupt mode register 1                | INTM1  |     | —                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFF0H   | Subclock oscillation mode register                | SCKM   |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFF2H   | Subclock control register                         | CSS    |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFF4H   | Key return mode register 01 <sup>Note</sup>       | KRM01  |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFF5H   | Key return mode register 00                       | KRM00  |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFF9H   | Watchdog timer mode register                      | WDTM   |     | √                         | √      | —       |             |
| FFFAH   | Oscillation stabilization time selection register | OSTS   |     | —                         | √      | —       | 04H         |
| FFFBH   | Processor clock control register                  | PCC    |     | √                         | √      | —       | 02H         |

**Note**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

### 3.3 Instruction Address Addressing

An instruction address is determined by the program counter (PC) contents. The PC contents are normally incremented (+1 for each byte) automatically according to the number of bytes of an instruction to be fetched each time another instruction is executed. When a branch instruction is executed, the branch destination information is set to the PC and branched by the following addressing (for details of each instruction, refer to **78K/0S Series Instructions User's Manual (U11047E)**).

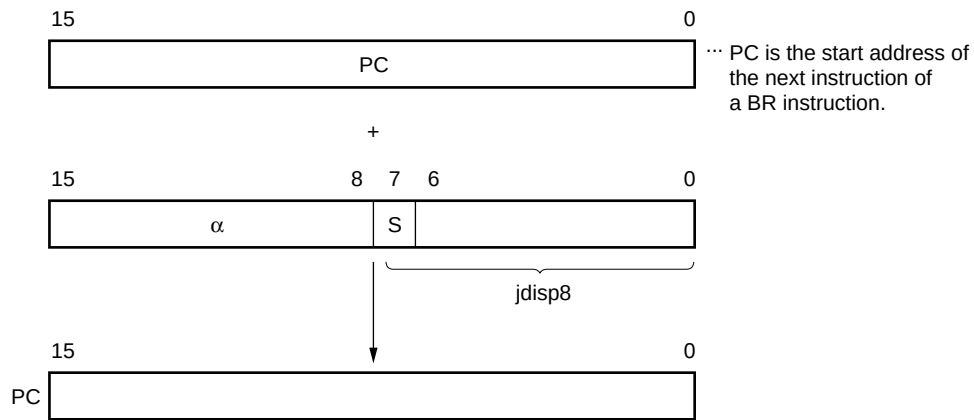
#### 3.3.1 Relative addressing

##### [Function]

The value obtained by adding 8-bit immediate data (displacement value: jdisp8) of an instruction code to the start address of the following instruction is transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched. The displacement value is treated as signed two's complement data (−128 to +127) and bit 7 becomes a sign bit. This means that information is relatively branched to a location between −128 and +127, from the start address of the next instruction when relative addressing is used.

This function is carried out when the BR \$addr16 instruction or a conditional branch instruction is executed.

##### [Illustration]



When S = 0, α indicates all bits 0.  
When S = 1, α indicates all bits 1.

### 3.3.2 Immediate addressing

#### [Function]

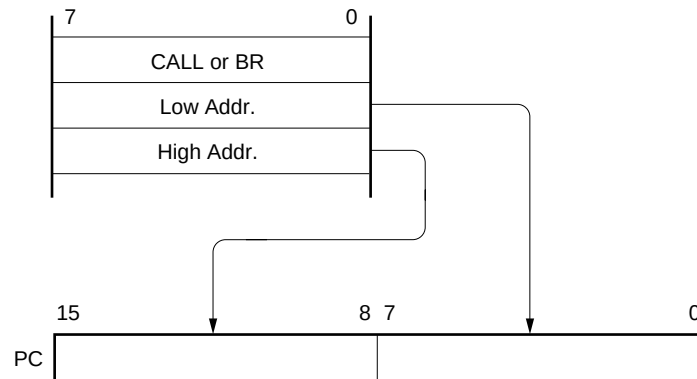
Immediate data in the instruction word is transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched.

This function is carried out when the CALL !addr16 or BR !addr16 instruction is executed.

CALL !addr16 and BR !addr16 instructions can be branched to any location in the memory space.

#### [Illustration]

In case of CALL !addr16 and BR !addr16 instructions



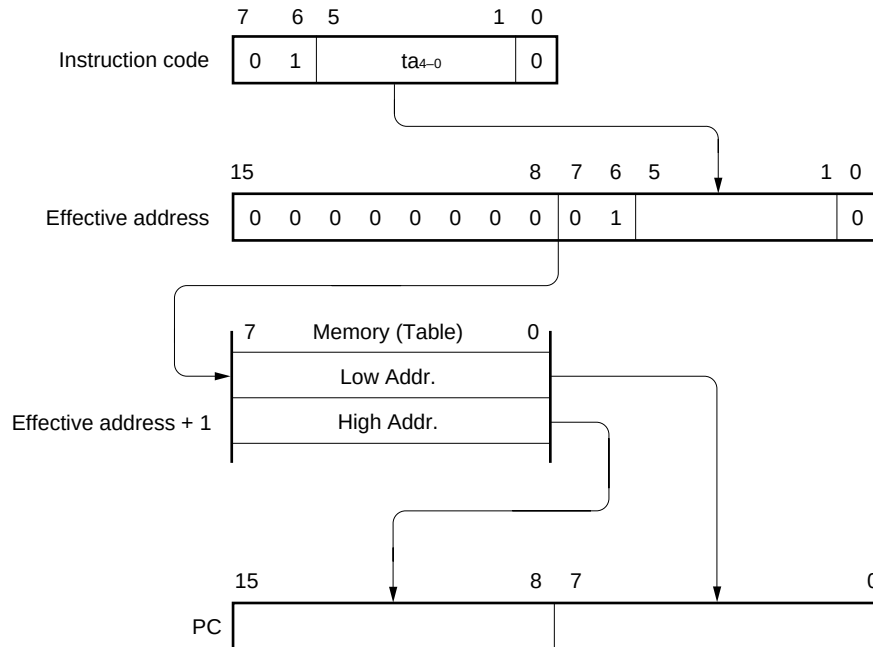
### 3.3.3 Table indirect addressing

#### [Function]

Table contents (branch destination address) of the particular location to be addressed by the lower 5-bit immediate data of an instruction code from bit 1 to bit 5 are transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched.

This function is carried out when the CALLT [addr5] instruction is executed. The instruction enables a branch to any location in the memory space by referring to the addresses stored in the memory table at 40H to 7FH.

#### [Illustration]



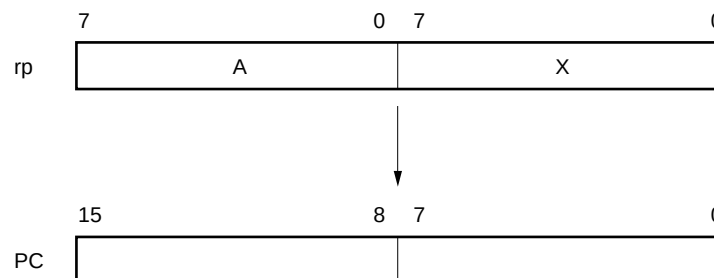
### 3.3.4 Register addressing

#### [Function]

The register pair (AX) contents to be specified with an instruction word are transferred to the program counter (PC) and branched.

This function is carried out when the BR AX instruction is executed.

#### [Illustration]



### 3.4 Operand Address Addressing

The following various methods are available to specify the register and memory (addressing) which undergo manipulation during instruction execution.

#### 3.4.1 Direct addressing

##### [Function]

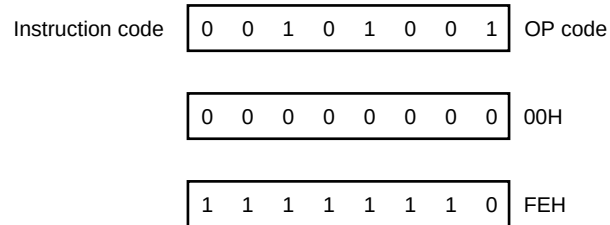
The memory indicated with immediate data in an instruction word is directly addressed.

##### [Operand format]

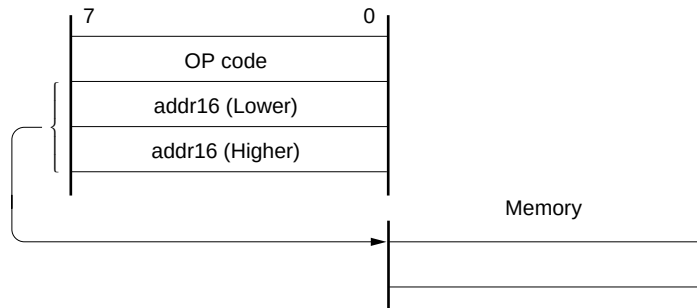
| Identifier | Description                    |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| addr16     | Label or 16-bit immediate data |

##### [Description example]

MOV A, !FE00H; When setting !addr16 to FE00H



##### [Illustration]



### 3.4.2 Short direct addressing

#### [Function]

The memory to be manipulated in the fixed space is directly addressed with 8-bit data in an instruction word.

The fixed space is the 256-byte space FE20H to FF1FH where the addressing is applied. Internal high-speed RAM and special function registers (SFRs) are mapped at FE20H to FEFFH and FF00H to FF1FH, respectively.

The SFR area (FF00H to FF1FH) where short direct addressing is applied is a part of the whole SFR area. Ports that are frequently accessed in a program and the compare register of the timer/event counter are mapped in this area, and these SFRs can be manipulated with a small number of bytes and clocks.

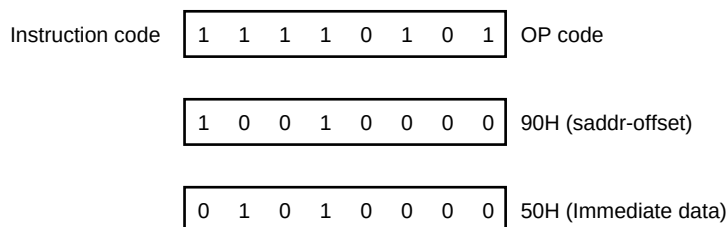
When 8-bit immediate data is at 20H to FFH, bit 8 of an effective address is set to 0. When it is at 00H to 1FH, bit 8 is set to 1. See [Illustration] below.

#### [Operand format]

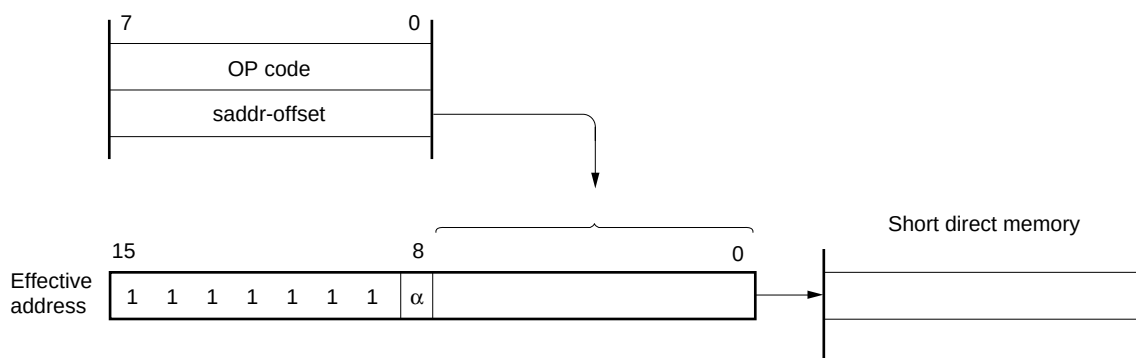
| Identifier | Description                                                |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| saddr      | Label or FE20H to FF1FH immediate data                     |
| saddrp     | Label or FE20H to FF1FH immediate data (even address only) |

#### [Description example]

MOV FE90H, #50H; When setting saddr to FE90H and the immediate data to 50H



#### [Illustration]



When 8-bit immediate data is 20H to FFH,  $\alpha = 0$ .  
 When 8-bit immediate data is 00H to 1FH,  $\alpha = 1$ .

### 3.4.3 Special function register (SFR) addressing

#### [Function]

The memory-mapped special function registers (SFRs) are addressed with 8-bit immediate data in an instruction word.

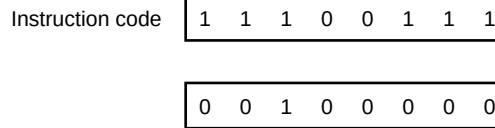
This addressing is applied to the 256-byte space FF00H to FFFFH. However, the SFRs mapped at FF00H to FF1FH can also be accessed with short direct addressing.

#### [Operand format]

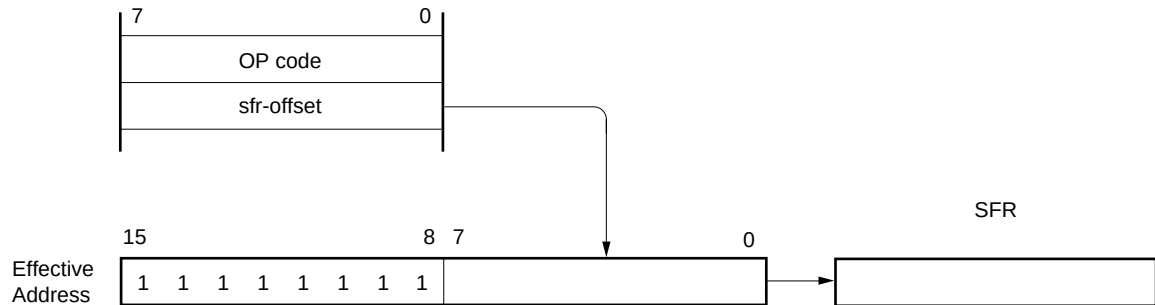
| Identifier | Description                    |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| sfr        | Special function register name |

#### [Description example]

MOV PM0, A; When selecting PM0 for sfr



#### [Illustration]



### 3.4.4 Register addressing

#### [Function]

In the register addressing mode, general-purpose registers are accessed as operands. The general-purpose register to be accessed is specified by a register specification code or functional name in the instruction code.

Register addressing is carried out when an instruction with the following operand format is executed. When an 8-bit register is specified, one of the eight registers is specified with 3 bits in the instruction code.

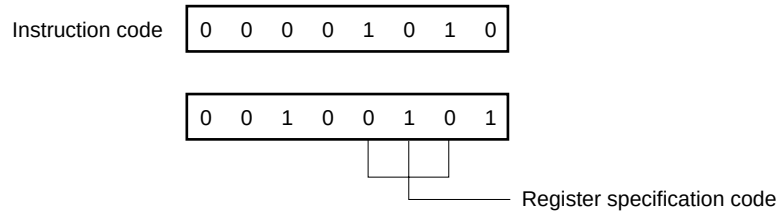
#### [Operand format]

| Identifier | Description            |
|------------|------------------------|
| r          | X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H |
| rp         | AX, BC, DE, HL         |

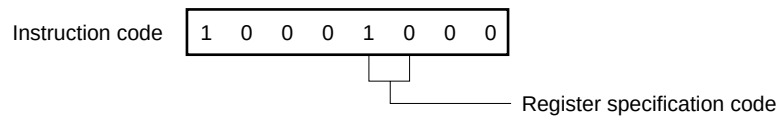
r and rp can be described with absolute names (R0 to R7 and RP0 to RP3) as well as function names (X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H, AX, BC, DE, and HL).

#### [Description example]

MOV A, C; When selecting the C register for r



INCW DE; When selecting the DE register pair for rp





### 3.4.5 Register indirect addressing

#### [Function]

In the register indirect addressing mode, memory is manipulated according to the contents of a register pair specified as an operand. The register pair to be accessed is specified by the register pair specification code in an instruction code.

This addressing can be carried out for all the memory spaces.

#### [Operand format]

| Identifier | Description |
|------------|-------------|
| —          | [DE], [HL]  |

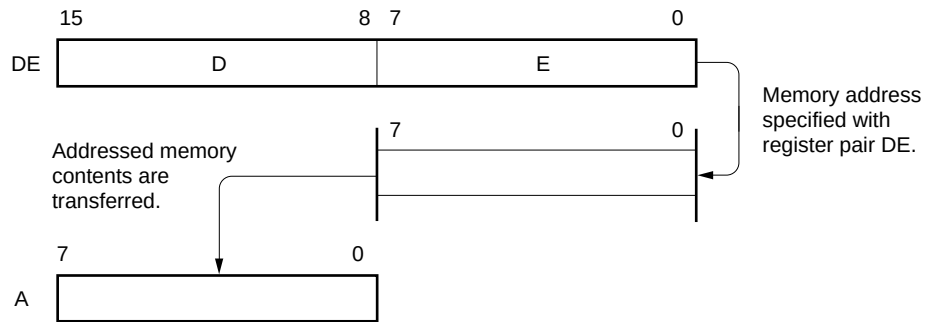
#### [Description example]

MOV A, [DE]; When selecting register pair [DE]

Instruction code 

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

#### [Illustration]



### 3.4.6 Based addressing

#### [Function]

8-bit immediate data is added to the contents of the base register, that is, the HL register pair, and the sum is used to address the memory. Addition is performed by expanding the offset data as a positive number to 16 bits. A carry from the 16th bit is ignored. This addressing can be carried out for all the memory spaces.

#### [Operand format]

| Identifier | Description |
|------------|-------------|
| —          | [HL+byte]   |

#### [Description example]

MOV A, [HL+10H]; When setting byte to 10H

Instruction code

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### 3.4.7 Stack addressing

#### [Function]

The stack area is indirectly addressed with the stack pointer (SP) contents.

This addressing method is automatically employed when the PUSH, POP, subroutine call, and return instructions are executed or the register is saved/restored upon generation of an interrupt request.

Only the internal high-speed RAM area can be addressed using stack addressing.

#### [Description example]

In the case of PUSH DE

Instruction code

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

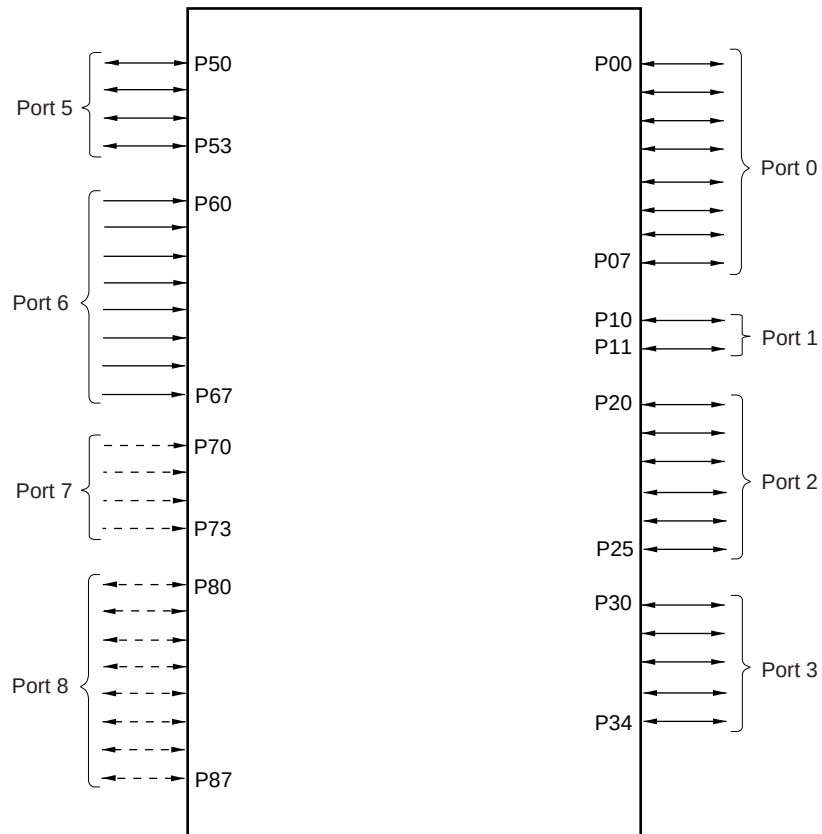
## CHAPTER 4 PORT FUNCTIONS

### 4.1 Port Functions

The  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries provides the ports shown in Figure 4-1, enabling various methods of control. The functions of each port are shown in Table 4-1.

Numerous other functions are provided that can be used in addition to the digital I/O port functions. For more information on these additional functions, see **CHAPTER 2 PIN FUNCTIONS**.

**Figure 4-1. Port Types**



**Remark** Ports 7 and 8 are used when the port function is selected by a mask option or port function register.

Table 4-1. Port Functions

| Port Name                | Pin Name   | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Port 0                   | P00 to P07 | I/O port. Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>When used as an input port, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified in 1-bit units by pull-up resistor option register B0 (PUB0) or the key return mode register (KRM00). |
| Port 1                   | P10, P11   | I/O port. Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>When used as an input port, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified in 1-bit units by pull-up resistor option register B1 (PUB1).                                         |
| Port 2                   | P20 to P25 | I/O port. Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>When used as an input port, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified in 1-bit units by pull-up resistor option register B2 (PUB2).                                         |
| Port 3                   | P30 to P34 | I/O port. Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>When used as an input port, an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified in 1-bit units by pull-up resistor option register B3 (PUB3).                                         |
| Port 5                   | P50 to P53 | N-ch open-drain I/O port. Input/output can be specified in 1-bit units.<br>An on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified by mask option.                                                                                                   |
| Port 6                   | P60 to P67 | Input port                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Port 7 <sup>Note 1</sup> | P70 to P73 | Input port (only when input port is selected by mask option or port function register)                                                                                                                                                    |
| Port 8 <sup>Note 2</sup> | P80 to P87 | I/O port (only when I/O port is selected by mask option or port function register)                                                                                                                                                        |

- Notes**
- Whether to use these pins as input port pins (P70 to P73) or segment outputs (S16 to S19) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or a port mode register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 (refer to **4.3 (3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).
  - Whether to use these pins as I/O port pins (P80 to P87) or segment outputs (S20 to S27) can be selected in 1-bit units by means of a mask option for the  $\mu$ PD789488, 789489 or a port mode register in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 (refer to **4.3 (3) Port function registers** and **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS**).

## 4.2 Port Configuration

Ports have the following hardware configuration.

Table 4-2. Configuration of Port

| Item              | Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Control registers | Port mode registers (PMm: m = 0 to 3, 5, 8)<br>Pull-up resistor option registers (PUB0 to PUB3)<br>Port function registers (PF7, PF8) ( $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 only)                                    |
| Ports             | Total: 45 (CMOS I/O: 29, CMOS input: 12, N-ch open-drain I/O: 4)                                                                                                                                          |
| Pull-up resistors | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mask ROM version<br/>Total: 25 (software control: 21, mask option specification: 4)</li> <li>Flash memory version<br/>Total: 21 (software control only)</li> </ul> |

### 4.2.1 Port 0

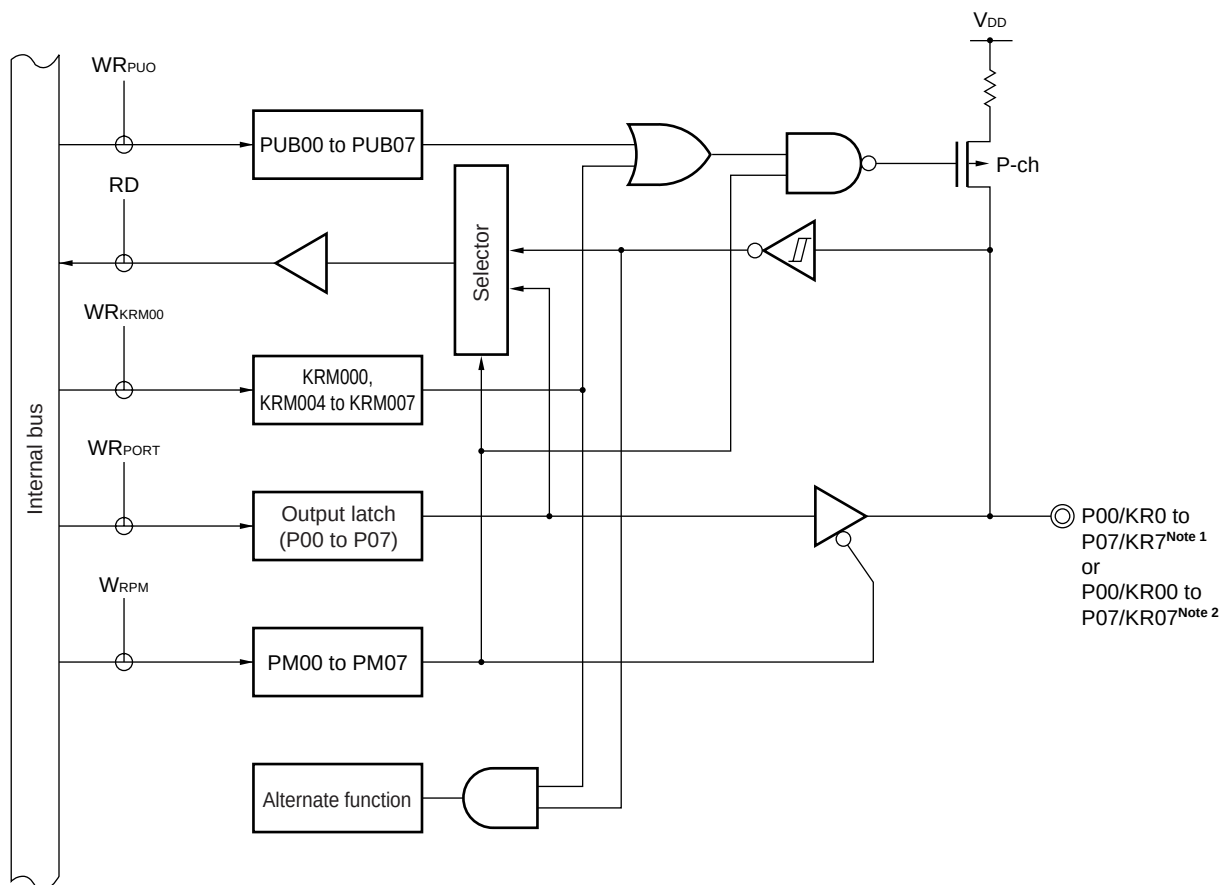
This is an 8-bit I/O port with an output latch. Port 0 can be specified in the input or output mode in 1-bit units by using port mode register 0 (PM0). When the P00 to P07 pins are used as input port pins, on-chip pull-up resistors can be connected in 1-bit units by using pull-up resistor option register B0 (PUB0).

This port is also used for key return signal input.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this port to input mode.

Figure 4-2 shows a block diagram of port 0.

**Figure 4-2. Block Diagram of P00 to P07**



KRM00: Key return mode register 00

PUB0: Pull-up resistor option register B0

PM: Port mode register

RD: Port 0 read signal

WR: Port 0 write signal

**Notes** 1. When  $\mu\text{PD789488}$ , 78F9488 is used

2. When  $\mu\text{PD789489}$ , 78F9489 is used

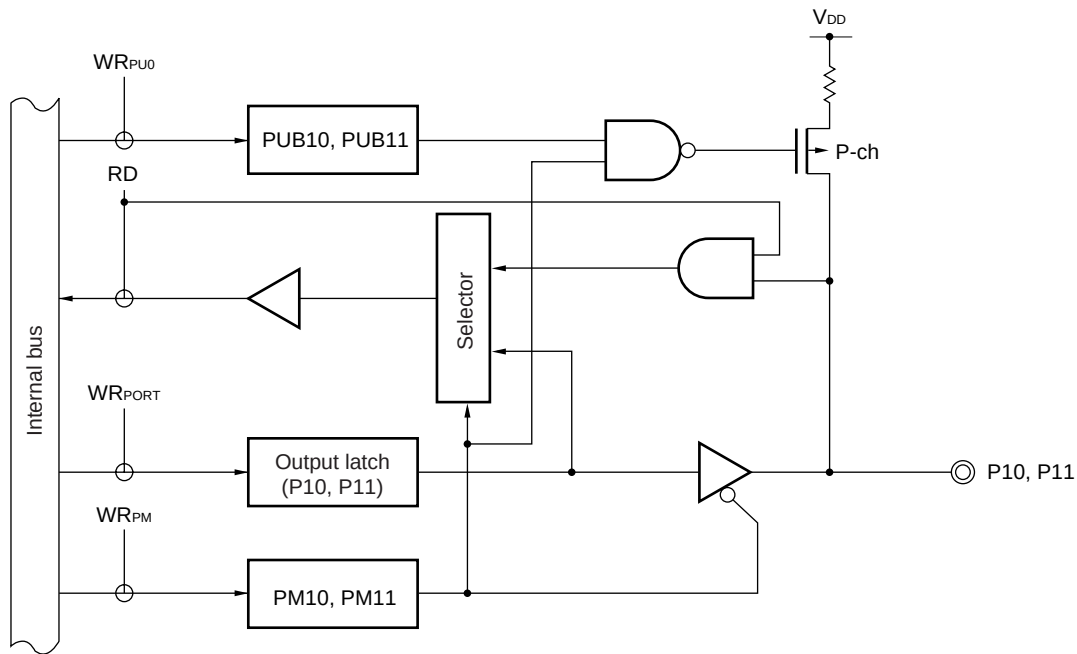
### 4.2.2 Port 1

This is a 2-bit I/O port with an output latch. Port 1 can be specified in the input or output mode in 1-bit units by using port mode register 1 (PM1). When using the P10 and P11 pins as input port pins, on-chip pull-up resistors can be connected in 1-bit units by using pull-up resistor option register B1 (PUB1).

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this port to input mode.

Figure 4-3 shows a block diagram of port 1.

**Figure 4-3. Block Diagram of P10 and P11**



PUB1: Pull-up resistor option register B1  
 PM: Port mode register  
 RD: Port 1 read signal  
 WR: Port 1 write signal

### 4.2.3 Port 2

This is a 6-bit I/O port with an output latch. Port 2 can be specified in the input or output mode in 1-bit units by using port mode register 2 (PM2). When using the P20 to P25 pins as input port pins, on-chip pull-up resistors can be connected in 1-bit units by using pull-up resistor option register B2 (PUB2).

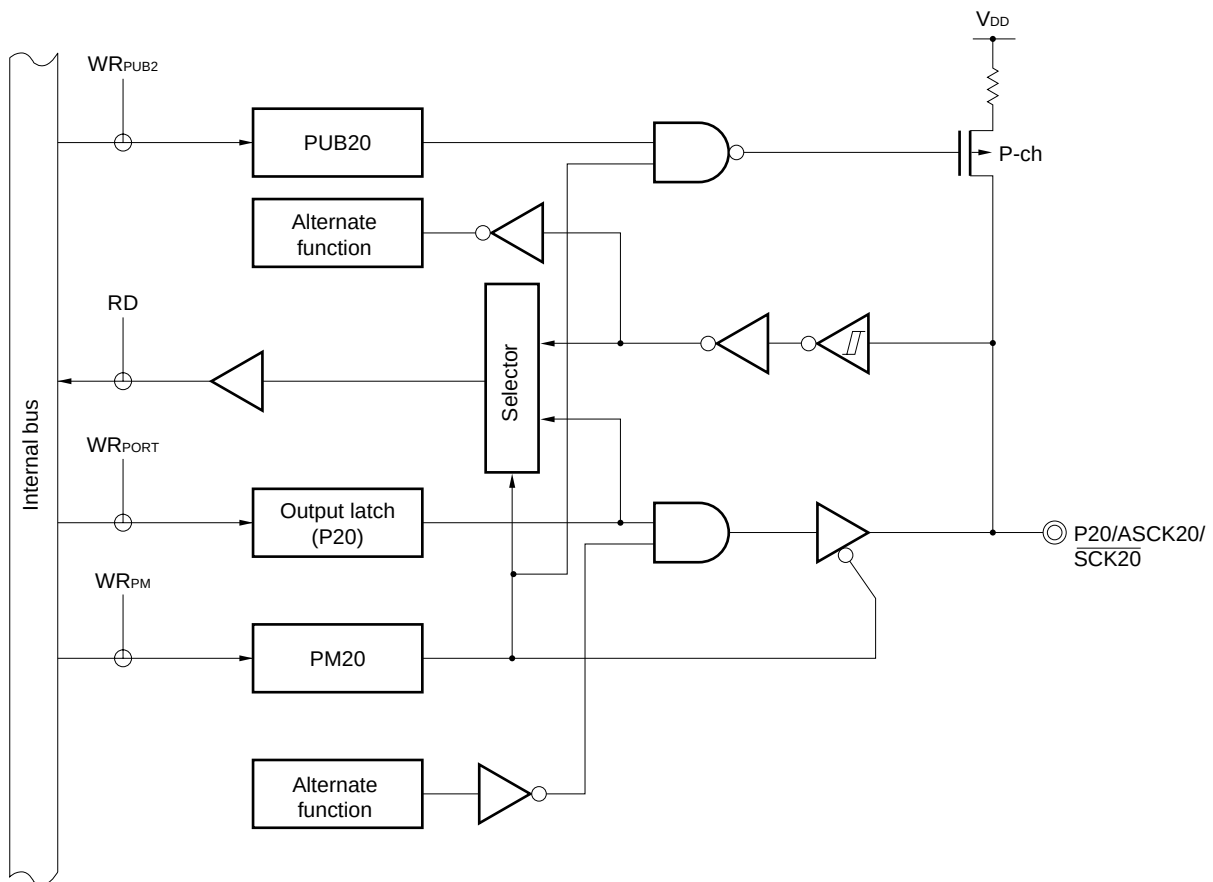
This port is also used for serial interface I/O.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this port to input mode.

Figures 4-4 to 4-8 show block diagrams of port 2.

**Caution** When using the pins of port 2 as the serial interface, the I/O or output latch must be set according to the function to be used. For how to set the latches, see Table 11-2 Serial Interface 20 Operation Mode Settings and 12.3 (1) Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0).

Figure 4-4. Block Diagram of P20



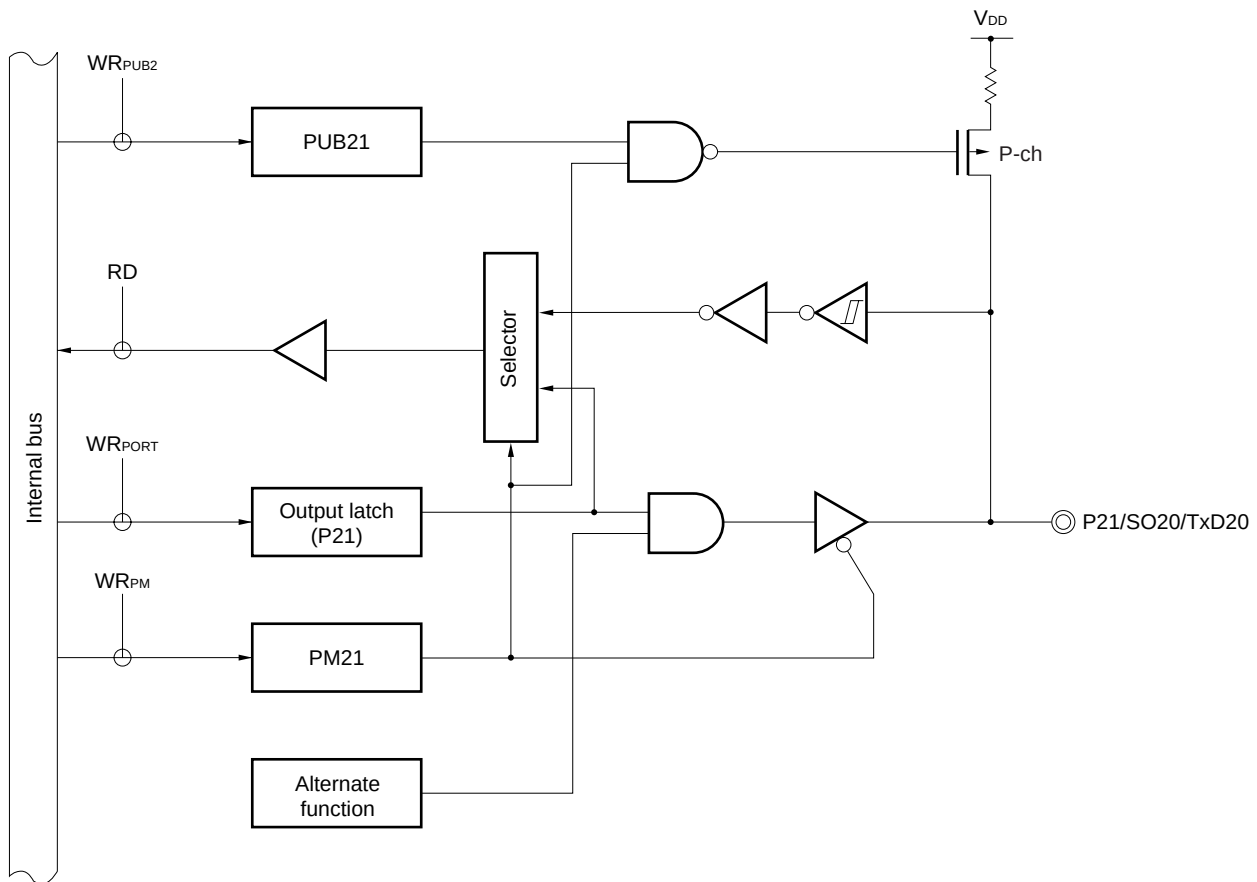
PUB2: Pull-up resistor option register B2

PM: Port mode register

RD: Port 2 read signal

WR: Port 2 write signal

Figure 4-5. Block Diagram of P21



PUB2: Pull-up resistor option register B2

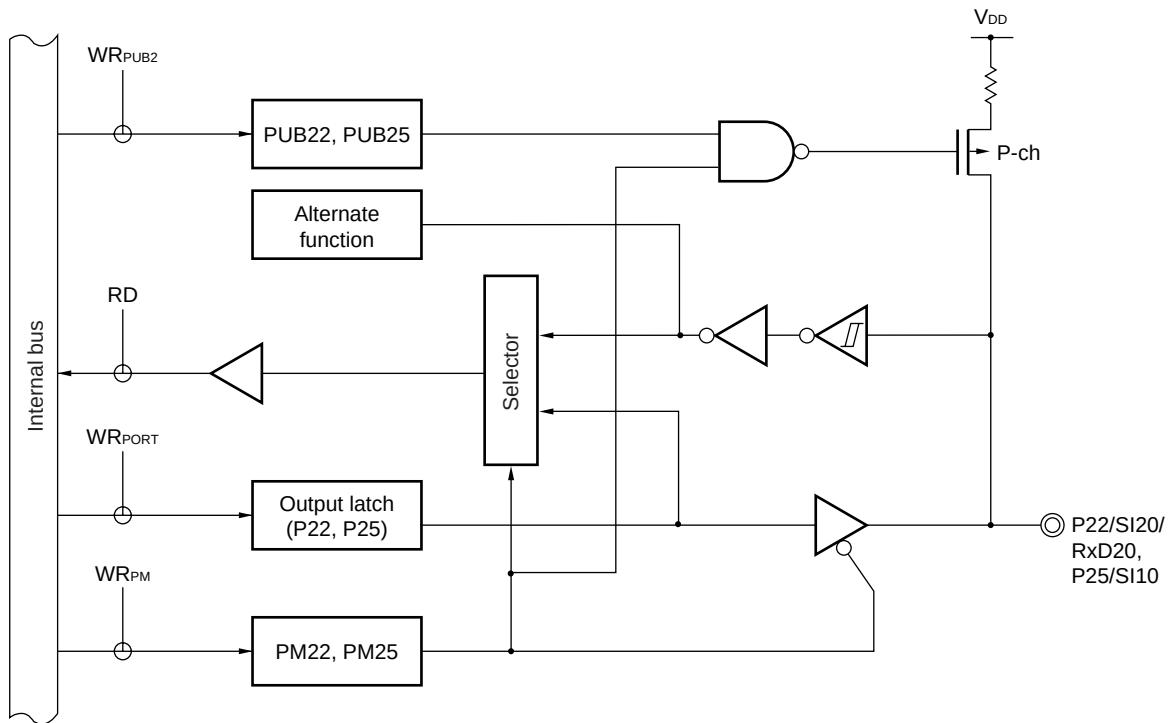
PM: Port mode register

RD: Port 2 read signal

WR: Port 2 write signal



Figure 4-6. Block Diagram of P22 and P25



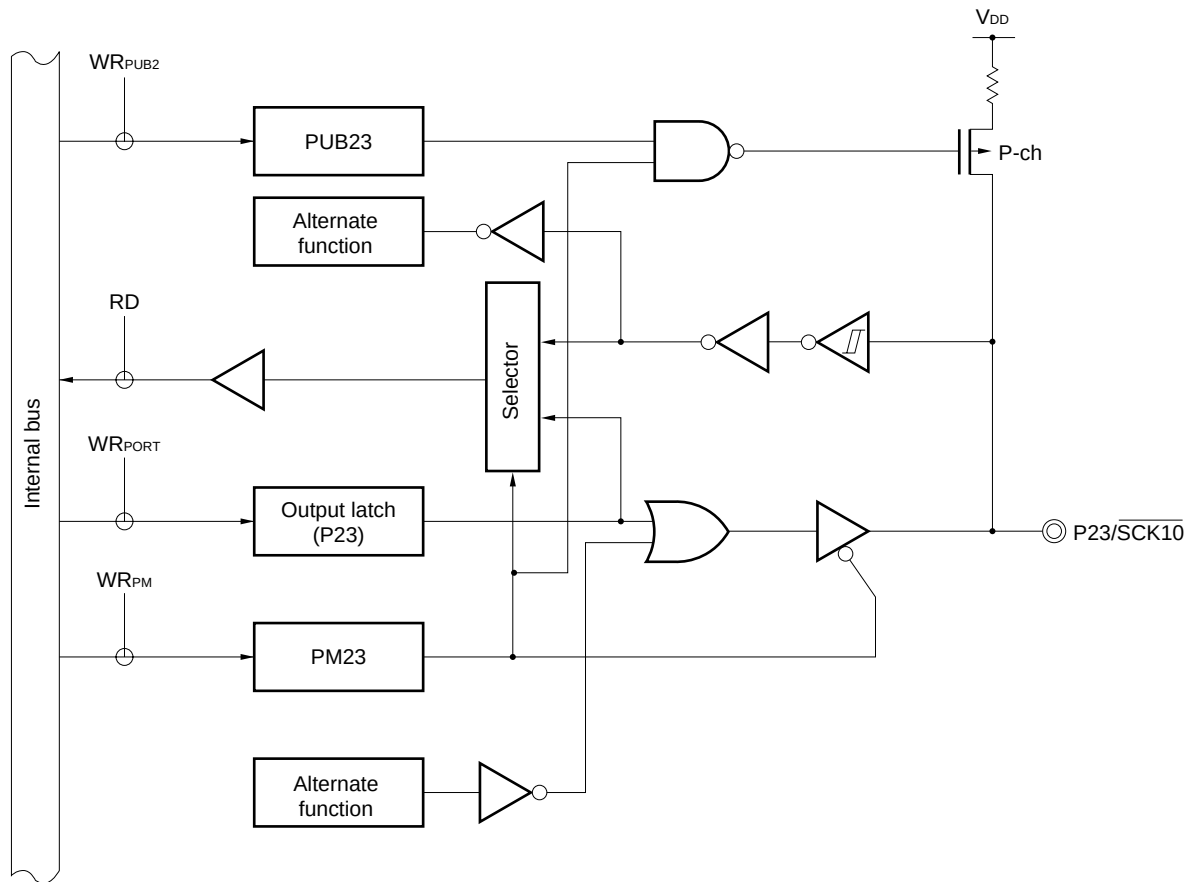
PUB2: Pull-up resistor option register B2

PM: Port mode register

RD: Port 2 read signal

WR: Port 2 write signal

Figure 4-7. Block Diagram of P23



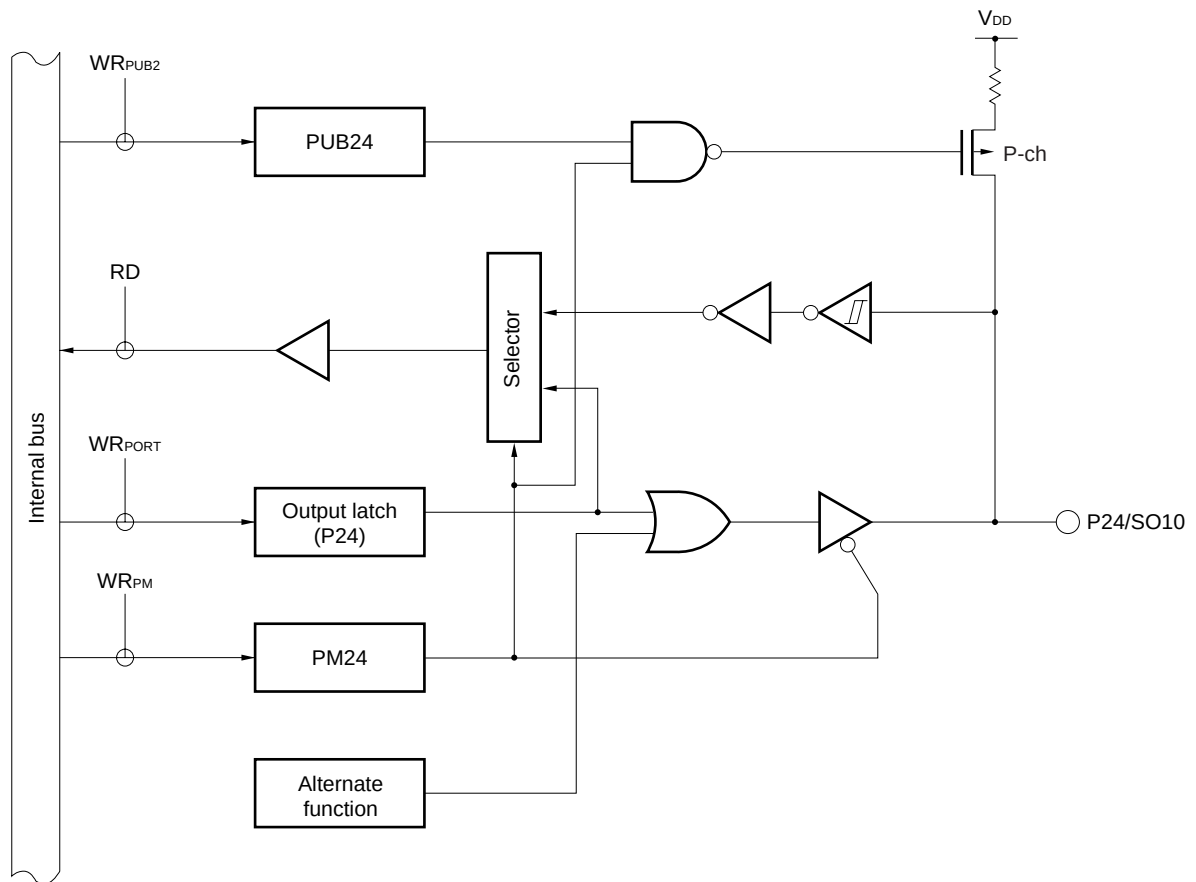
PUB2: Pull-up resistor option register B2

PM: Port mode register

RD: Port 2 read signal

WR: Port 2 write signal

Figure 4-8. Block Diagram of P24



PUB2: Pull-up resistor option register B2

PM: Port mode register

RD: Port 2 read signal

WR: Port 2 write signal

#### 4.2.4 Port 3

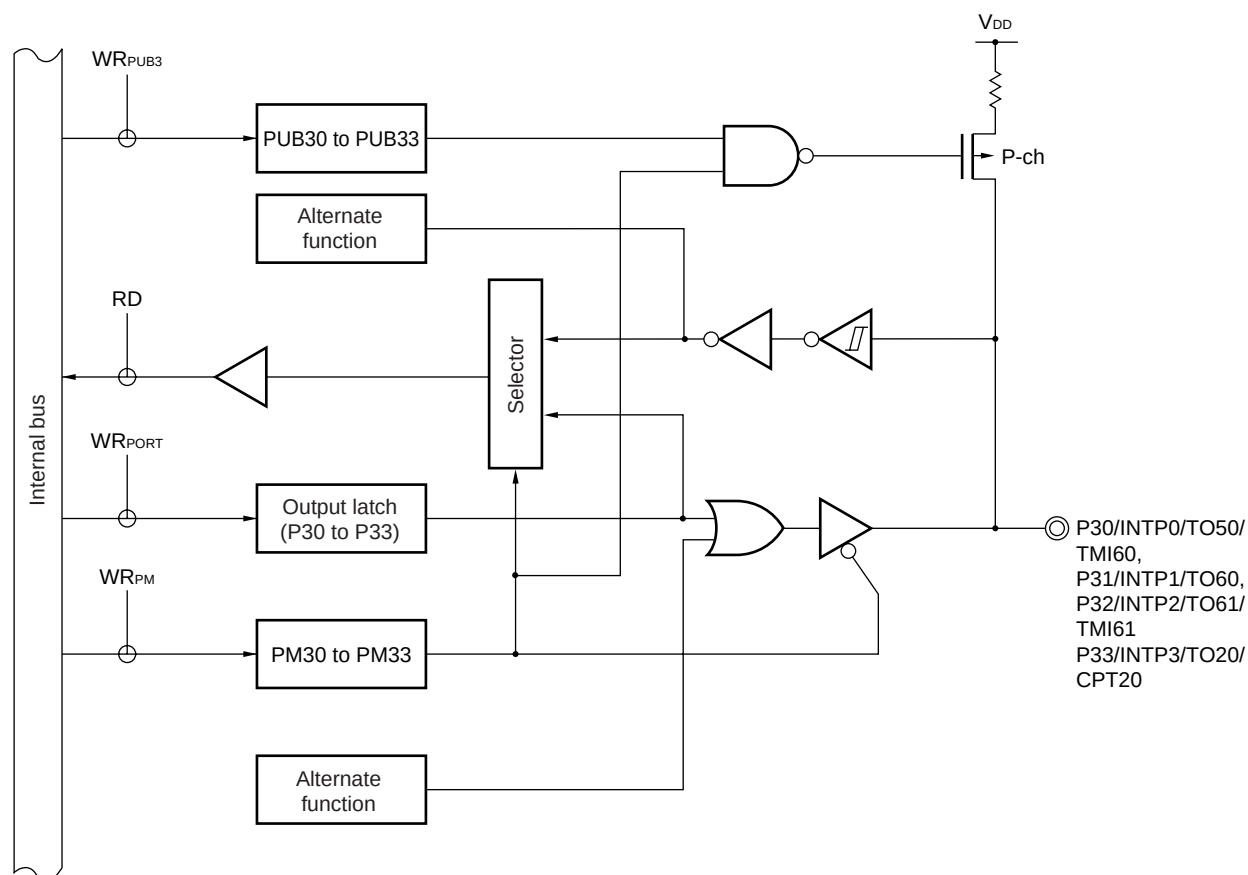
This is a 5-bit I/O port with an output latch. Port 3 can be specified in the input or output mode in 1-bit units by using port mode register 3 (PM3). When using the P30 to P34 pins as input port pins, on-chip pull-up resistors can be connected in 1-bit units by using pull-up resistor option register B3 (PUB3).

This port is also used for external interrupt input, capture input, timer I/O, and remote control receive data input<sup>Note</sup>. RESET input sets this port to input mode.

Figures 4-9 and 4-10 show block diagrams of port 3.

**Note**  $\mu$  PD789489 and 78F9489 only

Figure 4-9. Block Diagram of P30 to P33



PUB3: Pull-up resistor option register B3

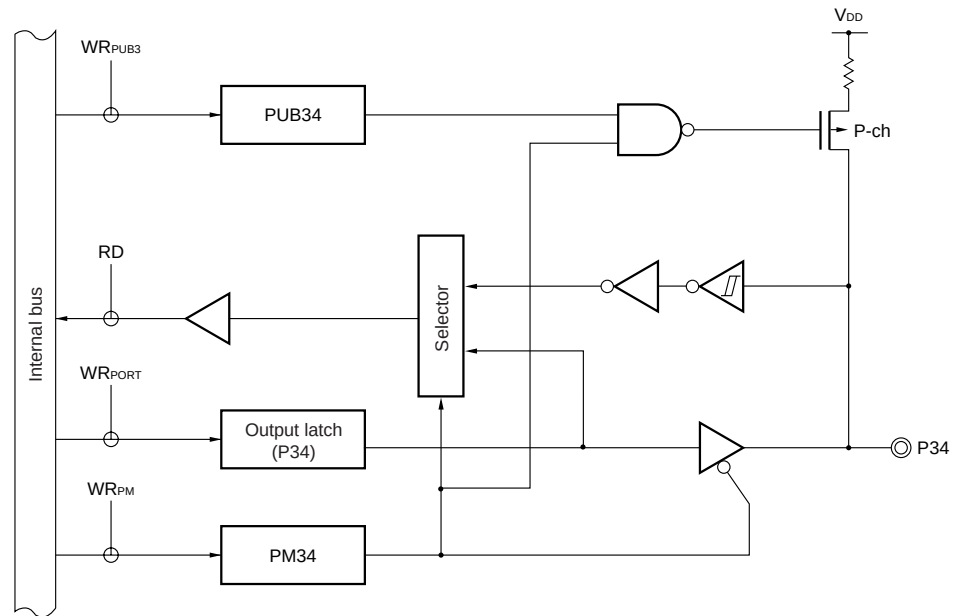
PM: Port mode register

RD: Port 3 read signal

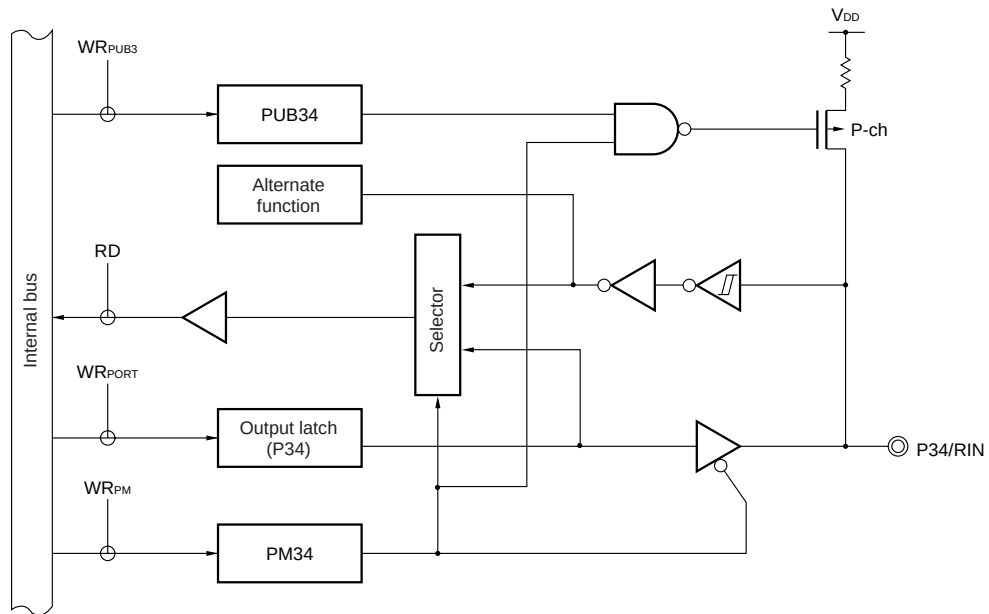
WR: Port 3 write signal

Figure 4-10. Block Diagram of P34

(a) When  $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488 is used



(b) When  $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 is used



PUB3: Pull-up resistor option register B3

PM: Port mode register

RD: Port 3 read signal

WR: Port 3 write signal

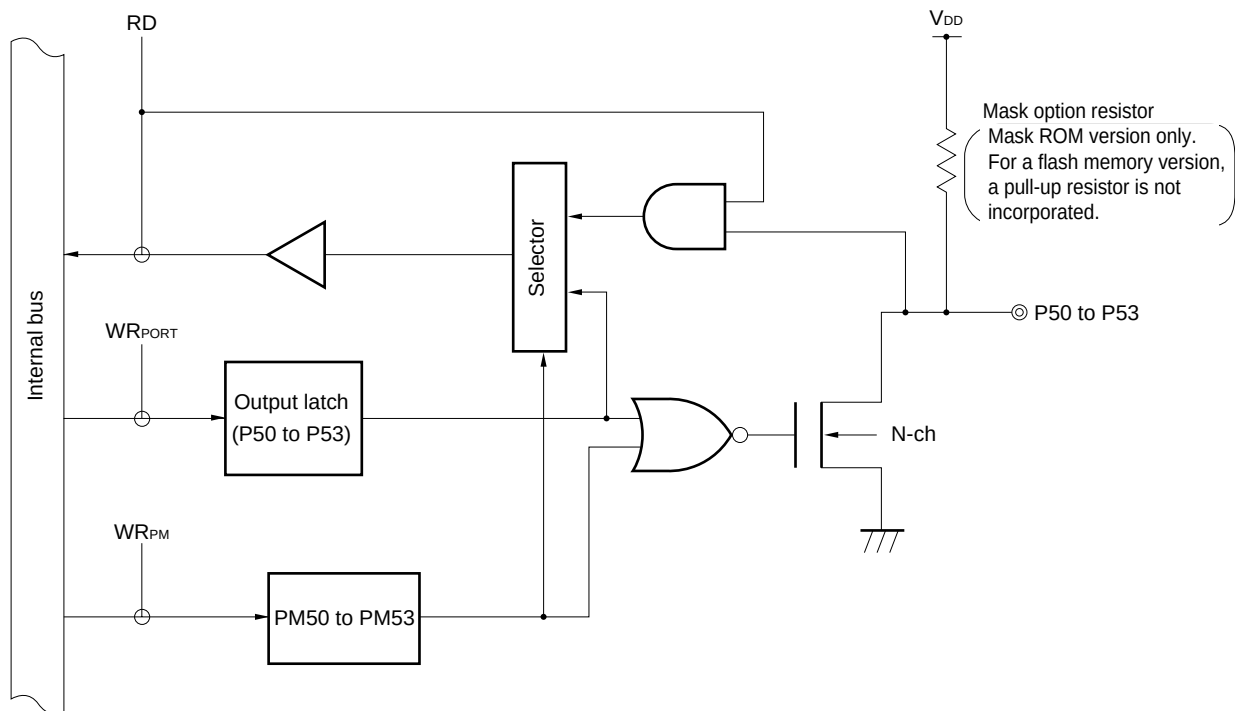
### 4.2.5 Port 5

This is a 4-bit N-ch open-drain I/O port with an output latch. Port 5 can be specified in the input or output mode in 1-bit units by using port mode register 5 (PM5). For a mask ROM version, use of an on-chip pull-up resistor can be specified by a mask option.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this port to input mode.

Figure 4-11 shows a block diagram of port 5.

**Figure 4-11. Block Diagram of P50 to P53**



PM: Port mode register  
 RD: Port 5 read signal  
 WR: Port 5 write signal

#### 4.2.6 Port 6

This is an 8-bit input-only port.

This port is also used for the analog input of an A/D converter and key return signal input<sup>Note</sup>.

Figure 4-12 shows a block diagram of port 6.

**Note**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only.

**Figure 4-12. Block Diagram of P60 to P67 (1/2)**

**(a) When  $\mu$ PD789488,78F9488 is used**

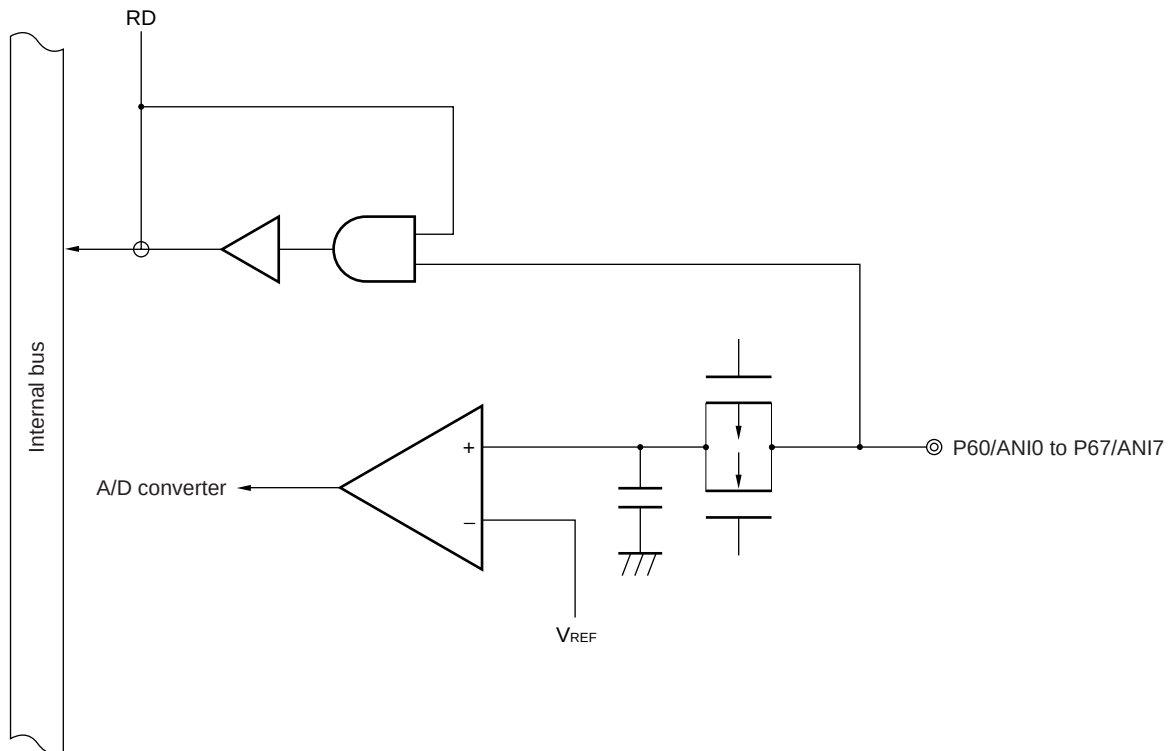
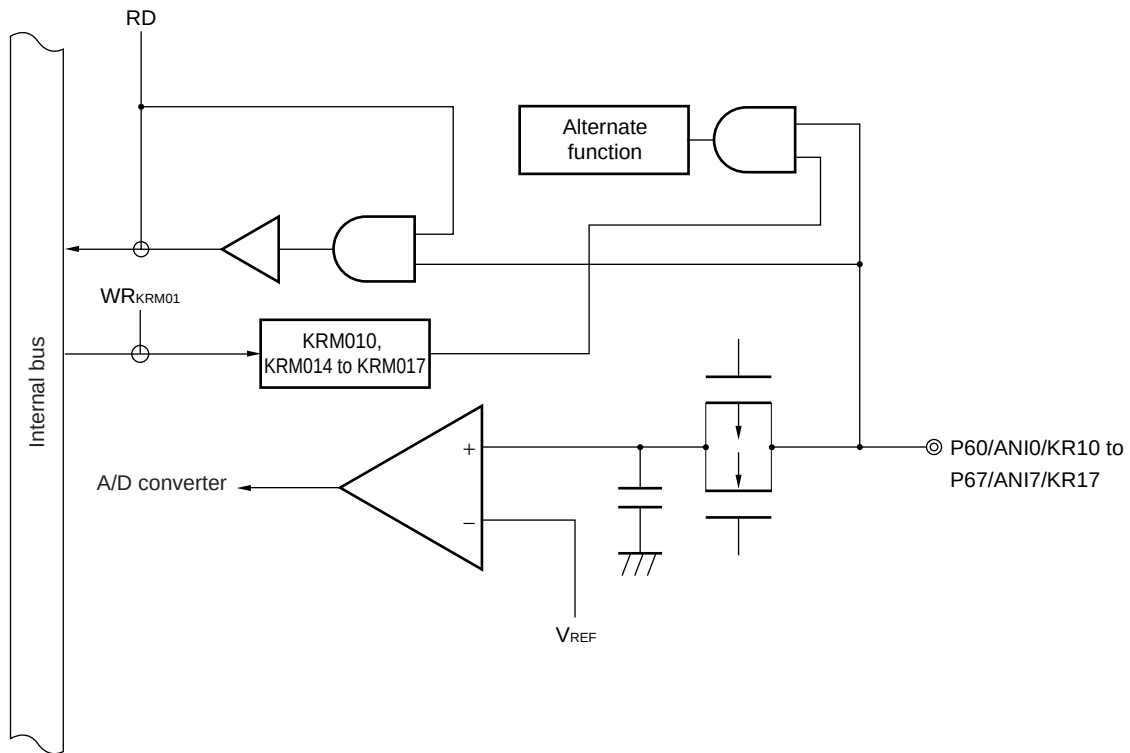


Figure 4-12. Block Diagram of P60 to P67 (2/2)

(b) When  $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 is used

KRM01: Key return mode register 01

RD: Port 6 read signal

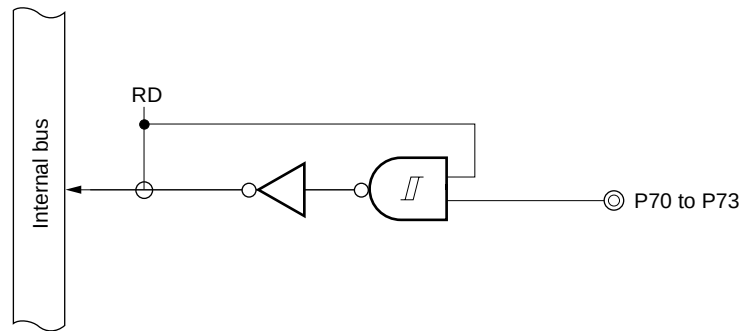


#### 4.2.7 Port 7

This is a 4-bit input-only port. Only the bits for which the port function is selected can be used, by using a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488 and 789489 or port function register 7 (PF7) in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489.

Figure 4-13 shows a block diagram of port 7.

**Figure 4-13. Block Diagram of P70 to P73**



RD: Port 7 read signal

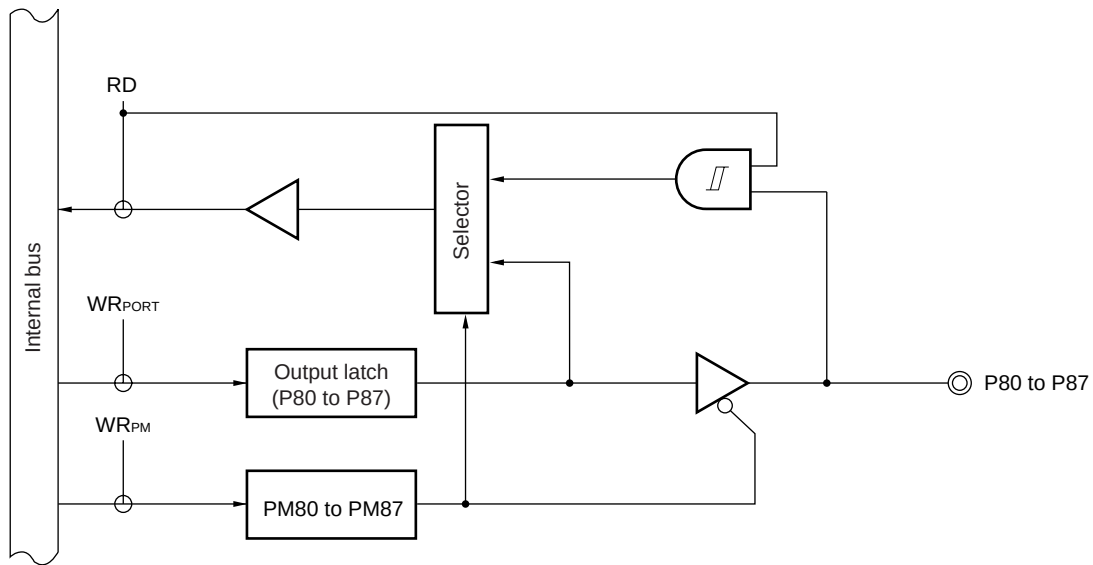
### 4.2.8 Port 8

This is an 8-bit I/O port with an output latch. Only the bits for which the port function is selected can be used, by using a mask option in the  $\mu$ PD789488 and 789489 or port function register 8 (PF8) in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489. Port 8 can be specified in the input or output mode in 1-bit units by using port mode register 8 (PM8).

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this port to input mode.

Figure 4-14 shows a block diagram of port 8.

Figure 4-14. Block Diagram of P80 to P87



PM: Port mode register  
RD: Port 8 read signal  
WR: Port 8 write signal

### 4.3 Registers Controlling Port Function

The ports are controlled by the following three types of registers.

- Port mode registers (PM0 to PM3, PM5, PM8)
- Pull-up resistor option registers (PUB0 to PUB3)
- Port function registers (PF7, PF8) ( $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 only)

#### (1) Port mode registers (PM0 to PM3, PM5, PM8)

Input and output can be specified in 1-bit units.

These registers can be set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets these registers to FFH.

When using the port pins as their alternate functions, set the port mode register and the output latch as shown in Table 4-3.

**Caution** Because P30 to P33 function alternately as external interrupt inputs, when the output level changes after the output mode of the port function is specified, the interrupt request flag will be inadvertently set. Therefore, be sure to preset the interrupt mask flag (PMK0 to PMK3) before using the port in output mode.

Figure 4-15. Port Mode Register Format

| Symbol | 7                                                                     | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| PM0    | PM07                                                                  | PM06 | PM05 | PM04 | PM03 | PM02 | PM01 | PM00 | FF20H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM1    | 1                                                                     | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | 1    | PM11 | PM10 | FF21H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM2    | 1                                                                     | 1    | PM25 | PM24 | PM23 | PM22 | PM21 | PM20 | FF22H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM3    | 1                                                                     | 1    | 1    | PM34 | PM33 | PM32 | PM31 | PM30 | FF23H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM5    | 1                                                                     | 1    | 1    | 1    | PM53 | PM52 | PM51 | PM50 | FF25H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PM8    | PM87                                                                  | PM86 | PM85 | PM84 | PM83 | PM82 | PM81 | PM80 | FF28H   | FFH         | R/W |
| PMmn   | Pmn pin input/output mode selection<br>(m = 0 to 3, 5, 8, n = 0 to 7) |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |         |             |     |
| 0      | Output mode (output buffer on)                                        |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |         |             |     |
| 1      | Input mode (output buffer off)                                        |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |         |             |     |

**Remark** PM8 can only be used when one of pins P80 to P87 is selected as a port function pin by a mask option or port function register 8 (PF8).

**Table 4-3. Port Mode Registers and Output Latch Settings When Using Alternate Functions**

| Pin Name   | Alternate Function                  |        | PM <sub>xx</sub> | P <sub>xx</sub> |
|------------|-------------------------------------|--------|------------------|-----------------|
|            | Name                                | I/O    |                  |                 |
| P00 to P07 | KR0 to KR7 or KR00 to KR07          | Input  | 1                | ×               |
| P30        | INTP0                               | Input  | 1                | ×               |
|            | TO50                                | Output | 0                | 0               |
|            | TMI60                               | Input  | 1                | ×               |
| P31        | INTP1                               | Input  | 1                | ×               |
|            | TO60                                | Output | 0                | 0               |
| P32        | INTP2                               | Input  | 1                | ×               |
|            | TMI61                               | Input  | 1                | ×               |
|            | TO61                                | Output | 0                | 0               |
| P33        | INTP3                               | Input  | 1                | ×               |
|            | CPT20                               | Input  | 1                | ×               |
|            | TO20                                | Output | 0                | 0               |
| P34        | RIN ( $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 only) | Input  | 1                | ×               |

**Remark** ×: don't care  
 PM<sub>xx</sub>: Port mode register  
 P<sub>xx</sub>: Port output latch

**Caution** When port 2 is used for the interface, I/O and output latch settings must be made in accordance with the function used. For the setting method, refer to Table 11-2 Serial Interface 20 Operation Mode Settings and 12.3 (1) Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0).

**(2) Pull-up resistor option registers (PUB0 to PUB3)**

These registers set whether to use on-chip pull-up resistors for pins P00 to P07, P10, P11, P20 to P25, and P30 to P34. An on-chip pull-up resistor can be used only for those bits set to the input mode in a port for which the use of the on-chip pull-up resistor has been specified using PUB0 to PUB3.

For those bits set to the output mode, on-chip pull-up resistors cannot be used, regardless of the setting of PUB0 to PUB3. This also applies to alternate-function pins used as output pins.

PUB0 to PUB3 are set via a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets these registers to 00H.

**Figure 4-16. Format of Pull-Up Resistor Option Registers**

| Symbol | <7>   | <6>   | <5>   | <4>   | <3>   | <2>   | <1>   | <0>   | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| PUB0   | PUB07 | PUB06 | PUB05 | PUB04 | PUB03 | PUB02 | PUB01 | PUB00 | FF30H   | 00H         | R/W |
|        | 7     | 6     | 5     | 4     | 3     | 2     | <1>   | <0>   |         |             |     |
| PUB1   | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | 0     | PUB11 | PUB10 | FF31H   | 00H         | R/W |
|        | 7     | 6     | <5>   | <4>   | <3>   | <2>   | <1>   | <0>   |         |             |     |
| PUB2   | 0     | 0     | PUB25 | PUB24 | PUB23 | PUB22 | PUB21 | PUB20 | FF32H   | 00H         | R/W |
|        | 7     | 6     | 5     | <4>   | <3>   | <2>   | <1>   | <0>   |         |             |     |
| PUB3   | 0     | 0     | 0     | PUB34 | PUB33 | PUB32 | PUB31 | PUB30 | FF33H   | 00H         | R/W |

| PUBmn | Pmn on-chip pull-up resistor selection<br>(m = 0 to 3, n = 0 to 7) |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | An on-chip pull-up resistor is not connected.                      |
| 1     | An on-chip pull-up resistor is connected.                          |

**(3) Port function registers (PF7 and PF8) ( $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 only)**

These registers specify in 1-bit units whether to use P70 to P73 and P80 to P87 as port pins or segment outputs.

PF7 and PF8 are set via a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets these registers to 00H.

**Caution** This register is valid only in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489; however, writing to it in the  $\mu$ PD789488 and 789489 will simply make it invalid, causing no operational effect.

**Figure 4-17. Port Function Register Format**

| Symbol | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | <3>  | <2>  | <1>  | <0>  | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| PF7    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0    | PF73 | PF72 | PF71 | PF70 | FF57H   | 00H         | W   |
|        | <7>  | <6>  | <5>  | <4>  | <3>  | <2>  | <1>  | <0>  |         |             |     |
| PF8    | PF87 | PF86 | PF85 | PF84 | PF83 | PF82 | PF81 | PF80 | FF58H   | 00H         | W   |

| PFmn | Pmn port/segment output specification (m = 7 or 8, n = 0 to 7) |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | Pmn is used as a port pin.                                     |
| 1    | Pmn is used as a segment output.                               |

## 4.4 Port Function Operation

The operation of a port differs depending on whether the port is set in the input or output mode, as described below.

### 4.4.1 Writing to I/O port

#### (1) In output mode

A value can be written to the output latch of a port by using a transfer instruction. The contents of the output latch can be output from the pins of the port.

Once data is written to the output latch, it is retained until new data is written to the output latch.

#### (2) In input mode

A value can be written to the output latch by using a transfer instruction. However, the status of the port pin is not changed because the output buffer is OFF.

Once data is written to the output latch, it is retained until new data is written to the output latch.

**Caution** A 1-bit memory manipulation instruction is executed to manipulate 1 bit of a port. However, this instruction accesses the port in 8-bit units. When this instruction is executed to manipulate a bit of an input/output port, therefore, the contents of the output latch of the pin that is set in the input mode and not subject to manipulation become undefined.

### 4.4.2 Reading from I/O port

#### (1) In output mode

The status of an output latch can be read by using a transfer instruction. The contents of the output latch are not changed.

#### (2) In input mode

The status of a pin can be read by using a transfer instruction. The contents of the output latch are not changed.

### 4.4.3 Arithmetic operation of I/O port

#### (1) In output mode

An arithmetic operation can be performed on the contents of the output latch. The result of the operation is written to the output latch. The contents of the output latch are output from the port pins.

Once data is written to the output latch, it is retained until new data is written to the output latch.

#### (2) In input mode

The contents of the output latch become undefined. However, the status of the pin is not changed because the output buffer is OFF.

**Caution** A 1-bit memory manipulation instruction is executed to manipulate 1 bit of a port. However, this instruction accesses the port in 8-bit units. When this instruction is executed to manipulate a bit of an input/output port, therefore, the contents of the output latch of the pin that is set in the input mode and not subject to manipulation become undefined.

## CHAPTER 5 CLOCK GENERATOR

### 5.1 Clock Generator Functions

The clock generator generates the clock to be supplied to the CPU and peripheral hardware.

The following two types of system clock oscillators are used.

- **Main system clock oscillator**

This circuit oscillates at 1.0 to 5.0 MHz. Oscillation can be stopped by executing the STOP instruction or setting the processor clock control register (PCC).

- **Subsystem clock oscillator**

This circuit oscillates at 32.768 kHz. Oscillation can be stopped by the suboscillation mode register (SCKM). Also, a circuit to multiply the subsystem clock by 4 can be used by setting a mask option or the subclock selection register (SSCK).

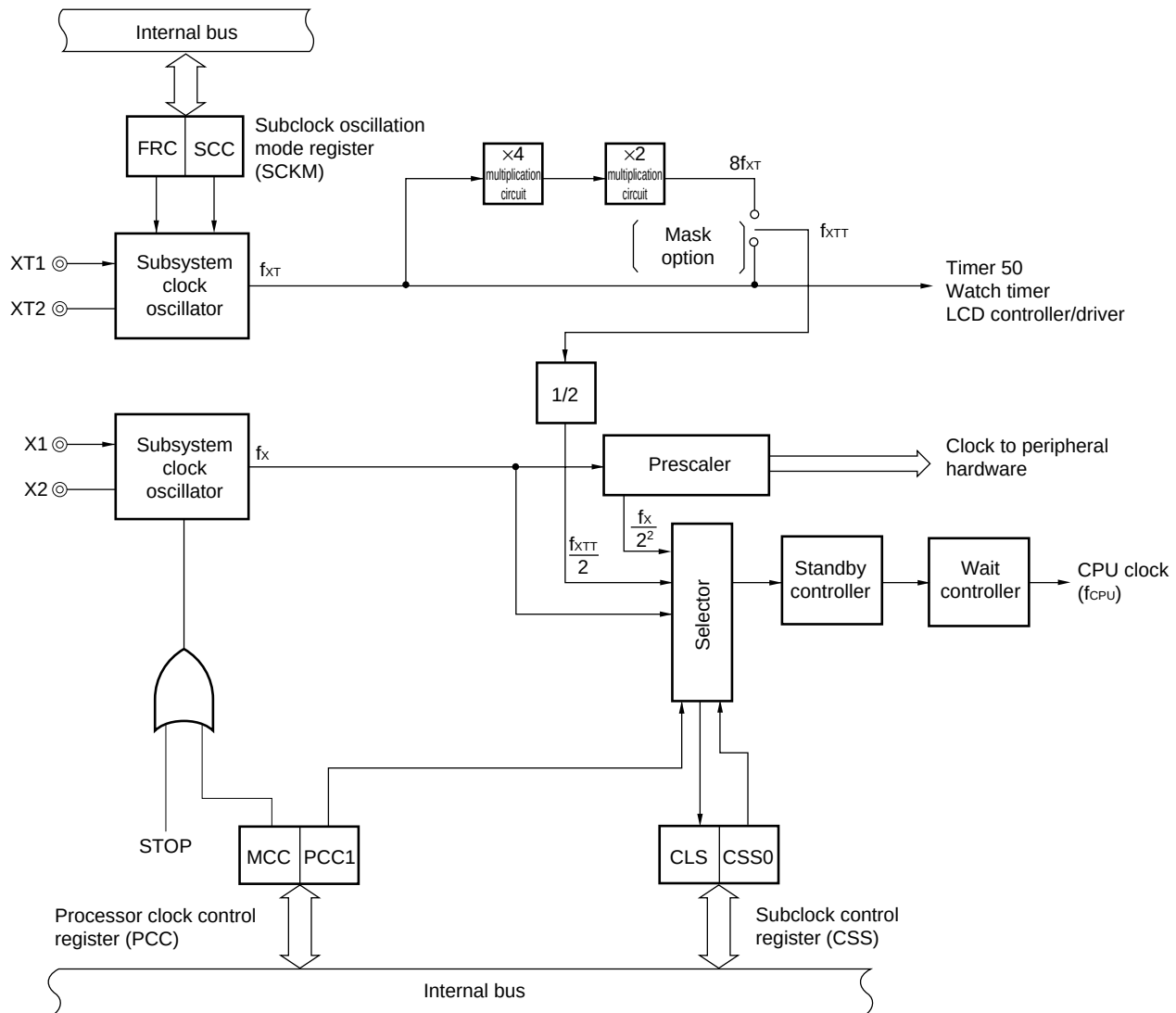
### 5.2 Clock Generator Configuration

The clock generator includes the following hardware.

**Table 5-1. Configuration of Clock Generator**

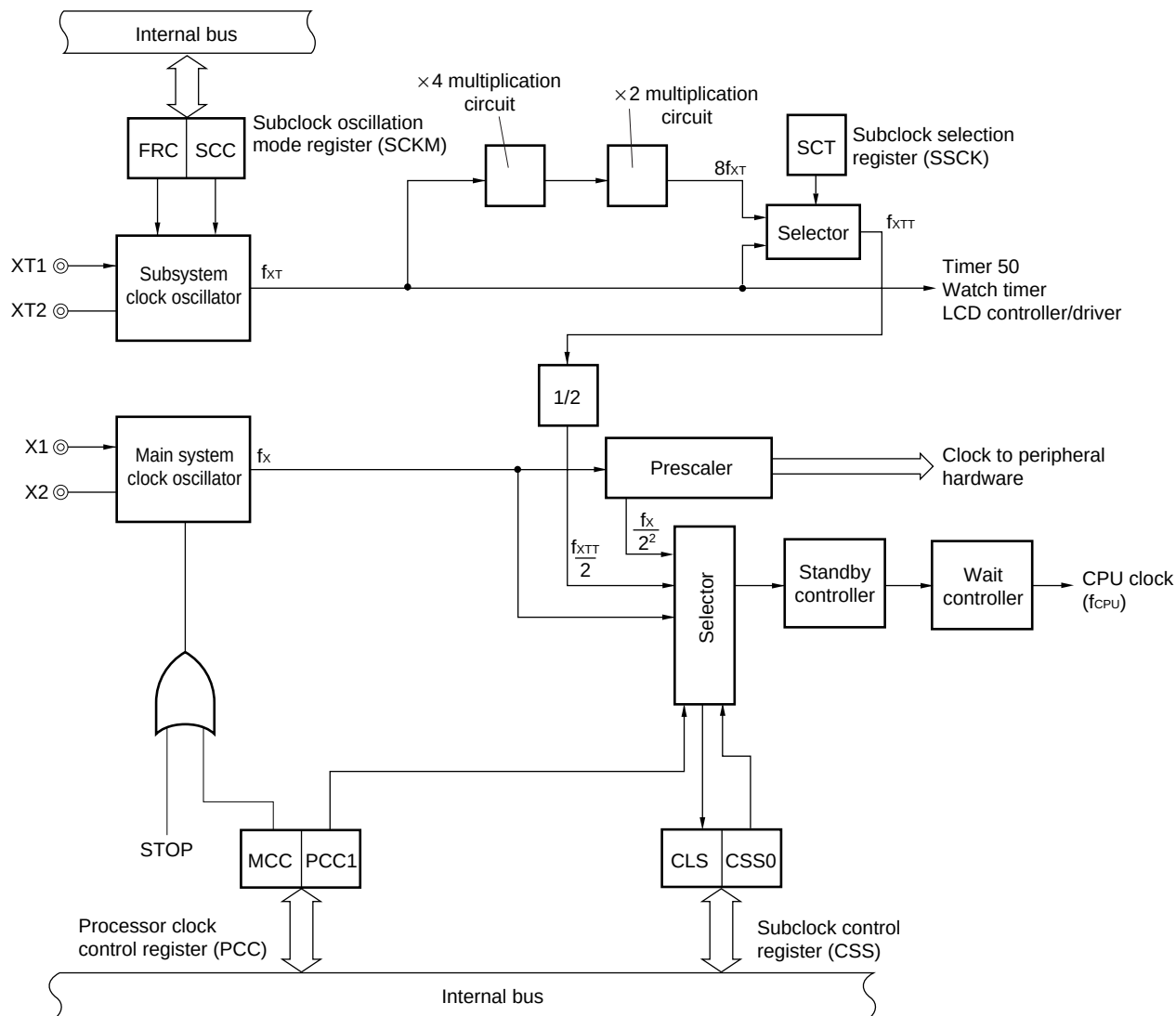
| Item              | Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Control registers | Processor clock control register (PCC)<br>Subclock oscillation mode register (SCKM)<br>Subclock control register (CSS)<br>Subclock selection register (SSCK) ( $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 only) |
| Oscillators       | Main system clock oscillator<br>Subsystem clock oscillator                                                                                                                                    |

**Figure 5-1. Clock Generator Block Diagram ( $\mu$ PD789488, 789489)**



**Remark**  $f_{XTT}$ :  $f_{XT}$  or  $8f_{XT}$



Figure 5-2. Clock Generator Block Diagram ( $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489)

**Remark**  $f_{XTT}$ :  $f_{XT}$  or  $8f_{XT}$

### 5.3 Registers Controlling Clock Generator

The clock generator is controlled by the following four registers.

- Processor clock control register (PCC)
- Subclock oscillation mode register (SCKM)
- Subclock control register (CSS)
- Subclock selection register (SSCK) ( $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 only)

#### (1) Processor clock control register (PCC)

This register is used to select the CPU clock and set the frequency division ratio.

PCC is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to 02H.

**Figure 5-3. Format of Processor Clock Control Register**

| Symbol | <7> | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | <1>  | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|------|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| PCC    | MCC | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | PCC1 | 0 | FFFBH   | 02H         | R/W |

|     |                                                |
|-----|------------------------------------------------|
| MCC | Main system clock oscillator operation control |
| 0   | Operation enabled                              |
| 1   | Operation stopped                              |

| CSS0 | PCC1     | CPU clock ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selection <sup>Note</sup>                        | Minimum instruction execution time: $2/f_{CPU}$                               |
|------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      |          |                                                                          | $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$ or $f_{XT} = 32.768 \text{ kHz}$                      |
| 0    | 0        | $f_x$                                                                    | $0.4 \mu s$                                                                   |
| 0    | 1        | $f_x/2^2$                                                                | $1.6 \mu s$                                                                   |
| 1    | $\times$ | $f_{XT}/2$<br>$4f_{XT}$ (when $\times 4$ multiplication circuit is used) | $122 \mu s$<br>$15.26 \mu s$ (when $\times 4$ multiplication circuit is used) |

**Note** The CPU clock is selected by a combination of flag settings in the PCC and CSS registers. (Refer to **5.3 (3) Subclock control register (CSS).**)

**Cautions** 1. Always set bits 0 and 2 to 6 to 0.

2. MCC can be set only when the subsystem clock is selected as the CPU clock.  
Setting MCC to 1 while the main system clock is operating is invalid.

**Remarks** 1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency  
2.  $f_{XT}$ : Subsystem clock oscillation frequency

**(2) Subclock oscillation mode register (SCKM)**

SCKM selects a feedback resistor for the subsystem clock, and controls the oscillation of the clock.

SCKM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets SCKM to 00H.

**Figure 5-4. Format of Subclock Oscillation Mode Register**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1   | <0> | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|-----|---------|-------------|-----|
| SCKM   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | FRC | SCC | FFF0H   | 00H         | R/W |

| FRC | Feedback resistor selection <sup>Note</sup> |
|-----|---------------------------------------------|
| 0   | On-chip feedback resistor used              |
| 1   | On-chip feedback resistor not used          |

| SCC | Control of subsystem clock oscillator operation |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------|
| 0   | Operation enabled                               |
| 1   | Operation disabled                              |

**Note** The feedback resistor is necessary to adjust the bias point of the oscillation waveform to close to the mid point of the supply voltage. When the subclock is not used, the power consumption in STOP mode can be further reduced by setting FRC = 1.

**Caution** Bits 2 to 7 must be set to 0.

**(3) Subclock control register (CSS)**

CSS specifies whether the main system or subsystem clock oscillator is to be selected. It also specifies the CPU clock operation status.

CSS is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets CSS to 00H.

**Figure 5-5. Format of Subclock Control Register**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5   | 4    | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W                 |
|--------|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|---------|-------------|---------------------|
| CSS    | 0 | 0 | CLS | CSS0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | FFF2H   | 00H         | R/W <sup>Note</sup> |

| CLS | CPU clock operation status                                       |
|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0   | Operation based on the output of the (divided) main system clock |
| 1   | Operation based on the subsystem clock                           |

| CSS0 | Selection of the main system or subsystem clock oscillator |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | (Divided) output from the main system clock oscillator     |
| 1    | Output from the subsystem clock oscillator                 |

**Note** Bit 5 is read only.

**Caution** Bits 0 to 3, 6, and 7 must be set to 0.

**(4) Subclock selection register (SSCK) ( $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 only)**

This register is used to control the operation of the  $\times 4$  subsystem clock multiplication circuit.

SSCK is set via a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this register to 00H.

**Caution** This register is valid only in the  $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489; however, writing to it in the  $\mu$ PD789488 and 789489 will simply make it invalid, causing no operational effect.

**Figure 5-6. Subclock Selection Register Format**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0   | Address | After reset                          | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|---------|--------------------------------------|-----|
| SSCK   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | SCT | FF46H   | Retained <sup>Not</sup> <sub>e</sub> | R/W |

| SCT | Control of $\times 4$ subsystem clock multiplication circuit                                        |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0   | Operation stopped (subsystem clock source (32.768 kHz) supplied to the CPU)                         |
| 1   | Operation enabled (clock that is the subsystem clock multiplied by 8 (262 kHz) supplied to the CPU) |

**Note** The register is set to 00H only by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

- Cautions**
1. Always set bits 1 to 7 to 0.
  2. Write to the SCT flag prior to setting the CSS0 flag to 1 following the release of reset. Write operations following the first operation are invalid (input the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal to rewrite).

## 5.4 System Clock Oscillators

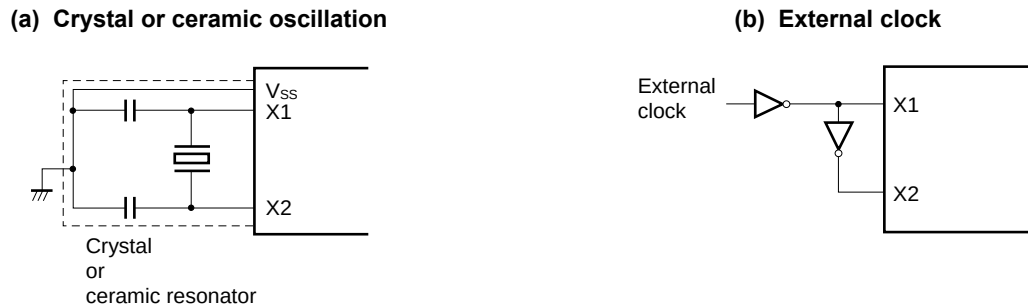
### 5.4.1 Main system clock oscillator

The main system clock oscillator is oscillated by the crystal or ceramic resonator (5.0 MHz TYP.) connected across the X1 and X2 pins.

An external clock can also be input to the circuit. In this case, input the clock signal to the X1 pin, and input the inverted signal to the X2 pin.

Figure 5-7 shows the external circuit of the main system clock oscillator.

**Figure 5-7. External Circuit of Main System Clock Oscillator**



**Caution** When using the main system clock oscillator, wire as follows in the area enclosed by the broken lines in Figure 5-7 to avoid an adverse effect from wiring capacitance.

- Keep the wiring length as short as possible.
- Do not cross the wiring with the other signal lines. Do not route the wiring near a signal line through which a high fluctuating current flows.
- Always make the ground point of the oscillator capacitor the same potential as  $V_{ss}$ . Do not ground the capacitor to a ground pattern through which a high current flows.
- Do not fetch signals from the oscillator.

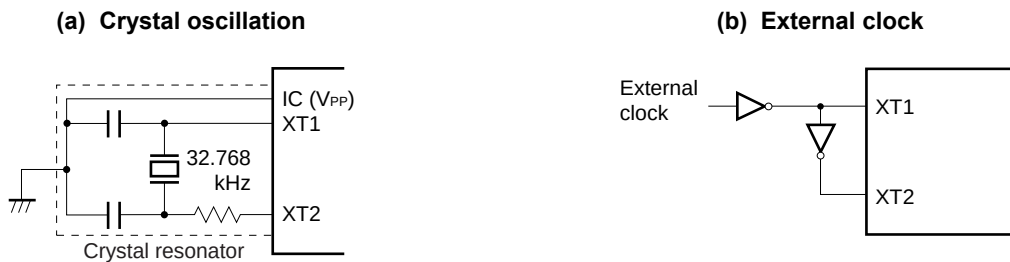
### 5.4.2 Subsystem clock oscillator

The subsystem clock oscillator is oscillated by the crystal resonator (32.768 kHz TYP.) connected across the XT1 and XT2 pins.

An external clock can also be input to the circuit. In this case, input the clock signal to the XT1 pin, and input the inverted signal to the XT2 pin.

Figure 5-8 shows the external circuit of the subsystem clock oscillator.

**Figure 5-8. External Circuit of Subsystem Clock Oscillator**



**Caution** When using the main system or subsystem clock oscillator, wire as follows in the area enclosed by the broken lines in Figures 5-7 and 5-8 to avoid an adverse effect from wiring capacitance.

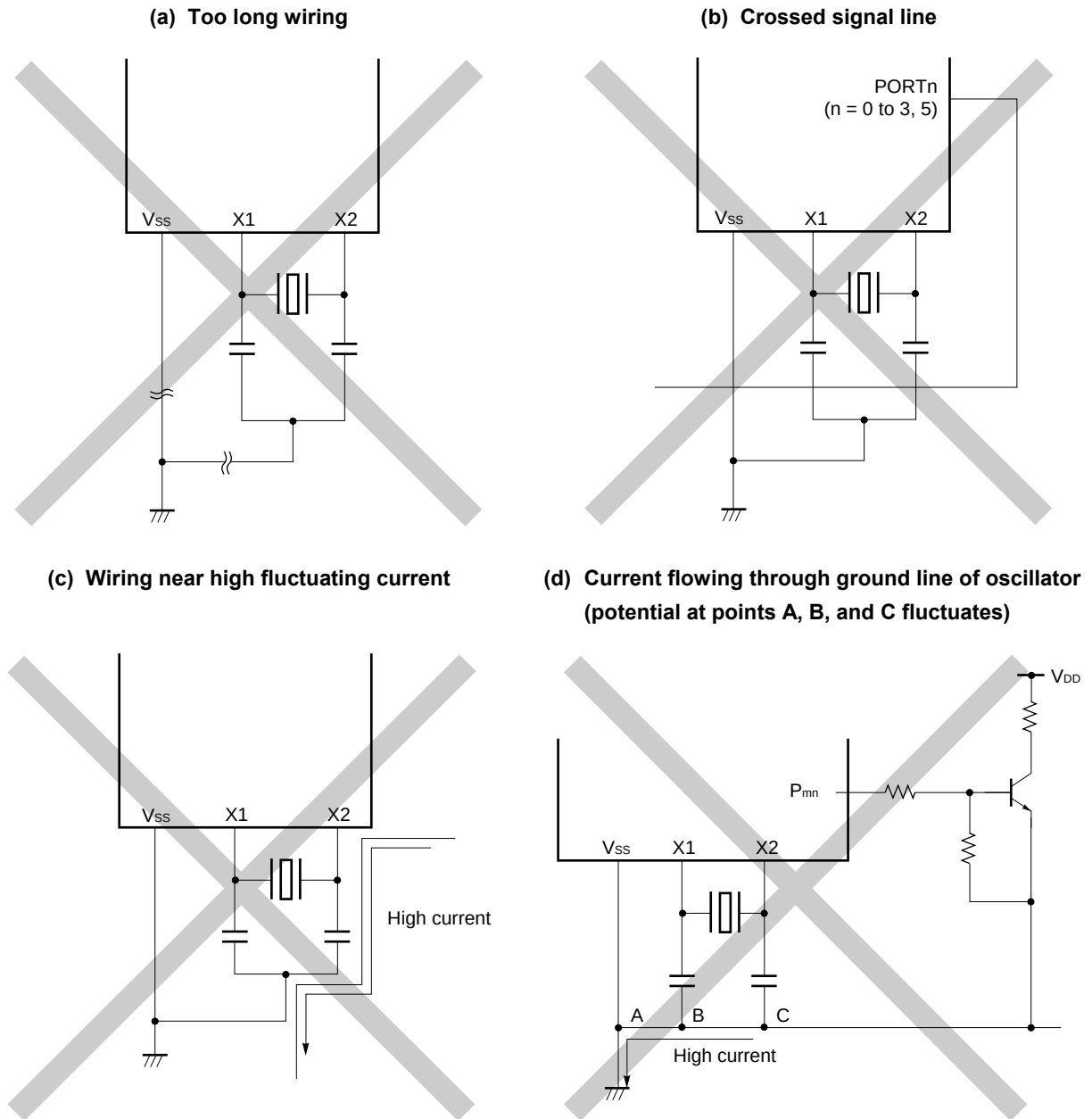
- Keep the wiring length as short as possible.
- Do not cross the wiring with the other signal lines. Do not route the wiring near a signal line through which a high fluctuating current flows.
- Always make the ground point of the oscillator capacitor the same potential as V<sub>SS</sub>. Do not ground the capacitor to a ground pattern through which a high current flows.
- Do not fetch signals from the oscillator.

When using the subsystem clock, particular care is required because the subsystem clock oscillator is designed as a low-amplitude circuit for reducing current consumption.

### 5.4.3 Example of incorrect resonator connection

Figure 5-9 shows examples of incorrect resonator connection.

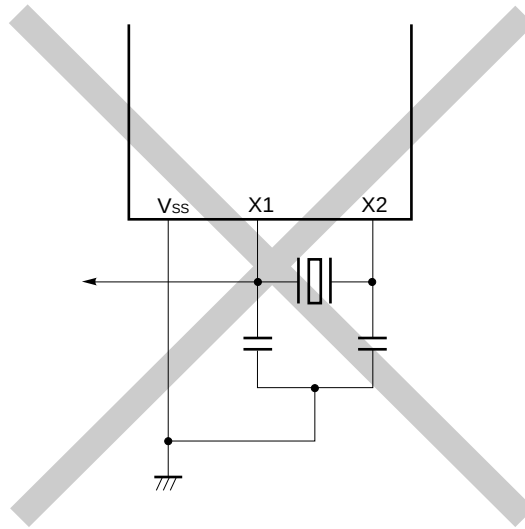
Figure 5-9. Examples of Incorrect Resonator Connection (1/2)



**Remark** When using the subsystem clock, read X1 and X2 as XT1 and XT2, respectively, and connect a resistor to XT2 in series.

Figure 5-9. Examples of Incorrect Resonator Connection (2/2)

(e) Signal is fetched



**Remark** When using the subsystem clock, read X1 and X2 as XT1 and XT2, respectively, and connect a resistor to XT2 in series.

#### 5.4.4 Divider circuit

The divider circuit divides the output of the main system clock oscillator (fx) to generate various clocks.

#### 5.4.5 When subsystem clock is not used

If the subsystem clock is not necessary, for example, for low-power consumption operation or clock operation, handle the XT1 and XT2 pins as follows.

XT1: Connect to Vss

XT2: Leave open

In this case, however, a small current leaks via the on-chip feedback resistor in the subsystem clock oscillator when the main system clock is stopped. To avoid this, set bit 1 (FRC) of the subclock oscillation mode register (SCKM) so that the on-chip feedback resistor will not be used. Also in this case, handle the XT1 and XT2 pins as stated above.

#### 5.4.6 Subsystem clock ×4 multiplication circuit

This circuit multiplies the subsystem clock by 4 and supplies it to the CPU.

The circuit stops operating in the HALT mode (to reduce power consumption).

When the circuit starts operating after HALT mode is released, a one-clock wait of the original subsystem clock is inserted to eliminate noise.



## 5.5 Clock Generator Operation

The clock generator generates the following clocks and controls the operation modes of the CPU, such as the standby mode.

- Main system clock  $f_x$
- Subsystem clock  $f_{XT}$
- CPU clock  $f_{CPU}$
- Clock to peripheral hardware

The operation and function of the clock generator is determined by the processor clock control register (PCC), subclock oscillation mode register (SCKM), and subclock control register (CSS), as follows.

- (a) The low-speed mode (1.6  $\mu s$ : at 5.0 MHz operation) of the main system clock is selected when the RESET signal is generated (PCC = 02H). While a low level is being to the RESET pin, oscillation of the main system clock is stopped.
- (b) Three types of minimum instruction execution time (0.4  $\mu s$  and 1.6  $\mu s$ : main system clock (at 5.0 MHz operation), 122  $\mu s$ : subsystem clock (at 32.768 kHz operation)) can be selected by the PCC, SCKM, and CSS settings. Also, the subsystem clock can be changed to a clock that uses a circuit to multiply the subclock by 4 via a mask option in the  $\mu PD789488$  and 789489 or the subclock selection register (SSCK) in the  $\mu PD78F9488$  and 78F9489 (15.26  $\mu s$ : a circuit to multiply the subsystem clock by 4 is used).
- (c) Two standby modes, STOP and HALT, can be used with the main system clock selected. In a system where the subsystem clock is not used, setting bit 1 (FRC) of SCKM so that the on-chip feedback resistor cannot be used reduces current consumption in STOP mode. In a system where the subsystem clock is used, setting SCKM bit 0 to 1 can cause the subsystem clock to stop oscillation.
- (d) CSS bit 4 (CSS0) can be used to select the subsystem clock so that low current consumption operation is used (122  $\mu s$ : at 32.768 kHz operation).
- (e) With the subsystem clock selected, it is possible to cause the main system clock to stop oscillating using bit 7 (MCC) of PCC. The HALT mode can be used, but the STOP mode cannot.
- (f) The clock pulse for the peripheral hardware is generated by dividing the frequency of the main system clock, but the subsystem clock pulse is only supplied to 8-bit timer 50, the watch timer, and the LCD controller/driver. 8-bit timer 50, the watch timer, and the LCD controller/driver can therefore keep running even during standby. The other hardware stops when the main system clock stops because it runs based on the main system clock (except for external input clock operations).

## 5.6 Changing Setting of System Clock and CPU Clock

### 5.6.1 Time required for switching between system clock and CPU clock

The CPU clock can be selected by using bit 1 (PCC1) of the processor clock control register (PCC) and bit 4 (CSS0) of the subclock control register (CSS).

Actually, the specified clock is not selected immediately after the setting of PCC has been changed; the old clock is used for the duration of several instructions after that (see **Table 5-2**).

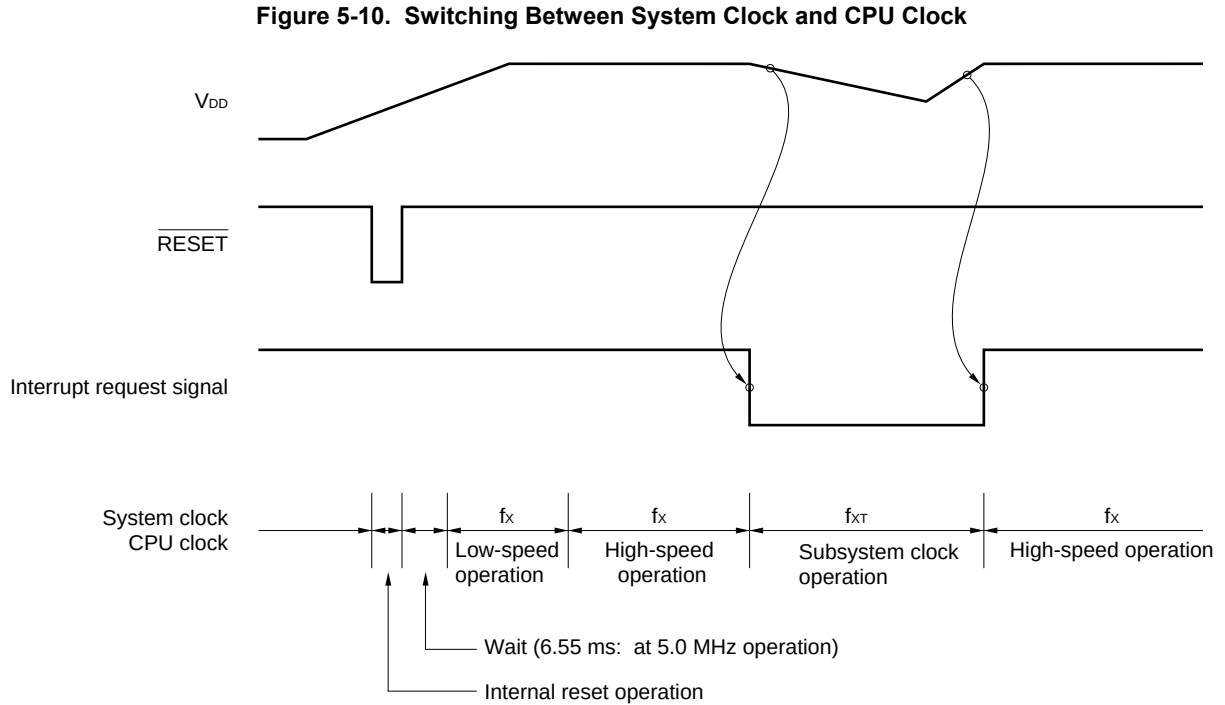
**Table 5-2. Maximum Time Required for Switching CPU Clock**

| Set Value Before Switching |      | Set Value After Switching |      |          |      |                                                         |      |
|----------------------------|------|---------------------------|------|----------|------|---------------------------------------------------------|------|
| CSS0                       | PCC1 | CSS0                      | PCC1 | CSS0     | PCC1 | CSS0                                                    | PCC1 |
|                            |      | 0                         | 0    | 0        | 1    | 1                                                       | x    |
| 0                          | 0    |                           |      | 4 clocks |      | 2f <sub>x</sub> /f <sub>XT</sub> clocks<br>(306 clocks) |      |
|                            | 1    |                           |      | 2 clocks |      | f <sub>x</sub> /2f <sub>XT</sub> clocks<br>(76 clocks)  |      |
| 1                          | x    | 2 clocks                  |      | 2 clocks |      |                                                         |      |

- Remarks**
- Two clocks are the minimum instruction execution time of the CPU clock before switching.
  - The parenthesized values apply to operation at f<sub>x</sub> = 5.0 MHz or f<sub>XT</sub> = 32.768 kHz.
  - x: don't care

### 5.6.2 Switching between system clock and CPU clock

The following figure illustrates how the CPU clock and system clock switch.



- <1> The CPU is reset when the  $\overline{RESET}$  pin is made low on power application. The effect of resetting is released when the  $\overline{RESET}$  pin is later made high, and the main system clock starts oscillating. At this time, the oscillation stabilization time ( $2^{15}/f_x$ ) is automatically secured. After that, the CPU starts instruction execution at the slow speed of the main system clock (1.6  $\mu s$ : at 5.0 MHz operation).
- <2> After the time required for the  $V_{DD}$  voltage to rise to the level at which the CPU can operate at high speed has elapsed, bit 1 (PCC1) of the processor clock control register (PCC) and bit 4 (CSS0) of the subclock control register (CSS) are rewritten so that high-speed operation can be selected.
- <3> A drop of the  $V_{DD}$  voltage is detected with an interrupt request signal. The clock is switched to the subsystem clock (at this moment, the subsystem clock must be in the oscillation stabilization status).
- <4> A recover of the  $V_{DD}$  voltage is detected with an interrupt request signal. Bit 7 (MCC) of PCC is set to 0, and then the main system clock starts oscillating. After the time required for the oscillation to stabilize has elapsed, PCC1 and CSS0 are rewritten so that high-speed operation can be selected again.

**Caution** When the main system clock is stopped and the device is operating on the subsystem clock, wait until the oscillation stabilization time has been secured by the program before switching back to the main system clock.

## CHAPTER 6 16-BIT TIMER 20

### 6.1 16-Bit Timer 20 Functions

16-bit timer 20 has the following functions.

- Timer interrupt
- Timer output
- Count value capture

#### (1) Timer interrupt

An interrupt is generated when a count value and compare value match.

#### (2) Timer output

Timer output can be controlled when a count value and compare value match.

#### (3) Count value capture

The count value of 16-bit timer counter 20 (TM20) is latched into a capture register in synchronization with the capture trigger and retained.

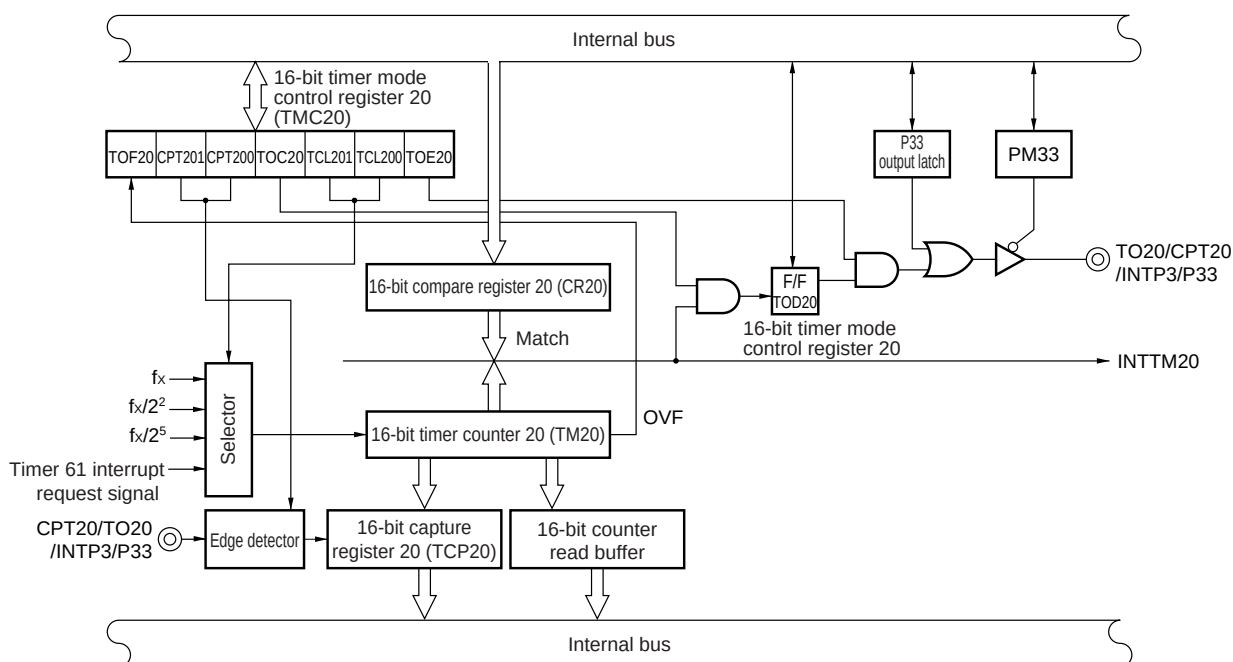
### 6.2 16-Bit Timer 20 Configuration

16-bit timer 20 includes the following hardware.

**Table 6-1. 16-Bit Timer 20 Configuration**

| Item              | Configuration                                                                              |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Timer counters    | 16 bits × 1 (TM20)                                                                         |
| Registers         | Compare register: 16 bits × 1 (CR20)<br>Capture register: 16 bits × 1 (TCP20)              |
| Timer outputs     | 1 (TO20)                                                                                   |
| Control registers | 16-bit timer mode control register 20 (TMC20)<br>Port mode register 3 (PM3)<br>Port 3 (P3) |

### Figure 6-1. Block Diagram of 16-Bit Timer 20



**(1) 16-bit compare register 20 (CR20)**

This 16-bit register is used to continually compare the value set to CR20 with the count value in 16-bit timer counter 20 (TM20) and to issue an interrupt request (INTTM20) when a match occurs.

CR20 is set via a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction. Values from 0000H to FFFFH can be set.

RESET input sets this register to FFFFH.

**Caution** To rewrite CR20 during a count operation, first set interrupt mask flag register 0 (MK0) to disable interrupts. Also, set inversion inhibited for the timer output data in 16-bit timer mode control register 20 (TMC20). If CR20 is rewritten while interrupts are enabled, an interrupt request may be issued at the point of rewrite.

**(2) 16-bit timer counter 20 (TM20)**

This is a 16-bit register that is used to count the count pulses.

TM20 can be read with a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction.

The counter is in free-running mode when the count clock is being input.

RESET input sets this counter to 0000H and restarts free-running mode.

**Caution** The count value after releasing STOP mode is undefined because the count operation occurred during the oscillation stabilization time.

**(3) 16-bit capture register 20 (TCP20)**

This is a 16-bit register used to capture the contents of 16-bit timer counter 20 (TM20).

TCP20 is set with a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input makes this register undefined.

**(4) 16-bit counter read buffer 20**

This buffer is used to latch and hold the count value for TM20.

**6.3 Registers Controlling 16-Bit Timer 20**

16-bit timer 20 is controlled by the following three registers.

- 16-bit timer mode control register 20 (TMC20)
- Port mode register 3 (PM3)
- Port 3 (P3)

**(1) 16-bit timer mode control register 20 (TMC20)**

16-bit timer mode control register 20 (TMC20) controls the setting of the count clock, capture edge, etc.

TMC20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets TMC20 to 00H.

Figure 6-2. Format of 16-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 20

| Symbol | <7>   | <6>   | 5      | 4      | 3     | 2      | 1      | <0>   | Address | After reset | R/W                   |
|--------|-------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|--------|-------|---------|-------------|-----------------------|
| TMC20  | TOD20 | TOF20 | CPT201 | CPT200 | TOC20 | TCL201 | TCL200 | TOE20 | FF48H   | 00H         | R/W <sup>Note 1</sup> |

| TOD20 | Timer output data   |
|-------|---------------------|
| 0     | Timer output is "0" |
| 1     | Timer output is "1" |

| TOF20 | Set overflow flag               |
|-------|---------------------------------|
| 0     | Reset and clear by software     |
| 1     | Set by overflow of 16-bit timer |

| CPT201 | CPT200 | Selection of capture edge  |
|--------|--------|----------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | Capture operation disabled |
| 0      | 1      | Rising edge of CPT20 pin   |
| 1      | 0      | Falling edge of CPT20 pin  |
| 1      | 1      | Both edges of CPT20 pin    |

| TOC20 | Timer output data inversion control |
|-------|-------------------------------------|
| 0     | Inversion disabled                  |
| 1     | Inversion enabled                   |

| TCL201 | TCL200 | Selection of count clock for 16-bit timer counter 20 |
|--------|--------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | Timer 61 interrupt signal                            |
| 0      | 1      | $f_x$ (5.0 MHz) <sup>Notes 2, 3</sup>                |
| 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz) <sup>Note 4</sup>               |
| 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^5$ (156.25 kHz) <sup>Note 4</sup>             |

| TOE20 | Output control for 16-bit timer counter 20 |
|-------|--------------------------------------------|
| 0     | Output disabled (port mode)                |
| 1     | Output enabled                             |

**Notes** 1. Bit 7 is read-only.

2. If  $f_x$  is selected for the count clock, the signal cannot be used as a capture signal.
3. In a read operation, set the CPU clock as the high-speed main clock (PCC1 = 0, CSS = 0).
4. In a read operation, set the CPU clock as the main clock (CSS = 0).

**Remarks** 1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

2. The parenthesized values apply to operational  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**(2) Port mode register 3 (PM3)**

This register is used to set the I/O mode of port 3 in 1-bit units.

When using the P33/INTP3/CPT20/TO20 pin as a capture input (CPT20), set PM33 to 1. When using the above pin as a timer output (TO20), set the PM33 and P33 output latches to 0.

PM3 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to FFH.

**Figure 6-3. Format of Port Mode Register 3**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|------|------|------|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| PM3    | 1 | 1 | 1 | PM34 | PM33 | PM32 | PM31 | PM30 | FF23H   | FFH         | R/W |

| PM33 | Selection of P33 pin I/O mode     |
|------|-----------------------------------|
| 0    | Output mode (output buffer is on) |
| 1    | Input mode (output buffer is off) |



## 6.4 16-Bit Timer 20 Operation

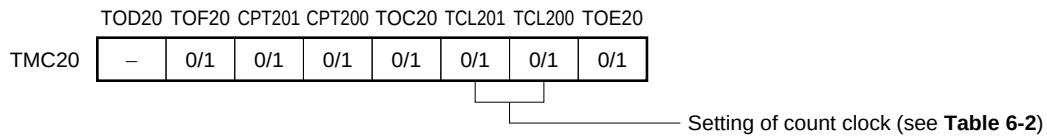
### 6.4.1 Operation as timer interrupt

16-bit timer 20 can generate interrupts repeatedly each time the free-running counter value reaches the value set to CR20. Since this counter is not cleared and holds the count even after an interrupt is generated, the interval time is equal to one cycle of the count clock set in TCL201 and TCL200.

To operate 16-bit timer 20 as a timer interrupt, the following settings are required.

- Set count values in CR20
- Set 16-bit timer mode control register 20 (TMC20) as shown in Figure 6-4.

**Figure 6-4. Settings of 16-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 20 for Timer Interrupt Operation**



**Caution** If both the CPT201 and CPT200 flags are set to 0, the capture edge operation is prohibited.

When the count value of 16-bit timer counter 20 (TM20) matches the value set in CR20, counting of TM20 continues and an interrupt request signal (INTTM20) is generated.

Table 6-2 shows interval time, and Figure 6-5 shows timing of timer interrupt operation.

**Caution** When rewriting the value in CR20 during a count operation, be sure to execute the following processing.

- <1> Disable interrupts (set TMMK20 (bit 2 of interrupt mask flag register 1 (MK1)) to 1).
- <2> Disable inversion control of timer output data (set TOC20 to 0)

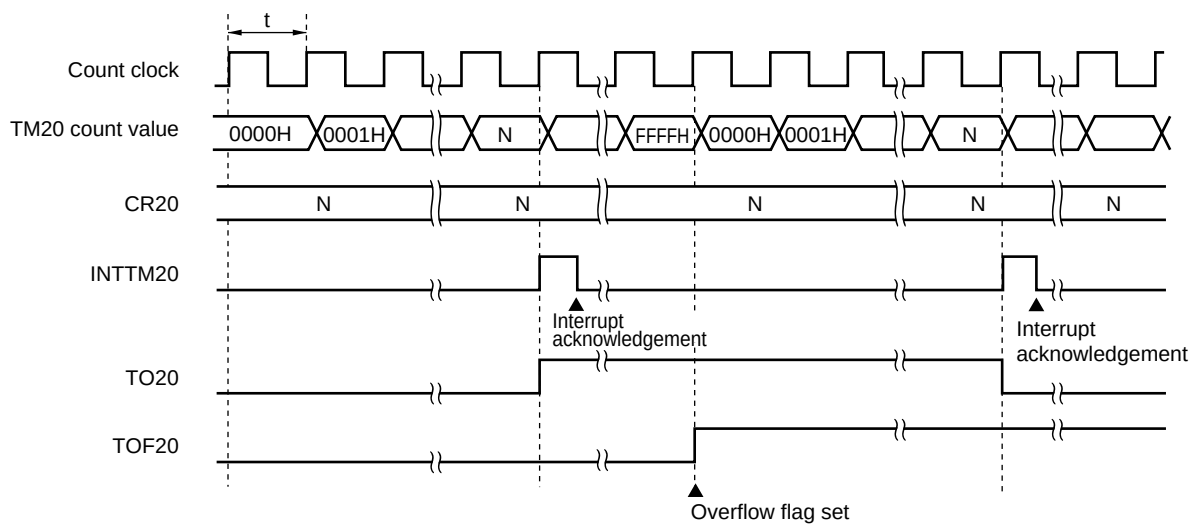
If the value in CR20 is rewritten in the interrupt-enabled state, an interrupt request may occur at the moment of rewrite.

**Table 6-2. Interval Time of 16-Bit Timer 20**

| TCL201 | TCL200 | Count Clock               | Interval Time                                      |
|--------|--------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | Timer 61 interrupt signal | Cycle of timer 61 interrupt signal $\times 2^{16}$ |
| 0      | 1      | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^{16}/f_x$ (13.1 ms)                             |
| 1      | 0      | $2^2/f_x$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   | $2^{18}/f_x$ (52.4 ms)                             |
| 1      | 1      | $2^5/f_x$ (6.4 $\mu$ s)   | $2^{21}/f_{XT}$ (419 ms)                           |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

Figure 6-5. Timing of Timer Interrupt Operation



**Remark** N = 0000H to FFFFH

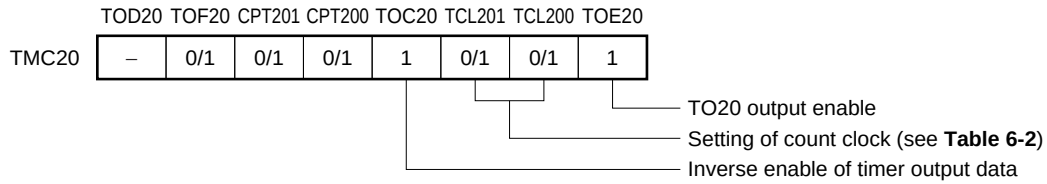
### 6.4.2 Operation as timer output

16-bit timer 20 can invert the timer output repeatedly each time the free-running counter value reaches the value set to CR20. Since this counter is not cleared and holds the count even after the timer output is inverted, the interval time is equal to one cycle of the count clock set in TCL201 and TCL200.

To operate 16-bit timer 20 as a timer output, the following settings are required.

- Set P33 to output mode (PM33 = 0).
- Reset the output latch of P33 to 0.
- Set the count value in CR20.
- Set 16-bit timer mode control register 20 (TMC20) as shown in Figure 6-6.

**Figure 6-6. Settings of 16-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 20 for Timer Output Operation**

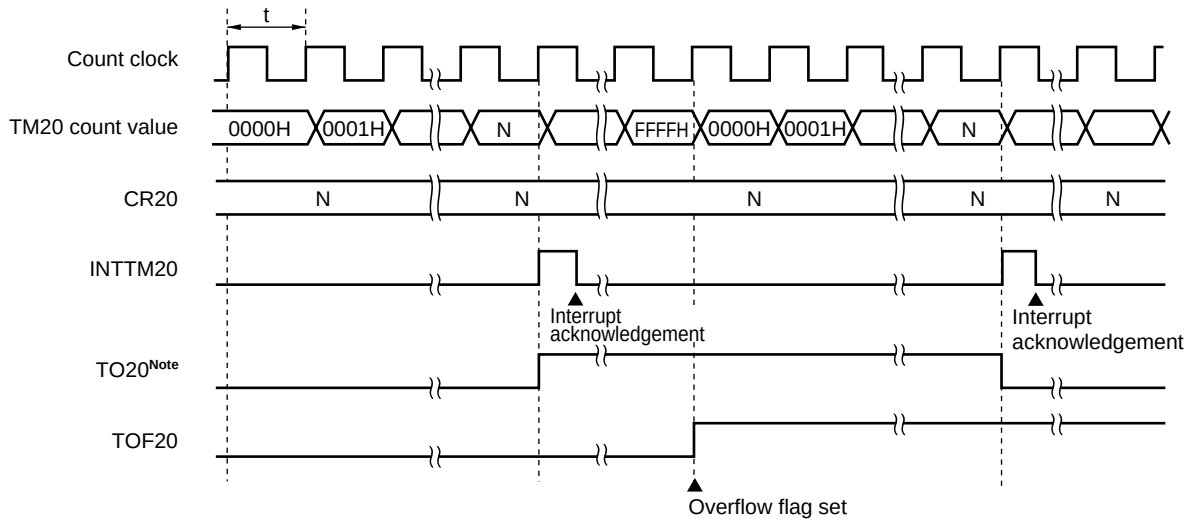


**Caution** If both the CPT201 flag and CPT200 flag are set to 0, the capture edge operation is prohibited.

When the count value of 16-bit timer counter 20 (TM20) matches the value set in CR20, the output status of the TO20 pin is inverted. This enables timer output. At that time, TM20 continues counting and an interrupt request signal (INTTM20) is generated.

Figure 6-7 shows the timing of timer output (see Table 6-2 for the interval time of 16-bit timer 20).

**Figure 6-7. Timer Output Timing**



**Note** The initial value of TO20 becomes low level when output is enabled (TOE20 = 1).

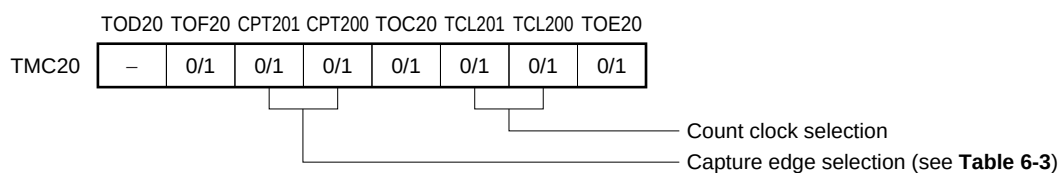
**Remark** N = 0000H to FFFFH

### 6.4.3 Capture operation

The capture operation consists of latching the count value of 16-bit timer counter 20 (TM20) into a capture register in synchronization with a capture trigger, and retaining the count value.

Set TMC20 as shown in Figure 6-8 to allow the 16-bit timer to start the capture operation.

**Figure 6-8. Settings of 16-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 20 for Capture Operation**



16-bit capture register 20 (TCP20) starts a capture operation after a CPT20 capture trigger edge is detected, and latches and retains the count value of 16-bit timer 20. TCP20 fetches the count value within 2 clocks and retains the count value until the next capture edge detection.

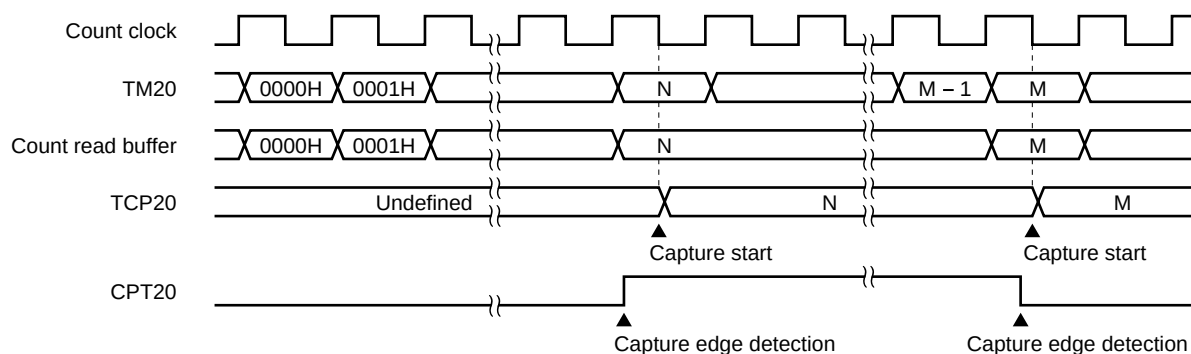
Table 6-3 and Figure 6-9 show the settings of the capture edge and the capture operation timing, respectively.

**Table 6-3. Settings of Capture Edge**

| CPT201 | CPT200 | Capture Edge Selection       |
|--------|--------|------------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | Capture operation prohibited |
| 0      | 1      | CPT20 pin rising edge        |
| 1      | 0      | CPT20 pin falling edge       |
| 1      | 1      | CPT20 pin both edges         |

**Caution** Because TCP20 is rewritten when a capture trigger edge is detected during TCP20 read, disable capture trigger edge detection during TCP20 read.

**Figure 6-9. Capture Operation Timing (with Both Edges of CPT20 Pin Specified)**



**Remark** N, M = 0000H to FFFFH

#### 6.4.4 16-bit timer counter 20 readout

The count value of 16-bit timer counter 20 (TM20) is read out using a 16-bit manipulation instruction.

TM20 readout is performed via the counter read buffer. The counter read buffer latches the TM20 count value, the buffer operation is held pending at the CPU clock falling edge after the read signal of the TM20 lower byte rises, and the count value is retained. The retained counter read buffer value can be read out as the count value.

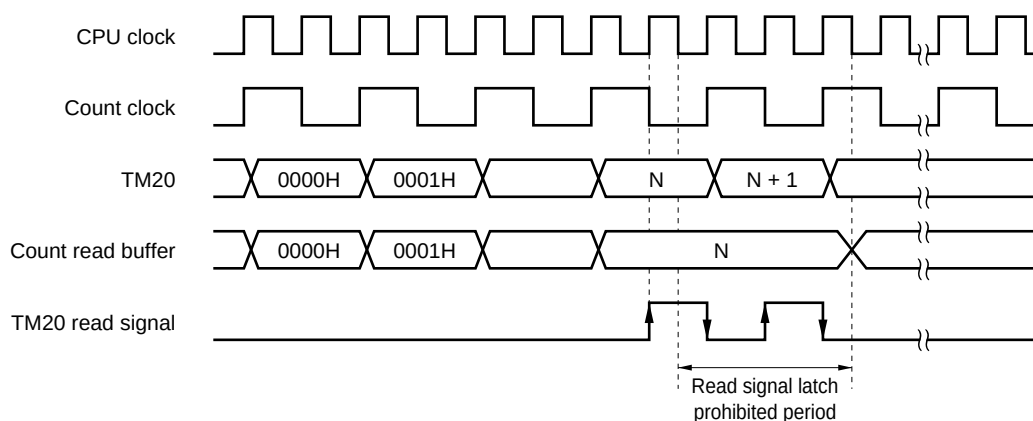
Cancellation of the pending state is performed at the CPU clock falling edge after the read signal of the TM20 higher byte falls.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets TM20 to 0000H and TM20 starts free running.

Figure 6-10 shows the timing of 16-bit timer counter 20 readout.

- Cautions**
1. The count value after releasing stop becomes undefined because the count operation is executed during the oscillation stabilization time.
  2. Though TM20 is designed for a 16-bit transfer instruction, an 8-bit transfer instruction can also be used.  
When using an 8-bit transfer instruction, execute it by direct addressing.
  3. When using an 8-bit transfer instruction, execute in the order from lower byte to higher byte in pairs. If only the lower byte is read, the pending state of the counter read buffer is not canceled, and if only the higher byte is read, an undefined count value is read.

Figure 6-10. 16-Bit Timer Counter 20 Readout Timing



**Remark** N = 0000H to FFFFH

## 6.5 Cautions on Using 16-Bit Timer 20

### 6.5.1 Restrictions when rewriting 16-bit compare register 20

- (1) Disable interrupts (TMMK20 = 1) and inversion control of timer output (TOC20 = 0) before rewriting the compare register (CR20).

If the value in CR20 is rewritten in the interrupt-enabled state, an interrupt request may occur at the moment of rewrite.

- (2) Depending on the timing of rewriting the compare register (CR20), the interval time may become twice as long as the intended time. Similarly, a shorter waveform or twice-longer waveform than the intended timer output waveform may be output.

To avoid this problem, rewrite the compare register using either of the following procedures.

#### <Countermeasure A> When rewriting using 8-bit access

- <1> Disable interrupts (TMMK20 = 1) and inversion control of timer output (TOC20 = 0).
- <2> First rewrite the higher byte of CR20 (16 bits).
- <3> Then rewrite the lower byte of CR20 (16 bits).
- <4> Clear the interrupt request flag (TMIF20).
- <5> Enable timer interrupts/timer output inversion after half a cycle or more of the count clock has elapsed from the start of the interrupt.

#### <Program example A> (count clock = 32/fx, CPU clock = fx)

|           |      |            |                                                       |                                               |
|-----------|------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| TM20_VCT: | SET1 | TMMK20     | ; Disable timer interrupts (6 clocks)                 | } Total: 16 clocks<br>or more <sup>Note</sup> |
|           | CLR1 | TMC20.3    | ; Disable timer output inversion (6 clocks)           |                                               |
|           | MOV  | A, #xxH    | ; Set the rewrite value of the higher byte (6 clocks) |                                               |
|           | MOV  | !0FF17H, A | ; Rewrite the CR20 higher byte (8 clocks)             |                                               |
|           | MOV  | A, #yyH    | ; Set the rewrite value of the lower byte (6 clocks)  |                                               |
|           | MOV  | !0FF16H, A | ; Rewrite the CR20 lower byte (8 clocks)              |                                               |
|           | CLR1 | TMIF20     | ; Clear the interrupt request flag (6 clocks)         |                                               |
|           | CLR1 | TMMK20     | ; Enable timer interrupts (6 clocks)                  |                                               |
|           | SET1 | TMC20.3    | ; Enable timer output inversion                       |                                               |

**Note** Because the INTTM20 signal becomes high level for half a cycle of the count clock after an interrupt is generated, the output is inverted if TOC20 is set to 1 during this period.

**<Countermeasure B> When rewriting using 16-bit access**

- <1> Disable interrupts (TMMK20 = 1) and inversion control of timer output (TOC20 = 0).
- <2> Rewrite CR20 (16 bits).
- <3> Wait for one cycle or more of the count clock.
- <4> Clear the interrupt request flag (TMIF20).
- <5> Enable timer interrupts/timer output inversion

**<Program example B> (count clock = 32/fx, CPU clock = fx)**

```

TM20_VCT:  SET1  TMMK20      ; Disable timer interrupts
           CLR1  TMC20.3     ; Disable timer output inversion
           MOVW  A, #xyyH    ; Set the rewrite value of CR20
           MOVW  CR20, AX     ; Rewrite CR20
           NOP
           NOP
           :
           NOP
           NOP
           } ; 16 NOP instructions (wait for 32/fx)Note
           CLR1  TMIF20      ; Clear the interrupt request flag
           CLR1  TMMK20      ; Enable timer interrupts
           SET1  TMC20.3     ; Enable timer output inversion

```

**Note** Clear the interrupt request flag (TMIF20) after waiting for one cycle or more of the count clock from the instruction that rewrites CR20 (MOVW CR20, AX).

## CHAPTER 7 8-BIT TIMERS 50, 60, AND 61

### 7.1 Functions of 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61

One 8-bit timer channel (timer 50) and two 8-bit timer/event counter channels (timer 60 and 61) are incorporated in the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries. The operation modes listed in the following table can be set via mode register settings.

**Table 7-1. Operation Modes**

| Channel<br>Mode                                             | Timer 50      | Timer 60      | Timer 61      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 8-bit timer counter mode<br>(stand-alone mode)              | Available     | Available     | Available     |
| 16-bit timer counter mode<br>(cascade connection mode)      | Available     |               | Not available |
| Carrier generator mode                                      | Available     |               | Not available |
| PWM output mode                                             | Available     | Not available | Not available |
| PPG output mode                                             | Not available | Available     | Available     |
| 24-bit event counter mode<br>(connect with 16-bit timer 20) | Not available | Not available | Available     |

**(1) Mode to use 8-bit timer/event counter as discrete unit (stand-alone mode)**

The following functions can be used in this mode.

<Timer 50>

- Interval timer with 8-bit resolution
- Square wave output with 8-bit resolution

<Timer 60 and 61>

- Interval timer with 8-bit resolution
- External event counter with 8-bit resolution
- Square wave output with 8-bit resolution

**(2) Mode to use timer 50 and timer 60 connected in cascade (16-bit resolution: cascade connection)**

Operation as a 16-bit timer/event counter is enabled in cascade connection mode.

The following functions can be used in this mode.

- Interval timer with 16-bit resolution
- External event counter with 16-bit resolution
- Square wave output with 16-bit resolution

**(3) Carrier generator mode**

The carrier clock generated by timer 60 is output in the cycle set by timer 50.

**(4) PWM output mode (PWM: Pulse Width Modulator)**

Pulses are output using any duty ratio (pulse width). The cycle (overflow cycle of the timer) becomes constant (free running).



**(5) PPG output mode (PPG: Programmable Pulse Generator)**

Pulses are output using any cycle or duty ratio (pulse width) set (both the cycle and pulse width are programmable).

**(6) 24-bit event counter mode**

Operation as an external event counter with 24-bit resolution is enabled using 16-bit timer 20 and timer 61. However, this mode operates only as a counter read function.

There is no compare, match, or clear function.

<Setting method>

<1> Select the timer 61 interrupt signal for the count clock of 16-bit timer 20 (TCL201 = 0, TCL200 = 0)

<2> Set timer 61 in stand-alone mode (TMD611 = 0)

Select the external clock input from pin TMI61 for the count clock of timer 61

((TCL612 = 0, TCL611 = 1) or (TCL612 = 1, TCL611 = 0))

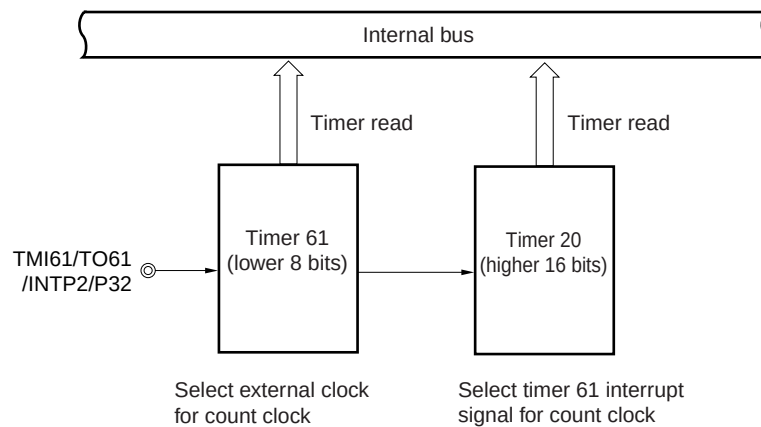
<3> Set CR61 to FFH

<4> Read the current count value of 16-bit timer 20

(16-bit timer 20 does not have a count clear function and is counting constantly)

<5> Enable timer 61 count operation (TCE61 = 1)

**Figure 7-1. Block Diagram of 24-Bit Event Counter**



## 7.2 Configuration of 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61

8-bit timers 50, 60, and 61 include the following hardware.

**Table 7-2. Configuration of 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61**

| Item              | Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Timer counter     | 8 bits × 3 (TM50, TM60, TM61)                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Registers         | Compare registers: 8 bits × 5 (CR50, CR60, CRH60, CR61, CRH61)                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Timer outputs     | 3 (TO50, TO60, TO61)                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Control registers | 8-bit timer mode control register 50 (TMC50)<br>8-bit timer mode control register 60 (TMC60)<br>Carrier generator output control register 60 (TCA60)<br>8-bit timer mode control register 61 (TMC61)<br>Port mode register 3 (PM3)<br>Port 3 (P3) |

Figure 7-2. Block Diagram of Timer 50

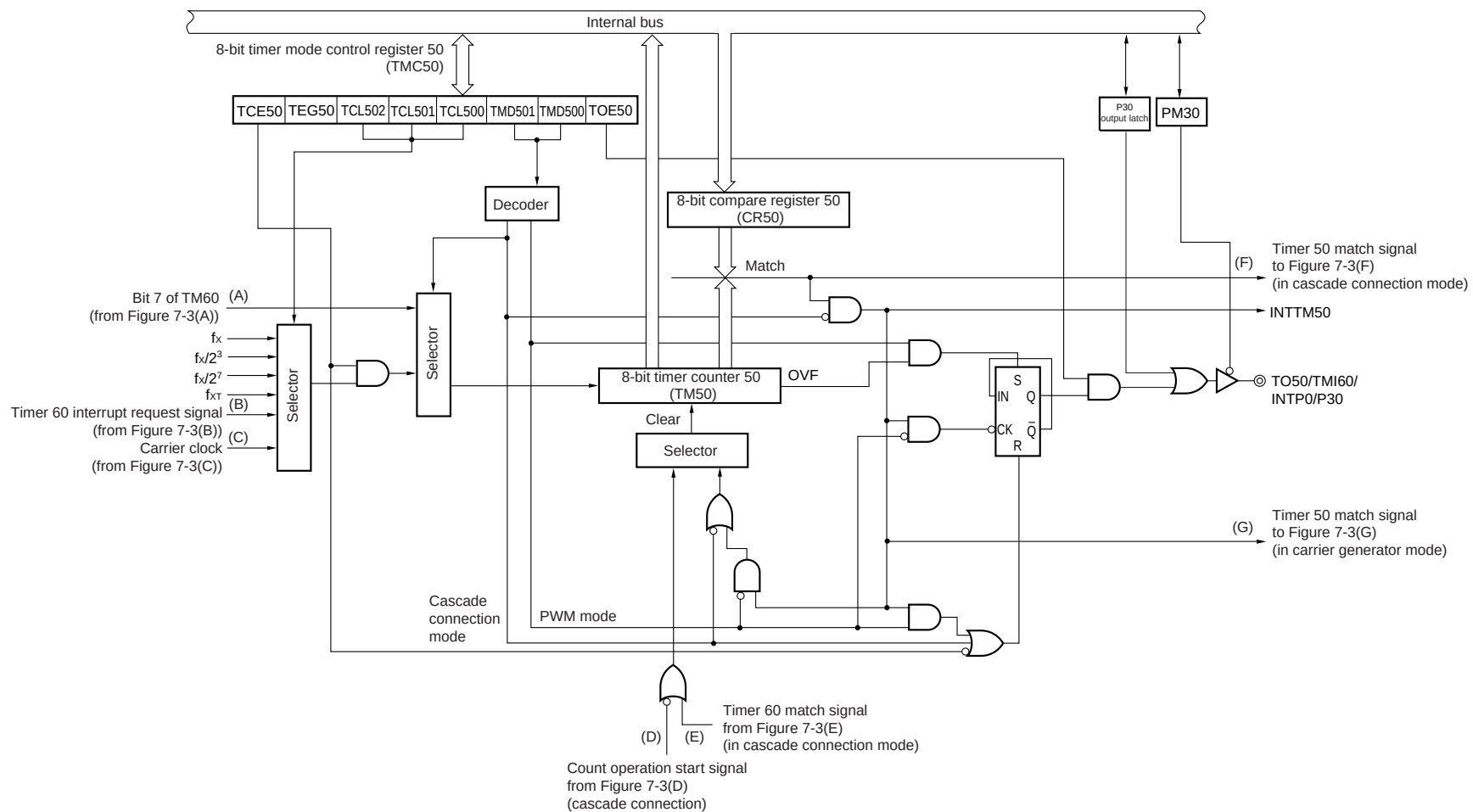


Figure 7-3. Block Diagram of Timer 60

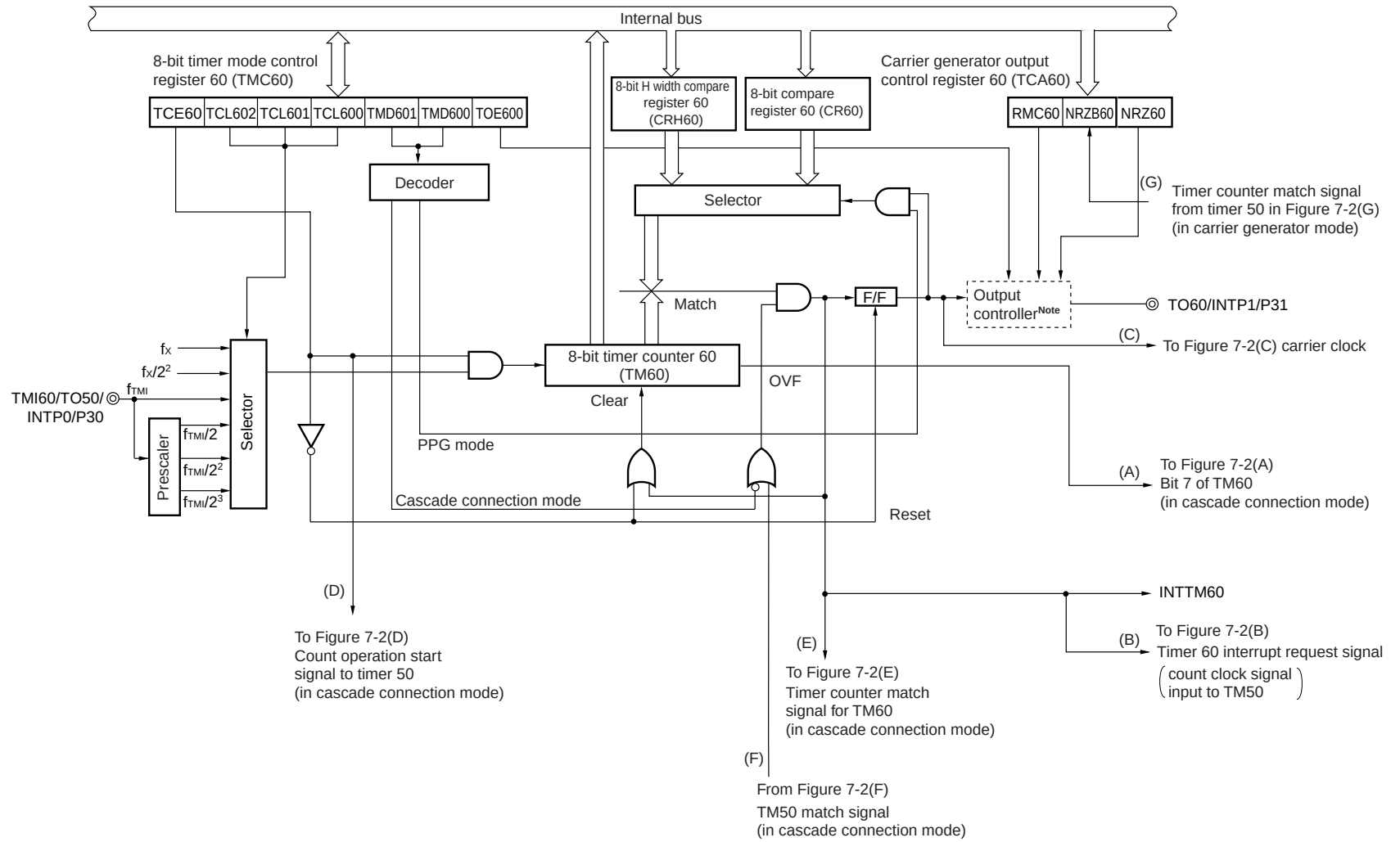
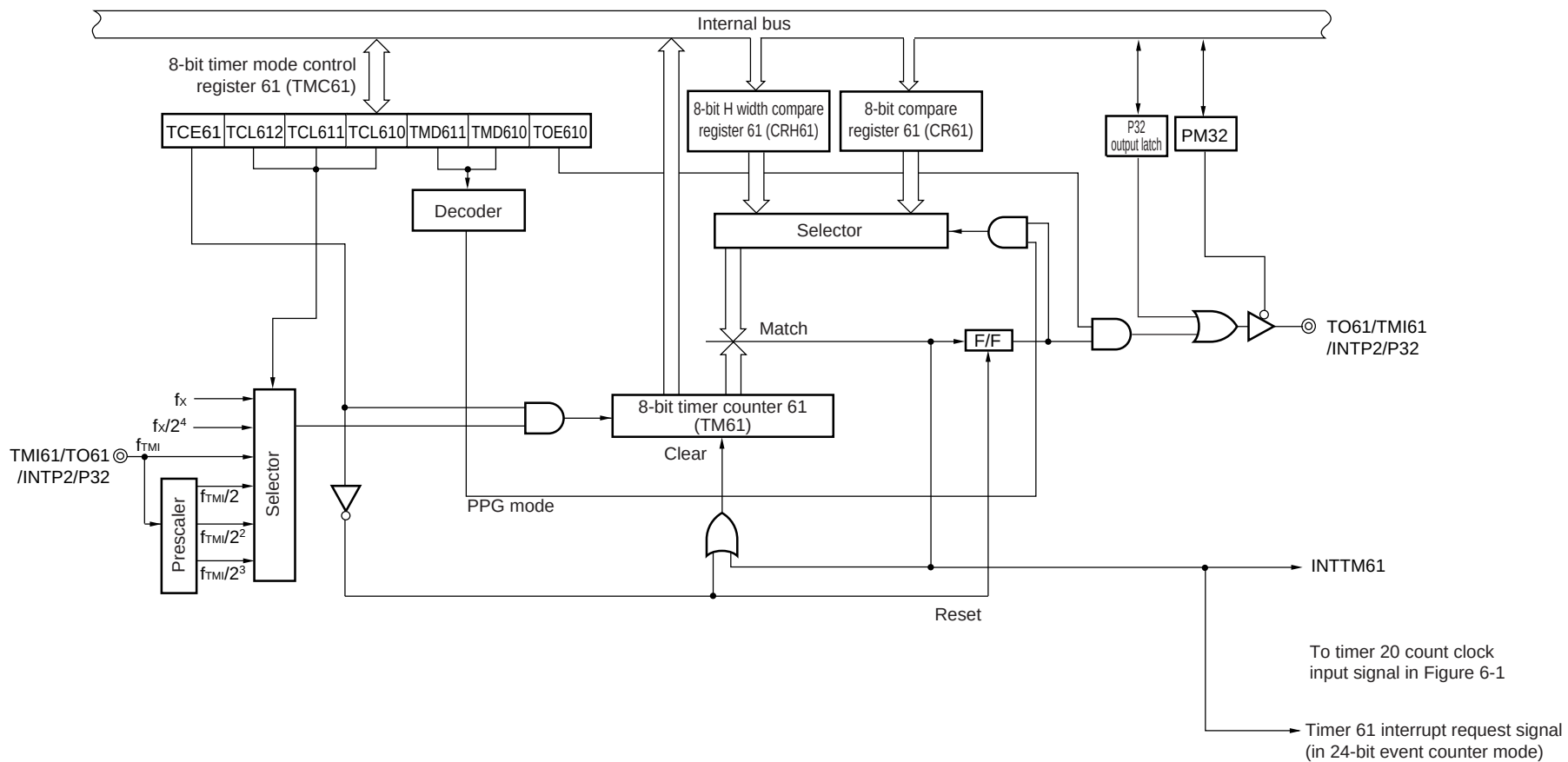
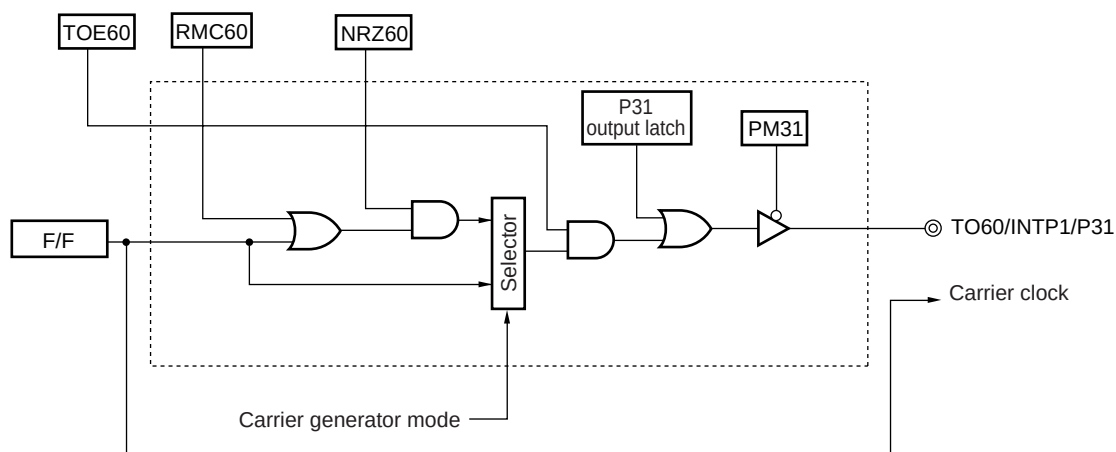


Figure 7-4. Block Diagram of Timer 61



★

Figure 7-5. Block Diagram of Output Controller (Timer 60)

**(1) 8-bit compare register 50 (CR50)**

This 8-bit register is used to continually compare the value set to CR50 with the count value in 8-bit timer counter 50 (TM50) and to issue an interrupt request (INTTM50) when a match occurs. In PWM mode, this register is used for high-level width setting.

CR50 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input makes this register undefined.

- Cautions**
1. In PWM output mode ( $\text{TMD501} = 1$ ,  $\text{TMD500} = 0$ ), if CR50 is rewritten while the timer is operating, a high level may be output for one clock cycle immediately after this rewrite operation. If this waveform may cause problems in the application, either <1> stop the timer when rewriting CR50, or <2> rewrite CR50 after TOE50 has been cleared.
  2. If both edges have been selected as the valid edge of the count clock in PWM output mode ( $\text{TEG50} = 1$ ), do not set CR50 to 00H, 01H, or FFH. Also, if the rising edge has been selected as the valid edge ( $\text{TEG50} = 0$ ), do not set CR50 to 00H.

**(2) 8-bit compare register 60 (CR60)**

When connected to TM50 via a cascade connection and using as a 16-bit timer/event counter, the interrupt request (INTTM60) occurs only when matches occur simultaneously between CR50 and TM50 and between CR60 and TM60 (INTTM50 is not generated).

★

In carrier generator mode and PPG output mode, the low-level width of timer output is set by writing a value to CR60.

CR60 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input makes this register undefined.

**(3) 8-bit compare register 61 (CR61)**

This 8-bit register is used to continually compare the value set to CR61 with the count value in 8-bit timer counter 61 (TM61) and issue an interrupt request (INTTM61) when a match occurs. In PPG output mode, this register is used for low-level width setting.

CR61 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input makes this register undefined.

**(4) 8-bit H width compare registers 60 and 61 (CRH60, CRH61)**

★

In carrier generator mode and PPG output mode, the high-level width of timer output is set by writing a value to CRH6n. This 8-bit register is used to continually compare the value set to CRH6n with the count value in 8-bit timer counter 6n (TM6n) and to issue an interrupt request (INTTM6n) when a match occurs.

CRH6n is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input makes this register undefined.

**Remark** n = 0, 1

**(5) 8-bit timer counters 50, 60, and 61(TM50, TM60, TM61)**

These are 8-bit registers that are used to count the count pulse.

TM50, TM60, and TM61 are read via an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets these register values to 00H.

TM50, TM60, and TM61 are cleared to 00H under the following conditions.

**(a) Stand-alone mode**

- After reset
- When TCEmn (bit 7 of 8-bit timer mode control register mn (TMCmn)) is cleared to 0
- When a match occurs between TMmn and CRmn
- When the TMmn count value overflows

**Remark** mn = 50, 60, 61

**(b) Cascade connection mode (TM50 and TM60 are simultaneously cleared to 00H)**

- After reset
- When the TCE60 flag is cleared to 0
- When matches occur simultaneously between TM50 and CR50 and between TM60 and CR60
- When the TM50 and TM60 count values overflow simultaneously

**(c) Carrier generator (TM60) and PPG output mode (TM60 and TM61)**

- After reset
- When the TCE6n flag is cleared to 0
- When a match occurs between TM6n and CR6n
- When a match occurs between TM6n and CRH6n
- When the TM6n count value overflows

**Remark** n = 0, 1

**(d) PWM output mode (TM50)**

- After reset
- When the TCE50 flag is cleared to 0
- When the TM50 count value overflows

### 7.3 Control Registers for 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61

8-bit timers 50, 60, and 61 are controlled by the following six registers.

- 8-bit timer mode control register 50 (TMC50)
- 8-bit timer mode control register 60 (TMC60)
- Carrier generator output control register 60 (TCA60)
- 8-bit timer mode control register 61 (TMC61)
- Port mode register 3 (PM3)
- Port 3

#### (1) 8-bit timer mode control register 50 (TMC50)

8-bit timer mode control register 50 (TMC50) is used to control the timer 50 count clock setting and the operation mode setting.

TMC50 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to 00H.

**Figure 7-6. Format of 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 50 (1/2)**

| Symbol | <7>   | <6>   | 5      | 4      | 3      | 2      | 1      | <0>   | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| TMC50  | TCE50 | TEG50 | TCL502 | TCL501 | TCL500 | TMD501 | TMD500 | TOE50 | FF4DH   | 00H         | R/W |

| TCE50 | Control of TM50 count operation <sup>Note 1</sup> |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | Clear TM50 count value and stop operation         |
| 1     | Start count operation                             |

| TEG50 | Selection of valid edge of TM50 count clock              |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | Count at the rising edge of the count clock              |
| 1     | Count at both edges of the count clock <sup>Note 2</sup> |

| TCL502           | TCL501 | TCL500 | Selection of timer 50 count clock                                                                          |
|------------------|--------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0                | 0      | 0      | $f_x$ (5.0 MHz)                                                                                            |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)                                                                                        |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)                                                                                       |
| 0                | 1      | 1      | $f_{XT}$ (32.768 kHz)                                                                                      |
| 1                | 0      | 0      | Timer 60 match signal (INTTM60)                                                                            |
| 1                | 0      | 1      | Carrier clock (in carrier generator mode) or timer 60 output signal (in other than carrier generator mode) |
| Other than above |        |        | Setting prohibited                                                                                         |

| TMD501           | TMD500 | TMD601 | TMD600 | Selection of operation mode for timer 50 <sup>Note 3</sup> |
|------------------|--------|--------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0                | 0      | ×      | 0      | Stand-alone mode (8-bit counter mode)                      |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | 1      | 16-bit counter mode (cascade connection mode)              |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | 1      | Carrier generator mode                                     |
| 1                | 0      | ×      | 0      | PWM output mode                                            |
| Other than above |        |        |        | Setting prohibited                                         |



**Figure 7-6. Format of 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 50 (2/2)**

| Symbol | <7>   | <6>   | 5      | 4      | 3      | 2      | 1      | <0>   | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| TMC50  | TCE50 | TEG50 | TCL502 | TCL501 | TCL500 | TMD501 | TMD500 | TOE50 | FF4DH   | 00H         | R/W |

| TOE50 | Control of timer output <sup>Note 4</sup> |
|-------|-------------------------------------------|
| 0     | Output disabled                           |
| 1     | Output enabled                            |

- Notes**
1. Since the count operation is controlled by TCE60 (bit 7 of TMC60) in cascade connection mode, any setting for TCE50 is ignored.
  2. Selection of both edges is valid only in PWM mode. In 8-bit counter mode or cascade connection mode, even if TEG50 is set to 1, counting occurs at the rising edge.
  3. The operation mode selection is set by a combination of the TMC50 and TMC60 registers.
  4. Since timer 50 output is disabled in cascade connection mode, set TOE50 to 0.

- Cautions**
1. In cascade connection mode, the timer 60 output signal is forcibly selected for the count clock.
  2. To manipulate TMC50, follow the setting procedure below.
    - <1> Set the TM50 count operation to stop.
    - <2> Set the operation mode and count clock.
    - <3> The count operation starts.

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{XT}$ : Subsystem clock oscillation frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz or  $f_{XT} = 32.768$  kHz.
  4.  $\times$ : don't care

## (2) 8-bit timer mode control register 60 (TMC60)

8-bit timer mode control register 60 (TMC60) is used to control the timer 60 count clock setting and the operation mode setting.

TMC60 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this register to 00H.

Figure 7-7. Format of 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 60

| Symbol | <7>   | 6 | 5      | 4      | 3      | 2      | 1      | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| TMC60  | TCE60 | 0 | TCL602 | TCL601 | TCL600 | TMD601 | TMD600 | TOE600 | FF4EH   | 00H         | R/W |

| TCE60 | Control of TM60 count operation <sup>Note 1</sup>                                                               |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | Clear TM60 count value and stop operation (the count value is also cleared for TM50 in cascade connection mode) |
| 1     | Start count operation (the count operation is also started for TM50 in cascade connection mode)                 |

| TCL602           | TCL601 | TCL600 | Selection of timer 60 count clock |
|------------------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------|
| 0                | 0      | 0      | $f_x$ (5.0 MHz)                   |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)              |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | $f_{TMI}$                         |
| 0                | 1      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2$                       |
| 1                | 0      | 0      | $f_{TMI}/2^2$                     |
| 1                | 0      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2^3$                     |
| Other than above |        |        | Setting prohibited                |

| TMD501           | TMD500 | TMD601 | TMD600 | Selection of operation mode for timer 60 <sup>Note 2</sup> |
|------------------|--------|--------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| ×                | 0      | 0      | 0      | Stand-alone mode (8-bit counter mode)                      |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | 1      | 16-bit counter mode (cascade connection mode)              |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | 1      | Carrier generator mode                                     |
| ×                | 0      | 1      | 0      | PPG output mode                                            |
| Other than above |        |        |        | Setting prohibited                                         |

| TOE600 | Control of timer output |
|--------|-------------------------|
| 0      | Output disabled         |
| 1      | Output enabled          |

- Notes**
1. Since the count operation is controlled by TCE60 (bit 7 of TMC60) in cascade connection mode, any setting for TCE50 is ignored.
  2. The operation mode selection is set by a combination of the TMC50 and TMC60 registers.

**Caution** To manipulate TMC60, follow the setting procedure below.

- <1> Set the TM60 count operation to stop.
- <2> Set the operation mode and count clock.
- <3> The count operation starts.

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{TMI}$ : External input clock frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.
  4. ×: don't care

**(3) Carrier generator output control register 60 (TCA60)**

This register is used to set the timer output data in carrier generator mode.

TCA60 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to 00H.

**Figure 7-8. Format of Carrier Generator Output Control Register 60**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | <2>   | <1>    | <0>   | Address | After reset | R/W                 |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|-------|--------|-------|---------|-------------|---------------------|
| TCA60  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | RMC60 | NRZB60 | NRZ60 | FF4FH   | 00H         | R/W <sup>Note</sup> |

|       |                                                                                                                                    |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RMC60 | Control of remote control output                                                                                                   |
| 0     | When NRZ60 = 1, a carrier pulse is output to TO60/INTP1/P31 pin<br>(when NRZ60 = 0, a low level is output to TO60/INTP1/P31 pin)   |
| 1     | When NRZ60 = 1, high-level signal is output to TO60/INTP1/P31 pin<br>(when NRZ60 = 0, a low level is output to TO60/INTP1/P31 pin) |

|        |                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NRZB60 | This is the bit that stores the next data to be output to NRZ60. When a match signal occurs (for a match with timer 50), the data is output to NRZ60. |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|       |                                                    |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------|
| NRZ60 | No return zero data                                |
| 0     | Output low-level signal (carrier clock is stopped) |
| 1     | Output carrier pulse or high-level signal          |

**Note** Bit 0 is write-only

- Cautions**
1. At the count start, input the values of the data reloaded from NRZB60 to NRZ60. For NRZB60, input the data required by the program in advance.
  2. When timer 60 output is disabled (TOE600 = 0), use of a 1-bit memory manipulation instruction for TCA60 is disabled (only an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction can be used).
  3. When timer 60 output is enabled (TOE600 = 1), a write operation to NRZ is invalid. However, while the timer 50 interrupt signal (INTTM50) is high level, the NRZB60 value is immediately transferred to NRZ60 if TCA60 is rewritten. Rewrite TCA60 after waiting for half a clock of the TM50 count clock during INTTM50 interrupt servicing.

**(4) 8-bit timer mode control register 61 (TMC61)**

8-bit timer mode control register 61 (TMC61) is used to control the timer 61 count clock setting and the operation mode setting.

TMC61 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to 00H.

**Figure 7-9. Format of 8-Bit Timer Mode Control Register 61**

| Symbol | <7>   | 6 | 5      | 4      | 3      | 2      | 1      | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| TMC61  | TCE61 | 0 | TCL612 | TCL611 | TCL610 | TMD611 | TMD610 | TOE610 | FF41H   | 00H         | R/W |

|       |                                           |
|-------|-------------------------------------------|
| TCE61 | Control of TM61 count operation           |
| 0     | Clear TM61 count value and stop operation |
| 1     | Start count operation                     |

|                  |        |        |                                                   |
|------------------|--------|--------|---------------------------------------------------|
| TCL612           | TCL611 | TCL610 | Selection of timer 61 count clock <sup>Note</sup> |
| 0                | 0      | 0      | $f_x$ (5.0 MHz)                                   |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)                               |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | $f_{TMI}$                                         |
| 0                | 1      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2$                                       |
| 1                | 0      | 0      | $f_{TMI}/2^2$                                     |
| 1                | 0      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2^3$                                     |
| Other than above |        |        | Setting prohibited                                |

|                  |        |                                                          |
|------------------|--------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| TMD611           | TMD610 | Selection of operation mode for timer 61 <sup>Note</sup> |
| 0                | 0      | Stand-alone mode (8-bit counter mode)                    |
| 1                | 0      | PPG output mode                                          |
| Other than above |        | Setting prohibited                                       |

|        |                         |
|--------|-------------------------|
| TOE610 | Control of timer output |
| 0      | Output disabled         |
| 1      | Output enabled          |

**Note** To set the register in 24-bit event counter mode, the external input clock and stand-alone mode need to be selected.

**Caution** To manipulate TMC61, follow the setting procedure below.

<1> Set the TM61 count operation to stop.

<2> Set the operation mode and count clock.

<3> The count operation starts.

**Remarks** 1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

2.  $f_{TMI}$ : External input clock frequency

3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**(5) Port mode register 3 (PM3)**

This register is used to set the I/O mode of port 3 in 1-bit units.

When using the P30/INTP0/TO50/TMI60 pin as a timer output (TO50), set PM30 and the P30 output latch to 0.

When used as a timer input (TMI60), set PM30 to 1.

When using the P31/INTP1/TO60 pin as a timer output (TO60), set PM31 and the P31 output latch to 0.

When using the P32/INTP2/TO61/TMI61 pin as a timer input (TMI61), set PM32 to 1. When used as a timer output (TO61), set PM32 and the P32 output latch to 0.

PM3 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to FFH.

**Figure 7-10. Format of Port Mode Register 3**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1    | 0    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|------|------|------|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| PM3    | 1 | 1 | 1 | PM34 | PM33 | PM32 | PM31 | PM30 | FF23H   | FFH         | R/W |

| PM3n | I/O mode of P3n pin<br>(n = 0 to 2) |
|------|-------------------------------------|
| 0    | Output mode (output buffer is on)   |
| 1    | Input mode (output buffer is off)   |

## 7.4 Operation of 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61

### 7.4.1 Operation as 8-bit timer counter

Timer 50, timer 60, and timer 61 can be independently used as 8-bit timer counters. The following modes can be used for the 8-bit timer counter.

- Interval timer with 8-bit resolution
- External event counter with 8-bit resolution (timer 60 and timer 61 only)
- Square wave output with 8-bit resolution

#### (1) Operation as interval timer with 8-bit resolution

The interval timer with 8-bit resolution repeatedly generates an interrupt at a time interval specified by the count value preset in 8-bit compare register nm (CRnm).

To operate 8-bit timer nm as an interval timer, settings must be made in the following sequence.

- <1> Disable operation of 8-bit timer counter nm (TMnm) (TCEnm = 0).
- <2> For timer 50, disable timer output of TO50 (TOE50 = 0).  
For timer 60, disable timer output of TO60 (TOE600 = 0).  
For timer 61, disable timer output of TO61 (TOE610 = 0).
- <3> Set a count value in CRnm.
- <4> Set the operation mode of timer nm to 8-bit timer counter mode  
(see Figures 7-6, 7-7, and 7-9).
- <5> Set the count clock for timer nm (see Figures 7-6, 7-7, and 7-9).
- <6> Enable the operation of TMnm (TCEnm = 1).

When the count value of 8-bit timer counter nm (TMnm) matches the value set in CRnm, TMnm is cleared to 00H and continues counting. At the same time, an interrupt request signal (INTTMnm) is generated.

Tables 7-3 to 7-5 show the interval time, and Figures 7-11 to 7-16 show the timing of the interval timer operation.

**Caution** Be sure to stop the timer operation before overwriting the count clock with different data.

**Remark** nm = 50, 60, 61

**Table 7-3. Interval Time of Timer 50**

| TCL502 | TCL501 | TCL500 | Minimum Interval Time                | Maximum Interval Time                             | Resolution                           |
|--------|--------|--------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)                | $2^8/f_x$ (51.2 $\mu$ s)                          | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)                |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | $2^3/f_x$ (1.6 $\mu$ s)              | $2^{11}/f_x$ (409.6 $\mu$ s)                      | $2^3/f_x$ (1.6 $\mu$ s)              |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | $2^7/f_x$ (25.6 $\mu$ s)             | $2^{15}/f_x$ (6.55 ms)                            | $2^7/f_x$ (25.6 $\mu$ s)             |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | $1/f_{XT}$ (30.5 $\mu$ s)            | $2^8/f_{XT}$ (7.81 ms)                            | $1/f_{XT}$ (30.5 $\mu$ s)            |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | Input cycle of timer 60 match signal | Input cycle of timer 60 match signal $\times 2^8$ | Input cycle of timer 60 match signal |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | Input cycle of timer 60 output       | Input cycle of timer 60 output $\times 2^8$       | Input cycle of timer 60 output       |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{XT}$ : Subsystem clock oscillation frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz or  $f_{XT} = 32.768$  kHz.

**Table 7-4. Interval Time of Timer 60**

| TCL602 | TCL601 | TCL600 | Minimum Interval Time     | Maximum Interval Time                  | Resolution                |
|--------|--------|--------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^8/f_x$ (51.2 $\mu$ s)               | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | $2^2/f_x$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   | $2^{10}/f_x$ (204 $\mu$ s)             | $2^2/f_x$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle $\times 2^8$     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle $\times 2^8$   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle $\times 2^8$ | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle $\times 2^8$ | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle |

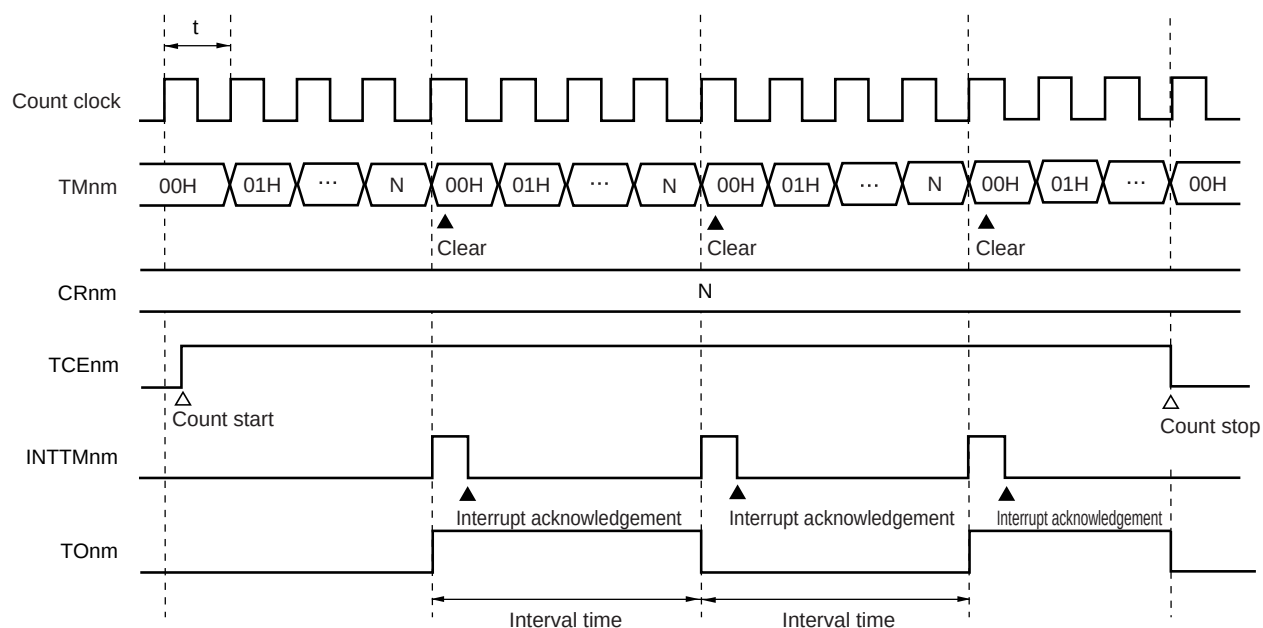
- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{TMI}$ : External input clock frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**Table 7-5. Interval Time of Timer 61**

| TCL612 | TCL611 | TCL610 | Minimum Interval Time     | Maximum Interval Time                  | Resolution                |
|--------|--------|--------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^8/f_x$ (51.2 $\mu$ s)               | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | $2^4/f_x$ (3.2 $\mu$ s)   | $2^{12}/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s)             | $2^4/f_x$ (3.2 $\mu$ s)   |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle $\times 2^8$     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle $\times 2^8$   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle $\times 2^8$ | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle $\times 2^8$ | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle |

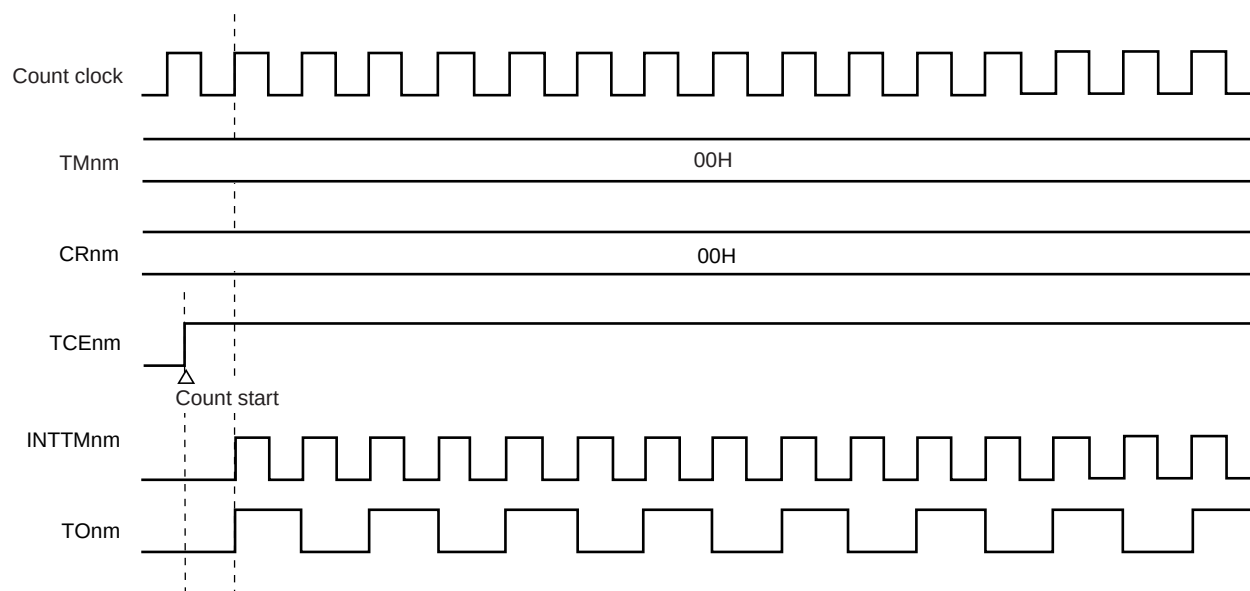
- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{TMI}$ : External input clock frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

★ **Figure 7-11. Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (Basic Operation)**



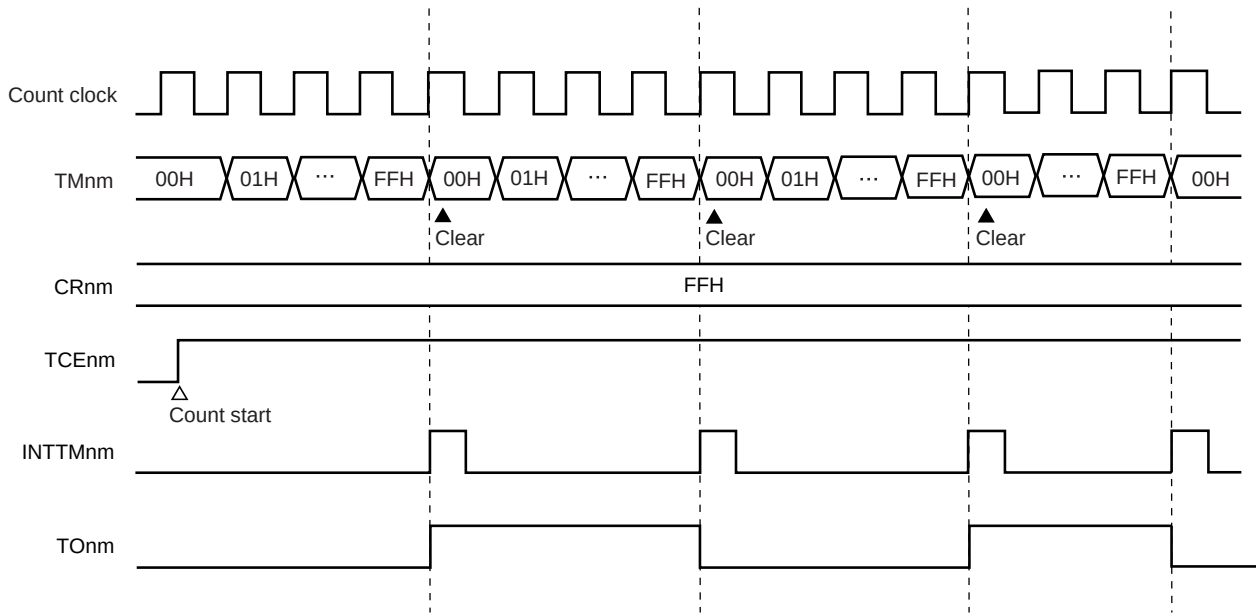
- Remarks**
1. Interval time =  $(N + 1) \times t$ ;  $N = 00H$  to  $FFH$
  2.  $nm = 50, 60, 61$

**Figure 7-12. Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (When CRnm Is Set to 00H)**



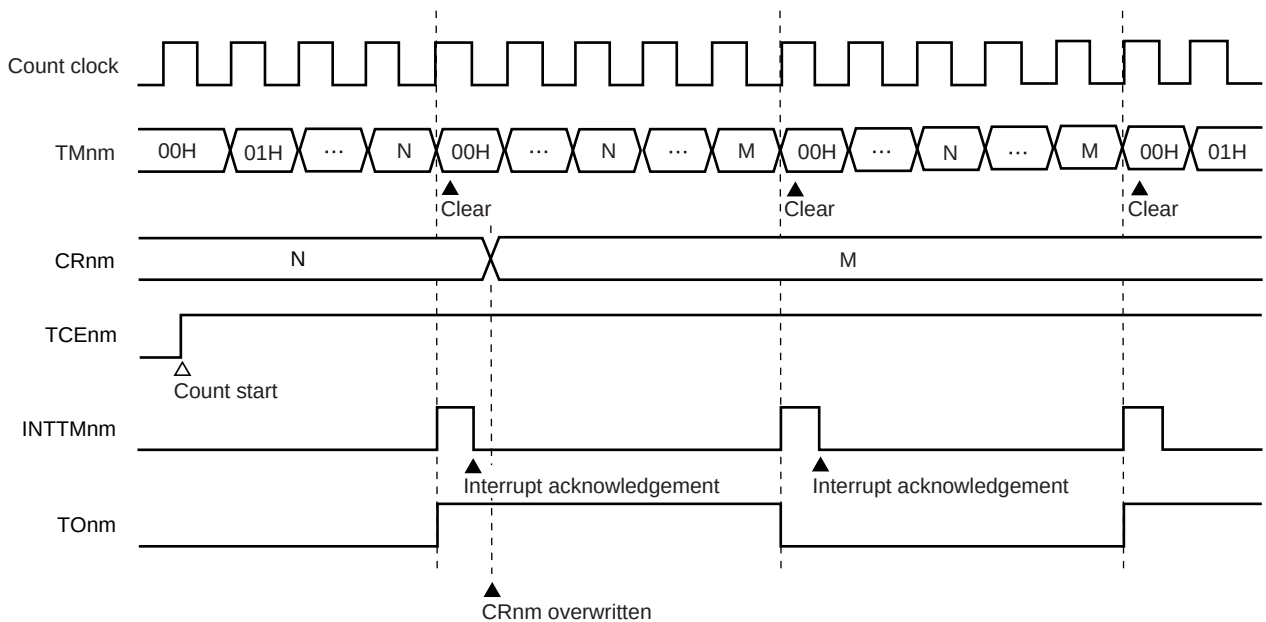
**Remark**  $nm = 50, 60, 61$



★ **Figure 7-13. Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (When CRnm Is Set to FFH)**

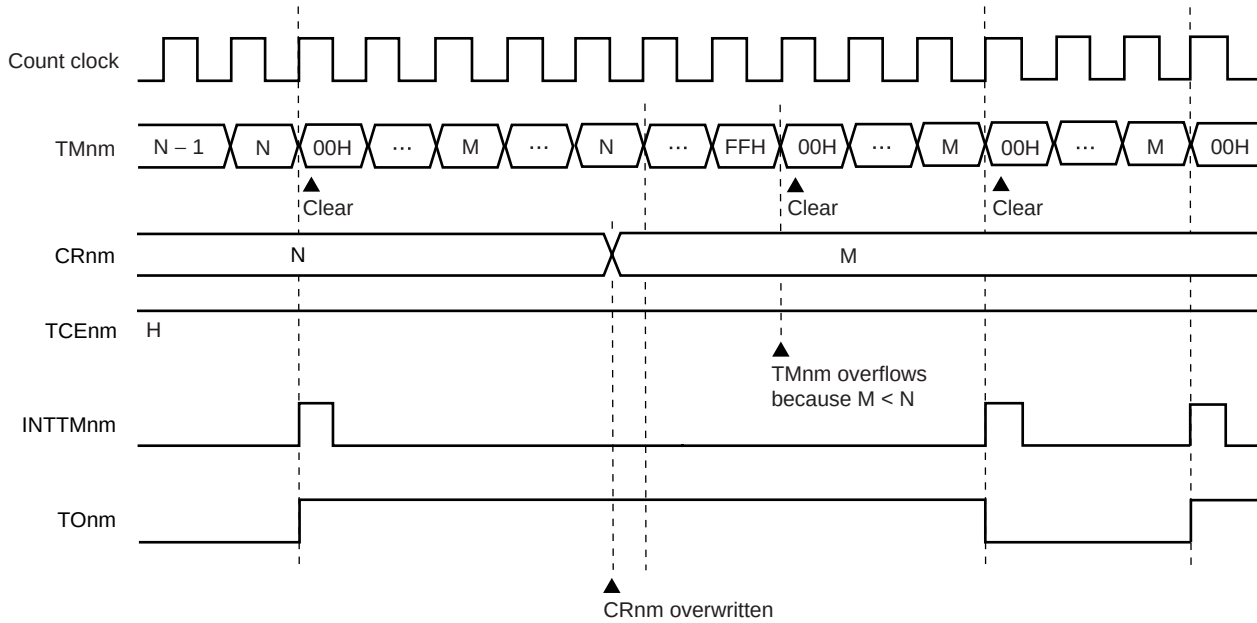
**Remark** nm = 50, 60, 61

**Figure 7-14. Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution  
(When CRnm Changes from N to M ( $N < M$ ))**



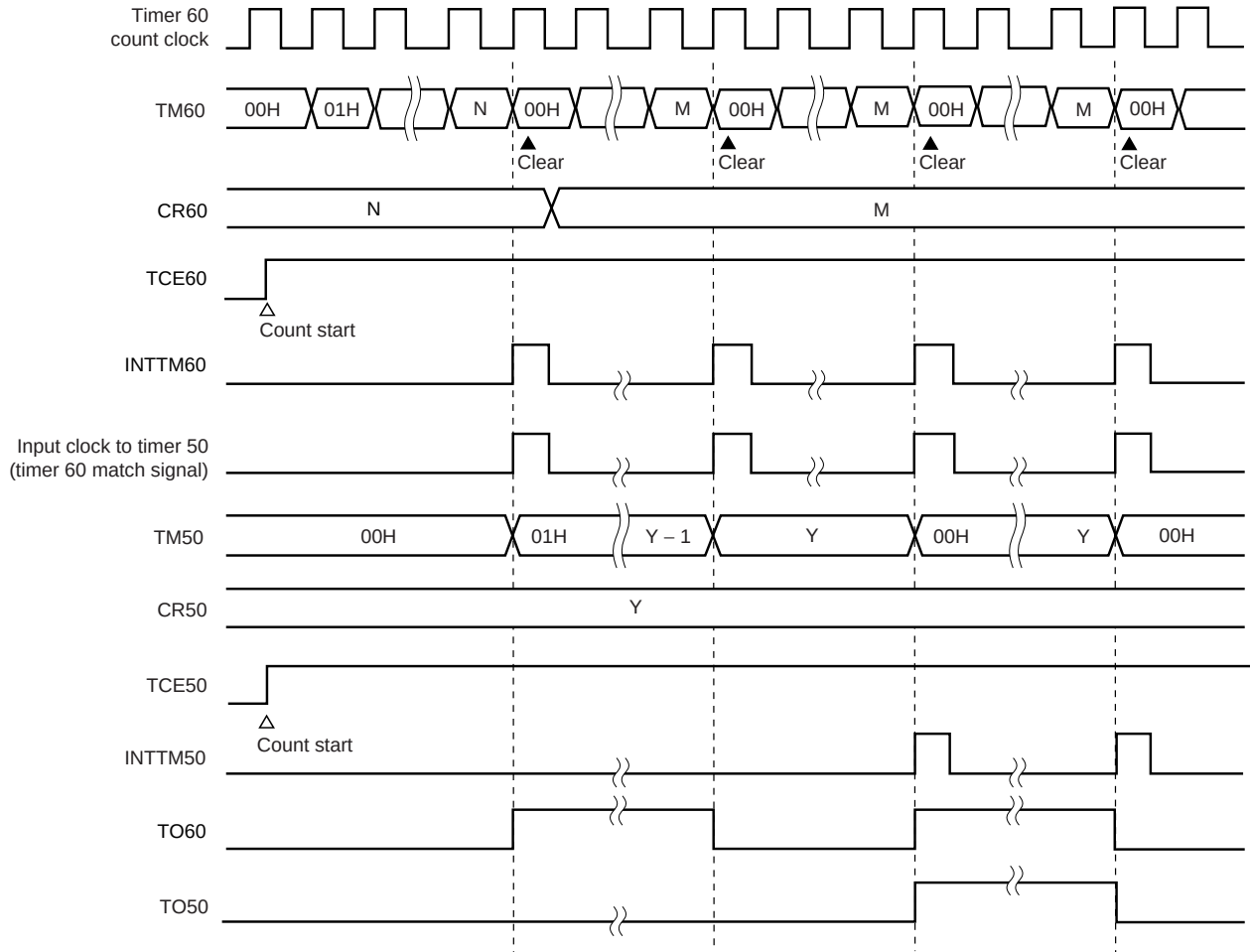
**Remark**  $00H \leq N < M \leq FFH$   
nm = 50, 60, 61

**Figure 7-15. Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution  
(When CRnm Changes from N to M (N > M))**



**Remark**  $00H \leq M < N \leq FFH$   
nm = 50, 60, 61

**Figure 7-16. Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution  
(When Timer 60 Match Signal Is Selected for Timer 50 Count Clock)**



**Remark**  $00H \leq N < M \leq FFH$   
 $Y = 00H$  to  $FFH$

**(2) Operation as external event counter with 8-bit resolution (timer 60 and timer 61 only)**

The external event counter counts the number of external clock pulses input to the TMI6m pin by using 8-bit timer counter 6m (TM6m).

To operate timer 6m as an external event counter, settings must be made in the following sequence.

- <1> Disable operation of 8-bit timer counter 6m (TM6m) (TCE6m = 0).
- <2> Disable timer output of TO6m (TOE6m0 = 0).
- <3> When using timer 60, set P30 to input mode (PM30 = 1).  
When using timer 61, set P32 to input mode (PM32 = 1).
- <4> Select the external input clock for timer 6m (see Figures 7-7 and 7-9).
- <5> Set the operation mode of timer 6m to 8-bit timer counter mode (see Figures 7-7 and 7-9).
- <6> Set a count value in CR6m.
- <7> Enable the operation of TM6m (TCE6m = 1).

Each time the valid edge is input, the value of TM6m is incremented.

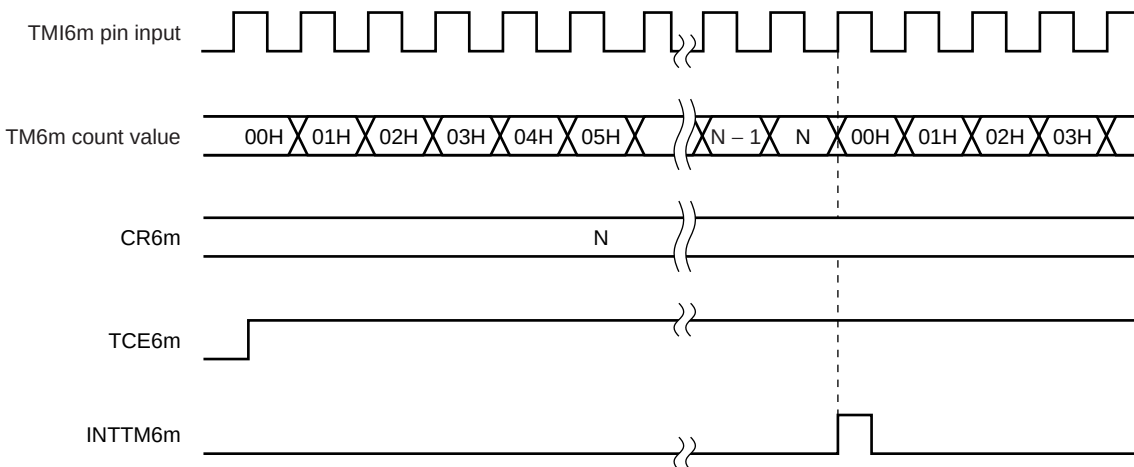
When the count value of TM6m matches the value set in CR6m, TM6m is cleared to 00H and continues counting. At the same time, an interrupt request signal (INTTM6m) is generated.

Figure 7-17 shows the timing of the external event counter operation.

**Caution** Be sure to stop the timer operation before overwriting the count clock with different data.

**Remark** m = 0, 1

★ **Figure 7-17. Timing of Operation of External Event Counter with 8-Bit Resolution**



**Remark** N = 00H to FFH

**(3) Operation as square-wave output with 8-bit resolution**

Square waves of any frequency can be output at an interval specified by the value preset in 8-bit compare register nm (CRnm).

To operate timer nm for square-wave output, settings must be made in the following sequence.

- <1> When using timer 50, set P30 to output mode (PM30 = 0) and the P30 output latch to 0, respectively.  
When using timer 60, set P31 to output mode (PM31 = 0) and the P31 output latch to 0, respectively.  
When using timer 61, set P32 to output mode (PM32 = 0) and the P32 output latch to 0, respectively.
- <2> Disable operation of timer counter nm (TMnm) (TCEnm = 0).
- <3> Set a count clock for timer nm (see **Figures 7-6, 7-7 and 7-9**)
- <4> For timer 50, enable timer output of TO50 (TOE50 = 1).  
For timer 60, enable timer output of TO60 (TOE600 = 1).  
For timer 61, enable timer output of TO61 (TOE610 = 1).
- <5> Set a count value in CRnm.
- <6> Enable the operation of TMnm (TCEnm0 = 1).

When the count value of TMnm matches the value set in CRnm, the TOnm pin output will be inverted. Through application of this mechanism, square waves of any frequency can be output. As soon as a match occurs, TMnm is cleared to 00H and continues counting. At the same time, an interrupt request signal (INTTMnm) is generated.

The square-wave output is cleared to 0 by setting TCEnm to 0.

Tables 7-6 to 7-8 show the square-wave output range, and Figure 7-18 shows the timing of square-wave output.

**Caution** Be sure to stop the timer operation before overwriting the count clock with different data.

**Remark** nm = 50, 60, 61

**Table 7-6. Square-Wave Output Range of Timer 50**

| TCL502 | TCL501 | TCL500 | Minimum Pulse Width                  | Maximum Pulse Width                               | Resolution                           |
|--------|--------|--------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)                | $2^8/f_x$ (51.2 $\mu$ s)                          | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)                |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | $2^3/f_x$ (1.6 $\mu$ s)              | $2^{11}/f_x$ (409.6 $\mu$ s)                      | $2^3/f_x$ (1.6 $\mu$ s)              |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | $2^7/f_x$ (25.6 $\mu$ s)             | $2^{15}/f_x$ (6.55 ms)                            | $2^7/f_x$ (25.6 $\mu$ s)             |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | $1/f_{XT}$ (30.5 $\mu$ s)            | $2^8/f_{XT}$ (7.81 ms)                            | $1/f_{XT}$ (30.5 $\mu$ s)            |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | Input cycle of timer 60 match signal | Input cycle of timer 60 match signal $\times 2^8$ | Input cycle of timer 60 match signal |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | Input cycle of timer 60 output       | Input cycle of timer 60 output $\times 2^8$       | Input cycle of timer 60 output       |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{XT}$ : Subsystem clock oscillation frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz or  $f_{XT} = 32.768$  kHz.

**Table 7-7. Square-Wave Output Range of Timer 60**

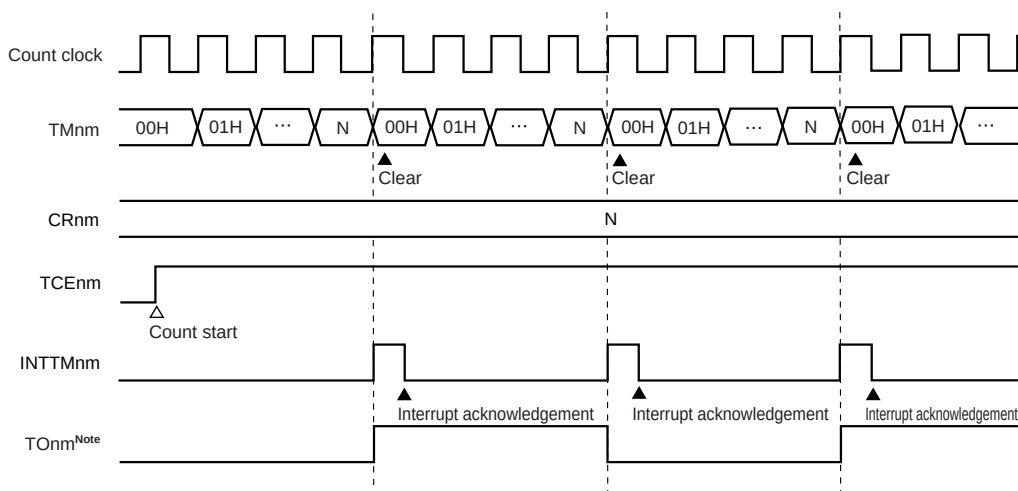
| TCL602 | TCL601 | TCL600 | Minimum Pulse Width       | Maximum Pulse Width                    | Resolution                |
|--------|--------|--------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^8/f_x$ (51.2 $\mu$ s)               | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | $2^2/f_x$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   | $2^{10}/f_x$ (204 $\mu$ s)             | $2^2/f_x$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle $\times 2^8$     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle $\times 2^8$   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle $\times 2^8$ | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle $\times 2^8$ | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{TMI}$ : External input clock frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**Table 7-8. Square-Wave Output Range of Timer 61**

| TCL612 | TCL611 | TCL610 | Minimum Pulse Width       | Maximum Pulse Width                    | Resolution                |
|--------|--------|--------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^8/f_x$ (51.2 $\mu$ s)               | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | $2^4/f_x$ (3.2 $\mu$ s)   | $2^{12}/f_x$ (819 $\mu$ s)             | $2^4/f_x$ (3.2 $\mu$ s)   |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle $\times 2^8$     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle $\times 2^8$   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle $\times 2^8$ | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle $\times 2^8$ | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{TMI}$ : External input clock frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**Figure 7-18. Timing of Square-Wave Output with 8-Bit Resolution**

**Note** The initial value of TOnm is low level when output is enabled.

**Remark** N = 00H to FFH  
nm = 50, 60, 61

### 7.4.2 Operation as 16-bit timer counter

Timer 50 and timer 60 can be used as a 16-bit timer counter using cascade connection. In this case, 8-bit timer counter 50 (TM50) is the higher 8 bits and 8-bit timer counter 60 (TM60) is the lower 8 bits. 8-bit timer 60 controls reset and clear.

The following modes can be used for the 16-bit timer counter.

- Interval timer with 16-bit resolution
- External event counter with 16-bit resolution
- Square-wave output with 16-bit resolution

#### (1) Operation as interval timer with 16-bit resolution

The interval timer with 16-bit resolution repeatedly generates an interrupt at a time interval specified by the count value preset in 8-bit compare register 50 (CR50) and 8-bit compare register 60 (CR60).

To operate as an interval timer with 16-bit resolution, settings must be made in the following sequence.

- <1> Disable operation of 8-bit timer counter 50 (TM50) and 8-bit timer counter 60 (TM60) (TCE50 = 0, TCE60 = 0).
- <2> Disable timer output of TO60 (TOE600 = 0).
- <3> Set the count clock for timer 60 (see Figure 7-7).
- <4> Set the operation mode of timer 50 and timer 60 to 16-bit timer counter mode (see Figures 7-6 and 7-7).
- <5> Set a count value in CR50 and CR60.
- <6> Enable the operation of TM50 and TM60 (TCE60 = 1<sup>Note</sup>).

**Note** Start and clear of the timer in the 16-bit timer counter mode are controlled by TCE60 (the value of TCE50 is invalid).

When the count values of TM50 and TM60 match the values set in CR50 and CR60 respectively, both TM50 and TM60 are simultaneously cleared to 00H and continue counting. At the same time, an interrupt request signal (INTTM60) is generated (INTTM50 is not generated).

Table 7-9 shows interval time, and Figure 7-19 shows the timing of the interval timer operation.

- Cautions**
1. Be sure to stop the timer operation before overwriting the count clock with different data.
  2. In the 16-bit timer counter mode, TO50 cannot be used. Be sure to set TOE50 = 0 to disable TO50 output.

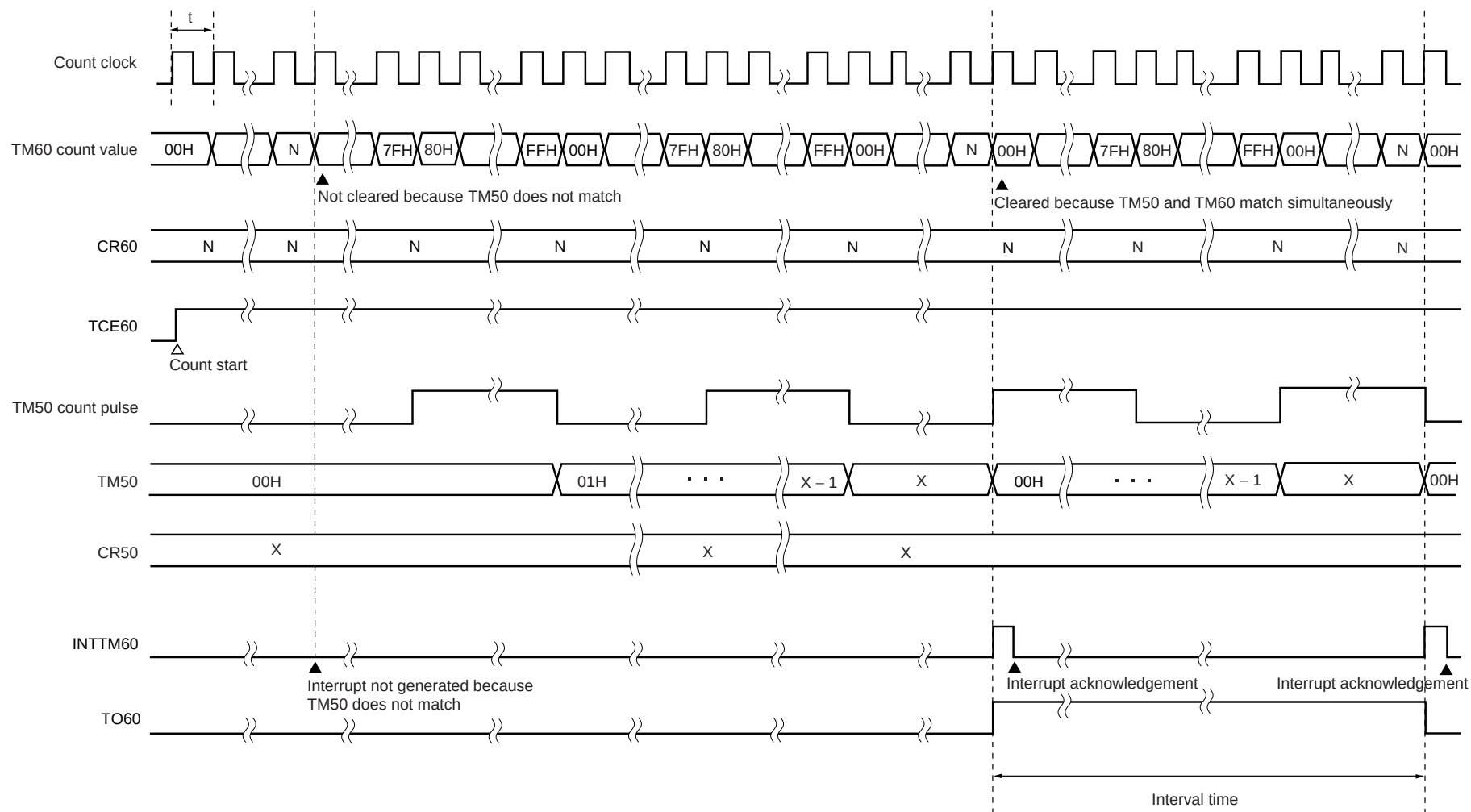
**Table 7-9. Interval Time with 16-Bit Resolution**

| TCL602 | TCL601 | TCL600 | Minimum Interval Time     | Maximum Interval Time                     | Resolution                |
|--------|--------|--------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^{16}/f_x$ (13.1 ms)                    | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | $2^2/f_x$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   | $2^{18}/f_x$ (52.4 ms)                    | $2^2/f_x$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle $\times 2^{16}$     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle $\times 2^{16}$   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle $\times 2^{16}$ | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle $\times 2^{16}$ | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{TMI}$ : External input clock frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.



Figure 7-19. Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 16-Bit Resolution



**Remark** Interval time =  $(256X + N + 1) \times t$ :  $X = 00H$  to  $FFH$ ,  $N = 00H$  to  $FFH$

**(2) Operation as external event counter with 16-bit resolution**

The external event counter counts the number of external clock pulses input to the TMI60 pin by TM50 and TM60.

To operate as an external event counter with 16-bit resolution, settings must be made in the following sequence.

- <1> Disable operation of TM50 and TM60 (TCE50 = 0, TCE60 = 0).
- <2> Disable timer output of TO60 (TOE600 = 0).
- <3> Set P31 to input mode (PM31 = 1).
- <4> Select the external input clock for timer 60 (see Figure 7-7).
- <5> Set the operation mode of timer 50 and timer 60 to 16-bit timer counter mode (see Figures 7-6 and 7-7).
- <6> Set a count value in CR50 and CR60.
- <7> Enable the operation of TM50 and TM60 (TCE60 = 1<sup>Note</sup>).

**Note** Start and clear of the timer in the 16-bit timer counter mode are controlled by TCE60 (the value of TCE50 is invalid).

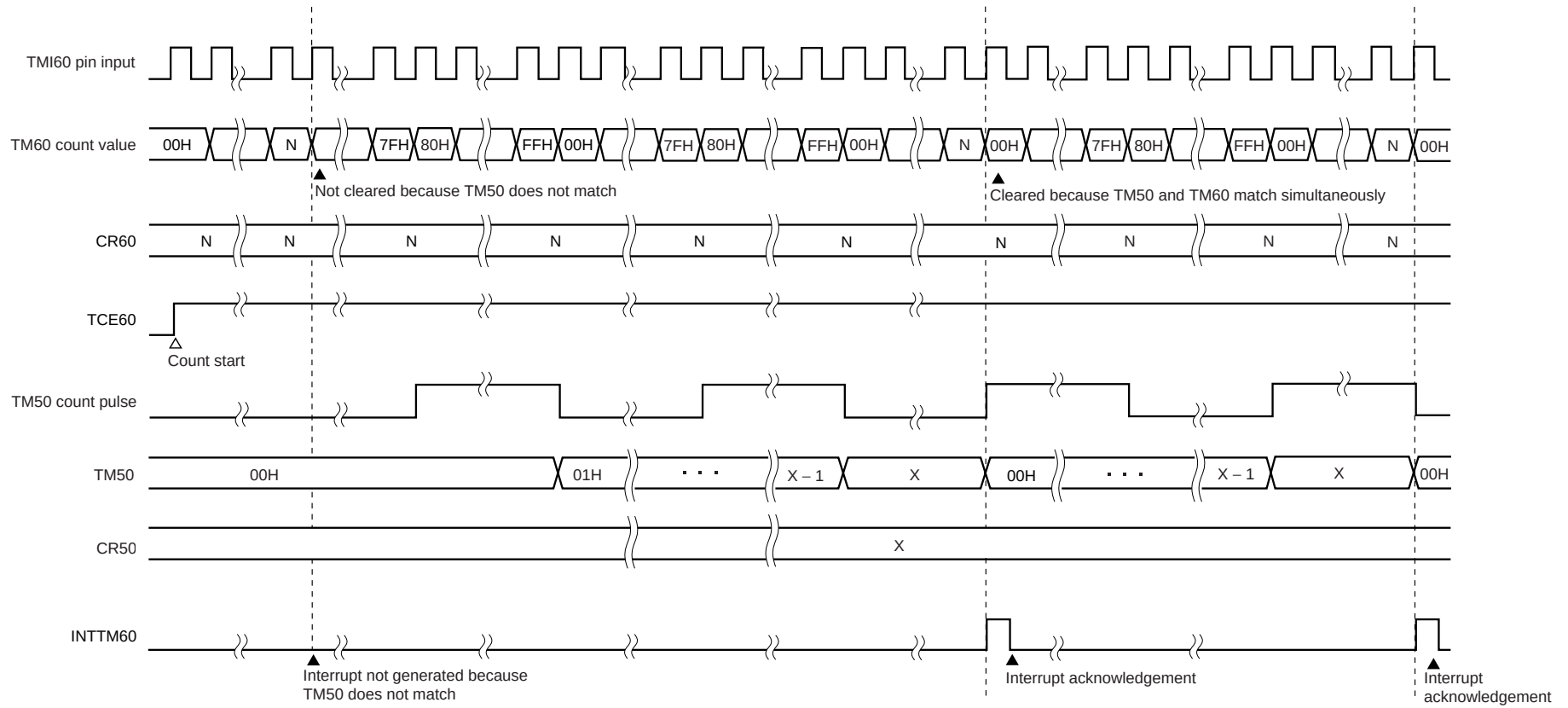
Each time the valid edge is input, the values of TM50 and TM60 are incremented.

When the count values of TM50 and TM60 simultaneously match the values set in CR50 and CR60 respectively, both TM50 and TM60 are cleared to 00H and continue counting. At the same time, an interrupt request signal (INTTM60) is generated (INTTM50 is not generated).

Figure 7-20 shows the timing of the external event counter operation.

**Caution** Be sure to stop the timer operation before overwriting the count clock with different data.

Figure 7-20. Timing of External Event Counter Operation with 16-Bit Resolution



**Remark** X = 00H to FFH, N = 00H to FFH

**(3) Operation as square-wave output with 16-bit resolution**

Square waves of any frequency can be output at an interval specified by the count value preset in CR50 and CR60.

To operate as a square-wave output with 16-bit resolution, settings must be made in the following sequence.

- <1> Disable operation of TM50 and TM60 (TCE50 = 0, TCE60 = 0).
- <2> Disable output of TO50 and TO60 (TOE50 = 0, TOE600 = 0).
- <3> Set a count clock for timer 60. (see Figure 7-7)
- <4> Set P31 to the output mode (PM31 = 0), set the P31 output latch to 0, and set TO60 to output enable (TOE600 = 1). (Use of TO50 is prohibited.)
- <5> Set the operation mode of timer 50 and timer 60 to 16-bit timer counter mode (see Figures 7-6 and 7-7).
- <6> Set count values in CR50 and CR60.
- <7> Enable the operation of TM60 (TCE60 = 1<sup>Note</sup>).

**Note** Start and clear of the timer in the 16-bit timer counter mode are controlled by TCE60 (the value of TCE50 is invalid).

When the count values of TM50 and TM60 simultaneously match the values set in CR50 and CR60 respectively, the TO60 pin output will be inverted. Through application of this mechanism, square waves of any frequency can be output. As soon as a match occurs, TM50 and TM60 are cleared to 00H and continue counting. At the same time, an interrupt request signal (INTTM60) is generated (INTTM50 is not generated). The square-wave output is cleared to 0 by setting TCE60 to 0.

Table 7-10 shows the square-wave output range, and Figure 7-21 shows timing of square-wave output.

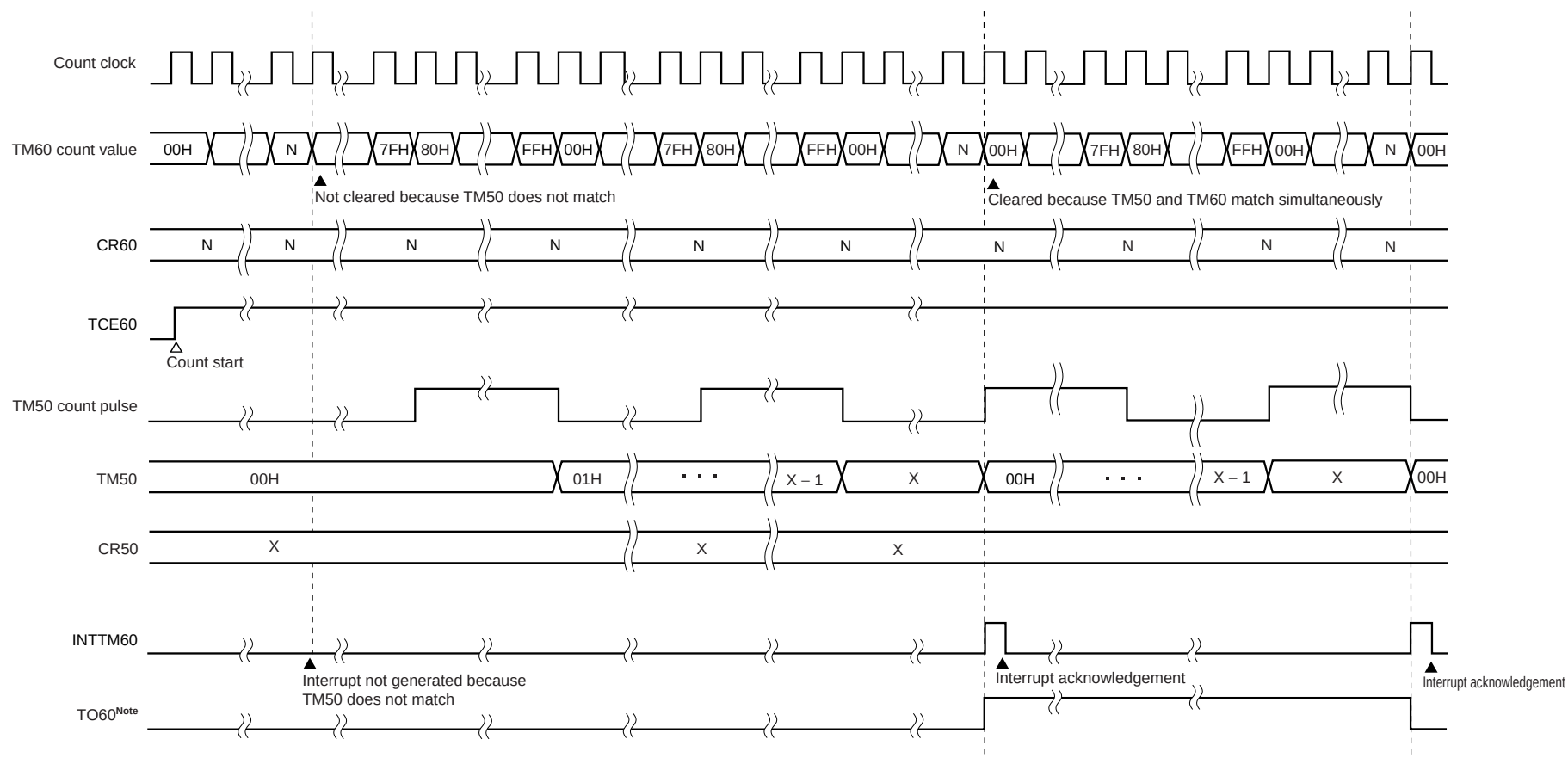
- Cautions**
1. Be sure to stop the timer operation before overwriting the count clock with different data.
  2. In the 16-bit timer counter mode, TO50 cannot be used. Be sure to set TOE50 = 0 to disable TO50 output.

**Table 7-10. Square-Wave Output Range with 16-Bit Resolution**

| TCL602 | TCL601 | TCL600 | Minimum Pulse Width       | Maximum Pulse Width                       | Resolution                |
|--------|--------|--------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     | $2^{16}/f_x$ (13.1 ms)                    | $1/f_x$ (0.2 $\mu$ s)     |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | $2^2/f_x$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   | $2^{18}/f_x$ (52.4 ms)                    | $2^2/f_x$ (0.8 $\mu$ s)   |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle $\times 2^{16}$     | $f_{TMI}$ input cycle     |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle $\times 2^{16}$   | $f_{TMI}/2$ input cycle   |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle $\times 2^{16}$ | $f_{TMI}/2^2$ input cycle |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle $\times 2^{16}$ | $f_{TMI}/2^3$ input cycle |

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $f_{TMI}$ : External input clock frequency
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

Figure 7-21. Timing of Square-Wave Output with 16-Bit Resolution



**Note** The initial value of TO60 is low level when output is enabled.

**Remark** X = 00H to FFH, N = 00H to FFH

### 7.4.3 Operation as carrier generator

An arbitrary carrier clock generated by TM60 can be output in the cycle set in TM50.

To operate timer 50 and timer 60 as carrier generators, settings must be made in the following sequence.

- <1> Disable operation of TM50 and TM60 ( $TCE50 = 0$ ,  $TCE60 = 0$ ).
- <2> Disable timer output of TO50 and TO60 ( $TOE50 = 0$ ,  $TOE600 = 0$ ).
- <3> Set count values in CR50, CR60, and CRH60.
- <4> Set the operation mode of timer 50 and timer 60 to carrier generator mode (see Figures 7-6 and 7-7).
- <5> Set the count clock for timer 50 and timer 60.
- <6> Set remote control output to carrier pulse ( $RMC60$  (bit 2 of carrier generator output control register 60 ( $TCA60$ )) = 0).  
Input the required value to NRZB60 (bit 1 of  $TCA60$ ) by program.  
Input a value to NRZ60 (bit 0 of  $TCA60$ ) before it is reloaded from NRZB60.
- <7> Set P31 to the output mode ( $PM31 = 0$ ), set the P31 output latch to 0, and set TO60 to output enable ( $TOE600 = 1$ ).
- <8> Enable the operation of TM50 and TM60 ( $TCE50 = 1$ ,  $TCE60 = 1$ ).
- ★ <9> When the value of NRZB60 is transferred to NRZ60, input the value to be transferred to NRZ60 next time to NRZB60 after INTTM50 falling.
- <10> Generate the desired carrier signal by repeating <9>.

The operation of the carrier generator is as follows.

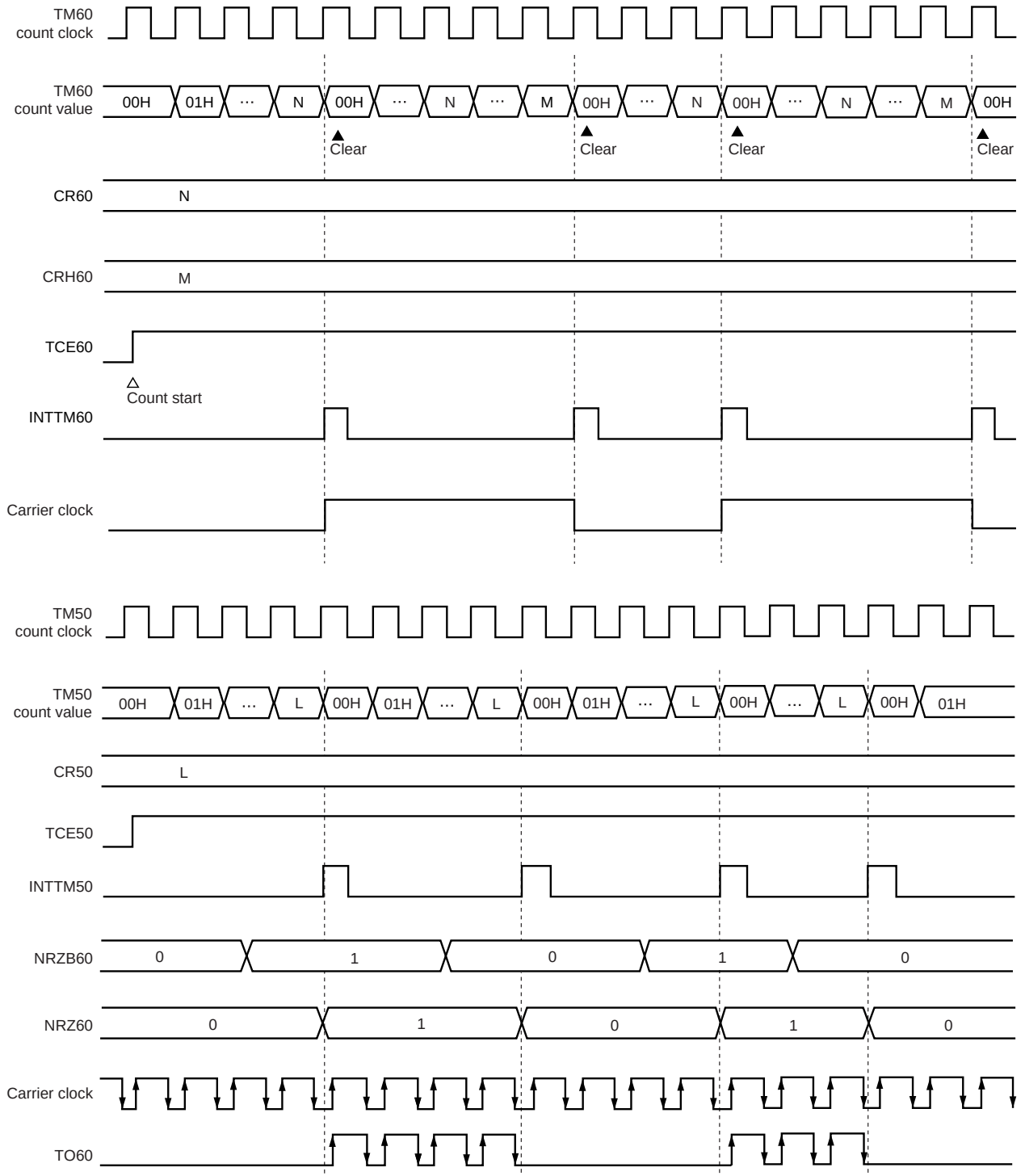
- <1> When the count value of TM60 matches the value set in CR60, an interrupt request signal (INTTM60) is generated and output of timer 60 is inverted, which makes the compare register switch from CR60 to CRH60.
- <2> After that, when the count value of TM60 matches the value set in CRH60, an interrupt request signal (INTTM60) is generated and output of timer 60 is inverted again, which makes the compare register switch from CRH60 to CR60.
- <3> The carrier clock is generated by repeating <1> and <2> above.
- <4> When the count value of TM50 matches the value set in CR50, an interrupt request signal (INTTM50) is generated. The rising edge of INTTM50 is the data reload signal of NRZB60 and is transferred to NRZ60.
- <5> When NRZ60 is 1, a carrier clock is output from the TO60 pin.

- Cautions**
1. While timer 60 output is disabled ( $TOE600 = 0$ ),  $TCA60$  cannot be set with a 1-bit memory manipulation instruction. Be sure to use an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.
  2. When setting the carrier generator operation again after stopping it once, reset NRZB60 because the previous value is not retained. In this case also a 1-bit memory manipulation instruction cannot be used while timer 60 output is disabled ( $TOE600 = 0$ ). Be sure to use an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.
  3. When timer 60 output is enabled ( $TOE600 = 1$ ), a write operation to NRZ60 is invalid. However, while the timer 50 interrupt signal (INTTM50) is high level, the NRZB60 value is immediately transferred to NRZ60 if  $TCA60$  is rewritten. Rewrite  $TCA60$  after waiting for half a clock of the TM50 count clock during INTTM50 interrupt servicing.

Figures 7-22 to 7-24 show the operation timing of the carrier generator.

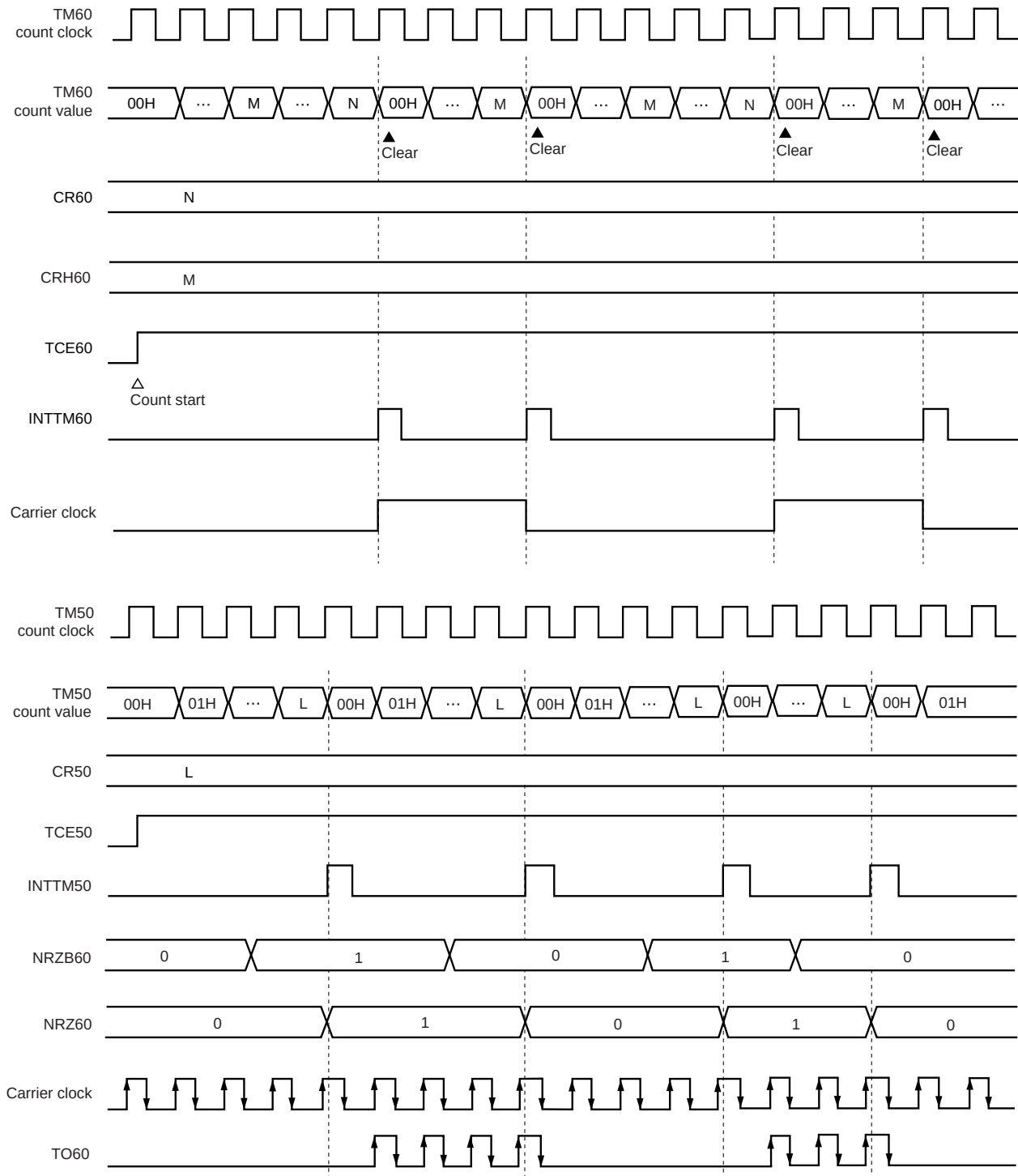
★

**Figure 7-22. Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = N, CRH60 = M (M > N))**



**Remark** 00H ≤ N < M ≤ FFH, L = 00H to FFH

★ **Figure 7-23. Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = N, CRH60 = M (M < N))**

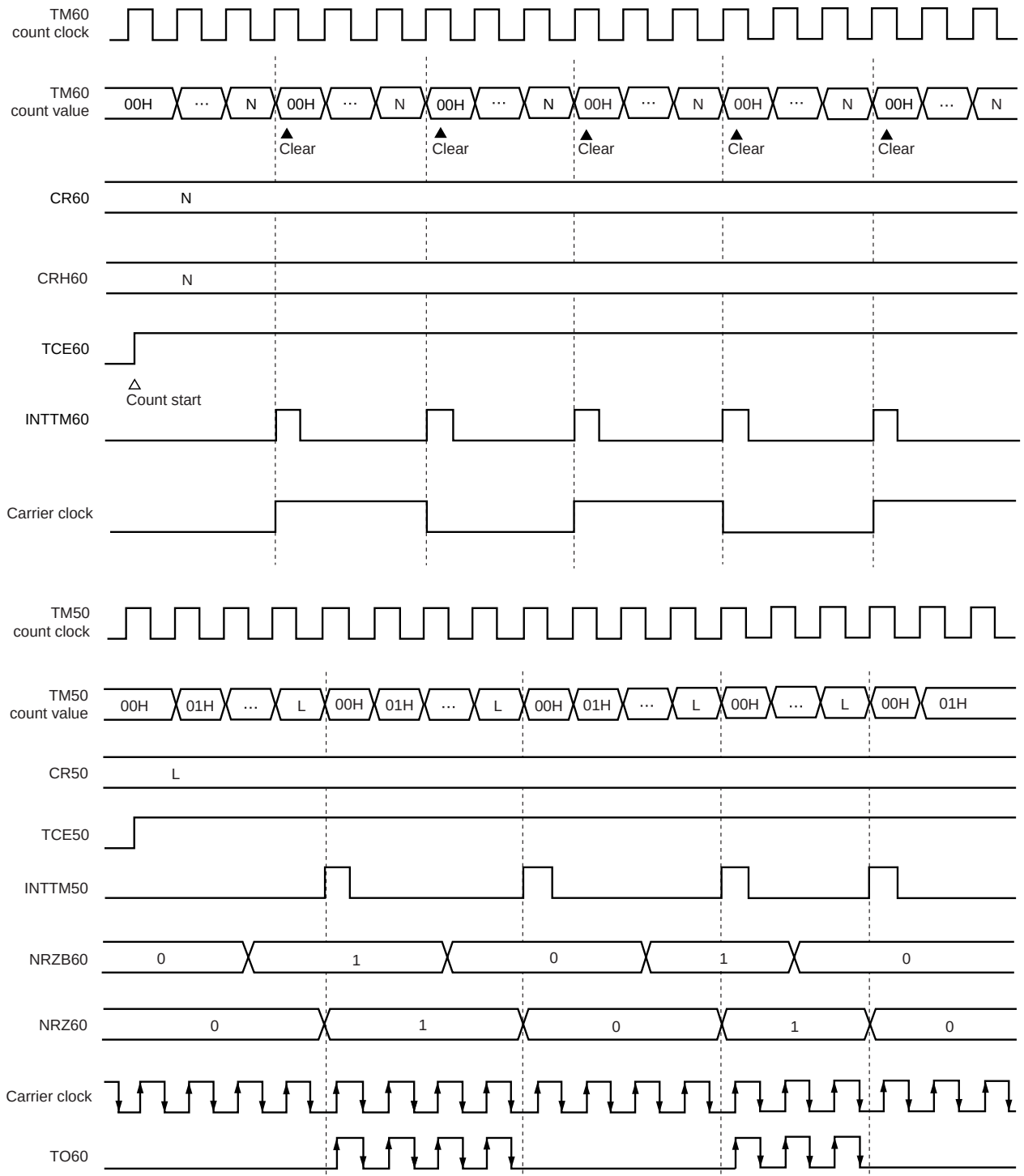


**Remark** 00H ≤ M < N ≤ FFH, L = 00H to FFH



★

**Figure 7-24. Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = CRH60 = N)**



**Remark** N = 00H to FFH, L = 00H to FFH

#### ★ 7.4.4 PWM output mode operation (timer 50)

In the PWM output mode, TO50 becomes high level when TM50 overflows, and TO50 becomes low level when CR50 and TM50 match. It is thus possible to output a pulse with any duty ratio (free-running).

To operate timer 50 in the PWM output mode, settings must be made in the following sequence.

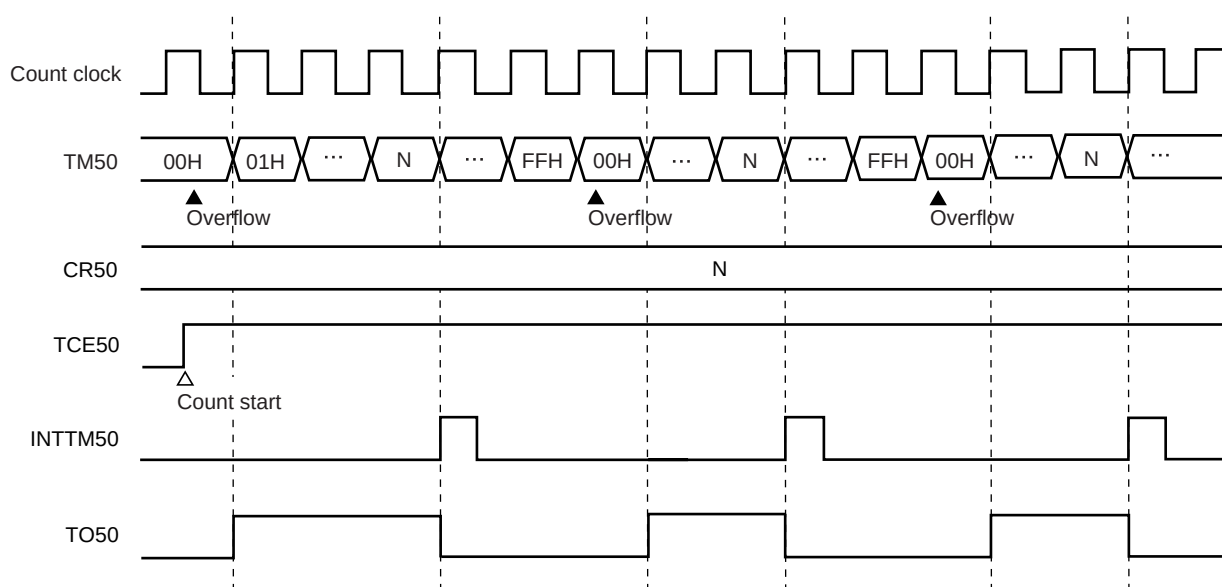
- <1> Disable operation of TM50 (TCE50 = 0).
- <2> Disable timer output of TO50 (TOE50 = 0).
- <3> Set a count value to CR50.
- <4> Set the operation mode of timer 50 to the PWM output mode (see Figure 7-6).
- <5> Set the count clock for timer 50.
- <6> Set P30 to the output mode (PM30 = 0) and the P30 output latch to 0 and enable timer output of TO50 (TOE50 = 1).
- <7> Enable the operation of TM50 (TCE50 = 1).

The operation in the PWM output mode is as follows.

- <1> When the count value of TM50 matches the value set in CR50, an interrupt request signal (INTTM50) is generated and a low level is output by the TO50. The TM50 continues counting without being cleared.
- <2> TO50 outputs a high level when the TM50 overflows.

A pulse of any duty is output by repeating the above procedure. Figures 7-25 to 7-28 show the operation timing in the PWM output mode.

**Figure 7-25. Operation Timing in PWM Output Mode (When Rising Edge Is Selected)**

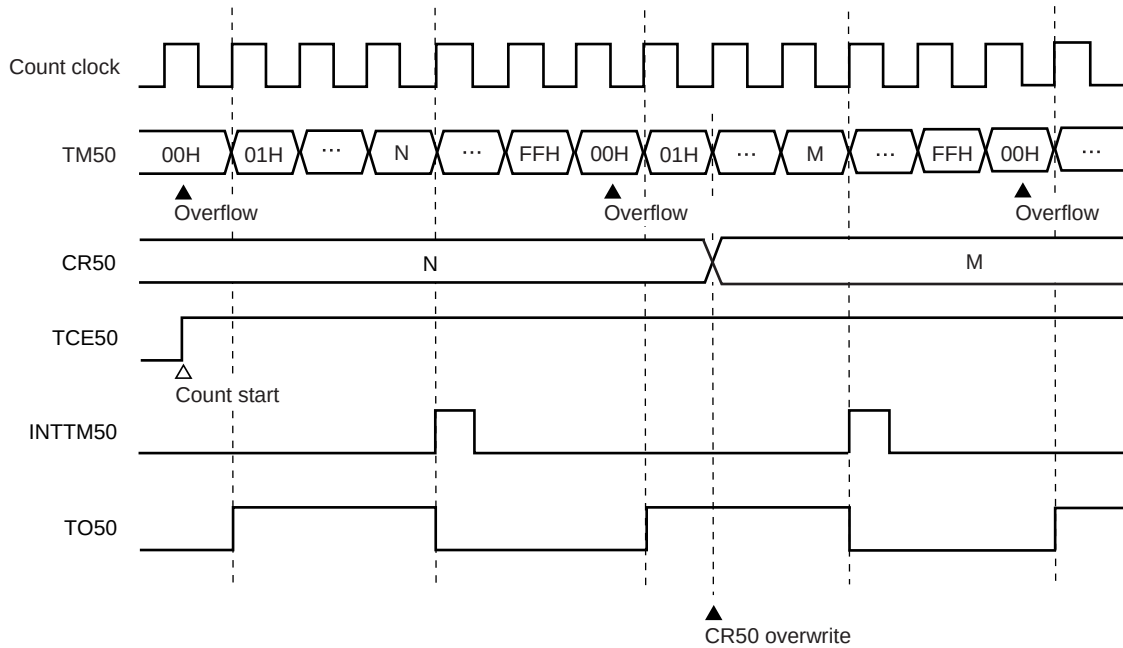


**Caution** When the rising edge is selected, do not set CR50 to 00H. If CR50 is set to 00H, PWM output may not be performed normally.

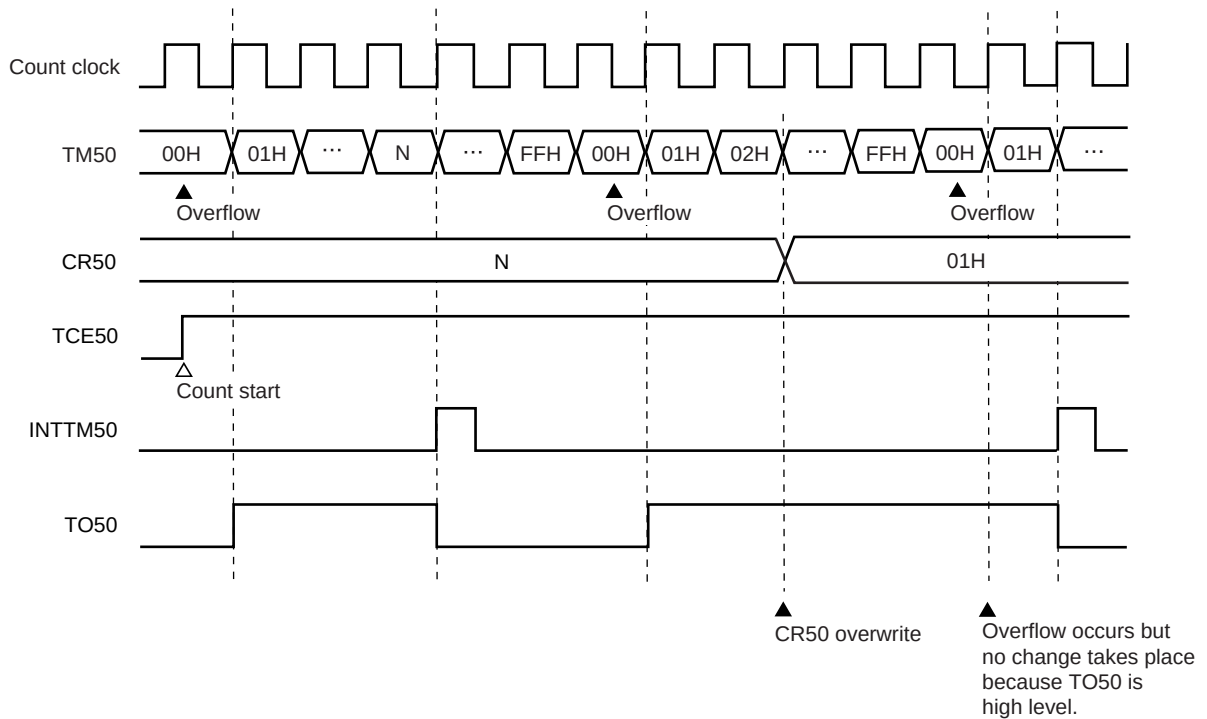
**Remark** N = 00H to FFH

Figure 7-26. Operation Timing When Overwriting CR50 (When Rising Edge Is Selected)

## (1) When setting CR50 &gt; TM50 after overflow



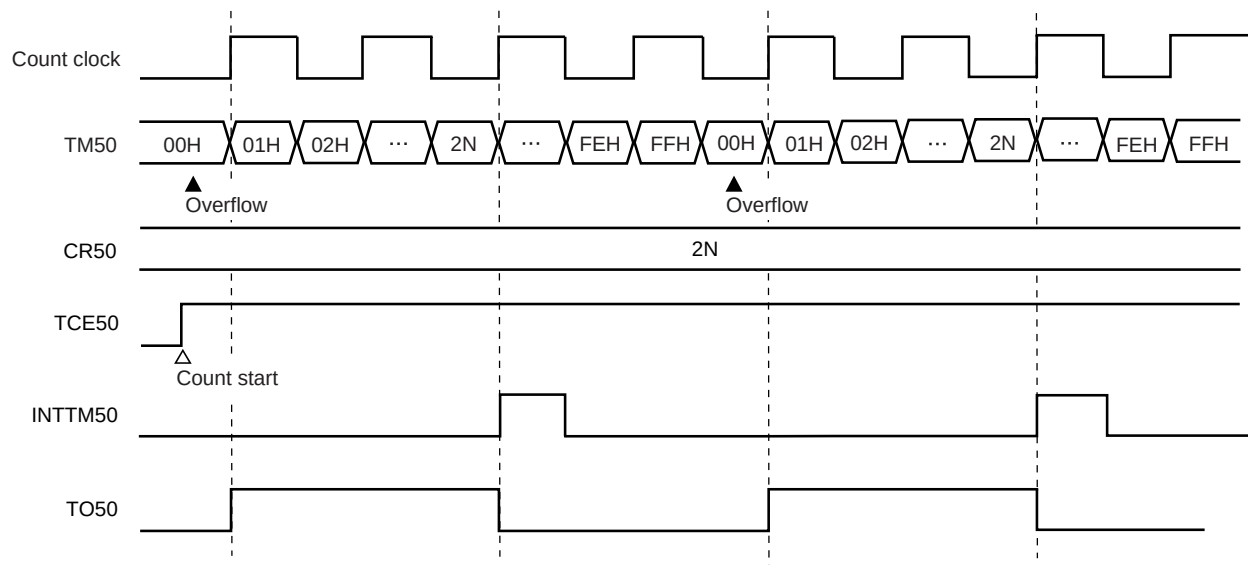
## (2) When setting CR50 &lt; TM50 after overflow



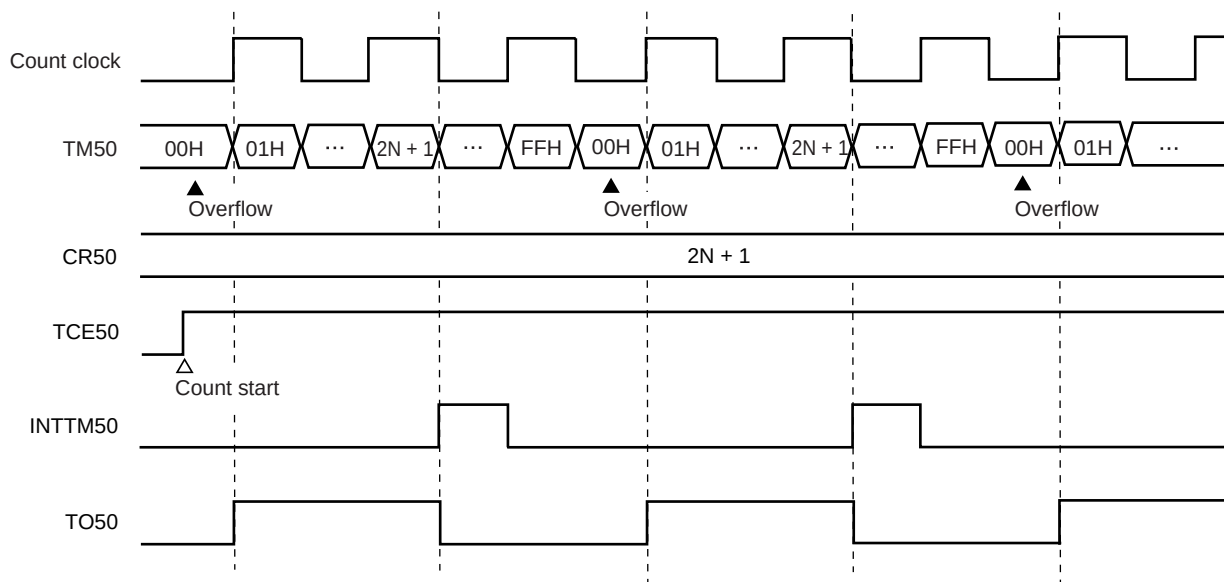
**Remark** N, M = 00H to FFH

Figure 7-27. Operation Timing in PWM Output Mode (When Both Edges Are Selected)

## (1) CR50 = Even number



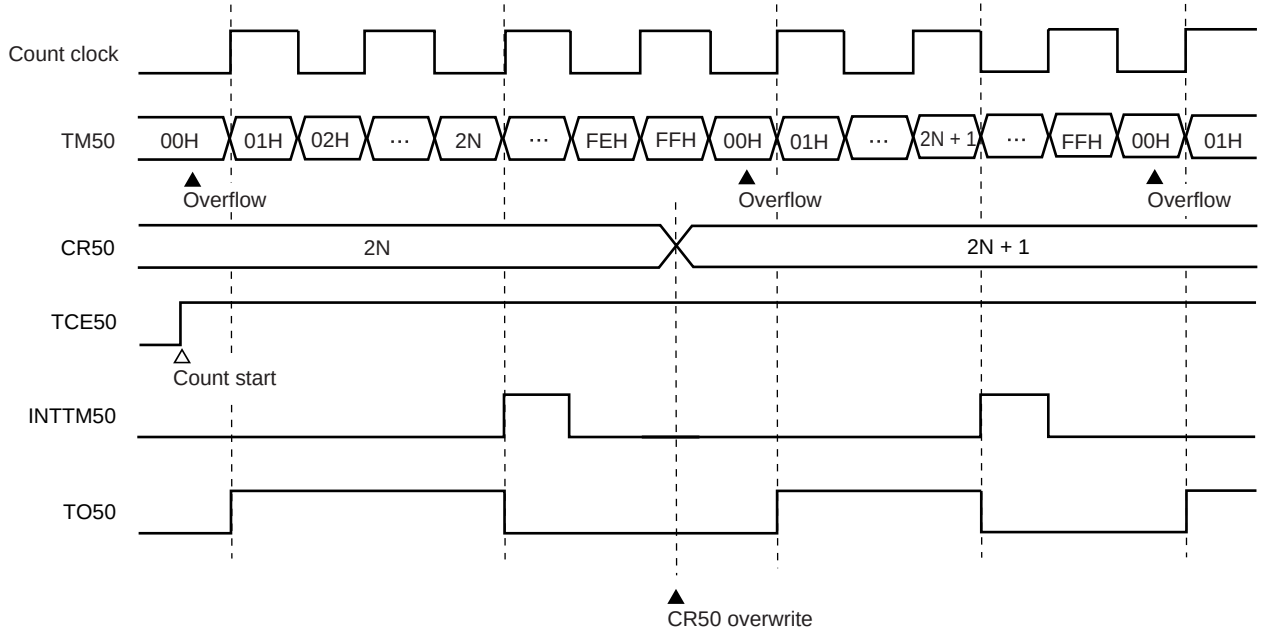
## (2) When CR50 = Odd number



**Caution** When both edges are selected, do not set CR50 to 00H, 01H, and FFH. If CR50 is set to these values, PWM output may not be performed normally.

**Remark** N = 00H to FFH

**Figure 7-28. Operation Timing in PWM Output Mode  
(When Both Edges Are Selected) (When CR50 Is Overwritten)**



**Remark** N = 00H to FFH

**★ 7.4.5 PPG output mode operation (timer 60 and timer 61)**

In the PPG output mode, a pulse of any duty ratio can be output by setting a low-level width using CR6m and a high-level width using CRH6m.

To operate timer 6m in PPG output mode, settings must be made in the following sequence.

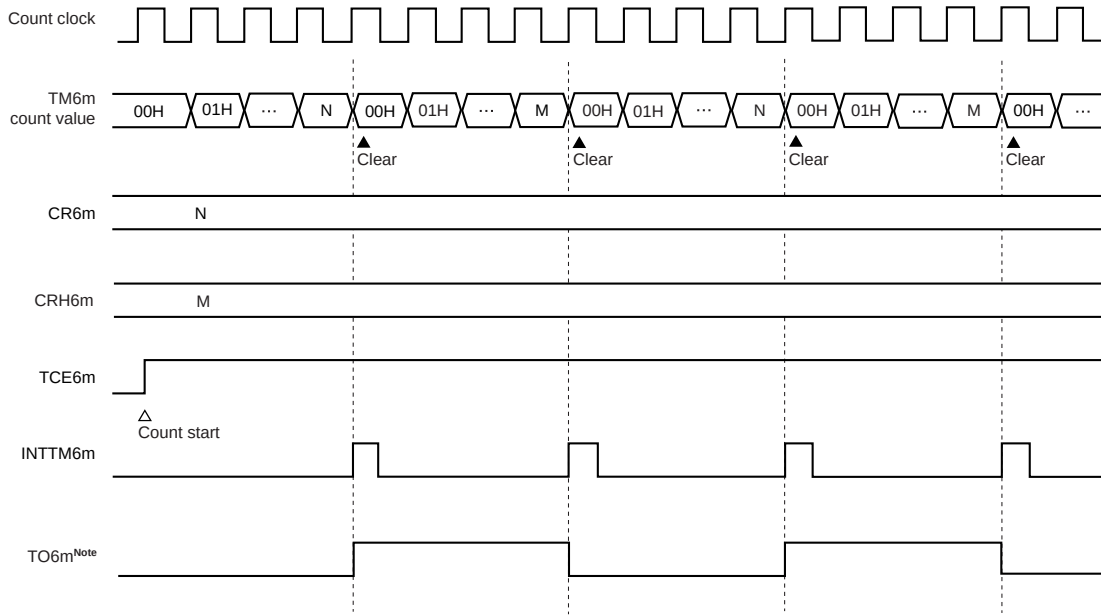
- <1> Disable operation of TM6m (TCE6m = 0).
- <2> Disable timer output of TO6m (TOE6m0 = 0).
- <3> Set count values in CR6m and CRH6m.
- <4> Set the operation mode of timer 6m to the PPG output mode (see Figures 7-7 and 7-9).
- <5> Set the count clock for timer 6m.
- <6> When using timer 60, set P31 to output mode (PM31 = 0) and the P31 output latch to 0, respectively.  
When using timer 61, set P32 to output mode (PM32 = 0) and the P32 output latch to 0, respectively.
- <7> Enable timer output of TO6m (TOE6m0 = 1).
- <8> Enable the operation of TM6m (TCE6m = 1).

The operation in the PPG output mode is as follows.

- <1> When the count value of TM6m matches the value set in CR6m, an interrupt request signal (INTTM6m) is generated and output of timer 6m is inverted, which makes the compare register switch from CR6m to CRH6m.
- <2> A match between TM6m and CR6m clears the TM6m value to 00H and then counting starts again.
- <3> After that, when the count value of TM6m matches the value set in CRH6m, an interrupt request signal (INTTM6m) is generated and output of timer 6m is inverted again, which makes the compare register switch from CRH6m to CR6m.
- <4> A match between TM6m and CRH6m clears the TM6m value to 00H and then counting starts again.

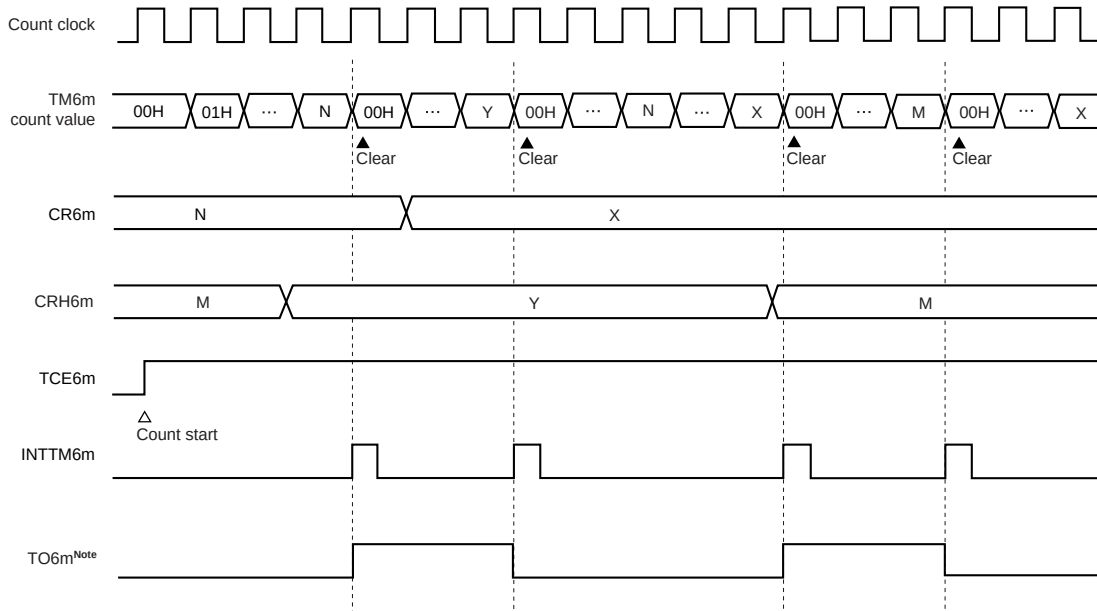
A pulse of any duty ratio is output by repeating <1> to <4> above. Figures 7-29 and 7-30 show the operation timing in the PPG output mode.

**Remark** m = 0, 1

**Figure 7-29. PPG Output Mode Timing (Basic Operation)**

**Note** The initial value of TO6m is low level when output is enabled (TOE6m0 = 1).

**Remark** N, M = 00H to FFH  
m = 0, 1

**Figure 7-30. PPG Output Mode Timing (When CR6m and CRH6m Are Overwritten)**

**Note** The initial value of TO6m is low level when output is enabled (TOE6m0 = 1).

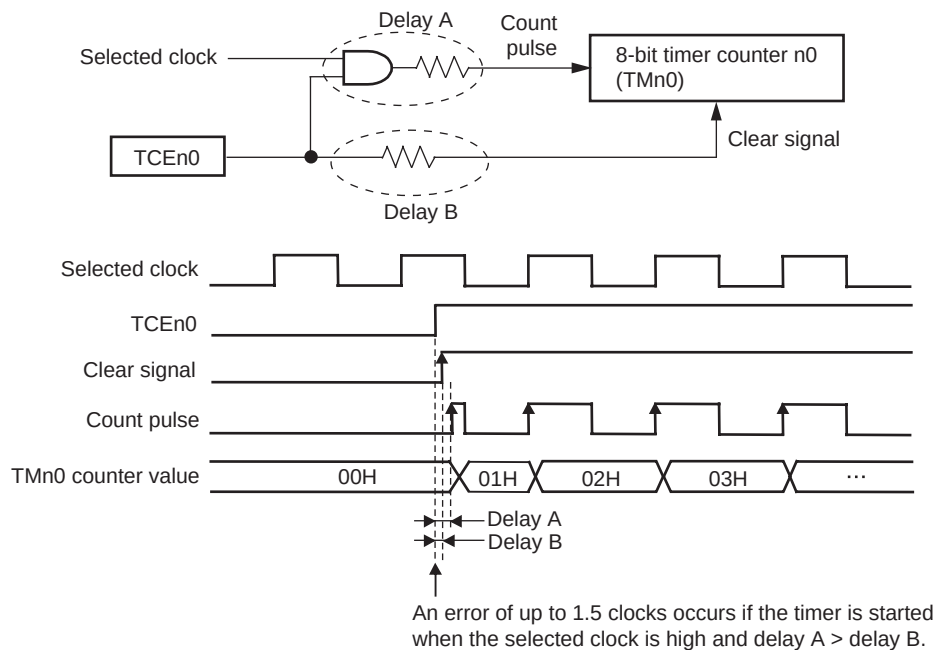
**Remark** N, M, X, Y = 00H to FFH  
m = 0, 1

## 7.5 Cautions on Using 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61

### ★ (1) Error on starting timer

An error of up to 1.5 clocks is included in the time between the timer being started and a match signal being generated. This is because the rising edge is detected and the counter is incremented if the timer is started while the count clock is high (see **Figure 7-31**).

**Figure 7-31. Case in Which Error of 1.5 Clocks (Max.) Occurs**



**Remark** nm = 50, 60, 61

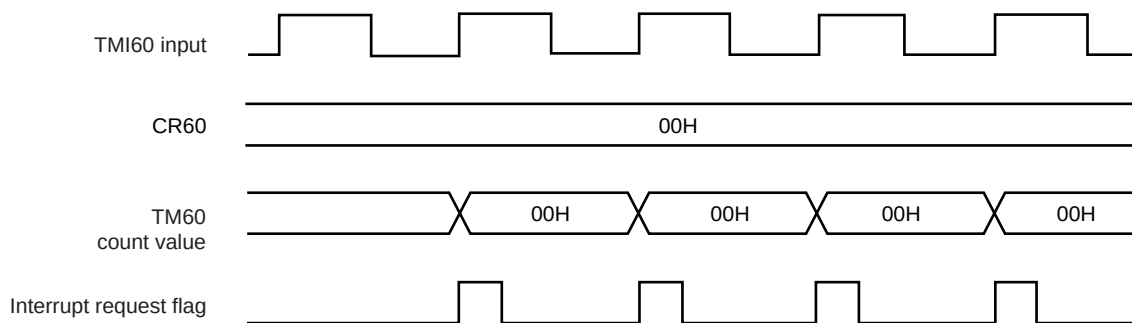
### (2) Setting of 8-bit compare register nm

8-bit compare register nm (CRnm) can be set to 00H.

Therefore, one pulse can be counted when the 8-bit timer operates as an event counter.

**Remark** nm= 50, 60, 61

**Figure 7-32. Timing of Operation as External Event Counter (8-Bit Resolution)**





## CHAPTER 8 WATCH TIMER

### 8.1 Watch Timer Functions

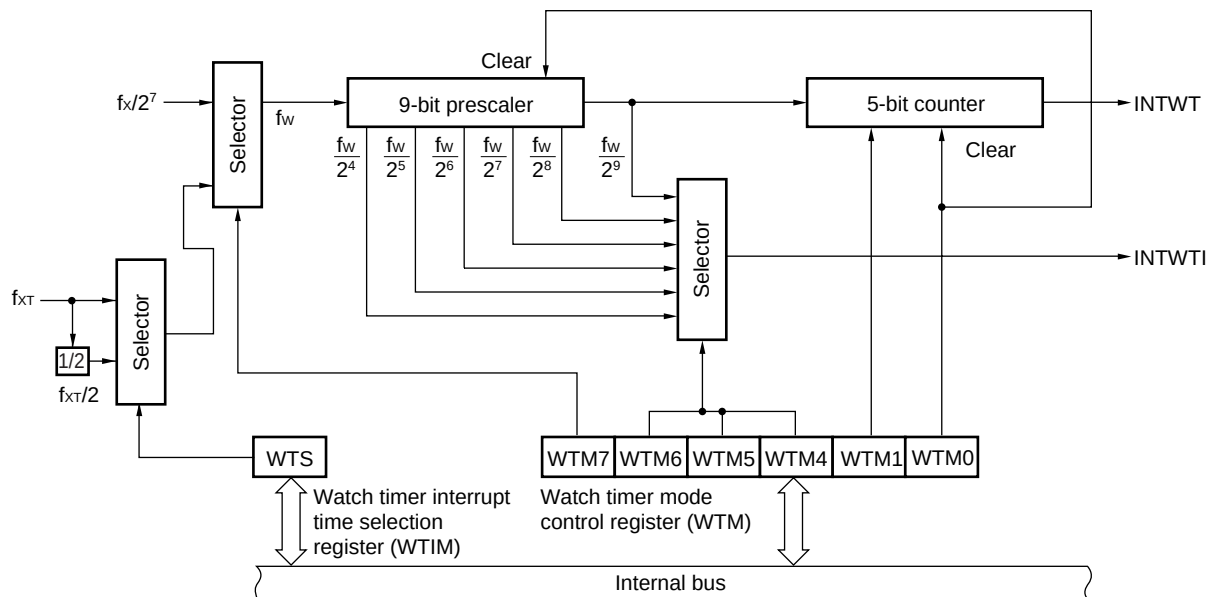
The watch timer has the following functions.

- Watch timer
- Interval timer

The watch and interval timers can be used at the same time.

Figure 8-1 shows a block diagram of the watch timer.

**Figure 8-1. Block Diagram of Watch Timer**



**(1) Watch timer**

An interrupt request (INTWT) occurs at an interval of 0.5 second when using either the 4.19 MHz main system clock or the 32.768 kHz subsystem clock.

Also, an interrupt request (INTWT) occurs at an interval of 1.0 seconds when using the 32.768 kHz subsystem clock via a setting in the watch timer interrupt time selection register (WTIM).

**Caution** An interval of 0.5 second cannot be created when using the 5.0 MHz main system clock. Instead, switch to the 32.768 kHz subsystem clock, and then create the 0.5-second interval.

**(2) Interval timer**

An interrupt request (INTWTI) occurs at preset intervals.

**Table 8-1. Interval Time of Interval Timer**

| Interval Time      | At $f_x = 5.0$ MHz | At $f_x = 4.19$ MHz | At $f_{XT} = 32.768$ kHz | At $f_{XT}/2 = 16.384$ kHz |
|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| $2^4 \times 1/f_w$ | 409.6 $\mu$ s      | 488 $\mu$ s         | 488 $\mu$ s              | 976 $\mu$ s                |
| $2^5 \times 1/f_w$ | 819.2 $\mu$ s      | 977 $\mu$ s         | 977 $\mu$ s              | 1.95 ms                    |
| $2^6 \times 1/f_w$ | 1.64 ms            | 1.95 ms             | 1.95 ms                  | 3.90 ms                    |
| $2^7 \times 1/f_w$ | 3.28 ms            | 3.91 ms             | 3.91 ms                  | 7.82 ms                    |
| $2^8 \times 1/f_w$ | 6.55 ms            | 7.81 ms             | 7.81 ms                  | 15.6 ms                    |
| $2^9 \times 1/f_w$ | 13.1 ms            | 15.6 ms             | 15.6 ms                  | 31.2 ms                    |

**Remarks** 1.  $f_w$ : Watch timer clock frequency ( $f_x/2^7$ ,  $f_{XT}$ , or  $f_{XT}/2$ )

2.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

3.  $f_{XT}$ : Subsystem clock oscillation frequency

**8.2 Configuration of Watch Timer**

The watch timer includes the following hardware.

**Table 8-2. Configuration of Watch Timer**

| Item              | Configuration                                                                                   |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Counter           | 5 bits $\times$ 1                                                                               |
| Prescaler         | 9 bits $\times$ 1                                                                               |
| Control registers | Watch timer mode control register (WTM)<br>Watch timer interrupt time selection register (WTIM) |

### 8.3 Control Registers for Watch Timer

The watch timer is controlled by the following registers.

- Watch timer mode control register (WTM)
- Watch timer interrupt time selection register (WTIM)

#### (1) Watch timer mode control register (WTM)

This register is used to control the watch timer count clock, operation enable/disable status, prescaler interval time, and the 5-bit counter operation.

WTM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to 00H.

**Figure 8-2. Format of Watch Timer Mode Control Register**

| Symbol | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3 | 2 | <1>  | <0>  | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|------|------|------|------|---|---|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| WTM    | WTM7 | WTM6 | WTM5 | WTM4 | 0 | 0 | WTM1 | WTM0 | FF4AH   | 00H         | R/W |

| WTM7 | Selection of watch timer count clock ( $f_w$ )                   |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)                                             |
| 1    | $f_{XT}$ (32.768 kHz) or $f_{XT}/2$ (16.384 kHz) <sup>Note</sup> |

| WTM6             | WTM5 | WTM4 | Selection of prescaler interval time |
|------------------|------|------|--------------------------------------|
| 0                | 0    | 0    | $2^4/f_w$                            |
| 0                | 0    | 1    | $2^5/f_w$                            |
| 0                | 1    | 0    | $2^6/f_w$                            |
| 0                | 1    | 1    | $2^7/f_w$                            |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | $2^8/f_w$                            |
| 1                | 0    | 1    | $2^9/f_w$                            |
| Other than above |      |      | Setting prohibited                   |

| WTM1 | Control of 5-bit counter operation |
|------|------------------------------------|
| 0    | Cleared after stopping operation   |
| 1    | Start                              |

| WTM0 | Watch timer operation enable/disable                     |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | Operation stopped (prescaler and timer are both cleared) |
| 1    | Operation enabled                                        |

**Note** This is the frequency ( $f_{XT}$  or  $f_{XT}/2$ ) set via the watch timer interrupt time selection register (WTIM).

- Remarks**
1.  $f_w$ : Watch timer clock frequency ( $f_x/2^7$ ,  $f_{XT}$ , or  $f_{XT}/2$ )
  2.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  3.  $f_{XT}$ : Subsystem clock oscillation frequency
  4. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz or  $f_{XT} = 32.768$  kHz.

**(2) Watch timer interrupt time selection register (WTIM)**

This register is used to set the interrupt time by selecting either the source clock or the clock divided by 2 for the subsystem clock to be input to watch timer.

WTIM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this register to 00H.

**Figure 8-3. Format of Watch Timer Interrupt Time Selection Register**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | <0> | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----|---------|-------------|-----|
| WTIM   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | WTS | FF4BH   | 00H         | R/W |

| WTS | Selection of watch timer interrupt time <sup>Note</sup> |
|-----|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 0   | 0.5 s ( $f_{XT}$ )                                      |
| 1   | 1.0 s ( $f_{XT}/2$ )                                    |

**Note** The selection is only available when bit 7 (WTM7) of the watch timer mode control register (WTM) is 1.

**Remark**  $f_{XT}$ : Subsystem clock oscillation frequency

## 8.4 Watch Timer Operation

### 8.4.1 Operation as watch timer

The main system clock (4.19 MHz) or subsystem clock (32.768 kHz) is used to enable the watch timer to operate at 0.5-second intervals.

Also, an interrupt request (INTWT) occurs at an interval of 1.0 seconds when using the 32.768 kHz subsystem clock via a setting in the watch timer interrupt time selection register (WTIM).

The watch timer is used to generate an interrupt request at specified intervals.

By setting bits 0 and 1 (WTM0 and WTM1) of the watch timer mode control register (WTM) to 1, the watch timer starts counting. By setting them to 0, the 5-bit counter is cleared and the watch timer stops counting.

It is possible to start the watch timer from zero seconds by clearing WTM1 to 0 when the interval timer and watch timer operate at the same time. In this case, however, an error of up to  $2^9 \times 1/f_w$  seconds may occur in the overflow (INTWT) after the zero-second start of the watch timer because the 9-bit prescaler is not cleared to 0.

### 8.4.2 Operation as interval timer

The interval timer is used to repeatedly generate an interrupt request at the interval specified by a preset count value.

The interval can be selected by bits 4 to 6 (WTM4 to WTM6) of the watch timer mode control register (WTM).

**Table 8-3. Interval Time of Interval Timer**

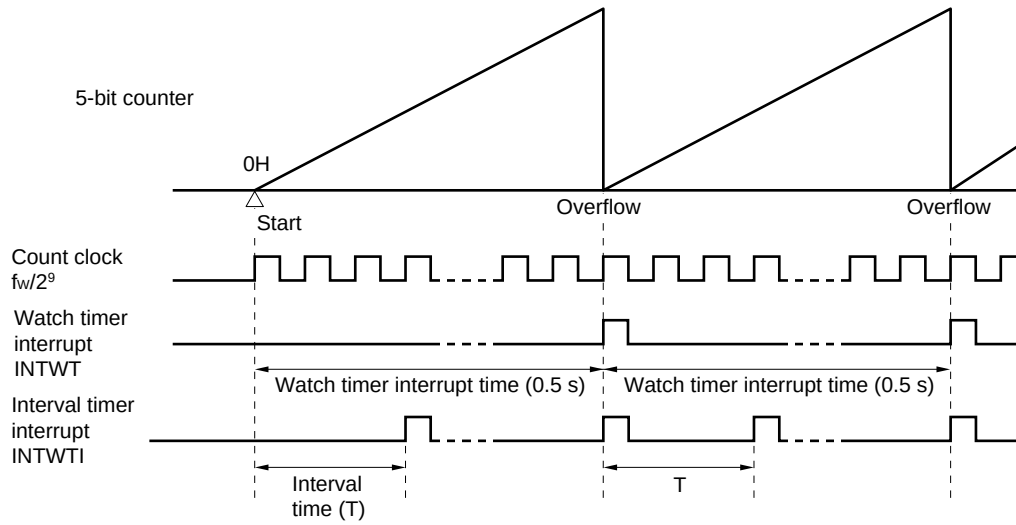
| WTM6             | WTM5 | WTM4 | Interval Time      | At $f_x = 5.0$ MHz | At $f_x = 4.19$ MHz | At $f_{XT} = 32.768$ kHz | At $f_{XT} = 16.384$ kHz |
|------------------|------|------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 0                | 0    | 0    | $2^4 \times 1/f_w$ | 409.6 $\mu s$      | 488 $\mu s$         | 488 $\mu s$              | 976 $\mu s$              |
| 0                | 0    | 1    | $2^5 \times 1/f_w$ | 819.2 $\mu s$      | 977 $\mu s$         | 977 $\mu s$              | 1.95 ms                  |
| 0                | 1    | 0    | $2^6 \times 1/f_w$ | 1.64 ms            | 1.95 ms             | 1.95 ms                  | 3.90 ms                  |
| 0                | 1    | 1    | $2^7 \times 1/f_w$ | 3.28 ms            | 3.91 ms             | 3.91 ms                  | 7.82 ms                  |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | $2^8 \times 1/f_w$ | 6.55 ms            | 7.81 ms             | 7.81 ms                  | 15.6 ms                  |
| 1                | 0    | 1    | $2^9 \times 1/f_w$ | 13.1 ms            | 15.6 ms             | 15.6 ms                  | 31.2 ms                  |
| Other than above |      |      | Setting prohibited |                    |                     |                          |                          |

**Remarks 1.**  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

**2.**  $f_{XT}$ : Subsystem clock oscillation frequency

**3.**  $f_w$ : Watch timer clock frequency

Figure 8-4. Watch Timer/Interval Timer Operation Timing



**Caution** When operation of the watch timer and 5-bit counter operation is enabled by setting bit 0 (WTM0) of the watch timer mode control register (WTM) to 1, the interval until the first interrupt request (INTWT) is generated after the register is set does not exactly match the watch timer interrupt time (0.5 s). This is because there is a delay of one 9-bit pre-scaler output cycle until the 5-bit counter starts counting. Subsequently, however, the INTWT signal is generated at the specified intervals.

**Remarks**

1.  $f_w$ : Watch timer clock frequency
2. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_w = 32.768$  kHz.

## CHAPTER 9 WATCHDOG TIMER

### 9.1 Watchdog Timer Functions

The watchdog timer has the following functions.

- Watchdog timer
- Interval timer

**Caution** Select the watchdog timer mode or interval timer mode by using the watchdog timer mode register (WDTM).

#### (1) Watchdog timer

The watchdog timer is used to detect a program loop. When a program loop is detected, a non-maskable interrupt or the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal can be generated.

**Table 9-1. Watchdog Timer Program Loop Detection Time**

| Program Loop Detection Time | At $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$ |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$       | 410 $\mu\text{s}$          |
| $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$       | 1.64 ms                    |
| $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$       | 6.55 ms                    |
| $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$       | 26.2 ms                    |

$f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

#### (2) Interval timer

The interval timer generates an interrupt at an arbitrary preset interval.

**Table 9-2. Interval Time**

| Interval              | At $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$ |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$ | 410 $\mu\text{s}$          |
| $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ | 1.64 ms                    |
| $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ | 6.55 ms                    |
| $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ | 26.2 ms                    |

$f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency





### 9.3 Watchdog Timer Control Registers

The watchdog timer is controlled by the following two registers.

- Watchdog timer clock selection register (WDCS)
- Watchdog timer mode register (WDTM)

#### (1) Watchdog timer clock selection register (WDCS)

This register sets the watchdog timer count clock.

WDCS is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets WDCS to 00H.

**Figure 9-2. Format of Watchdog Timer Clock Selection Register**

|        |   |   |   |   |   |       |       |       |         |             |     |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2     | 1     | 0     | Address | After reset | R/W |
| WDCS   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | WDCS2 | WDCS1 | WDCS0 | FF42H   | 00H         | R/W |

| WDCS2            | WDCS1 | WDCS0 | Watchdog timer count clock selection | Interval                          |
|------------------|-------|-------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 0                | 0     | 0     | $f_x/2^4$ (312.5 kHz)                | $2^{11}/f_x$ (410 $\mu\text{s}$ ) |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)                 | $2^{13}/f_x$ (1.64 ms)            |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)                 | $2^{15}/f_x$ (6.55 ms)            |
| 1                | 1     | 0     | $f_x/2^{10}$ (4.88 kHz)              | $2^{17}/f_x$ (26.2 ms)            |
| Other than above |       |       | Setting prohibited                   |                                   |

**Remarks 1.**  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

**2.** The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**(2) Watchdog timer mode register (WDTM)**

This register sets the operation mode of the watchdog timer, and enables/disables counting of the watchdog timer.

WDTM is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets WDTM to 00H.

**Figure 9-3. Format of Watchdog Timer Mode Register**

|        |     |   |   |       |       |   |   |   |         |             |     |
|--------|-----|---|---|-------|-------|---|---|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | <7> | 6 | 5 | 4     | 3     | 2 | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
| WDTM   | RUN | 0 | 0 | WDTM4 | WDTM3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | FFF9H   | 00H         | R/W |

|     |                                                      |
|-----|------------------------------------------------------|
| RUN | Watchdog timer operation selection <sup>Note 1</sup> |
| 0   | Stop counting.                                       |
| 1   | Clear counter and start counting.                    |

|       |       |                                                                                                    |
|-------|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| WDTM4 | WDTM3 | Watchdog timer operation mode selection <sup>Note 2</sup>                                          |
| 0     | 0     | Operation stop                                                                                     |
| 0     | 1     | Interval timer mode (a maskable interrupt is generated upon overflow occurrence) <sup>Note 3</sup> |
| 1     | 0     | Watchdog timer mode 1 (a non-maskable interrupt is generated upon overflow occurrence)             |
| 1     | 1     | Watchdog timer mode 2 (a reset operation is started upon overflow occurrence)                      |

**Notes 1.** Once RUN has been set (1), it cannot be cleared (0) by software. Therefore, when counting is started, it cannot be stopped by any means other than  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

**2.** Once WDTM3 and WDTM4 have been set (1), they cannot be cleared (0) by software.

**3.** The watchdog timer starts operation as an interval timer when RUN is set to 1.

- Cautions 1.** When the watchdog timer is cleared by setting RUN to 1, the actual overflow time is up to 0.8% shorter than the time set by the watchdog timer clock selection register (WDCS).
- 2.** To set watchdog timer mode 1 or 2, set WDTM4 to 1 after confirming WDTIF (bit 0 of interrupt request flag register 0 (IF0)) is set to 0. When watchdog timer mode 1 or 2 is selected with WDTIF set to 1, a non-maskable interrupt is generated upon the completion of rewriting WDTM4.

## 9.4 Watchdog Timer Operation

### 9.4.1 Operation as watchdog timer

The watchdog timer detects a program loop when bit 4 (WDTM4) of the watchdog timer mode register (WDTM) is set to 1.

The count clock (program loop detection time interval) of the watchdog timer can be selected by bits 0 to 2 (WDCS0 to WDCS2) of watchdog timer clock selection register (WDCS). By setting bit 7 (RUN) of WDTM to 1, the watchdog timer is started. Set RUN to 1 within the set program loop detection time interval after the watchdog timer has been started. By setting RUN to 1, the watchdog timer can be cleared and start counting. If RUN is not set to 1, and the program loop detection time is exceeded, a system reset signal or a non-maskable interrupt is generated, depending on the value of bit 3 (WDTM3) of WDTM.

The watchdog timer continues operation in HALT mode, but stops in STOP mode. Therefore, first set RUN to 1 to clear the watchdog timer before executing the STOP instruction.

- Cautions**
1. The actual program loop detection time may be up to 0.8% shorter than the set time.
  2. When the subsystem clock is selected as the CPU clock, the watchdog timer count operation is stopped. Even when the main system clock continues oscillating in this case, watchdog timer count operation is stopped.

**Table 9-4. Watchdog Timer Program Loop Detection Time**

| WDCS2 | WDCS1 | WDCS0 | Program Loop Detection Time | At $f_x = 5.0$ MHz |
|-------|-------|-------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 0     | 0     | 0     | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$       | 410 $\mu$ s        |
| 0     | 1     | 0     | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$       | 1.64 ms            |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$       | 6.55 ms            |
| 1     | 1     | 0     | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$       | 26.2 ms            |

$f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

### 9.4.2 Operation as interval timer

When bits 4 and 3 (WDTM4, WDTM3) of the watchdog timer mode register (WDTM) are set to 0 and 1, respectively, the watchdog timer operates as an interval timer that repeatedly generates an interrupt at intervals specified by a preset count value.

Select a count clock (or interval) by setting bits 0 to 2 (WDCS0 to WDCS2) of the watchdog timer clock selection register (WDCS). The watchdog timer starts operation as an interval timer when the RUN bit (bit 7 of WDTM) is set to 1.

In interval timer mode, the interrupt mask flag (WDTMK) is valid, and a maskable interrupt (INTWDT) can be generated. The priority of INTWDT is set as the highest of all the maskable interrupts.

The interval timer continues operation in HALT mode, but stops in STOP mode. Therefore, first set RUN to 1 to clear the interval timer before executing the STOP instruction.

- Cautions**
1. Once bit 4 (WDTM4) of WDTM is set to 1 (when watchdog timer mode is selected), interval timer mode is not set unless the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal is input.
  2. The interval time may be up to 0.8% shorter than the set time when WDTM has just been set.

**Table 9-5. Interval Time of Interval Timer**

| WDCS2 | WDCS1 | WDCS0 | Interval              | At $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$ |
|-------|-------|-------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 0     | 0     | 0     | $2^{11} \times 1/f_x$ | 410 $\mu\text{s}$          |
| 0     | 1     | 0     | $2^{13} \times 1/f_x$ | 1.64 ms                    |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | $2^{15} \times 1/f_x$ | 6.55 ms                    |
| 1     | 1     | 0     | $2^{17} \times 1/f_x$ | 26.2 ms                    |

$f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

## CHAPTER 10 10-BIT A/D CONVERTER

### 10.1 10-Bit A/D Converter Functions

The 10-bit A/D converter is a 10-bit resolution converter used to convert analog inputs into digital signals. This converter can control eight channels (ANI0 to ANI7) of analog inputs.

A/D conversion can only be started by software.

One of analog inputs ANI0 to ANI7 is selected for A/D conversion. A/D conversion is performed repeatedly, with an interrupt request (INTAD0) being issued each time A/D conversion is complete.

### 10.2 10-Bit A/D Converter Configuration

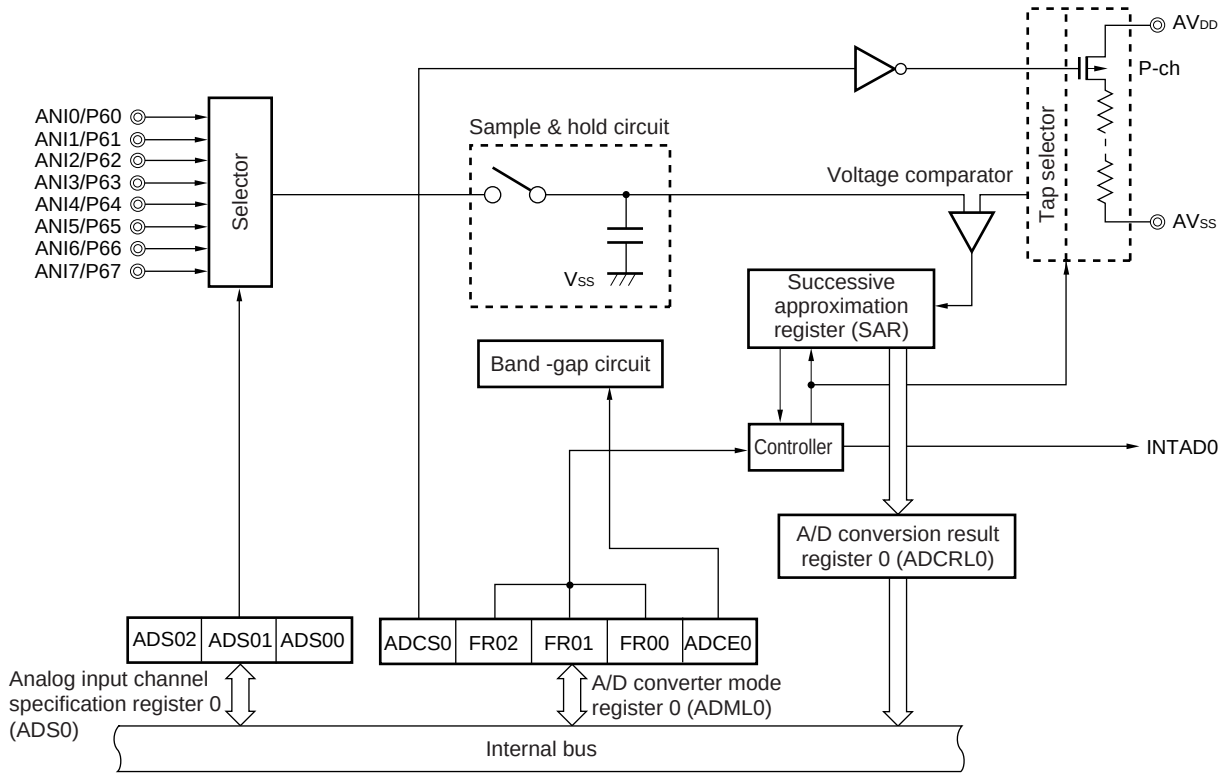
The 10-bit A/D converter includes the following hardware.

**Table 10-1. Configuration of 10-Bit A/D Converter**

| Item              | Configuration                                                                                 |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Analog inputs     | 8 channels (ANI0 to ANI7)                                                                     |
| Registers         | Successive approximation register (SAR)<br>A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0)          |
| Control registers | A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0)<br>Analog input channel specification register 0 (ADS0) |

★

Figure 10-1. Block Diagram of 10-Bit A/D Converter



(1) Successive approximation register (SAR)

The SAR receives the result of comparing an analog input voltage and a voltage at a voltage tap (comparison voltage), received from the series resistor string, starting from the most significant bit (MSB).

Upon receiving all the bits, down to the least significant bit (LSB), that is, upon the completion of A/D conversion, the SAR sends its contents to A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0).

(2) A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0)

ADCRL0 is a 16-bit register that holds the result of A/D conversion. The lower 6 bits are fixed to 0. Each time A/D conversion ends, the conversion result in the successive approximation register is loaded into ADCRL0. The results are stored in ADCRL0 from the highest bit.

The higher 8 bits of the conversion result are stored in FF15H and the lower 2 bits of the conversion result are stored in FF14H.

ADCRL0 can be read with a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets ADCRL0 to 0000H.

| Symbol | ADCRL0H (FF15H) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | ADCRL0L (FF14H) |   |   |   |   |   | Address         | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-----------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|-----------------|---|---|---|---|---|-----------------|-------------|-----|
| ADCRL0 |                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0               | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | FF14H,<br>FF15H | 0000H       | R   |

**(3) Sample & hold circuit**

The sample & hold circuit samples consecutive analog inputs from the input circuit, one by one, and sends them to the voltage comparator. The sampled analog input voltage is held during A/D conversion.

**(4) Voltage comparator**

The voltage comparator compares an analog input with the voltage output by the series resistor string.

**(5) Series resistor string**

The series resistor string is configured between  $AV_{DD}$  and  $AV_{SS}$ . It generates the reference voltages against which analog inputs are compared.

**(6) ANI0 to ANI7**

The ANI0 to ANI7 pins are the 8-channel analog input pins for the A/D converter. They are used to receive the analog signals for A/D conversion.

**Caution** Do not supply the ANI0 to ANI7 pins with voltages that fall outside the rated range. If a voltage greater than or equal to  $AV_{DD}$  or less than or equal to  $AV_{SS}$  (even if within the absolute maximum rating) is applied to any of these pins, the conversion value for the corresponding channel will be undefined. Furthermore, the conversion values for the other channels may also be affected.

**(7)  $AV_{SS}$  pin**

The  $AV_{SS}$  pin is the ground potential pin for the A/D converter. This pin must be held at the same potential as the  $V_{SS}$  pin, even while the A/D converter is not being used.

**(8)  $AV_{DD}$  pin**

The  $AV_{DD}$  pin is the analog power supply pin for the A/D converter. This pin must be held at the same potential as the  $V_{DD}$  pin, even while the A/D converter is not being used.

**(9) Band-gap circuit**

The band-gap circuit activates the reference voltage inside the comparator prior to A/D conversion. Start conversion after 14  $\mu$ s have elapsed following the activation of the band-gap circuit.

### 10.3 10-Bit A/D Converter Control Registers

The 10-bit A/D converter is controlled by the following two registers.

- A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0)
- Analog input channel specification register 0 (ADS0)

#### (1) A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0)

ADML0 specifies the conversion time for analog inputs. It also specifies whether to enable conversion.

ADML0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ADML0 to 00H.

**Figure 10-2. Format of A/D Converter Mode Register 0**

| Symbol | <7>   | 6 | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2 | 1 | 0     | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|---|------|------|------|---|---|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| ADML0  | ADCS0 | 0 | FR02 | FR01 | FR00 | 0 | 0 | ADCE0 | FF80H   | 00H         | R/W |

| ADCS0 | A/D conversion control |
|-------|------------------------|
| 0     | Conversion disabled    |
| 1     | Conversion enabled     |

| FR02             | FR01 | FR00 | A/D conversion time selection <sup>Note 1</sup>           |
|------------------|------|------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 0                | 0    | 0    | 144/f <sub>x</sub> (28.8 $\mu$ s)                         |
| 0                | 0    | 1    | 120/f <sub>x</sub> (24 $\mu$ s)                           |
| 0                | 1    | 0    | 96/f <sub>x</sub> (19.2 $\mu$ s)                          |
| 1                | 0    | 0    | 72/f <sub>x</sub> (14.4 $\mu$ s)                          |
| 1                | 0    | 1    | 60/f <sub>x</sub> (Setting prohibited <sup>Note 2</sup> ) |
| 1                | 1    | 0    | 48/f <sub>x</sub> (Setting prohibited <sup>Note 2</sup> ) |
| Other than above |      |      | Setting prohibited                                        |

| ADCE0 | Control of band-gap circuit |
|-------|-----------------------------|
| 0     | Band-gap circuit stopped    |
| 1     | Band-gap circuit operating  |

**Notes 1.** The specifications of FR02, FR01, and FR00 must be such that the A/D conversion time is at least 14  $\mu$ s.

**2.** When f<sub>x</sub> is 5.0 MHz, these bit combinations must not be used, as the A/D conversion time will fall below 14  $\mu$ s.



- Cautions**
1. Start conversion (ADCS0 = 1) after 14  $\mu$ s have elapsed following the setting of ADCE0. If ADCE0 is not used, the conversion result immediately after the setting of bit 7 (ADCS0) is undefined.
  2. The conversion result may be undefined after ADCS0 has been cleared to 0. To read the conversion result, perform the read operation during A/D conversion. If the conversion result needs to be read after A/D conversion has been stopped, stop the A/D conversion operation before the end of the next A/D conversion.
  3. Always set bits 1, 2, and 6 to 0.

- Remarks**
1. fx: Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. The parenthesized values apply to operation at fx = 5.0 MHz.

**(2) Analog input channel specification register 0 (ADS0)**

ADS0 specifies the port used to input the analog voltage to be converted to a digital signal.

ADS0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input clears ADS0 to 00H.

**Figure 10-3. Format of Analog Input Channel Specification Register 0**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2     | 1     | 0     | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| ADS0   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | ADS02 | ADS01 | ADS00 | FF84H   | 00H         | R/W |

| ADS02 | ADS01 | ADS00 | Analog input channel specification |
|-------|-------|-------|------------------------------------|
| 0     | 0     | 0     | ANI0                               |
| 0     | 0     | 1     | ANI1                               |
| 0     | 1     | 0     | ANI2                               |
| 0     | 1     | 1     | ANI3                               |
| 1     | 0     | 0     | ANI4                               |
| 1     | 0     | 1     | ANI5                               |
| 1     | 1     | 0     | ANI6                               |
| 1     | 1     | 1     | ANI7                               |

**Caution** Bits 3 to 7 must be set to 0.

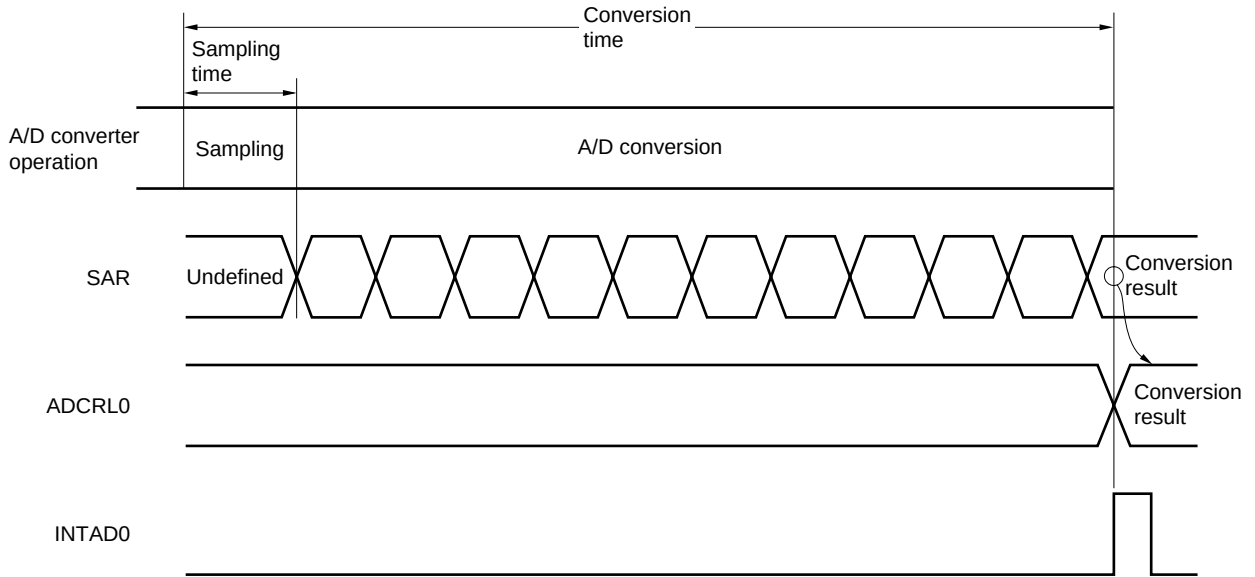
## 10.4 10-Bit A/D Converter Operation

### 10.4.1 Basic operation of 10-bit A/D converter

- <1> Bit 0 of A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0) is set (ADCE0 = 1).
- <2> Select a channel for A/D conversion, using analog input channel specification register 0 (ADS0).
- <3> When 14  $\mu$ s or more have elapsed after ADCE0 was set, set bit 7 of ADML0 (ADCS0 = 1). The voltage supplied to the selected analog input channel is sampled using the sample & hold circuit.
- <4> After sampling continues for a certain period of time, the sample & hold circuit is put on hold to keep the input analog voltage until A/D conversion is completed.
- <5> Bit 9 of the successive approximation register (SAR) is set. The series resistor string tap voltage at the tap selector is set to half of  $AV_{DD}$ .
- <6> The series resistor string tap voltage is compared with the analog input voltage using the voltage comparator. If the analog input voltage is higher than half of  $AV_{DD}$ , the MSB of SAR is left set. If it is lower than half of  $AV_{DD}$ , the MSB is reset.
- <7> Bit 8 of SAR is set automatically, and comparison shifts to the next stage. The next tap voltage of the series resistor string is selected according to bit 9, which reflects the previous comparison result, as follows:
  - Bit 9 = 1: Three quarters of  $AV_{DD}$
  - Bit 9 = 0: One quarter of  $AV_{DD}$
 The tap voltage is compared with the analog input voltage. Bit 8 is set or reset according to the result of comparison.
  - Analog input voltage  $\geq$  tap voltage: Bit 8 = 1
  - Analog input voltage < tap voltage: Bit 8 = 0
- <8> Comparison is repeated until bit 0 of SAR is reached.
- <9> When comparison is completed for all of the 10 bits, a significant digital result is left in SAR. This value is sent to and latched in A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0). At the same time, it is possible to generate an A/D conversion end interrupt request (INTAD0).

- Cautions**
1. Start conversion (ADCS0 = 1) after 14  $\mu$ s have elapsed following the setting of ADCE0. If ADCE0 is not used, the conversion result immediately after the setting of bit 7 (ADCS0) is undefined.
  2. In standby mode, A/D converter operation is stopped.

Figure 10-4. Basic Operation of 10-Bit A/D Converter



A/D conversion continues until bit 7 (ADCS0) of A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0) is reset (0) by software.

If an attempt is made to write to ADML0 or analog input channel specification register 0 (ADS0) during A/D conversion, the A/D conversion in progress is canceled. In this case, A/D conversion is restarted from the beginning, if ADCS0 is set (1).

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input clears A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0) to 0000H.

#### 10.4.2 Input voltage and conversion result

The relationship between the analog input voltage at the analog input pins (ANI0 to ANI7) and the A/D conversion result (A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0)) is represented by:

$$\text{ADCRL0} = \text{INT} \left( \frac{V_{\text{IN}}}{V_{\text{DD}}} \times 1,024 + 0.5 \right)$$

or

$$(\text{ADCRL0} - 0.5) \times \frac{V_{\text{DD}}}{1,024} \leq V_{\text{IN}} < (\text{ADCRL0} + 0.5) \times \frac{V_{\text{DD}}}{1,024}$$

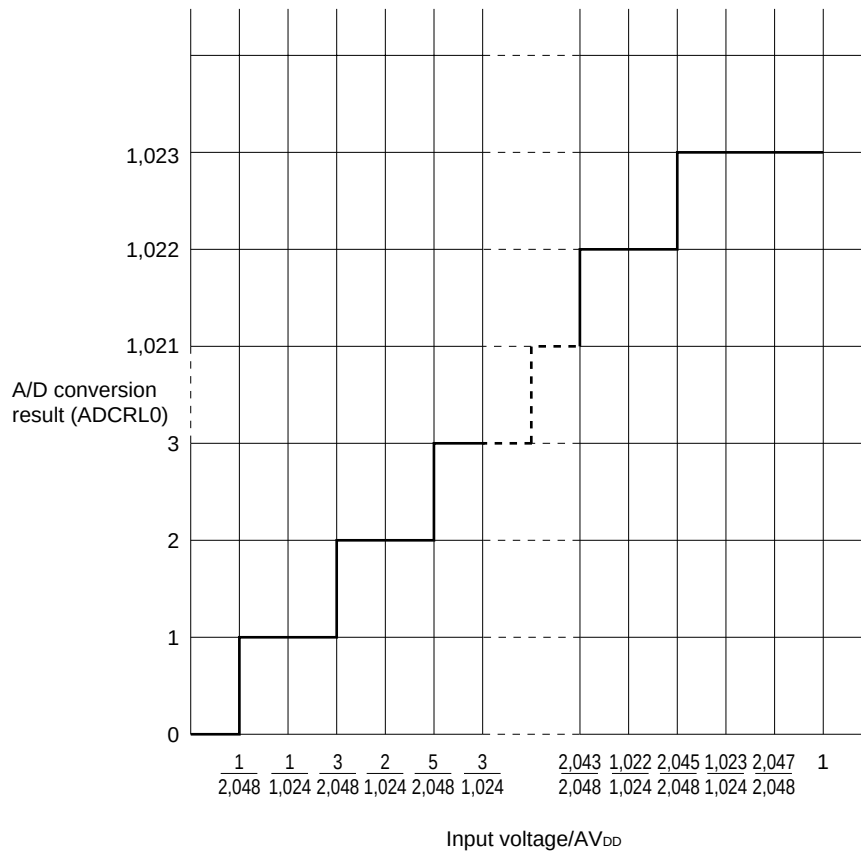
INT( ): Function that returns the integer part of a parenthesized value

$V_{\text{IN}}$ : Analog input voltage

$V_{\text{DD}}$ : Supply voltage for the A/D converter

ADCRL0: Value in A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0)

Figure 10-5 shows the relationship between the analog input voltage and the A/D conversion result.

**Figure 10-5. Relationship Between Analog Input Voltage and A/D Conversion Result**

### 10.4.3 Operation mode of 10-bit A/D converter

The A/D converter is initially in select mode. In this mode, analog input channel specification register 0 (ADS0) is used to select an analog input channel from ANI0 to ANI7 for A/D conversion.

A/D conversion can be started only by software, that is, by setting A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0).

The A/D conversion result is saved to A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0). At the same time, an interrupt request signal (INTAD0) is generated.

#### • Software-started A/D conversion

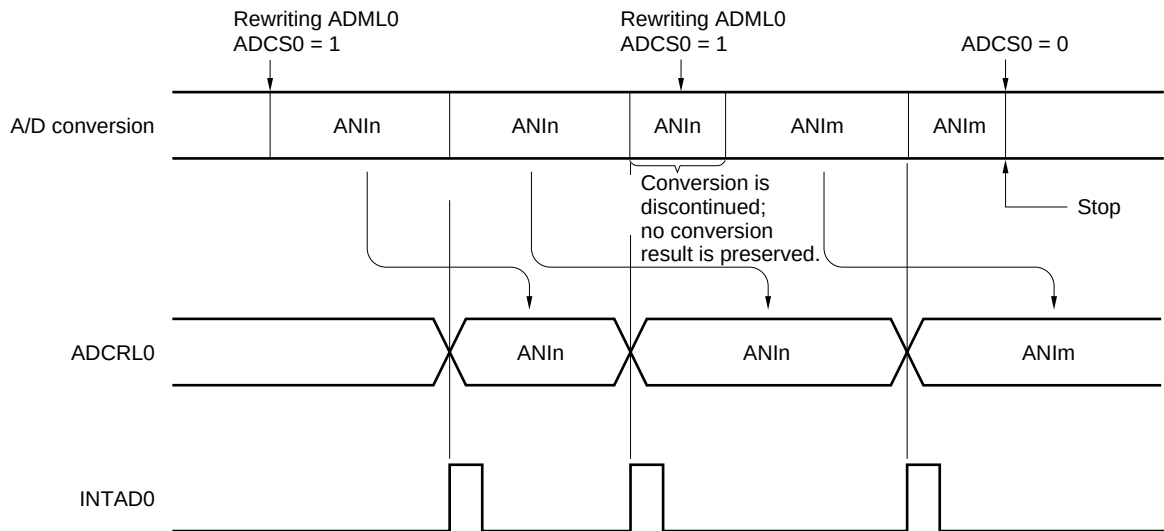
Setting bit 7 (ADCS0) of A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0) to 1 triggers A/D conversion for the voltage applied to the analog input pin specified in analog input channel specification register 0 (ADS0).

Upon completion of A/D conversion, the conversion result is saved to A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0). At the same time, an interrupt request signal (INTAD0) is generated. Once A/D conversion is activated and completed, another session of A/D conversion is started. A/D conversion is repeated until new data is written to ADML0.

If data where ADCS0 is 1 is written to ADML0 again during A/D conversion, the A/D conversion in progress is discontinued, and a new session of A/D conversion begins for the new data.

If data where ADCS0 is 0 is written to ADML0 again during A/D conversion, A/D conversion is stopped immediately.

**Figure 10-6. Software-Started A/D Conversion**



- Remarks**
1.  $n = 0$  to  $7$
  2.  $m = 0$  to  $7$

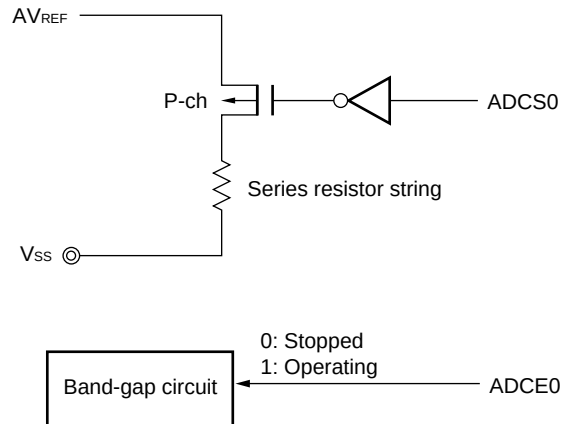
## 10.5 Cautions Related to 10-Bit A/D Converter

### ★ (1) Current consumption in standby mode

In standby mode, the A/D converter stops operation. Clearing bit 7 (ADCS0) and bit 0 (ADCE0) of A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0) to 0 can reduce the current consumption.

Figure 10-7 shows how to reduce the current consumption in standby mode.

**Figure 10-7. How to Reduce Current Consumption in Standby Mode**



### (2) Input range for pins ANI0 to ANI7

Be sure to keep the input voltage at ANI0 to ANI7 within the rating. If a voltage greater than or equal to  $AV_{DD}$  or less than or equal to  $AV_{SS}$  (even within the absolute maximum ratings) is input into a conversion channel, the conversion output of the channel becomes undefined, which may affect the conversion output of the other channels.

### (3) Conflict

<1> Conflict between writing to A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0) at the end of conversion and reading from ADCRL0 using instruction  
Reading from ADCRL0 takes precedence. After reading, the new conversion result is written to ADCRL0.

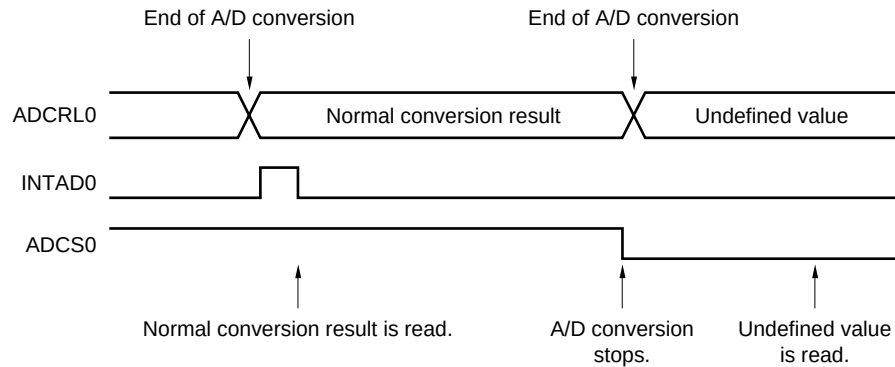
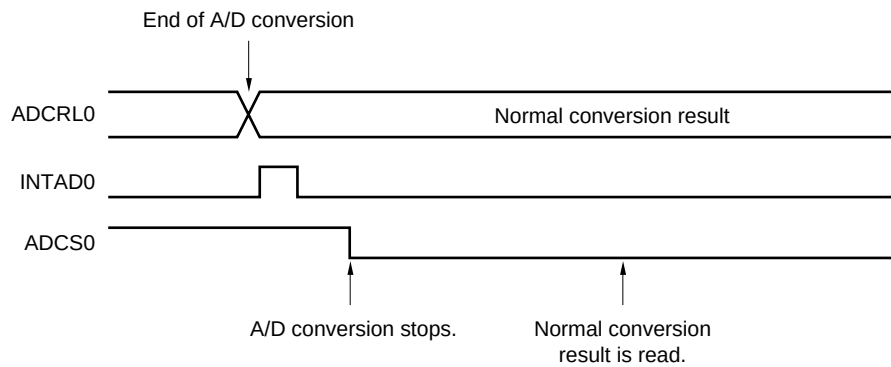
<2> Conflict between writing to ADCRL0 at the end of conversion and writing to A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0) or analog input channel specification register 0 (ADS0)  
Writing to ADML0 or ADS0 takes precedence. ADCRL0 is not written to. No A/D conversion end interrupt request signal (INTAD0) is generated.

### (4) Conversion result immediately after start of A/D conversion

If the band-gap circuit is not used ( $ADCE0 = 0$ ) or conversion is started before 14  $\mu s$  has elapsed following the setting of  $ADCE$ , only the first A/D conversion value immediately after A/D conversion has been started is undefined. Poll the A/D conversion end interrupt request (INTAD0), drop the first conversion result and use the second and subsequent conversion results. When 14  $\mu s$  have elapsed following the activation of the band-gap circuit ( $ADCE0 = 1$ ), the first conversion value is normal.

**(5) Timing of undefined A/D conversion result**

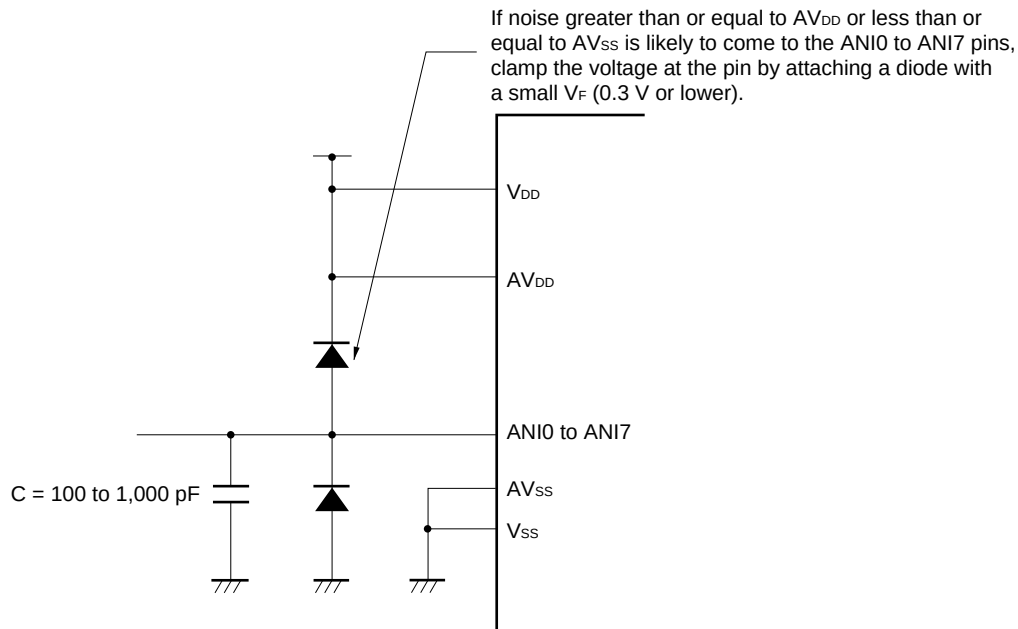
The A/D conversion value may become undefined if the timing of the completion of A/D conversion and the timing to stop the A/D conversion operation conflict. Therefore, read the A/D conversion result while the A/D conversion operation is in progress. To read the A/D conversion result after the A/D conversion operation has been stopped, stop the A/D conversion operation before the next conversion operation is completed. Figures 10-8 and 10-9 show the timing at which the conversion result is read.

**Figure 10-8. Conversion Result Read Timing (if Conversion Result Is Undefined)****Figure 10-9. Conversion Result Read Timing (if Conversion Result Is Normal)**

**(6) Noise prevention**

To maintain a resolution of 10 bits, watch for noise at the  $AV_{DD}$  and ANI0 to ANI7 pins. The higher the output impedance of the analog input source, the larger the effect by noise. To reduce noise, attach an external capacitor to the relevant pins as shown in Figure 10-10.

**Figure 10-10. Analog Input Pin Handling**

**(7) ANI0 to ANI7**

The analog input pins (ANI0 to ANI7) are alternate-function pins. They are also used as port pins (P60 to P67).

If any of ANI0 to ANI7 has been selected for A/D conversion, do not execute input instructions for the ports; otherwise the conversion resolution may be reduced.

If a digital pulse is applied to a pin adjacent to the analog input pins during A/D conversion, coupling noise may occur that prevents an A/D conversion result from being obtained as expected. Avoid applying a digital pulse to pins adjacent to the analog input pins during A/D conversion.

**(8) Input impedance of ANI0 to ANI7 pins**

This A/D converter charges the internal sampling capacitor for about 1/10 of the conversion time, and performs sampling.

Therefore at times other than sampling, only the leak current flows. During sampling, the current for charging the capacitor also flows, so the input impedance fluctuates and has no meaning.

However, to ensure adequate sampling, it is recommended that the output impedance of the analog input source be set to 10 k $\Omega$  or lower, or a capacitor of about 100 pF to the ANI0 to ANI7 pins (see to Figure 10-10).



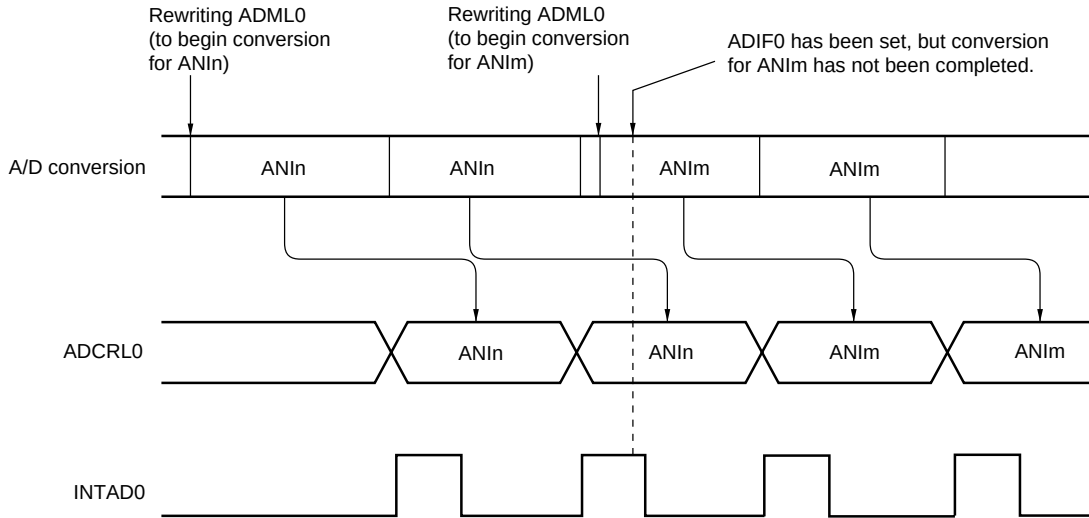
**(9) Interrupt request flag (ADIF0)**

Changing the contents of A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0) does not clear the interrupt request flag (ADIF0).

If the analog input pins are changed during A/D conversion, therefore, the A/D conversion result and the conversion end interrupt request flag may reflect the previous analog input immediately before rewriting ADML0. In this case, ADIF0 may already be set if it is read-accessed immediately after ADML0 is rewritten, even when A/D conversion has not been completed for the new analog input.

In addition, when A/D conversion is restarted, ADIF0 must be cleared beforehand.

**Figure 10-11. A/D Conversion End Interrupt Request Generation Timing**



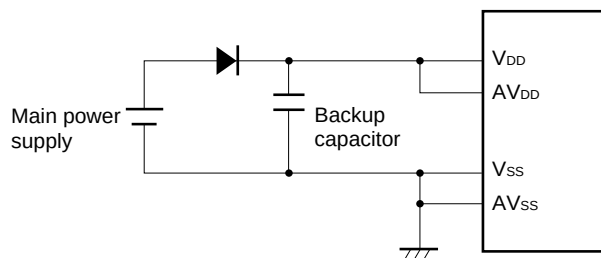
- Remarks**
1.  $n = 0$  to  $7$
  2.  $m = 0$  to  $7$

**(10) AVDD pin**

The AVDD pin is used to supply power to the analog circuit. It is also used to supply power to the ANI0 to ANI7 input circuit.

If your application is designed to be changed to backup power, the AVDD pin must be supplied with the same voltage level as the VDD pin, as shown in Figure 10-12.

**Figure 10-12. AVDD Pin Handling**



**(11) AVDD pin input impedance**

A series resistor string of several ten of kΩ is connected between the AVDD and AVSS pins. Consequently, if the output impedance of the reference voltage supply is high, the reference voltage supply will form a series connection with the series resistor string, creating a large reference voltage differential.

## CHAPTER 11 SERIAL INTERFACE 20

### 11.1 Serial Interface 20 Functions

Serial interface 20 has the following three modes.

- Operation stop mode
- Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode
- 3-wire serial I/O mode

#### (1) Operation stop mode

This mode is used when serial transfer is not performed. Power consumption is minimized in this mode.

#### (2) Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode

This mode is used to send and receive the one byte of data that follows a start bit. It supports full-duplex communication.

Serial interface 20 contains a UART-dedicated baud rate generator, enabling communication over a wide range of baud rates. It is also possible to define baud rates by dividing the frequency of the clock input to the ASCK20 pin.

#### (3) 3-wire serial I/O mode (switchable between MSB-first and LSB-first transmission)

This mode is used to transmit 8-bit data, using three lines: a serial clock line ( $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ ) and two serial data lines (SI20 and SO20).

As it supports simultaneous transmission and reception, 3-wire serial I/O mode requires less processing time for data transmission than asynchronous serial interface mode.

Because, in 3-wire serial I/O mode, it is possible to select whether 8-bit data transmission begins with the MSB or LSB, serial interface 20 can be connected to any device regardless of whether that device is designed for MSB-first or LSB-first transmission.

3-wire serial I/O mode is useful for connecting peripheral I/O circuits and display controllers having conventional synchronous serial interfaces, such as those of the 75XL, 78K, and 17K Series devices.

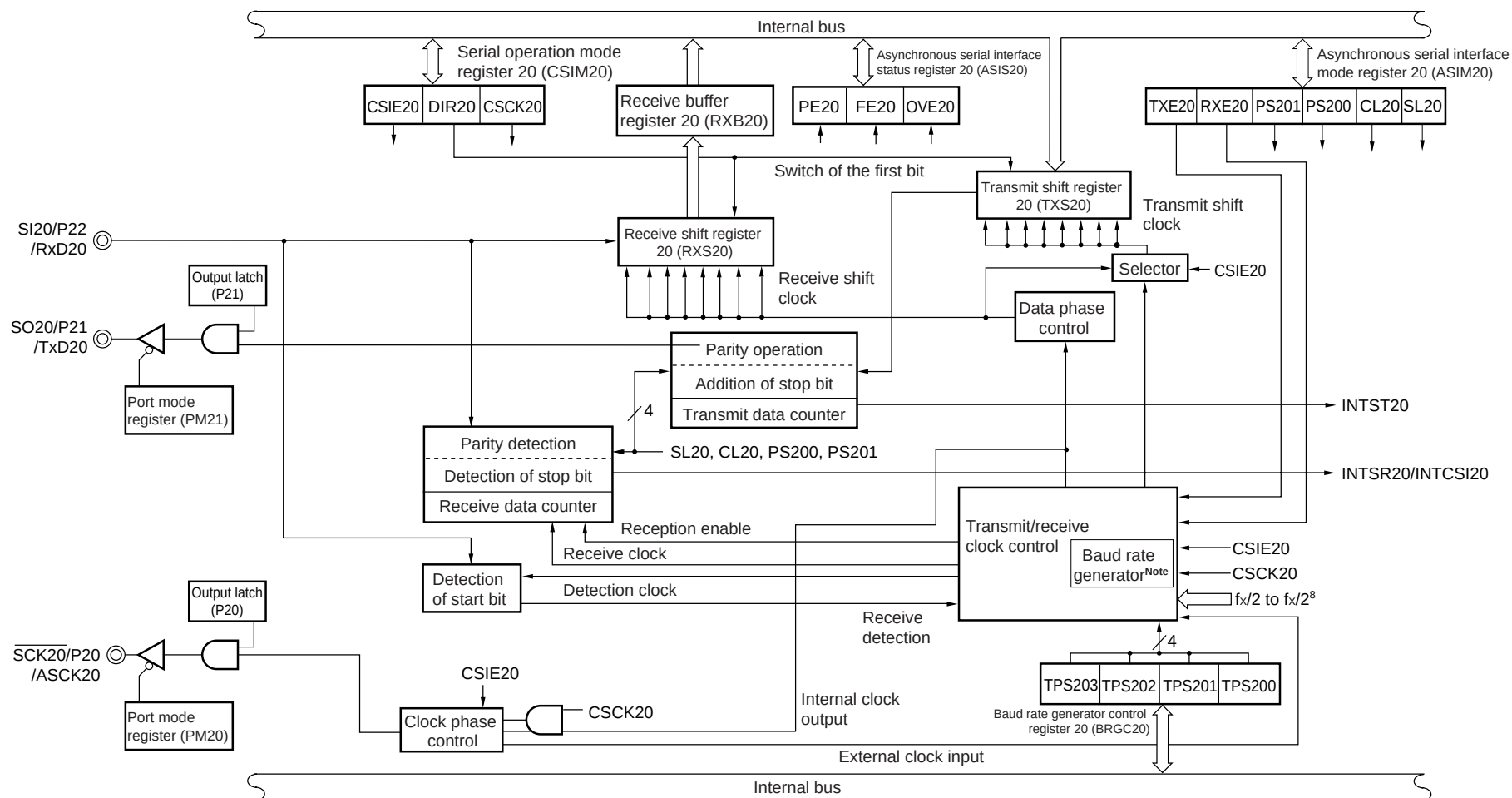
### 11.2 Serial Interface 20 Configuration

Serial interface 20 includes the following hardware.

**Table 11-1. Configuration of Serial Interface 20**

| Item              | Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Registers         | Transmit shift register 20 (TXS20)<br>Receive shift register 20 (RXS20)<br>Receive buffer register 20 (RXB20)                                                                                                                                                       |
| Control registers | Serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20)<br>Asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20)<br>Asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20)<br>Baud rate generator control register 20 (BRGC20)<br>Port mode register 2 (PM2)<br>Port 2 (P2) |

Figure 11-1. Block Diagram of Serial Interface 20



**Note** See Figure11-2 for the configuration of the baud rate generator.



**(1) Transmit shift register 20 (TXS20)**

TXS20 is a register in which transmit data is prepared. The transmit data is output from TXS20 bit-serially. When the data length is seven bits, bits 0 to 6 of the data in TXS20 will be transmit data. Writing data to TXS20 triggers transmission.

TXS20 can be written with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction, but cannot be read.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets TXS20 to FFH.

**Caution** Do not write to TXS20 during transmission.

**TXS20 and receive buffer register 20 (RXB20) are mapped at the same address, so any attempt to read from TXS20 results in a value being read from RXB20.**

**(2) Receive shift register 20 (RXS20)**

RXS20 is a register in which serial data, received at the RxD20 pin, is converted to parallel data. Once one entire byte has been received, RXS20 feeds the receive data to receive buffer register 20 (RXB20).

RXS20 cannot be manipulated directly by a program.

**(3) Receive buffer register 20 (RXB20)**

RXB20 holds receive data. New receive data is transferred from receive shift register 20 (RXS20) at every 1-byte data reception.

When the data length is seven bits, the receive data is sent to bits 0 to 6 of RXB20, in which the MSB is always fixed to 0.

RXB20 can be read with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction, but cannot be written.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input makes RXB20 undefined.

**Caution** RXB20 and transmit shift register 20 (TXS20) are mapped at the same address, so any attempt to write to RXB20 results in a value being written to TXS20.

**(4) Transmit controller**

The transmit controller controls transmission. For example, it adds start, parity, and stop bits to the data in transmit shift register 20 (TXS20), according to the setting of asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20).

**(5) Receive controller**

The receive controller controls reception according to the setting of asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20). It also checks for errors, such as parity errors, during reception. If an error is detected, asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20) is set according to the status of the error.

### 11.3 Serial Interface 20 Control Registers

Serial interface 20 is controlled by the following six registers.

- Serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20)
- Asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20)
- Asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20)
- Baud rate generator control register 20 (BRGC20)
- Port mode register 2 (PM2)
- Port 2

#### (1) Serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20)

CSIM20 is used to make the settings related to 3-wire serial I/O mode.

CSIM20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets CSIM20 to 00H.

**Figure 11-3. Format of Serial Operation Mode Register 20**

| Symbol | <7>    | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2     | 1       | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|---|---|---|---|-------|---------|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| CSIM20 | CSIE20 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | DIR20 | CSCCK20 | 0 | FF72H   | 00H         | R/W |

|        |                                          |
|--------|------------------------------------------|
| CSIE20 | 3-wire serial I/O mode operation control |
| 0      | Operation disabled                       |
| 1      | Operation enabled                        |

|       |                         |
|-------|-------------------------|
| DIR20 | First-bit specification |
| 0     | MSB                     |
| 1     | LSB                     |

|         |                                             |
|---------|---------------------------------------------|
| CSCCK20 | 3-wire serial I/O mode clock selection      |
| 0       | External clock input to the SCK20 pin       |
| 1       | Output of the dedicated baud rate generator |

**Cautions** 1. Bits 0 and 3 to 6 must be set to 0.

2. CSIM20 must be cleared to 00H if UART mode is selected.

3. When the external input clock is selected in 3-wire serial I/O mode, set input mode by setting bit 0 of port mode register 2 (PM2) to 1.

4. Switch operating modes after halting the serial transmit/receive operation.

★

**(2) Asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20)**

ASIM20 is used to make the settings related to asynchronous serial interface mode.

ASIM20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets ASIM20 to 00H.

**Figure 11-4. Format of Asynchronous Serial Interface Mode Register 20**

| Symbol | <7>   | <6>   | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2    | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|---|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| ASIM20 | TXE20 | RXE20 | PS201 | PS200 | CL20 | SL20 | 0 | 0 | FF70H   | 00H         | R/W |

|       |                            |
|-------|----------------------------|
| TXE20 | Transmit operation control |
| 0     | Transmit operation stopped |
| 1     | Transmit operation enabled |

|       |                           |
|-------|---------------------------|
| RXE20 | Receive operation control |
| 0     | Receive operation stopped |
| 1     | Receive operation enabled |

|       |       |                                                                                                                    |
|-------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PS201 | PS200 | Parity bit specification                                                                                           |
| 0     | 0     | No parity                                                                                                          |
| 0     | 1     | Always add 0 parity at transmission.<br>Parity check is not performed at reception (no parity error is generated). |
| 1     | 0     | Odd parity                                                                                                         |
| 1     | 1     | Even parity                                                                                                        |

|      |                                              |
|------|----------------------------------------------|
| CL20 | Transmit data character length specification |
| 0    | 7 bits                                       |
| 1    | 8 bits                                       |

|      |                               |
|------|-------------------------------|
| SL20 | Transmit data stop bit length |
| 0    | 1 bit                         |
| 1    | 2 bits                        |

- Cautions**
1. Bits 0 and 1 must be set to 0.
  2. If 3-wire serial I/O mode is selected, ASIM20 must be set to 00H.
  3. Switch operation modes after halting the serial transmission/reception operation.

Table 11-2. Serial Interface 20 Operation Mode Settings

## (1) Operation stop mode

| ASIM20           |       | CSIM20 |       |         | PM22                | P22                 | PM21                | P21                 | PM20                | P20                 | First Bit          | Shift Clock | P22/SI20/<br>RxD20 Pin Function | P21/SO20/<br>TxD20 Pin Function | P20/SCK20/<br>ASCK20 Pin Function |
|------------------|-------|--------|-------|---------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| TXE20            | RXE20 | CSIE20 | DIR20 | CSCCK20 |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                    |             |                                 |                                 |                                   |
| 0                | 0     | 0      | ×     | ×       | × <sup>Note 1</sup> | × <sup>Note 1</sup> | × <sup>Note 1</sup> | × <sup>Note 1</sup> | × <sup>Note 1</sup> | × <sup>Note 1</sup> | –                  | –           | P22                             | P21                             | P20                               |
| Other than above |       |        |       |         |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     |                     | Setting prohibited |             |                                 |                                 |                                   |

## (2) 3-wire serial I/O mode

| ASIM20           |       | CSIM20 |       |         | PM22                | P22                 | PM21 | P21 | PM20 | P20            | First Bit          | Shift Clock    | P22/SI20/<br>Rx/D20 Pin Function | P21/SO20/<br>Tx/D20 Pin Function | P20/SCK20/<br>ASCK20 Pin Function |
|------------------|-------|--------|-------|---------|---------------------|---------------------|------|-----|------|----------------|--------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| TXE20            | RXE20 | CSIE20 | DIR20 | CSCCK20 |                     |                     |      |     |      |                |                    |                |                                  |                                  |                                   |
| 0                | 0     | 1      | 0     | 0       | 1 <sup>Note 2</sup> | × <sup>Note 2</sup> | 0    | 1   | 1    | ×              | MSB                | External clock | SI20 <sup>Note 2</sup>           | SO20<br>(CMOS output)            | SCK20 <sup>1</sup> input          |
|                  |       |        |       | 0       |                     |                     |      |     | 1    | Internal clock |                    | SCK20 output   |                                  |                                  |                                   |
|                  |       | 1      | 1     | 0       |                     |                     |      |     | 1    | ×              | LSB                | External clock |                                  |                                  | SCK20 input                       |
|                  |       |        |       | 1       |                     |                     |      |     | 0    | 1              |                    | Internal clock |                                  |                                  | SCK20 output                      |
| Other than above |       |        |       |         |                     |                     |      |     |      |                | Setting prohibited |                |                                  |                                  |                                   |

## (3) Asynchronous serial interface mode

| ASIM20           |       | CSIM20 |       |         | PM22 | P22 | PM21 | P21 | PM20 | P20 | First Bit          | Shift Clock    | P22/SI20/<br>RxD20 Pin<br>Function | P21/SO20/<br>TxD20 Pin<br>Function | P20/SCK20/<br>ASCK20 Pin<br>Function |
|------------------|-------|--------|-------|---------|------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|--------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| TXE20            | RXE20 | CSIE20 | DIR20 | CSCCK20 |      |     |      |     |      |     |                    |                |                                    |                                    |                                      |
| 1                | 0     | 0      | 0     | 0       | ×    | ×   | 0    | 1   | 1    | ×   | LSB                | External clock | P22                                | TxD20<br>(CMOS output)             | ASCK20<br>input                      |
|                  |       |        |       |         |      |     |      |     | ×    | ×   |                    | Internal clock |                                    |                                    | P20                                  |
| 0                | 1     | 0      | 0     | 0       | 1    | ×   | ×    | ×   | 1    | ×   |                    | External clock | RxD20                              | P21                                | ASCK20<br>input                      |
|                  |       |        |       |         |      |     |      |     | ×    | ×   |                    | Internal clock |                                    |                                    | P20                                  |
| 1                | 1     | 0      | 0     | 0       | 1    | ×   | 0    | 1   | 1    | ×   |                    | External clock |                                    | TxD20<br>(CMOS output)             | ASCK20<br>input                      |
|                  |       |        |       |         |      |     |      |     | ×    | ×   |                    | Internal clock |                                    |                                    | P20                                  |
| Other than above |       |        |       |         |      |     |      |     |      |     | Setting prohibited |                |                                    |                                    |                                      |

**Notes** 1. These pins can be used for port functions.

2. When only transmission is used, this pin can be used as P22 (CMOS I/O).

**Remark** ×: don't care



**(3) Asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20)**

ASIS20 indicates the type of a reception error, if it occurs while asynchronous serial interface mode is set.

ASIS20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

The contents of ASIS20 are undefined in 3-wire serial I/O mode.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ASIS20 to 00H.

**Figure 11-5. Format of Asynchronous Serial Interface Status Register 20**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | <2>  | <1>  | <0>   | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|------|------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| ASIS20 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | PE20 | FE20 | OVE20 | FF71H   | 00H         | R   |

| PE20 | Parity error flag                                                                    |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | No parity error occurred.                                                            |
| 1    | A parity error occurred (when the transmit parity and receive parity did not match). |

| FE20 | Framing error flag                                                           |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | No framing error occurred.                                                   |
| 1    | A framing error occurred (when stop bit was not detected). <sup>Note 1</sup> |

| OVE20 | Overrun error flag                                                                                                                                       |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | No overrun error occurred.                                                                                                                               |
| 1     | An overrun error occurred <sup>Note 2</sup><br>(when the next receive operation was completed before the data was read from receive buffer register 20). |

**Notes 1.** Even when the stop bit length is set to 2 bits by setting bit 2 (SL20) of asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20), the stop bit detection at reception is performed with 1 bit.

**2.** Be sure to read receive buffer register 20 (RXB20) when an overrun error occurs. If not, an overrun error will occur every time data is received.

**(4) Baud rate generator control register 20 (BRGC20)**

BRGC20 is used to specify the serial clock for serial interface 20.

BRGC20 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets BRGC20 to 00H.

**Figure 11-6. Format of Baud Rate Generator Control Register 20**

|        |        |        |        |        |   |   |   |   |         |             |     |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---|---|---|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7      | 6      | 5      | 4      | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
| BRGC20 | TPS203 | TPS202 | TPS201 | TPS200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | FF73H   | 00H         | R/W |

| TPS203           | TPS202 | TPS201 | TPS200 | Selection of baud rate generator source clock          | n |
|------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------------------------------------------------------|---|
| 0                | 0      | 0      | 0      | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)                                      | 1 |
| 0                | 0      | 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)                                   | 2 |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)                                    | 3 |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)                                    | 4 |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | 0      | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)                                    | 5 |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)                                   | 6 |
| 0                | 1      | 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)                                   | 7 |
| 0                | 1      | 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)                                   | 8 |
| 1                | 0      | 0      | 0      | External clock input to the ASCK20 pin <sup>Note</sup> | – |
| Other than above |        |        |        | Setting prohibited                                     |   |

**Note** An external clock can be used only in UART mode.

**Cautions** 1. When writing to BRGC20 during a communication operation, the output of the baud rate generator is disrupted and communications cannot be performed normally. Be sure not to write to BRGC20 during a communication operation.

★ 2. Be sure not to select  $n = 1$  in UART mode when  $f_x > 2.5$  MHz because the baud rate will exceed the rated range.

★ 3. When the external input clock is selected, set input mode by setting bit 0 of port mode register 2 (PM2) to 1.

**Remarks** 1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

2.  $n$ : Values determined by the settings of TPS200 to TPS203 ( $1 \leq n \leq 8$ )

3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

The baud rate transmit/receive clock to be generated is either a divided system clock signal, or a signal obtained by dividing the clock input to the ASCK20 pin.

**(a) Generation of UART baud rate transmit/receive clock form system clock**

The transmit/receive clock is generated by dividing the system clock. The baud rate of a clock generated from the system clock is estimated by using the following expression.

$$[\text{Baud rate}] = \frac{f_x}{2^{n+1} \times 8} [\text{bps}]$$

$f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

$n$ : Values in Figure 11-6, determined by the values of TPS200 to TPS203 ( $2 \leq n \leq 8$ )

**Table 11-3. Example of Relationship Between System Clock and Baud Rate**

| Baud Rate (bps) | n | BRGC20 Set Value | Error (%)               |                            |
|-----------------|---|------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
|                 |   |                  | $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$ | $f_x = 4.9152 \text{ MHz}$ |
| 1,200           | 8 | 70H              | 1.73                    | 0                          |
| 2,400           | 7 | 60H              |                         |                            |
| 4,800           | 6 | 50H              |                         |                            |
| 9,600           | 5 | 40H              |                         |                            |
| 19,200          | 4 | 30H              |                         |                            |
| 38,400          | 3 | 20H              |                         |                            |
| 76,800          | 2 | 10H              |                         |                            |

★ **Caution** Do not select  $n = 1$  during operation at  $f_x > 2.5 \text{ MHz}$  because the resulting baud rate exceeds the rated range.

**(b) Generation of UART baud rate transmit/receive clock from external clock input to ASCK20 pin**

The transmit/receive clock is generated by dividing the clock input from the ASCK20 pin. The baud rate of a clock generated from the clock input to the ASCK20 pin is estimated by using the following expression.

$$[\text{Baud rate}] = \frac{f_{\text{ASCK}}}{16} [\text{bps}]$$

$f_{\text{ASCK}}$ : Frequency of clock input to the ASCK20 pin

**Table 11-4. Relationship Between ASCK20 Pin Input Frequency and Baud Rate (When BRGC20 Is Set to 80H)**

| Baud Rate (bps) | ASCK20 Pin Input Frequency (kHz) |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| 75              | 1.2                              |
| 150             | 2.4                              |
| 300             | 4.8                              |
| 600             | 9.6                              |
| 1,200           | 19.2                             |
| 2,400           | 38.4                             |
| 4,800           | 76.8                             |
| 9,600           | 153.6                            |
| 19,200          | 307.2                            |
| 31,250          | 500.0                            |
| 38,400          | 614.4                            |

**(c) Generation of serial clock from system clock in 3-wire serial I/O**

The serial clock is generated by dividing the system clock. The frequency of the serial clock can be obtained by the following expression. If the serial clock is externally input to the  $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$  pin, it is unnecessary to set BRGC20.

$$\text{Serial clock frequency} = \frac{f_x}{2^{n+1}} [\text{Hz}]$$

$f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

$n$ : Values in Figure 11-6 determined by the settings of TPS200 to TPS203 ( $1 \leq n \leq 8$ )

## 11.4 Serial Interface 20 Operation

Serial interface 20 provides the following three modes.

- Operation stop mode
- Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode
- 3-wire serial I/O mode

### 11.4.1 Operation stop mode

In operation stop mode, serial transfer is not executed, thereby reducing the power consumption. The P20/ $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ /ASCK20, P21/SO20/TxD20, and P22/SI20/RxD20 pins can be used as normal I/O ports.

#### (1) Register setting

Operation stop mode is set by serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20) and asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20).

##### (a) Serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20)

CSIM20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input clears CSIM20 to 00H.

| Symbol | <7>    | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2     | 1     | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| CSIM20 | CSIE20 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | DIR20 | CSC20 | 0 | FF72H   | 00H         | R/W |

|        |                                             |
|--------|---------------------------------------------|
| CSIE20 | Operation control in 3-wire serial I/O mode |
| 0      | Operation disabled                          |
| 1      | Operation enabled                           |

**Caution** Bits 0 and 3 to 6 must be set to 0.

**(b) Asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20)**

ASIM20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ASIM20 to 00H.

| Symbol | <7>   | <6>   | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2    | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|---|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| ASIM20 | TXE20 | RXE20 | PS201 | PS200 | CL20 | SL20 | 0 | 0 | FF70H   | 00H         | R/W |

|       |                            |
|-------|----------------------------|
| TXE20 | Transmit operation control |
| 0     | Transmit operation stopped |
| 1     | Transmit operation enabled |

|       |                           |
|-------|---------------------------|
| RXE20 | Receive operation control |
| 0     | Receive operation stopped |
| 1     | Receive operation enabled |

**Caution** Bits 0 and 1 must be set to 0.

### 11.4.2 Asynchronous serial interface (UART) mode

In this mode, the one-byte data following the start bit is transmitted/received, enabling full-duplex communication.

This device incorporates a UART-dedicated baud rate generator that enables communications at the desired baud rate. In addition, the baud rate can also be defined by dividing the clock input to the ASCK20 pin.

The UART-dedicated baud rate generator also can output the 31.25 Kbps baud rate that complies with the MIDI standard.

#### (1) Register setting

UART mode is set by serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20), asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20), asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20), baud rate generator control register 20 (BRGC20), port mode register 2 (PM2), and port 2 (P2).

##### (a) Serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20)

CSIM20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets CSIM20 to 00H.

Set CSIM20 to 00H when UART mode is selected.

| Symbol | <7>    | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2     | 1      | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|---|---|---|---|-------|--------|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| CSIM20 | CSIE20 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | DIR20 | CSCK20 | 0 | FF72H   | 00H         | R/W |

|        |                                          |
|--------|------------------------------------------|
| CSIE20 | 3-wire serial I/O mode operation control |
| 0      | Operation disabled                       |
| 1      | Operation enabled                        |

|       |                         |
|-------|-------------------------|
| DIR20 | First-bit specification |
| 0     | MSB                     |
| 1     | LSB                     |

|        |                                                           |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| CSCK20 | 3-wire serial I/O mode clock selection                    |
| 0      | External clock input to the $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ pin |
| 1      | Output of the dedicated baud rate generator               |

**Cautions 1. Bits 0 and 3 to 6 must be set to 0.**

**2. Switch operation modes after halting the serial transmission/reception operation.**

**(b) Asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20)**

ASIM20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ASIM20 to 00H.

| Symbol | <7>   | <6>   | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2    | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|---|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| ASIM20 | TXE20 | RXE20 | PS201 | PS200 | CL20 | SL20 | 0 | 0 | FF70H   | 00H         | R/W |

| TXE20 | Transmit operation control |
|-------|----------------------------|
| 0     | Transmit operation stopped |
| 1     | Transmit operation enabled |

| RXE20 | Receive operation control |
|-------|---------------------------|
| 0     | Receive operation stopped |
| 1     | Receive operation enabled |

| PS201 | PS200 | Parity bit specification                                                                                           |
|-------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | 0     | No parity                                                                                                          |
| 0     | 1     | Always add 0 parity at transmission.<br>Parity check is not performed at reception (no parity error is generated). |
| 1     | 0     | Odd parity                                                                                                         |
| 1     | 1     | Even parity                                                                                                        |

| CL20 | Character length specification |
|------|--------------------------------|
| 0    | 7 bits                         |
| 1    | 8 bits                         |

| SL20 | Transmit data stop bit length specification |
|------|---------------------------------------------|
| 0    | 1 bit                                       |
| 1    | 2 bits                                      |

**Cautions 1. Bits 0 and 1 must be set to 0.**

**2. Switch operation modes after halting the serial transmission/reception operation.**



**(c) Asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20)**

ASIS20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ASIS20 to 00H.

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | <2>  | <1>  | <0>   | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|------|------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| ASIS20 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | PE20 | FE20 | OVE20 | FF71H   | 00H         | R   |

| PE20 | Parity error flag                                                                   |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | No parity error occurred                                                            |
| 1    | A parity error occurred (when the transmit parity and receive parity did not match) |

| FE20 | Framing error flag                                                          |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | No framing error occurred                                                   |
| 1    | A framing error occurred (when stop bit was not detected) <sup>Note 1</sup> |

| OVE20 | Overflow error flag                                                                                                                                    |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | No overflow error occurred                                                                                                                             |
| 1     | An overflow error occurred <sup>Note 2</sup><br>(when the next receive operation was completed before data was read from reception buffer register 20) |

- Notes**
1. Even when the stop bit length is set to 2 bits by setting bit 2 (SL20) of asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20), the stop bit detection at reception is performed with 1 bit.
  2. Be sure to read receive buffer register 20 (RXB20) when an overflow error occurs. If not, an overflow error will occur every time data is received.

**(d) Baud rate generator control register 20 (BRGC20)**

BRGC20 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets BRGC20 to 00H.

|        |        |        |        |        |   |   |   |   |         |             |     |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---|---|---|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7      | 6      | 5      | 4      | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
| BRGC20 | TPS203 | TPS202 | TPS201 | TPS200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | FF73H   | 00H         | R/W |

| TPS203           | TPS202 | TPS201 | TPS200 | Selection of baud rate generator source clock      | n |
|------------------|--------|--------|--------|----------------------------------------------------|---|
| 0                | 0      | 0      | 0      | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)                                  | 1 |
| 0                | 0      | 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)                               | 2 |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)                                | 3 |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)                                | 4 |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | 0      | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)                                | 5 |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)                               | 6 |
| 0                | 1      | 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)                               | 7 |
| 0                | 1      | 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)                               | 8 |
| 1                | 0      | 0      | 0      | External clock input to ASCK20 pin <sup>Note</sup> | – |
| Other than above |        |        |        | Setting prohibited                                 |   |

**Note** Can only be used in the UART mode.

- Cautions**
1. When writing to BRGC20 during a communication operation, the output of the baud rate generator is disrupted and communications cannot be performed normally. Be sure not to write to BRGC20 during a communication operation.
  2. Be sure not to select  $n = 1$  during operation at  $f_x > 2.5$  MHz because the resulting baud rate exceeds the rated range.
  3. When the external input clock is selected, set input mode by setting bit 0 of port mode register 2 (PM2) to 1.

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $n$ : Values determined by the settings of TPS200 to TPS203 ( $1 \leq n \leq 8$ )
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

The baud rate transmit/receive clock to be generated is either a divided system clock signal, or a signal obtained by dividing the clock input to the ASCK20 pin.

**(i) Generation of baud rate transmit/receive clock from system clock**

The transmit/receive clock is generated by dividing the system clock. The baud rate of a clock generated from the system clock is estimated by using the following expression.

$$[\text{Baud rate}] = \frac{f_x}{2^{n+1} \times 8} [\text{bps}]$$

$f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

$n$ : Values in the above table determined by the settings of TPS200 to TPS203 ( $2 \leq n \leq 8$ )

**Table 11-5. Example of Relationship Between System Clock and Baud Rate**

| Baud Rate (bps) | n | BRGC20 Set Value | Error (%)                |                             |
|-----------------|---|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
|                 |   |                  | f <sub>x</sub> = 5.0 MHz | f <sub>x</sub> = 4.9152 MHz |
| 1,200           | 8 | 70H              | 1.73                     | 0                           |
| 2,400           | 7 | 60H              |                          |                             |
| 4,800           | 6 | 50H              |                          |                             |
| 9,600           | 5 | 40H              |                          |                             |
| 19,200          | 4 | 30H              |                          |                             |
| 38,400          | 3 | 20H              |                          |                             |
| 76,800          | 2 | 10H              |                          |                             |

★ **Caution** Do not select n = 1 during operation at f<sub>x</sub> > 2.5 MHz because the resulting baud rate exceeds the rated range.

(ii) **Generation of baud rate transmit/receive clock from external clock input to ASCK20 pin**

The transmit/receive clock is generated by dividing the clock input from the ASCK20 pin. The baud rate of a clock generated from the clock input to the ASCK20 pin is estimated by using the following expression.

$$[\text{Baud rate}] = \frac{f_{\text{ASCK}}}{16} [\text{bps}]$$

f<sub>ASCK</sub>: Frequency of clock input to ASCK20 pin

**Table 11-6. Relationship Between ASCK20 Pin Input Frequency and Baud Rate (When BRGC20 Is Set to 80H)**

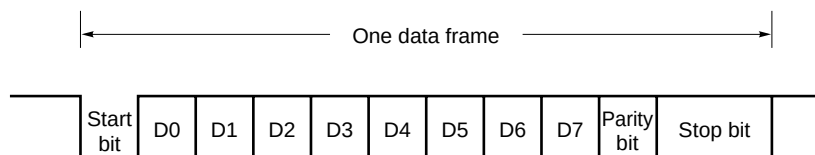
| Baud Rate (bps) | ASCK20 Pin Input Frequency (kHz) |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| 75              | 1.2                              |
| 150             | 2.4                              |
| 300             | 4.8                              |
| 600             | 9.6                              |
| 1,200           | 19.2                             |
| 2,400           | 38.4                             |
| 4,800           | 76.8                             |
| 9,600           | 153.6                            |
| 19,200          | 307.2                            |
| 31,250          | 500.0                            |
| 38,400          | 614.4                            |

**(2) Communication operation****(a) Data format**

The transmit/receive data format is as shown in Figure 11-7. One data frame consists of a start bit, character bits, parity bit, and stop bit(s).

The specification of character bit length in one data frame, parity selection, and specification of stop bit length is carried out using asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20).

**Figure 11-7. Format of Asynchronous Serial Interface Transmit/Receive Data**



- Start bits ..... 1 bit
- Character bits..... 7 bits/8 bits
- Parity bits ..... Even parity/odd parity/0 parity/no parity
- Stop bits..... 1 bit/2 bits

When 7 bits are selected as the number of character bits, only the lower 7 bits (bits 0 to 6) are valid; in transmission the most significant bit (bit 7) is ignored, and in reception the most significant bit (bit 7) is always “0”.

The serial transfer rate is selected by baud rate generator control register 20 (BRGC20).

If a serial data receive error occurs, the receive error contents can be determined by reading the status of asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20).

**(b) Parity types and operation**

The parity bit is used to detect a bit error in the communication data. Normally, the same kind of parity bit is used on the transmitting side and the receiving side. With even parity and odd parity, a one-bit (odd number) error can be detected. With 0 parity and no parity, an error cannot be detected.

**(i) Even parity****• At transmission**

The parity bit is determined so that the number of bits with a value of “1” in the transmit data including the parity bit is even. The parity bit value should be as follows.

The number of bits with a value of “1” is an odd number in transmit data: 1

The number of bits with a value of “1” is an even number in transmit data: 0

**• At reception**

The number of bits with a value of “1” in the receive data including parity bit is counted, and if the number is odd, a parity error occurs.

**(ii) Odd parity****• At transmission**

Opposite to even parity, the parity bit is determined so that the number of bits with a value of “1” in the transmit data including parity bit is odd. The parity bit value should be as follows.

The number of bits with a value of “1” is an odd number in transmit data: 0

The number of bits with a value of “1” is an even number in transmit data: 1

**• At reception**

The number of bits with a value of “1” in the receive data including parity bit is counted, and if the number is even, a parity error occurs.

**(iii) 0 parity**

When transmitting, the parity bit is set to “0” irrespective of the transmit data.

At reception, a parity bit check is not performed. Therefore, a parity error does not occur, irrespective of whether the parity bit is set to “0” or “1”.

**(iv) No parity**

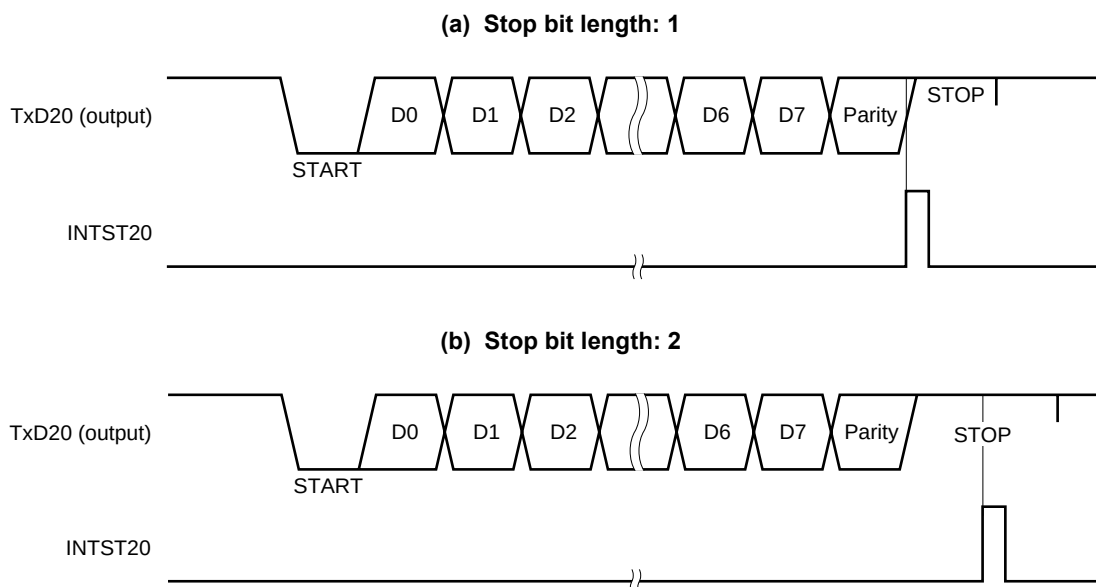
A parity bit is not added to the transmit data. At reception, data is received assuming that there is no parity bit. Since there is no parity bit, a parity error does not occur.

**(c) Transmission**

A transmit operation is started by writing transmit data to transmit shift register 20 (TXS20). The start bit, parity bit, and stop bit(s) are added automatically.

When the transmit operation starts, the data in TXS20 is shifted out, and when TXS20 is empty, a transmission completion interrupt (INTST20) is generated.

**Figure 11-8. Asynchronous Serial Interface Transmission Completion Interrupt Timing**



**Caution** Do not rewrite asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20) during a transmit operation. If the ASIM20 register is rewritten during transmission, subsequent transmission may not be able to be performed (the normal state is restored by RESET input).

It is possible to determine whether transmission is in progress by software by using a transmission completion interrupt (INTST20) or the interrupt request flag (STIF20) set by INTST20.

**(d) Reception**

When bit 6 (RXE20) of asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20) is set (1), a receive operation is enabled and sampling of the RxD20 pin input is performed.

RxD20 pin input sampling is performed using the serial clock specified by BRGC20.

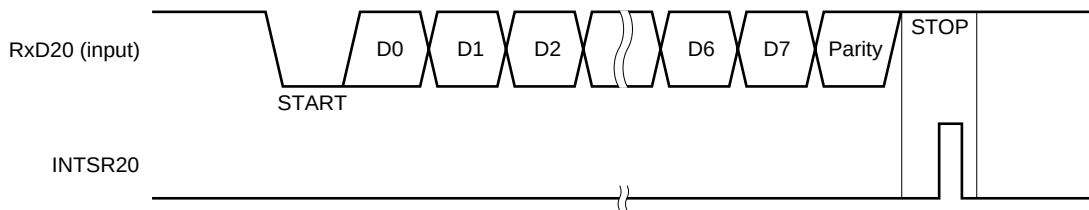
When the RxD20 pin input becomes low, the 3-bit counter starts counting, and when half the time determined by the specified baud rate has passed, the data sampling start timing signal is output. If the RxD20 pin input sampled again as a result of this start timing signal is low, it is identified as a start bit, the 3-bit counter is initialized and starts counting, and data sampling is performed. When character data, a parity bit, and one stop bit are detected after the start bit, reception of one frame of data ends.

When one frame of data has been received, the receive data in the shift register is transferred to receive buffer register 20 (RXB20), and a reception completion interrupt (INTSR20) is generated.

If an error occurs, the receive data in which the error occurred is still transferred to RXB20, and INTSR20 is generated.

If the RXE20 bit is reset (0) during the receive operation, the receive operation is stopped immediately. In this case, the contents of RXB20 and asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20) are not changed, and INTSR20 is not generated.

**Figure 11-9. Asynchronous Serial Interface Reception Completion Interrupt Timing**



**Caution** Be sure to read receive buffer register 20 (RXB20) even if a receive error occurs. If RXB20 is not read, an overrun error will occur when the next data is received, and the receive error state will continue indefinitely.

**(e) Receive errors**

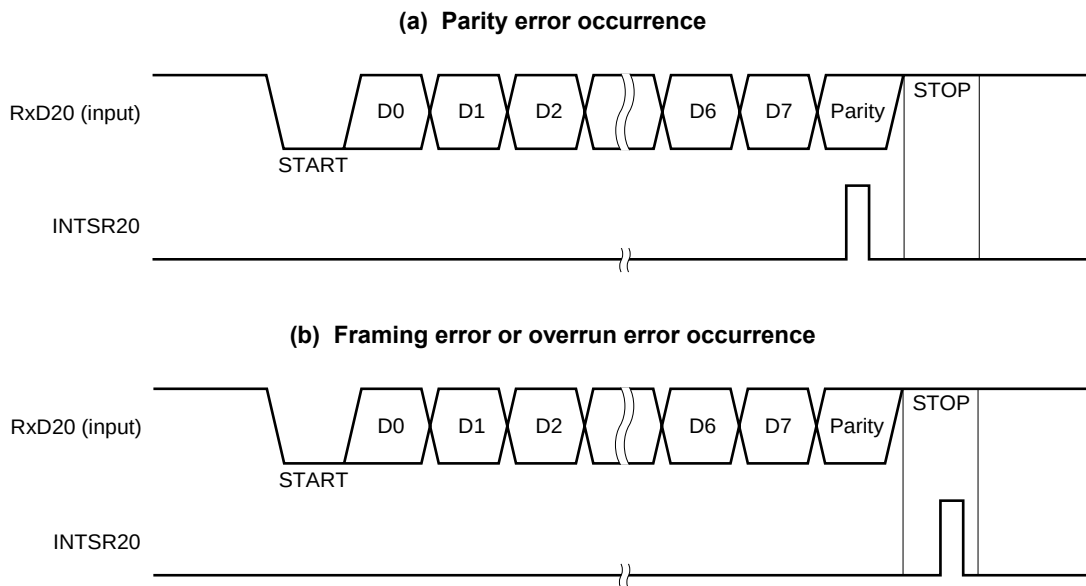
The following three errors may occur during a receive operation: a parity error, framing error, and overrun error. After data reception, an error flag is set in asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20). Receive error causes are shown in Table 11-7.

It is possible to determine what kind of error occurred during reception by reading the contents of ASIS20 in the reception error interrupt servicing (see **Table 11-7** and **Figure 11-10**).

The contents of ASIS20 are reset (0) by reading receive buffer register 20 (RXB20) or receiving the next data (if there is an error in the next data, the corresponding error flag is set).

**Table 11-7. Receive Error Causes**

| Receive Errors | Receive Errors                                                                       | Value of ASIS20 |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Parity error   | Parity at transmission and reception do not match                                    | 04H             |
| Framing error  | Stop bit not detected                                                                | 02H             |
| Overrun error  | Reception of next data is completed before data is read from receive buffer register | 01H             |

**Figure 11-10. Receive Error Timing**

- Cautions**
1. The contents of the ASIS20 register are reset (0) by reading receive buffer register 20 (RXB20) or receiving the next data. To ascertain the error contents, read ASIS20 before reading RXB20.
  2. Be sure to read receive buffer register 20 (RXB20) even if a receive error occurs. If RXB20 is not read, an overrun error will occur when the next data is received, and the receive error state will continue indefinitely.



**(f) Reading receive data**

When the reception completion interrupt (INTSR20) occurs, receive data can be read by reading the value of receive buffer register 20 (RXB20).

To read the receive data stored in receive buffer register 20 (RXB20), read while reception is enabled (RXE20 = 1).

**Remark** However, if it is necessary to read receive data after reception has stopped (RXE20 = 0), read using either of the following methods.

- (a) Read after setting RXE20 = 0 after waiting for one cycle or more of the source clock selected by BRGC20.
- (b) Read after bit 2 (DIR20) of serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20) is set (1).

Program example of (a) (BRGC20 = 00H (source clock =  $f_x/2$ ))

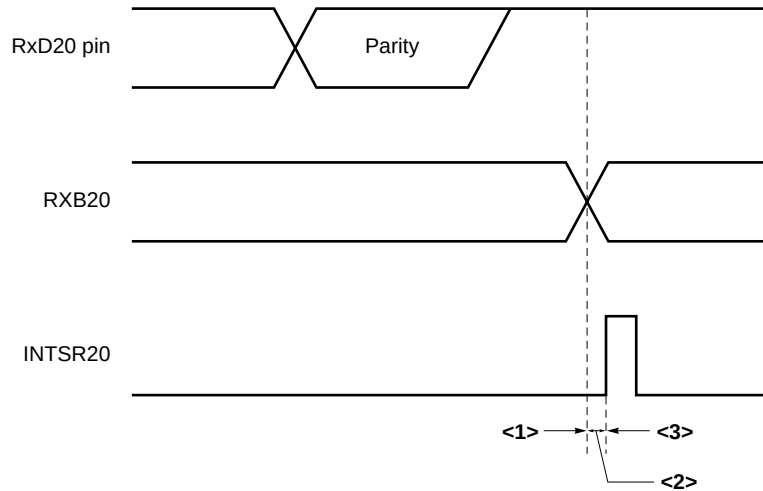
```
INTREX:                                ;<Reception completion interrupt routine>
      NOP                               ;2 clocks
      CLR1 RXE20                        ;Reception stopped
      MOV  A, RXB20                     ;Read receive data
```

Program example of (b)

```
INTRXE:                                ;<Reception completion interrupt routine>
      SET1 CSIM20.2                     ;DIR20 flag is set to LSB first
      CLR1 RXE20                        ;Reception stopped
      MOV  A, RXB20                     ;Read receive data
```

**(3) Cautions related to UART mode**

- (a) When bit 7 (TXE20) of asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20) is cleared during transmission, be sure to set transmit shift register 20 (TXS20) to FFH, then set TXE20 to 1 before executing the next transmission.
- (b) When bit 6 (RXE20) of asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20) is cleared during reception, receive buffer register 20 (RXB20) and the receive completion interrupt (INTSR20) are as follows.



When RXE20 is set to 0 at the time indicated by <1>, RXB20 holds the previous data and INTSR20 is not generated.

When RXE20 is set to 0 at the time indicated by <2>, RXB20 renews the data and INTSR20 is not generated.

When RXE20 is set to 0 at the time indicated by <3>, RXB20 renews the data and INTSR20 is generated.

### 11.4.3 3-wire serial I/O mode

The 3-wire serial I/O mode is useful for connection of peripheral I/Os and display controllers, etc., which incorporate a conventional clocked serial interface, such as the 75XL Series, 78K Series, and 17K Series.

Communication is performed using three lines: a serial clock ( $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ ), serial output (SO20), and serial input (SI20).

#### (1) Register setting

3-wire serial I/O mode settings are performed using serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20), asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20), baud rate generator control register 20 (BRGC20), port mode register 2 (PM2), and port 2 (P2).

##### (a) Serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20)

CSIM20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets CSIM20 to 00H.

| Symbol | <7>    | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2     | 1       | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|---|---|---|---|-------|---------|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| CSIM20 | CSIE20 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | DIR20 | CSCCK20 | 0 | FF72H   | 00H         | R/W |

|        |                                          |
|--------|------------------------------------------|
| CSIE20 | 3-wire serial I/O mode operation control |
| 0      | Operation disabled                       |
| 1      | Operation enabled                        |

|       |                         |
|-------|-------------------------|
| DIR20 | First-bit specification |
| 0     | MSB                     |
| 1     | LSB                     |

|         |                                                           |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| CSCCK20 | 3-wire serial I/O mode clock selection                    |
| 0       | External clock input to the $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ pin |
| 1       | Output of the dedicated baud rate generator               |

**Cautions 1. Bits 0 and 3 to 6 must be set to 0.**

★

2. When the external input clock is selected, set input mode by setting bit 0 of port mode register 2 (PM2) to 1.
3. Switch operation modes after halting the serial transmission/reception operation.

**(b) Asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20)**

ASIM20 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets ASIM20 to 00H.

When 3-wire serial I/O mode is selected, ASIM20 must be set to 00H.

| Symbol | <7>   | <6>   | 5     | 4     | 3    | 2    | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|---|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| ASIM20 | TXE20 | RXE20 | PS201 | PS200 | CL20 | SL20 | 0 | 0 | FF70H   | 00H         | R/W |

| TXE20 | Transmit operation control |
|-------|----------------------------|
| 0     | Transmit operation stopped |
| 1     | Transmit operation enabled |

| RXE20 | Receive operation control |
|-------|---------------------------|
| 0     | Receive operation stopped |
| 1     | Receive operation enabled |

| PS201 | PS200 | Parity bit specification                                                                                     |
|-------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | 0     | No parity                                                                                                    |
| 0     | 1     | Always add 0 parity at transmission.<br>Parity check is not performed at reception (no parity error occurs). |
| 1     | 0     | Odd parity                                                                                                   |
| 1     | 1     | Even parity                                                                                                  |

| CL20 | Transmit data character length specification |
|------|----------------------------------------------|
| 0    | 7 bits                                       |
| 1    | 8 bits                                       |

| SL20 | Transmit data stop bit length specification |
|------|---------------------------------------------|
| 0    | 1 bit                                       |
| 1    | 2 bits                                      |

**Cautions** 1. Bits 0 and 1 must be set to 0.

2. Switch operation modes after halting the serial transmission/reception operation.

**(c) Baud rate generator control register 20 (BRGC20)**

BRGC20 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets BRGC20 to 00H.

| Symbol | 7      | 6      | 5      | 4      | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---|---|---|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| BRGC20 | TPS203 | TPS202 | TPS201 | TPS200 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | FF73H   | 00H         | R/W |

| TPS203           | TPS202 | TPS201 | TPS200 | Selection of baud rate generator source clock | n |
|------------------|--------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------------------|---|
| 0                | 0      | 0      | 0      | $f_x/2$ (2.5 MHz)                             | 1 |
| 0                | 0      | 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)                          | 2 |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)                           | 3 |
| 0                | 0      | 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)                           | 4 |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | 0      | $f_x/2^5$ (156 kHz)                           | 5 |
| 0                | 1      | 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)                          | 6 |
| 0                | 1      | 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)                          | 7 |
| 0                | 1      | 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^8$ (19.5 kHz)                          | 8 |
| Other than above |        |        |        | Setting prohibited                            |   |

**Caution** When writing to BRGC20 during a communication operation, the baud rate generator output is disrupted and communications cannot be performed normally. Be sure not to write to BRGC20 during a communication operation.

- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2.  $n$ : Values determined by the settings of TPS200 to TPS203 ( $1 \leq n \leq 8$ )
  3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

If the internal clock is used as the serial clock for 3-wire serial I/O mode, set bits TPS200 to TPS203 to set the frequency of the serial clock. To obtain the frequency to be set, use the following expression. When an external clock is used, setting BRGC20 is not necessary.

$$\text{Serial clock frequency} = \frac{f_x}{2^{n+1}} [\text{Hz}]$$

$f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

$n$ : Values in the above table determined by the settings of TPS200 to TPS203 ( $1 \leq n \leq 8$ )

**(2) Communication operation**

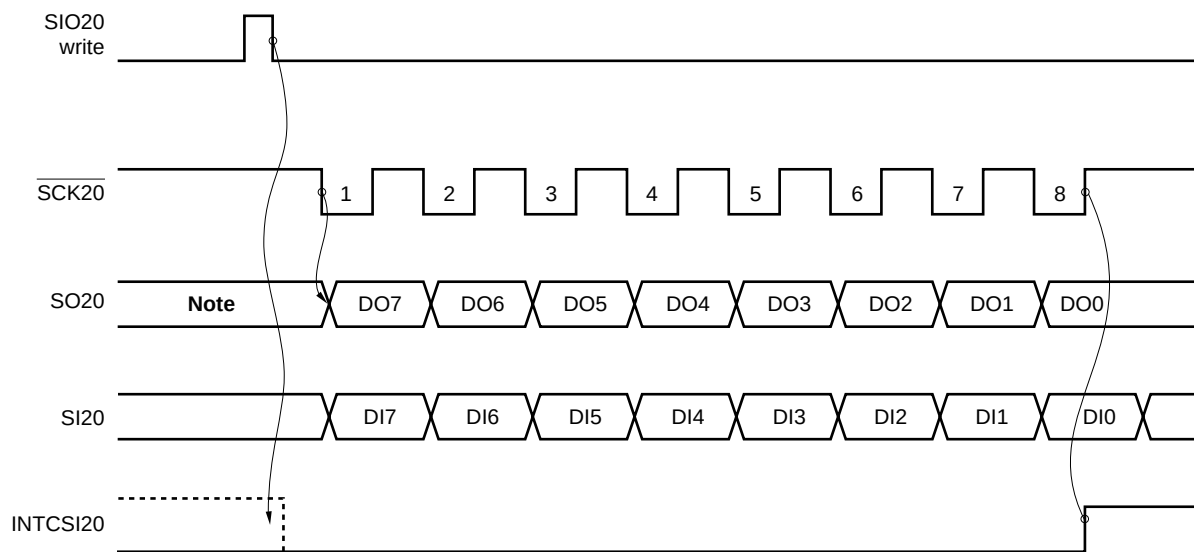
In 3-wire serial I/O mode, data transmission/reception is performed in 8-bit units. Data is transmitted/received bit by bit in synchronization with the serial clock.

Transmit shift register 20 (TXS20/SIO20) and receive shift register 20 (RXS20) shift operations are performed in synchronization with the fall of the serial clock ( $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ ). Then transmit data is held in the SO20 latch and output from the SO20 pin. Also, receive data input to the SI20 pin is latched in receive buffer register 20 (RXB20/SIO20) on the rise of  $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ .

At the end of an 8-bit transfer, the operation of TXS20/SIO20 and RXS20 stops automatically, and the interrupt request signal (INTCSI20) is generated.

**Figure 11-11. 3-Wire Serial I/O Mode Timing (1/2)**

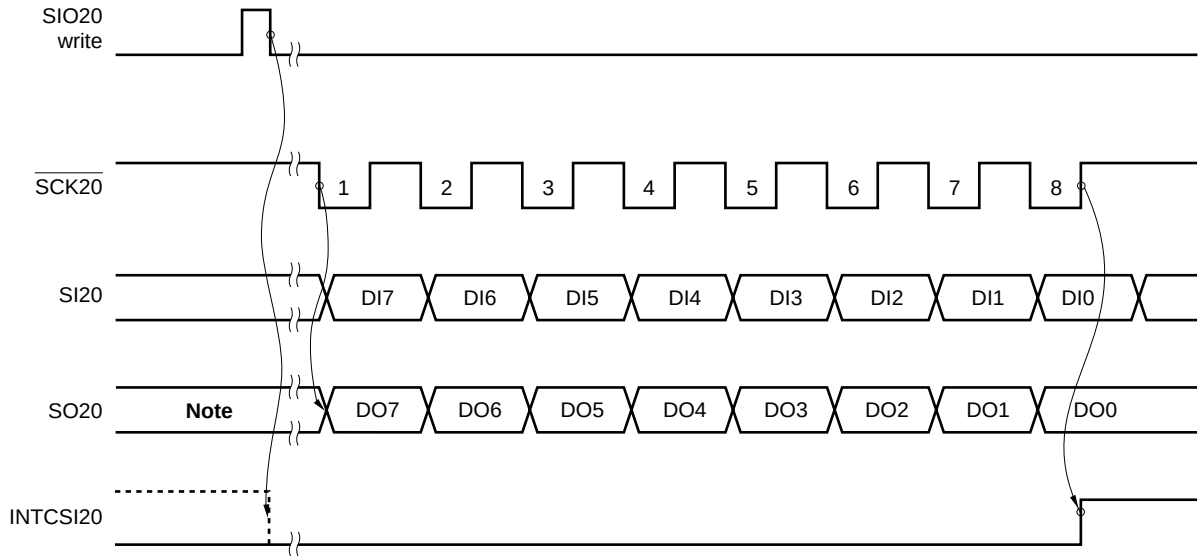
**(i) Master operation timing (CSCK20=0)**



**Note** The value of the last bit previously output is output.

Figure 11-11. 3-Wire Serial I/O Mode Timing (2/2)

## (ii) Slave operation timing (CSCK20=1)



**Note** The value of the last bit previously output is output.

## (3) Transfer start

Serial transfer is started by setting transfer data to transmit shift register 20 (TXS20/SIO20) when the following two conditions are satisfied.

- Bit 7 (CSIE20) of serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20) = 1
- Internal serial clock is stopped or  $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$  is high after 8-bit serial transfer.

**Caution** If CSIE20 is set to “1” after data is written to TXS20/SIO20, transfer does not start.

Termination of 8-bit transfer stops the serial transfer automatically and generates the interrupt request signal (INTCSI20).

### 12.1 Function of Serial Interface 1A0

Serial interface 1A0 has the following three modes.

- Operation stop mode
- 3-wire serial I/O mode
- 3-wire serial I/O mode with automatic transmit/receive function

#### (1) Operation stop mode

This mode is used when serial transfer will not be performed. It enables a reduction in power consumption.

#### (2) 3-wire serial I/O mode (MSB/LSB-first switchable)

This mode is used to transfer 8-bit data using three lines: a serial clock line ( $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ ) and two serial data lines (SI10 and SO10).

Because this mode supports simultaneous transmission and reception, 3-wire serial I/O mode requires less processing time for data transfer.

Also, when using 3-wire serial I/O mode, it is possible to select whether 8-bit data transfer will start with the MSB or LSB, so any device can be connected regardless of whether that device is designed for MSB-first or LSB-first transfers.

3-wire serial I/O mode is useful for connecting peripheral I/O circuits and display controllers with conventional clocked serial interfaces, such as those found in the 75XL Series, 78K Series, and 17K Series.

#### (3) 3-wire serial mode with automatic transmit/receive function (MSB/LSB-first switchable)

This mode has an automatic transmit/receive function in addition to the functions in (2) above.

The automatic transmit/receive function is used to transmit/receive data with a maximum of 16 bytes. This function enables the hardware to transmit/receive data to/from the OSD (On Screen Display) device and a device with an on-chip display controller/driver independently of the CPU, thus alleviating the software load.



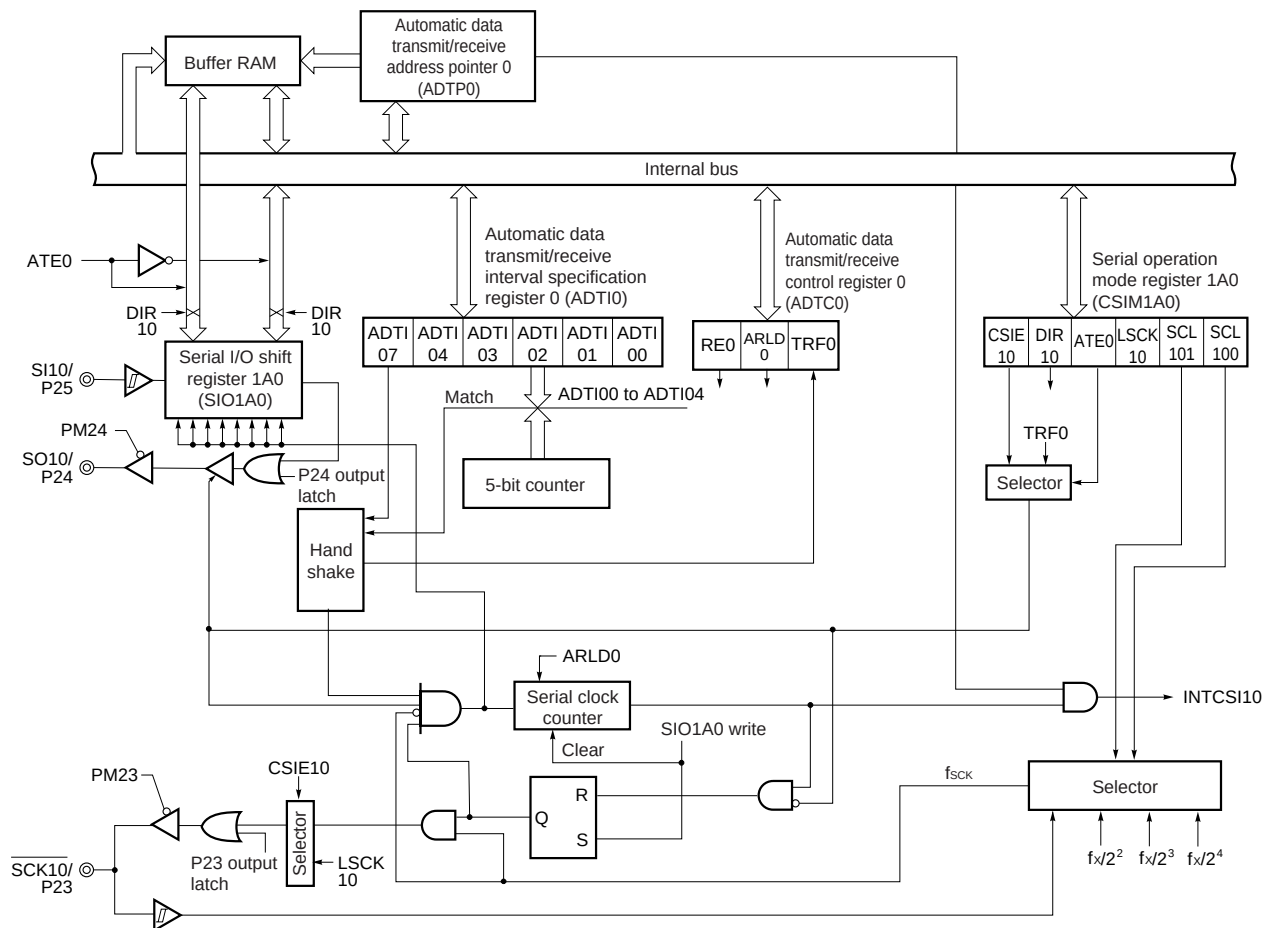
## 12.2 Configuration of Serial Interface 1A0

Serial interface 1A0 includes the following hardware.

**Table 12-1. Configuration of Serial Interface 1A0**

| Item              | Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Registers         | Serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0)<br>Automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0 (ADTP0)                                                                                                                                  |
| Control registers | Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0)<br>Automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0)<br>Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0)<br>Port mode register 2 (PM2)<br>Port 2 (P2) |

**Figure 12-1. Block Diagram of Serial Interface 1A0**



**(1) Serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0)**

This is an 8-bit register used to carry out parallel/serial conversion and to carry out serial transmission/reception (shift operation) in synchronization with the serial clock.

SIO1A0 is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

When the value in bit 7 (CSIE10) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) is 1, writing data to SIO1A0 starts a serial operation.

During transmission, data written to SIO1A0 is output to the serial output (SO10). During reception, data is read from the serial input (SI10) to SIO1A0.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets SIO1A0 to 00H.

**Caution** Do not write data to SIO1A0 while the automatic transmit/receive function is activated.

**(2) Automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0 (ADTP0)**

This register stores value of (transmit data byte – 1) while the automatic transmit/receive function is activated.

As data is transferred/received, it is automatically decremented.

ADTP0 is set via an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction. The higher 4 bits must be set to 0.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input makes ADTP0 undefined.

**Caution** Do not write data to ADTP0 while the automatic transmit/receive function is activated.

**(3) Serial clock counter**

This counter counts the serial clocks to be output and input during transmission/reception to check whether 8-bit data has been transmitted/received.

### 12.3 Control Registers for Serial Interface 1A0

Serial interface 1A0 is controlled by the following five registers.

- Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0)
- Automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0)
- Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0)
- Port mode register 2 (PM2)
- Port 2 (PM)

#### (1) Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0)

This register sets serial interface 1A0 serial clock, operation mode, operation enable/disable, and automatic transmission/reception operation enable/disable.

CSIM1A0 is set via a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this register to 00H.

**Caution** Set the port mode register 2 (PM2) in the 3-wire serial I/O mode or 3-wire serial I/O mode with automatic transmit/receive function as follows.

- In the case of serial clock output (master transmission or master reception)  
Set the  $\overline{\text{SCK10/P23}}$  pin to output mode (PM23 = 0) and clear the output latch of P23 to 0.
- In the case of serial clock input (slave transmission or slave reception)  
Set the  $\overline{\text{SCK10/P23}}$  pin to input mode (PM23 = 1).
- In transmission or transmission/reception mode  
Set the SO10/P24 pin to output mode (PM24 = 0) and clear the output latch of P24 to 0.  
Set the SI10/P25 pin to input mode (PM25 = 1).
- In reception mode  
Set the SI10/P25 pin to input mode (PM25 = 1).

Figure 12-2. Format of Serial Operation Mode Register 1A0

| Symbol  | <7>    | 6     | <5>  | <4>   | 3 | 2 | 1      | 0      | Address | After reset | R/W |
|---------|--------|-------|------|-------|---|---|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| CSIM1A0 | CSIE10 | DIR10 | ATE0 | LCK10 | 0 | 0 | SCL101 | SCL100 | FF78H   | 00H         | R/W |

| CSIE10 | Specification of operation enable/disable |                         |                                 |
|--------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
|        | Shift register operation                  | Serial counter          | Port <sup>Note</sup>            |
| 0      | Operation stopped                         | Cleared                 | Port function                   |
| 1      | Operation enabled                         | Count operation enabled | Serial function + port function |

| DIR10 | Specification of first bit of serial transfer data |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | MSB                                                |
| 1     | LSB                                                |

| ATE0 | Selection of operation mode                                 |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | 3-wire serial mode                                          |
| 1    | 3-wire serial mode with automatic transmit/receive function |

| LCK10 | Chip enable control of $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ pin                                                                                            |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ is used as port (P23) when CSIE10 = 0.<br>$\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ is used for clock output when CSIE10 = 1.         |
| 1     | $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ is fixed to high-level output when CSIE10 = 0.<br>$\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ is used for clock output when CSIE10 = 1. |

| SCL101 | SCL100 | Selection of serial clock ( $f_{\text{SCK}}$ )        |
|--------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | External clock input to $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ pin |
| 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)                                  |
| 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)                                   |
| 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)                                   |

**Note** When CSIE10 = 0 (SIO1A0 operation stop status), the  $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ /P23, SO10/P24, and SI10/P25 pins can freely be used as port pins. Also, when CSIE10 is used for transmission only, the SI10/P25 pin can be used as P25 (CMOS I/O) (set bit 7 (RE0) of ADTC0 to 0).

**Remarks**

1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
2. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**(2) Automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0)**

This register sets automatic reception enable/disable, the operation mode, and displays the state of automatic transmit/receive control.

ADTC0 is set via a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this register to 00H.

**Figure 12-3. Format of Automatic Data Transmit/Receive Control Register 0**

| Symbol | <7> | <6>   | 5 | 4 | <3>  | 2 | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W                   |
|--------|-----|-------|---|---|------|---|---|---|---------|-------------|-----------------------|
| ADTC0  | RE0 | ARLD0 | 0 | 0 | TRF0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | FF79H   | 00H         | R/W <sup>Note 1</sup> |

|     |                                                             |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| RE0 | Control of reception of automatic transmit/receive function |
| 0   | Reception disabled <sup>Note 2</sup>                        |
| 1   | Reception enabled                                           |

|       |                                                                     |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ARLD0 | Selection of operation mode for automatic transmit/receive function |
| 0     | One-shot mode                                                       |
| 1     | Repeat mode                                                         |

|      |                                                                                                                                                           |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TRF0 | Status of automatic transmission/reception function <sup>Note 3</sup>                                                                                     |
| 0    | Detection of termination of automatic transmission/reception (this bit is set to 0 upon suspension of automatic transmission/reception or when ARLD0 = 0) |
| 1    | Automatic transmission/reception in progress (this bit is set to 1 when data is written to SIO1A0)                                                        |

**Notes** 1. Bit 3 (TRF0) is read-only.

2. When RE0 is reset to 0, P25 (CMOS I/O) is used even when bit 7 (CSIE10) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) is set to 1.

3. Use TRF0, instead of CSIF10 (interrupt request flag), to identify the completion of automatic transmission/reception.

**(3) Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0)**

This register sets the automatic data transmit/receive function data transfer interval.

ADTI0 is set via a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to 00H.

**Figure 12-4. Format of Automatic Data Transmit/Receive Interval Specification Register 0 (1/2)**

| Symbol | <7>    | 6 | 5 | <4>    | <3>    | <2>    | <1>    | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|---|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| ADTI0  | ADTI07 | 0 | 0 | ADTI04 | ADTI03 | ADTI02 | ADTI01 | ADTI00 | FF7BH   | 00H         | R/W |

| ADTI07 | Data transfer interval control                               |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | No control of interval by ADTI00 to ADTI04 <sup>Note 1</sup> |
| 1      | Control of interval by ADTI00 to ADTI04                      |

| ADTI04 | ADTI03 | ADTI02 | ADTI01 | ADTI00 | Data transfer interval specification<br>( $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$ , $f_{\text{SCK}} = 1.25 \text{ MHz}$ ) <sup>Note 2</sup> | n  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | $1.60 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 0  |
| 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      |                                                                                                                             | 1  |
| 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | $2.40 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 2  |
| 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      | $3.20 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 3  |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | $4.00 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 4  |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      | $4.80 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 5  |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      | $5.60 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 6  |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      | $6.40 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 7  |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | $7.20 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 8  |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      | $8.00 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 9  |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      | $8.80 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 10 |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      | $9.60 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 11 |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      | $10.4 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 12 |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      | $11.2 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 13 |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      | $12.0 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 14 |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | $12.8 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 15 |

**Figure 12-4. Format of Automatic Data Transmit/Receive Interval Specification Register 0 (2/2)**

|        |        |   |   |        |        |        |        |        |         |             |     |
|--------|--------|---|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | <7>    | 6 | 5 | <4>    | <3>    | <2>    | <1>    | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
| ADTI0  | ADTI07 | 0 | 0 | ADTI04 | ADTI03 | ADTI02 | ADTI01 | ADTI00 | FF7BH   | 00H         | R/W |

| ADTI04 | ADTI03 | ADTI02 | ADTI01 | ADTI00 | Data transfer interval specification<br>( $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$ , $f_{\text{SCK}} = 1.25 \text{ MHz}$ ) <sup>Note 2</sup> | n  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | $13.6 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 16 |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      | $14.4 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 17 |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | $15.2 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 18 |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      | $16.0 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 19 |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | $16.8 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 20 |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      | $17.6 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 21 |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      | $18.4 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 22 |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      | $19.2 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 23 |
| 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | $20.0 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 24 |
| 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      | $20.8 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 25 |
| 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      | $21.6 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 26 |
| 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      | $22.4 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 27 |
| 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      | $23.2 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 28 |
| 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      | $24.0 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 29 |
| 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      | $24.8 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 30 |
| 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | $25.6 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 31 |

- Notes**
1. The interval time depends only on the CPU processing.
  2. The data transfer interval time is found from the following expressions (n: Value set to ADTI00 to ADTI04).

<1>  $n = 0$

$$\text{Interval time} = \frac{2}{f_{\text{SCK}}} + \frac{0.5}{f_{\text{SCK}}}$$

<2>  $n = 1 \text{ to } 31$

$$\text{Interval time} = \frac{n+1}{f_{\text{SCK}}} + \frac{0.5}{f_{\text{SCK}}}$$

- Cautions**
1. Do not write to ADTI0 during operation of the automatic transmit/receive function.
  2. Be sure to set bits 5 and 6 to 0.

**Remark**

$f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency  
 $f_{\text{SCK}}$ : Serial clock frequency

## 12.4 Serial Interface 1A0 Operation

Serial interface 1A0 provides the following three modes.

- Operation stop mode
- 3-wire serial I/O mode
- 3-wire serial I/O mode with automatic transmit/receive function

### 12.4.1 Operation stop mode

In operation stop mode, serial transfer is not executed, thereby reducing the power consumption. The P23/ $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ , P24/SO10, and P25/SI10 pins can be used as normal I/O ports.

#### (1) Register setting

Operation stop mode is set by serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0).

##### (a) Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0)

CSIM1A0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input clears CSIM1A0 to 00H.

| Symbol  | <7>    | 6     | <5>  | <4>    | 3 | 2 | 1      | 0      | Address | After reset | R/W |
|---------|--------|-------|------|--------|---|---|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| CSIM1A0 | CSIE10 | DIR10 | ATE0 | LSCK10 | 0 | 0 | SCL101 | SCL100 | FF78H   | 00H         | R/W |

| CSIE10 | Specification of operation enable/disable |                         |                                 |
|--------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
|        | Shift register operation                  | Serial counter          | Port <sup>Note</sup>            |
| 0      | Operation stopped                         | Cleared                 | Port function                   |
| 1      | Operation enabled                         | Count operation enabled | Serial function + port function |

**Note** When CSIE10 = 0 (SIO1A0 operation stop status), the  $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ /P23, SO10/P24, and SI10/P25 pins can freely be used as port pins.



### 12.4.2 3-wire serial I/O mode

The 3-wire serial I/O mode is useful for connection of peripheral I/Os and display controllers, etc., which incorporate a conventional clocked serial interface, such as the 75XL Series, 78K Series, and 17K Series.

Communication is performed using three lines: a serial clock ( $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ ), serial output (SO10), and serial input (SI10).

#### (1) Register setting

3-wire serial I/O mode settings are performed using serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0), port mode register 2 (PM2), and port 2 (P2).

##### (a) Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0)

CSIM1A0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets CSIM1A0 to 00H.

**Caution** Set the port mode register 2 (PM2) in the 3-wire serial I/O mode as follows.

- In the case of serial clock output (master transmission or master reception)  
Set the  $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ /P23 pin to output mode (PM23 = 0) and clear the output latch of P23 to 0.
- In the case of serial clock input (slave transmission or slave reception)  
Set the  $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ /P23 pin to input mode (PM23 = 1).
- In transmission or transmission/reception mode  
Set the SO10/P24 pin to output mode (PM24 = 0) and clear the output latch of P24 to 0.  
Set the SI10/P25 pin to input mode (PM25 = 1).
- In reception mode  
Set the SI10/P25 pin to input mode (PM25 = 1).

| Symbol  | <7>    | 6     | <5>  | <4>   | 3 | 2 | 1      | 0      | Address | After reset | R/W |
|---------|--------|-------|------|-------|---|---|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| CSIM1A0 | CSIE10 | DIR10 | ATE0 | LCK10 | 0 | 0 | SCL101 | SCL100 | FF78H   | 00H         | R/W |

| CSIE10 | Specification of operation enable/disable |                         |                                 |
|--------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
|        | Shift register operation                  | Serial counter          | Port <sup>Note</sup>            |
| 0      | Operation stopped                         | Cleared                 | Port function                   |
| 1      | Operation enabled                         | Count operation enabled | Serial function + port function |

| DIR10 | Specification of first bit of serial transfer data |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | MSB                                                |
| 1     | LSB                                                |

| ATE0 | Selection of operation mode                                 |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | 3-wire serial mode                                          |
| 1    | 3-wire serial mode with automatic transmit/receive function |

| LCK10 | Chip enable control of $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ pin                                                                                            |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ is used as port (P23) when CSIE10 = 0.<br>$\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ is used for clock output when CSIE10 = 1.         |
| 1     | $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ is fixed to high-level output when CSIE10 = 0.<br>$\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ is used for clock output when CSIE10 = 1. |

| SCL101 | SCL100 | Selection of serial clock                             |
|--------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | External clock input to $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ pin |
| 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)                                  |
| 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)                                   |
| 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)                                   |

**Note** When CSIE10 = 0 (SIO1A0 operation stop status), the  $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ /P23, SO10/P24, and SI10/P25 pins can freely be used as port pins. Also, when CSIE10 is used for transmission only, the SI10/P25 pin can be used as P25 (CMOS I/O) (set bit 7 (RE0) of ADTC0 to 0).

**Remarks** 1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency  
2. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

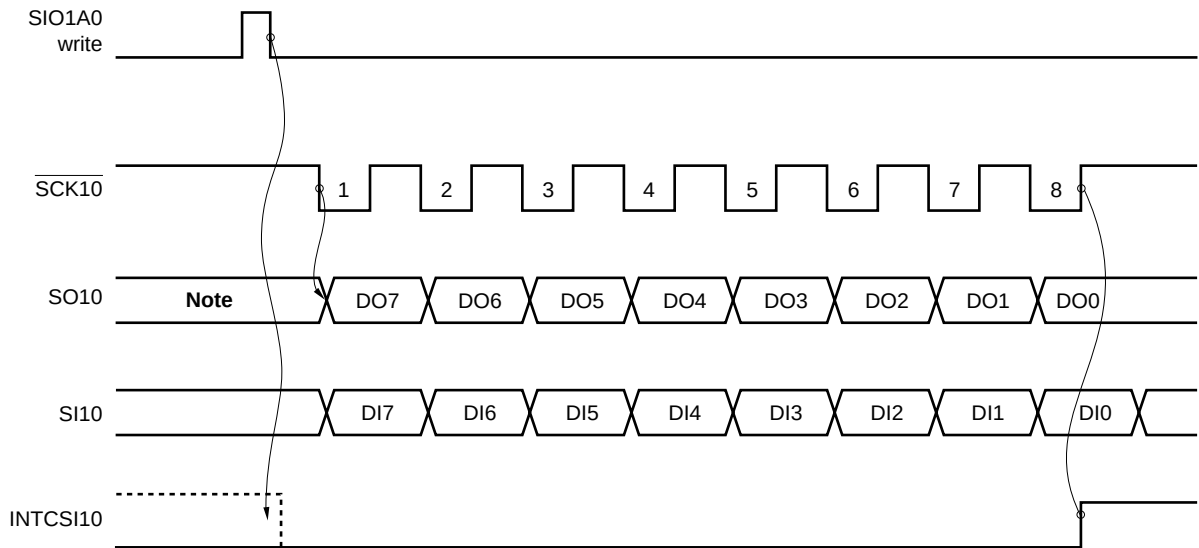
**(2) Communication operation**

In 3-wire serial I/O mode, data transmission/reception is performed in 8-bit units. Data is transmitted/received bit by bit in synchronization with the serial clock.

Serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0) shift operations are performed in synchronization with the fall of the serial clock ( $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ ). Then transmit data is held in the SO10 latch and output from the SO10 pin. Also, receive data input to the SI10 pin is latched in the SIO1A0 on the rise of  $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ .

At the end of an 8-bit transfer, the operation of SIO1A0 stops automatically, and the interrupt request signal (INTCSI10) is generated.

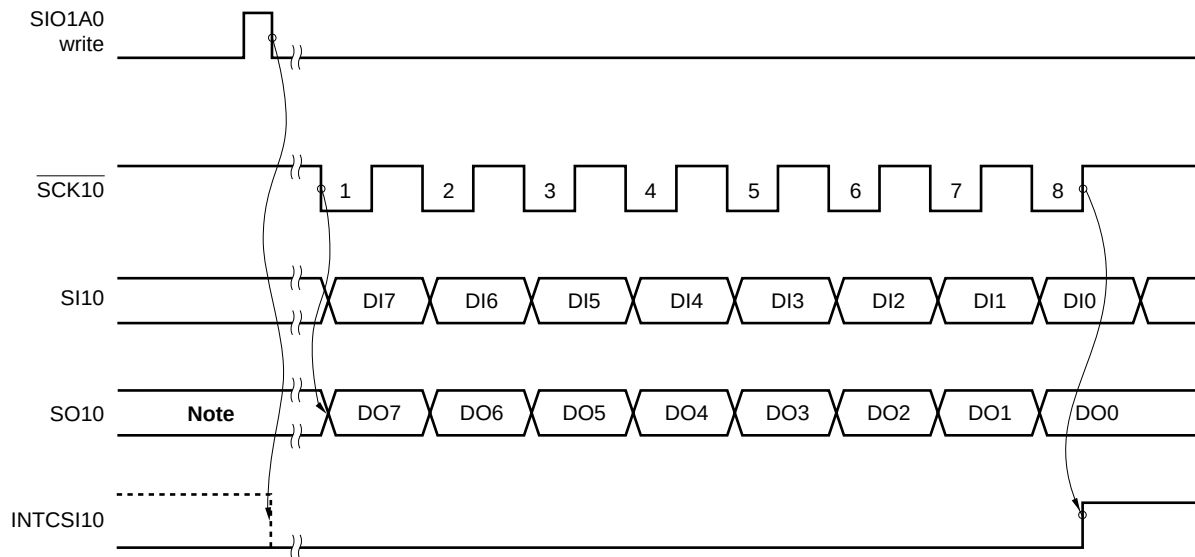
**Figure 12-5. 3-Wire Serial I/O Mode Timing (1/2)**

**(i) Master operation timing**

**Note** The value of the last bit previously output is output.

Figure 12-5. 3-Wire Serial I/O Mode Timing (2/2)

## (ii) Slave operation timing



**Note** The value of the last bit previously output is output.

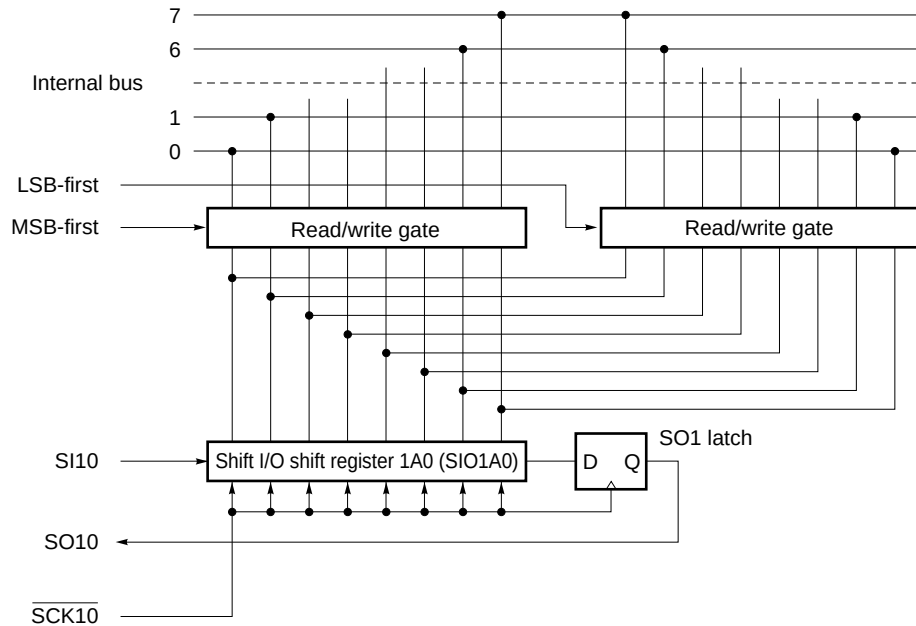
**(3) MSB/LSB switching as the start bit**

In the 3-wire serial I/O mode, transfer can be selected to start from the MSB or LSB.

Figure 12-6 shows the configuration of serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0) and the internal bus. As shown in the figure, MSB/LSB can be read/written in reverse form.

MSB/LSB switching as the start bit can be specified with bit 6 (DIR10) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0).

**Figure 12-6. Circuit of Switching in Transfer Bit Order**



Start bit switching is realized by switching the bit order for data write to SIO1A0. The SIO1A0 shift order remains unchanged.

Thus, switching between MSB-first and LSB-first must be performed before writing data to the shift register.

**(4) Transfer start**

Serial transfer is started by setting transfer data to serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0) when the following two conditions are satisfied.

- Bit 7 (CSIE10) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) = 1
- Internal serial clock is stopped or  $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$  is high after 8-bit serial transfer.

**Caution** If CSIE10 is set to “1” after data is written to SIO1A0, transfer does not start.

Termination of 8-bit transfer stops the serial transfer automatically and generates the interrupt request signal (INTCSI10).

### 12.4.3 3-wire serial I/O mode with automatic transmit/receive function

This 3-wire serial I/O mode is used for transmission/reception of a maximum of 16-byte data without the use of software. Once transfer is started, the set number of bytes of data prestored in the RAM can be transmitted, and the set number of bytes of data can be received and stored in the RAM.

#### (1) Register setting

The 3-wire serial I/O mode with automatic transmit/receive function is set with serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0), automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0), automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0), port mode register 2 (PM2), and port 2 (P2).

##### (a) Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0)

CSIM1A0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets CSIM1A0 to 00H.

**Caution** Set port mode register 2 (PM2) in the 3-wire serial I/O mode with automatic transmit/receive function as follows.

- In the case of serial clock output (master transmission or master reception)  
Set the  $\overline{\text{SCK10/P23}}$  pin to output mode (PM23 = 0) and clear the output latch of P23 to 0.
- In the case of serial clock input (slave transmission or slave reception)  
Set the  $\overline{\text{SCK10/P23}}$  pin to input mode (PM23 = 1).
- In transmission or transmission/reception mode  
Set the  $\text{SO10/P24}$  pin to output mode (PM24 = 0) and clear the output latch of P24 to 0.  
Set the  $\text{SI10/P25}$  pin to input mode (PM25 = 1).
- In reception mode  
Set the  $\text{SI10/P25}$  pin to input mode (PM25 = 1).

| Symbol  | <7>    | 6     | <5>  | <4>   | 3 | 2 | 1      | 0      | Address | After reset | R/W |
|---------|--------|-------|------|-------|---|---|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| CSIM1A0 | CSIE10 | DIR10 | ATE0 | LCK10 | 0 | 0 | SCL101 | SCL100 | FF78H   | 00H         | R/W |

| CSIE10 | Specification of operation enable/disable |                         |                                 |
|--------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
|        | Shift register operation                  | Serial counter          | Port <sup>Note</sup>            |
| 0      | Operation stopped                         | Cleared                 | Port function                   |
| 1      | Operation enabled                         | Count operation enabled | Serial function + port function |

| DIR10 |     | Specification of first bit of serial transfer data |
|-------|-----|----------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | MSB |                                                    |
| 1     | LSB |                                                    |

| ATE0 |                                                             | Selection of operation mode |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 0    | 3-wire serial mode                                          |                             |
| 1    | 3-wire serial mode with automatic transmit/receive function |                             |

| LCK10 |                                                                                                         | Chip enable control of $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ pin |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | SCK10 is used as port (P23) when CSIE10 = 0.<br>SCK10 is used for clock output when CSIE10 = 1.         |                                                      |
| 1     | SCK10 is fixed to high-level output when CSIE10 = 0.<br>SCK10 is used for clock output when CSIE10 = 1. |                                                      |

| SCL101 | SCL100 | Selection of serial clock                             |
|--------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | External clock input to $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ pin |
| 0      | 1      | $f_x/2^2$ (1.25 MHz)                                  |
| 1      | 0      | $f_x/2^3$ (625 kHz)                                   |
| 1      | 1      | $f_x/2^4$ (313 kHz)                                   |

**Note** When CSIE10 = 0 (SIO1A0 operation stop status), the  $\overline{\text{SCK10}}$ /P23, SO10/P24, and SI10/P25 pins can freely be used as port pins. Also, when CSIE10 is used for transmission only, the SI10/P25 pin can be used as P25 (CMOS I/O) (set bit 7 (RE0) of ADTC0 to 0).

**Remarks** 1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency  
2. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

**(b) Automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0)**

ADTC0 is set via a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this register to 00H.

| Symbol | <7> | <6>   | 5 | 4 | <3>  | 2 | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W                   |
|--------|-----|-------|---|---|------|---|---|---|---------|-------------|-----------------------|
| ADTC0  | RE0 | ARLD0 | 0 | 0 | TRF0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | FF79H   | 00H         | R/W <sup>Note 1</sup> |

|     |                                                             |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| RE0 | Control of reception of automatic transmit/receive function |
| 0   | Reception disabled <sup>Note 2</sup>                        |
| 1   | Reception enabled                                           |

|       |                                                                     |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ARLD0 | Selection of operation mode for automatic transmit/receive function |
| 0     | One-shot mode                                                       |
| 1     | Repeat mode                                                         |

|      |                                                                                                                                                           |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TRF0 | Status of automatic transmit/receive function <sup>Note 3</sup>                                                                                           |
| 0    | Detection of termination of automatic transmission/reception (this bit is set to 0 upon suspension of automatic transmission/reception or when ARLD0 = 0) |
| 1    | Automatic transmission/reception in progress (this bit is set to 1 when data is written to SIO1A0)                                                        |

- Notes**
1. Bit 3 (TRF0) is read-only.
  2. When RE0 is reset to 0, P25 (CMOS I/O) is used even when bit 7 (CSIE10) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) is set to 1.
  3. Use TRF0, instead of CSIF10 (interrupt request flag), to identify the completion of automatic transmission/reception.



**(c) Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0)**

ADTI0 is set via a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets this register to 00H.

| Symbol | <7>    | 6 | 5 | <4>    | <3>    | <2>    | <1>    | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|---|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| ADTI0  | ADTI07 | 0 | 0 | ADTI04 | ADTI03 | ADTI02 | ADTI01 | ADTI00 | FF7BH   | 00H         | R/W |

| ADTI07 | Data transfer interval control                               |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | No control of interval by ADTI00 to ADTI04 <sup>Note 1</sup> |
| 1      | Control of interval by ADTI00 to ADTI04                      |

| ADTI04 | ADTI03 | ADTI02 | ADTI01 | ADTI00 | Data transfer interval specification<br>( $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$ , $f_{\text{SCK}} = 1.25 \text{ MHz}$ ) <sup>Note 2</sup> | n  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | $1.60 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 0  |
| 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      |                                                                                                                             | 1  |
| 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | $2.40 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 2  |
| 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      | $3.20 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 3  |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | $4.00 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 4  |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      | $4.80 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 5  |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      | $5.60 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 6  |
| 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      | $6.40 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 7  |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | $7.20 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 8  |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      | $8.00 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 9  |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      | $8.80 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 10 |
| 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      | $9.60 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 11 |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      | $10.4 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 12 |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      | $11.2 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 13 |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      | $12.0 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 14 |
| 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | $12.8 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 15 |

(Continued)

| Symbol | <7>    | 6 | 5 | <4>    | <3>    | <2>    | <1>    | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|---|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| ADTI0  | ADTI07 | 0 | 0 | ADTI04 | ADTI03 | ADTI02 | ADTI01 | ADTI00 | FF7BH   | 00H         | R/W |

| ADTI04 | ADTI03 | ADTI02 | ADTI01 | ADTI00 | Data transfer interval specification<br>( $f_x = 5.0 \text{ MHz}$ , $f_{\text{SCK}} = 1.25 \text{ MHz}$ ) <sup>Note 2</sup> | n  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 0      | $13.6 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 16 |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | 1      | $14.4 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 17 |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 0      | $15.2 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 18 |
| 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      | 1      | $16.0 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 19 |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 0      | $16.8 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 20 |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      | 1      | $17.6 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 21 |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 0      | $18.4 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 22 |
| 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      | 1      | $19.2 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 23 |
| 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 0      | $20.0 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 24 |
| 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      | 1      | $20.8 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 25 |
| 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      | 0      | $21.6 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 26 |
| 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      | 1      | $22.4 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 27 |
| 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 0      | $23.2 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 28 |
| 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      | 1      | $24.0 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 29 |
| 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 0      | $24.8 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 30 |
| 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | 1      | $25.6 \mu\text{s} + 0.5/f_{\text{SCK}}$                                                                                     | 31 |

**Notes** 1. The interval time depends only on the CPU processing.

2. The data transfer interval time is found from the following expressions (n: Value set to ADTI00 to ADTI04).

$$\begin{aligned} <1> \quad n = 0 \\ \text{Interval time} &= \frac{2}{f_{\text{SCK}}} + \frac{0.5}{f_{\text{SCK}}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} <2> \quad n = 1 \text{ to } 31 \\ \text{Interval time} &= \frac{n+1}{f_{\text{SCK}}} + \frac{0.5}{f_{\text{SCK}}} \end{aligned}$$

**Cautions** 1. Do not write to ADTI0 during operation of the automatic transmit/receive function.

2. Be sure to set bits 5 and 6 to 0.

**Remark**  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

$f_{\text{SCK}}$ : Serial clock frequency

**(2) Automatic transmit/receive data setting****(a) Transmit data setting**

- <1> Write transmit data from the least significant address FFA0H of buffer RAM (up to FFAFH). The transmit data should be in the order from higher address to lower address.
- <2> Set the value obtained by subtracting 1 from the number of transmit data bytes to automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0 (ADTP0).

**(b) Automatic transmit/receive mode setting**

- <1> Set bit 7 (CSIE10) and bit 5 (ATE0) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) to 1.
- <2> Set bit 7 (RE0) of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0) to 1.
- <3> Set the data transmit/receive interval in automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0).
- <4> Write any value to serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0) (transfer start trigger).

**Caution** Writing any value to SIO1A0 orders the start of automatic transmission/reception operation; the written value has no meaning.

The following operations are automatically carried out when (a) and (b) are carried out.

- After the buffer RAM data specified by ADTP0 is transferred to SIO1A0, transmission is carried out (start of automatic transmission/reception).
- The received data is written to the buffer RAM address specified by ADTP0.
- ADTP0 is decremented and the next data transmission/reception is carried out. Data transmission/reception continues until the ADTP0 decremental output becomes 00H and address FFA0H data is output (end of automatic transmission/reception).
- When automatic transmission/reception is terminated, bit 3 (TRF0) of ADTC0 is cleared to 0.

**(3) Communication operation****(a) Basic transmit/receive mode**

This transmit/receive mode is the same as the 3-wire serial I/O mode in which the specified number of data are transmitted/received in 8-bit units.

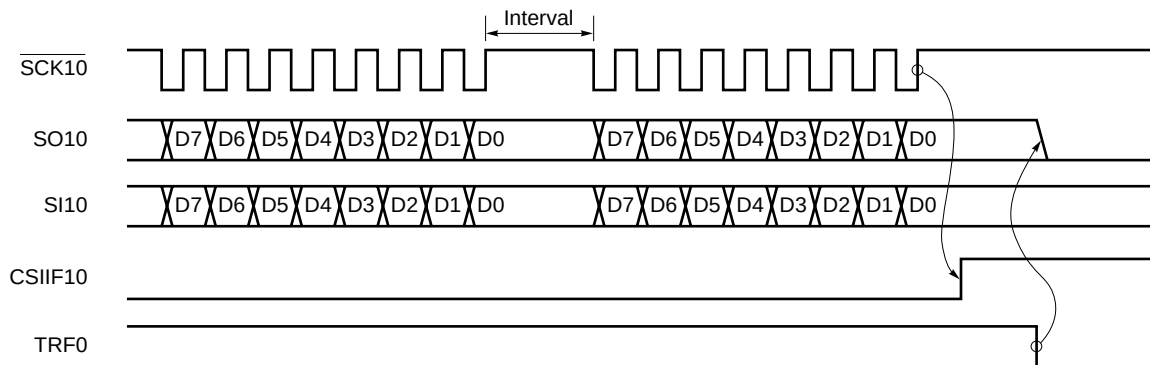
Serial transfer is started when any data is written to serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0) while bit 7 (CSIE10) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) is set to 1.

Upon completion of transmission of the last byte, the interrupt request flag (CSIF10) is set. The termination of automatic transmission/reception should be checked by using bit 3 (TRF0) of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0), not by CSIF10 because CSIF10 of the interrupt request flag is cleared if an interrupt is acknowledged.

Figure 12-7 shows the basic transmit/receive mode operation timing, and Figure 12-8 shows the operation flowchart.

Figure 12-9 shows buffer RAM operation at 6-byte transmission.

**Figure 12-7. Basic Transmit/Receive Mode Operation Timing**



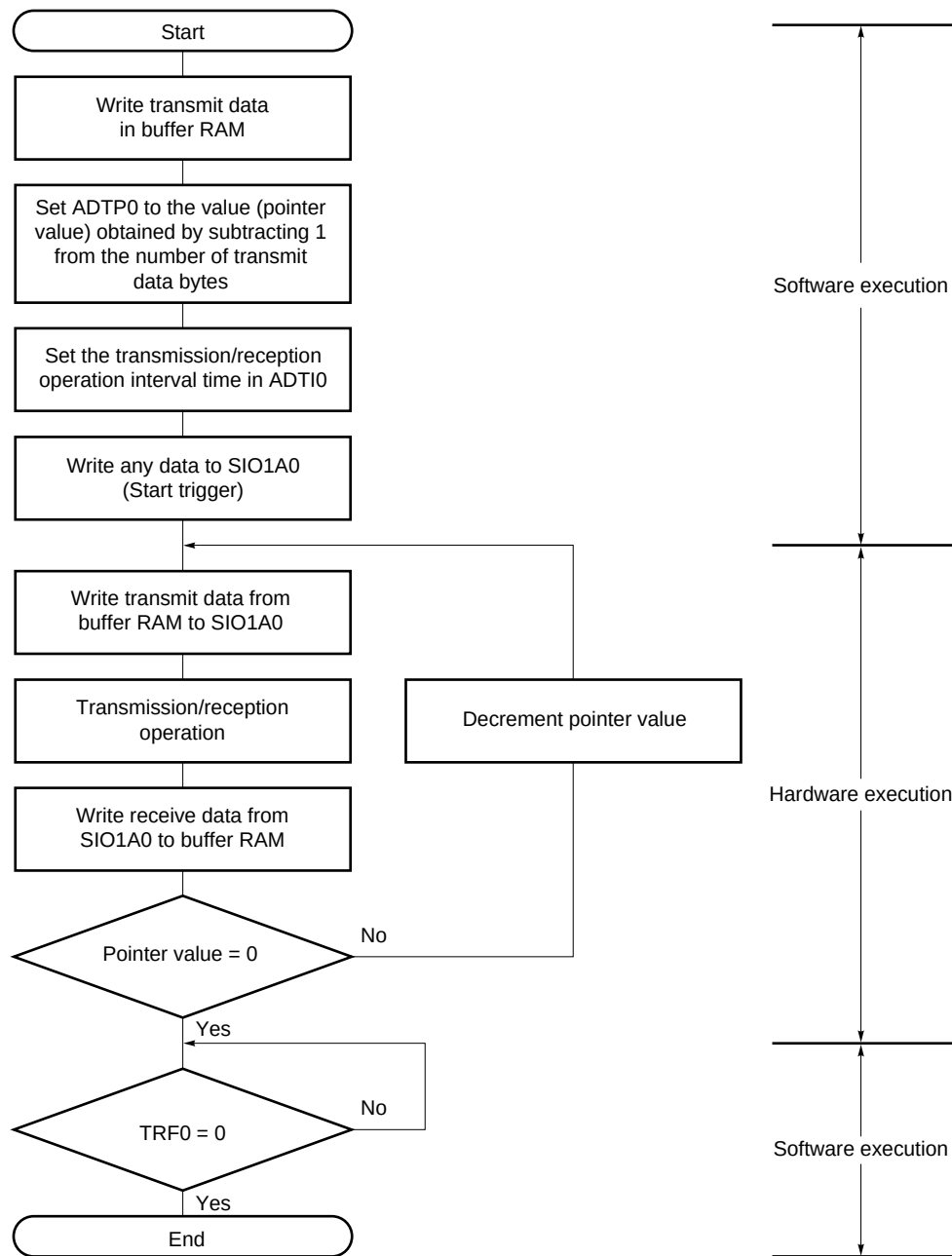
**Cautions** 1. Because, in the basic transmit/receive mode, the automatic transmit/receive function writes/reads data to/from the buffer RAM after 1-byte transmission/reception, an interval is inserted till the next transmission/reception. As the buffer RAM write/read is performed at the same time as CPU processing, the maximum interval is dependent upon CPU processing and the value of automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0) (refer to 12.4.3 (5) Interval time of automatic transmission/reception).

2. When TRF0 is cleared, the SO10 pin becomes low level.

**Remark** CSIF10: Interrupt request flag

TRF0: Bit 3 of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0)

Figure 12-8. Basic Transmit/Receive Mode Flowchart



**Remark** ADTP0: Automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0  
 ADTI0: Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0  
 SIO1A0: Serial I/O shift register 1A0  
 TRF0: Bit 3 of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0)

In 6-byte transmission/reception (bit 6 (ARLD0) and bit 7 (RE0) of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0) = 0, and 1, respectively) in basic transmit/receive mode, buffer RAM operates as follows.

**(i) Before transmission/reception (refer to Figure 12-9 (a))**

After any data has been written to SIO1A0 (start trigger: this data is not transferred), transmit data 1 (T1) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0. When transmission of the first byte is completed, receive data 1 (R1) is transferred from SIO1A0 to the buffer RAM, and automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0 (ADTP0) is decremented. Then transmit data 2 (T2) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0.

**(ii) 4th byte transmit/receive point (refer to Figure 12-9 (b))**

Transmission/reception of the third byte is completed, and transmit data 4 (T4) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0. When transmission of the fourth byte is completed, receive data 4 (R4) is transferred from SIO1A0 to the buffer RAM, and ADTP0 is decremented.

**(iii) Completion of transmission/reception (refer to Figure 12-9 (c))**

When transmission of the sixth byte is completed, receive data 6 (R6) is transferred from SIO1A0 to the buffer RAM, and the interrupt request flag (CSIF10) is set (INTCSI10 generation).

**Figure 12-9. Buffer RAM Operation in 6-Byte Transmission/Reception  
(in Basic Transmit/Receive Mode) (1/2)**

**(a) Before transmission/reception**

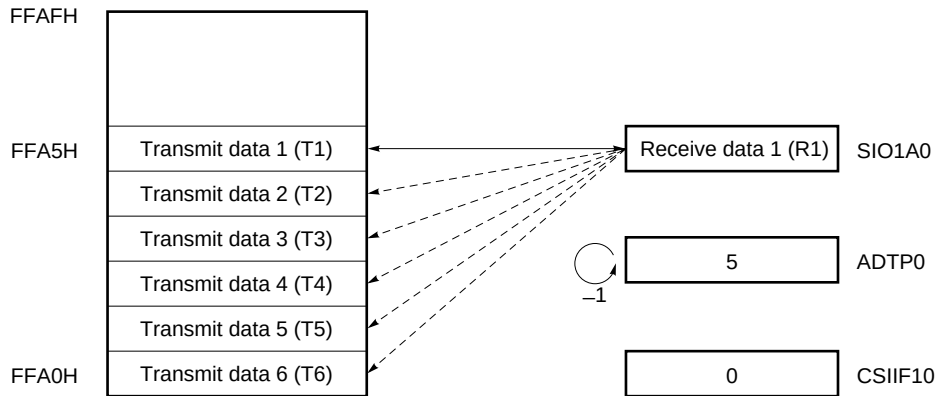
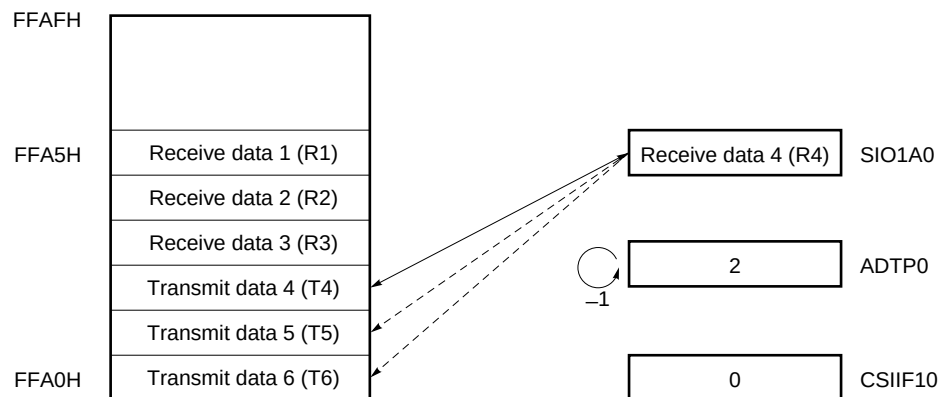
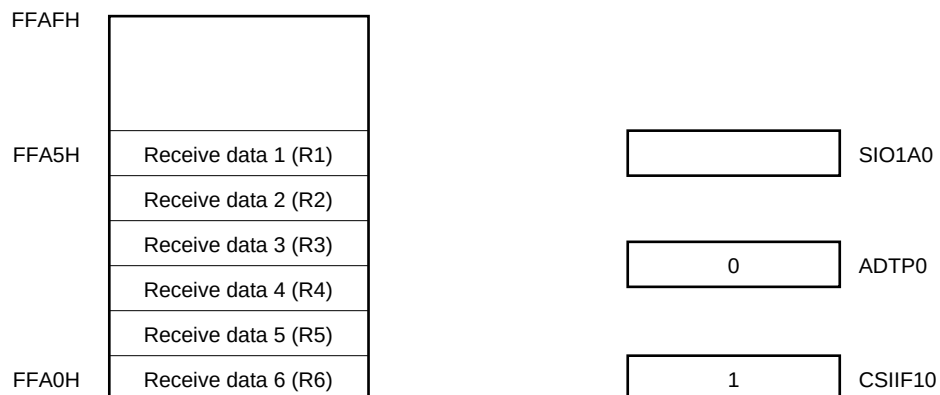


**Figure 12-9. Buffer RAM Operation in 6-Byte Transmission/Reception  
(in Basic Transmit/Receive Mode) (2/2)**

**(b) 4th byte transmission/reception**



**(c) Completion of transmission/reception**



**(b) Basic transmit mode**

In this mode, the specified number of 8-bit unit data are transmitted.

Serial transfer is started when any data is written to serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0) while bit 7 (CSIE10) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) is set to 1, and bit 7 (RE0) of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0) is set to 0.

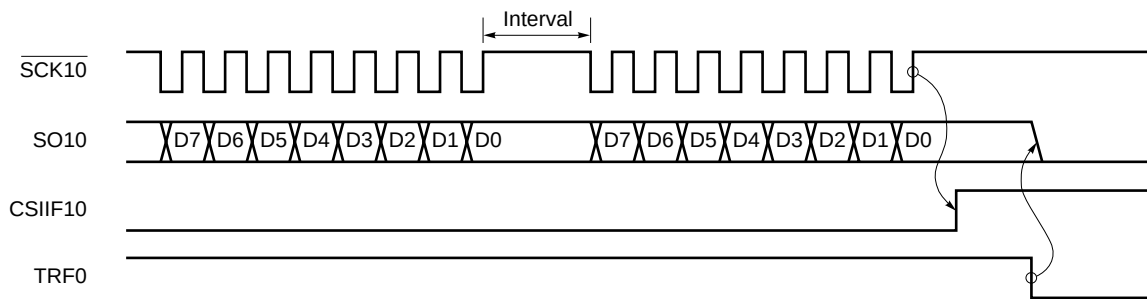
Upon completion of transmission of the last byte, the interrupt request flag (CSIF10) is set. The termination of automatic transmission/reception should be checked by using bit 3 (TRF0) of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0), not by CSIF10.

If a receive operation is not executed, the P25/SI10 pin can be use as normal I/O port.

Figure 12-10 shows the basic transmit mode operation timing, and Figure 12-11 shows the operation flowchart.

Figure 12-12 shows buffer RAM operation when repeatedly transmitting 6 bytes.

**Figure 12-10. Basic Transmit Mode Operation Timing**



- Cautions**
1. Because, in the basic transmit mode, the automatic transmit/receive function reads data from the buffer RAM after 1-byte transmission, an interval is inserted until the next transmission. As the buffer RAM read is performed at the same time as CPU processing, the maximum interval is dependent upon CPU processing and the value of automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0) (refer to 12.4.3 (5) Interval time of automatic transmission/reception).
  2. When TRF0 is cleared, the SO10 pin becomes low level.

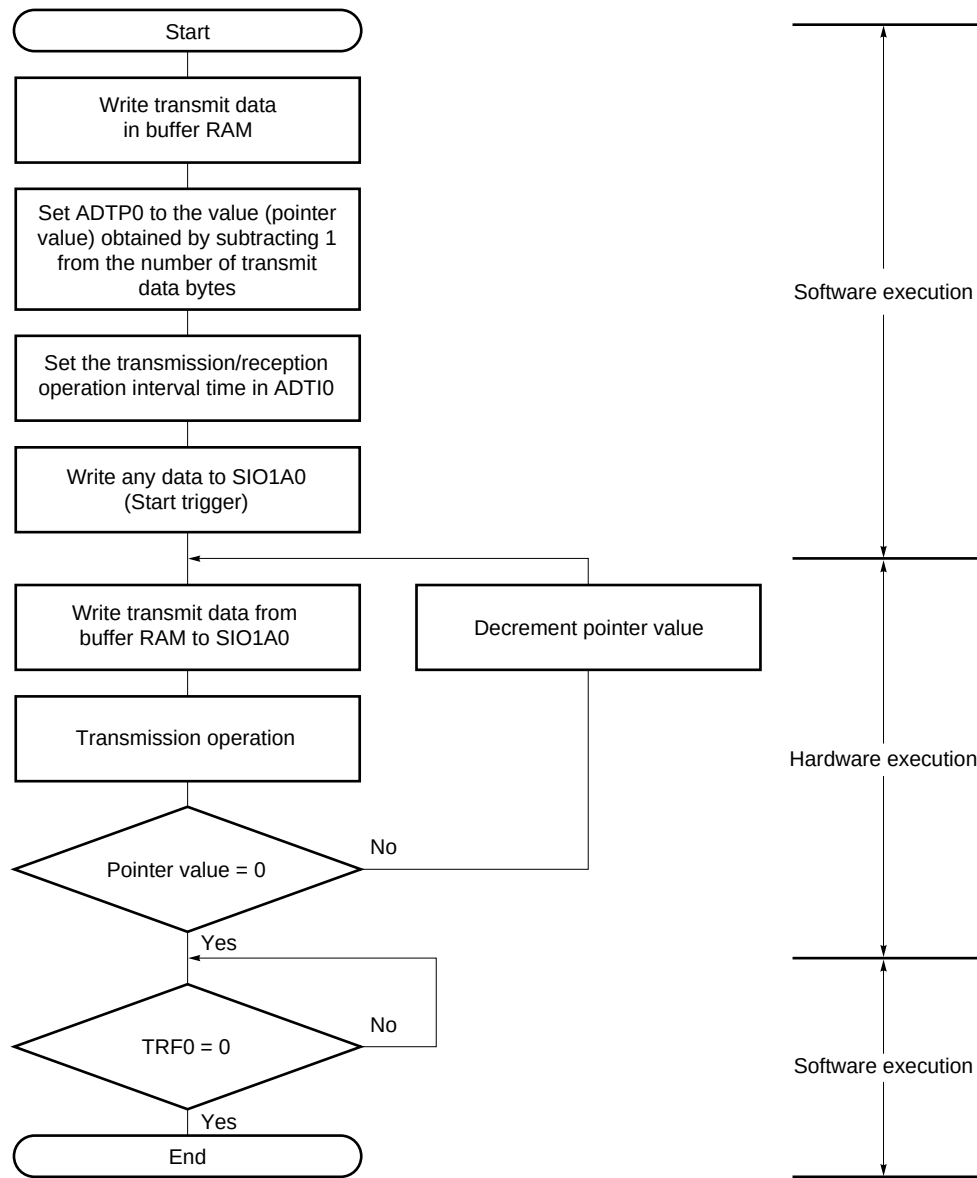
**Remark**

CSIF10: Interrupt request flag

TRF0: Bit 3 of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0)



Figure 12-11. Basic Transmit Mode Flowchart



**Remark** ADTP0: Automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0  
 ADTI0: Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0  
 SIO1A0: Serial I/O shift register 1A0  
 TRF0: Bit 3 of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0)

In 6-byte transmission (bit 6 (ARLD0) and bit 7 (RE0) of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0) are 0) in basic transmit mode, buffer RAM operates as follows.

**(i) Before transmission (refer to Figure 12-12 (a))**

After any data has been written to SIO1A0 (start trigger: this data is not transferred), transmit data 1 (T1) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0. When transmission of the first byte is completed, ADTP0 is decremented. Then transmit data 2 (T2) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0.

**(ii) 4th byte transmission point (refer to Figure 12-12 (b))**

Transmission of the third byte is completed, and transmit data 4 (T4) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0. When transmission of the fourth byte is completed, ADTP0 is decremented.

**(iii) Completion of transmission/reception (refer to Figure 12-12 (c))**

When transmission of the sixth byte is completed, the interrupt request flag (CSIF10) is set (INTCS10 generation).

**Figure 12-12. Buffer RAM Operation in 6-Byte Transmission (in Basic Transmit Mode) (1/2)**

**(a) Before transmission**

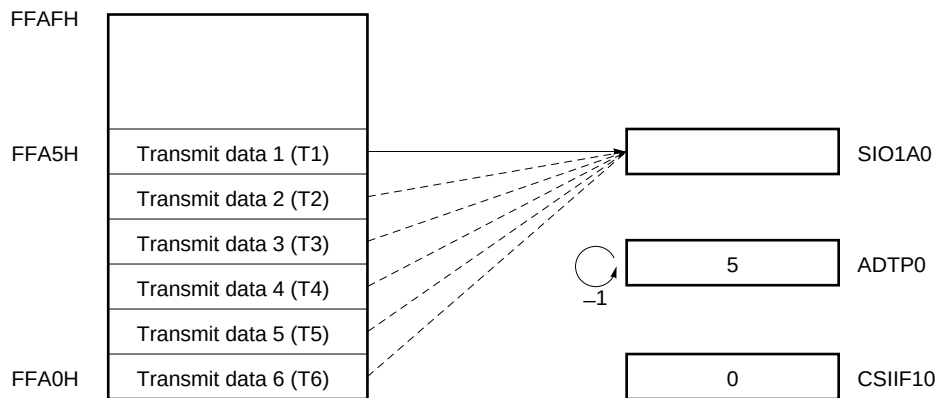
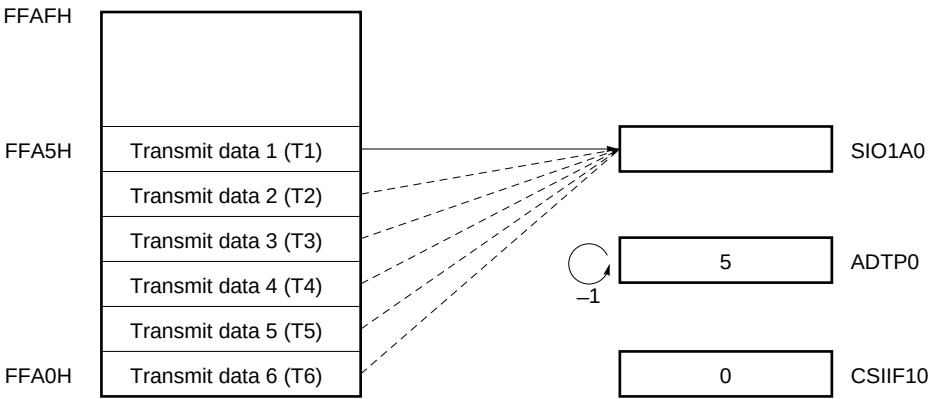
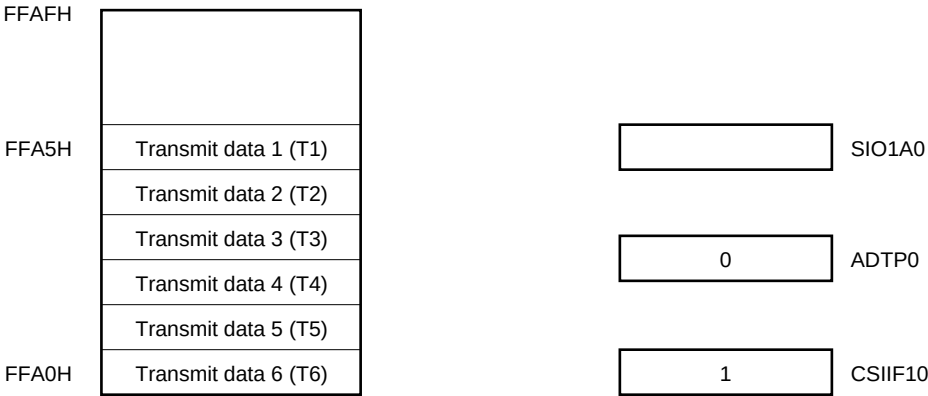


Figure 12-12. Buffer RAM Operation in 6-Byte Transmission (in Basic Transmit Mode) (2/2)

(b) 4th byte transmission point



(c) Completion of transmission/reception



**(c) Repeat transmit mode**

In this mode, data stored in the buffer RAM is transmitted repeatedly.

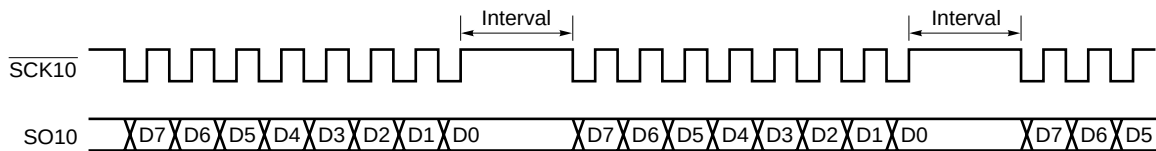
Serial transfer is started by writing any data to serial shift I/O register 1A0 (SIO1A0) when bit 7 (CSIE10) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) is set to 1, and bit 7 (RE0) of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0) is set to 0.

Unlike the basic transmission mode, after the last byte (data in address FFA0H) has been transmitted, the interrupt request flag (CSIIF10) is not set, the value at the time when the transmission was started is set in automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0 (ADTP0) again, and the buffer RAM contents are transmitted again.

When a reception operation is not performed, the P25/SI10 pin can be used as a normal I/O port.

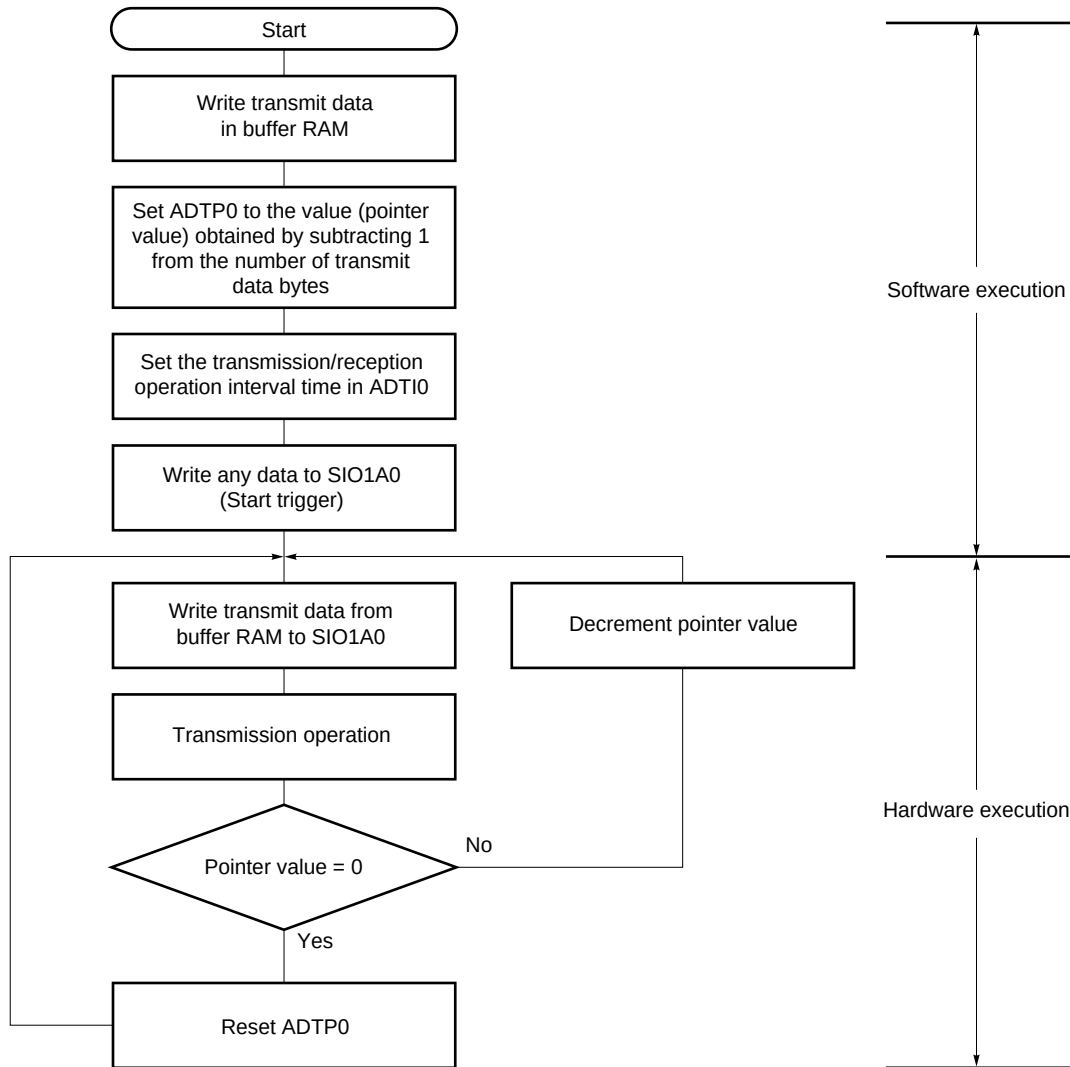
The repeat transmit mode operation timing is shown in Figure 12-13, and the operation flowchart in Figure 12-14.

**Figure 12-13. Repeat Transmit Mode Operation Timing**



**Caution** Because, in the repeat transmit mode, a read is performed on the buffer RAM after the transmission of one byte, the interval is included in the period up to the next transmission. As the buffer RAM read is performed at the same time as CPU processing, the maximum interval is dependent upon the CPU operation and the value of automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0) (refer to 12.4.3 (5) Interval time of automatic transmission/reception).

Figure 12-14. Repeat Transmit Mode Flowchart



**Remark** ADTP0: Automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0  
 ADTI0: Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0  
 SIO1A0: Serial I/O shift register 1A0

In 6-byte transmission (bit 6 (ARLD0) and bit 7 (RE0) of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0) are 1 and 0, respectively) in repeat transmit mode, buffer RAM operates as follows.

**(i) Before transmission (refer to Figure 12-15 (a))**

After any data has been written to SIO1A0 (start trigger: this data is not transferred), transmit data 1 (T1) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0. When transmission of the first byte is completed, ADTP0 is decremented. Then transmit data 2 (T2) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0.

**(ii) Upon completion of transmission of 6 bytes (refer to Figure 12-15 (b))**

When transmission of the sixth byte is completed, the interrupt request flag (CSIIF10) is not set. The previous pointer value is assigned to the ADTP0.

**(iii) 7th byte transmission point (refer to Figure 12-15 (c))**

Transmit data 1 (T1) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0 again. When transmission of the first byte is completed, ADTP0 is decremented. Then transmit data 2 (T2) is transferred from the buffer RAM to SIO1A0.

**Figure 12-15. Buffer RAM Operation in 6-Byte Transmission (in Repeat Transmit Mode) (1/2)**

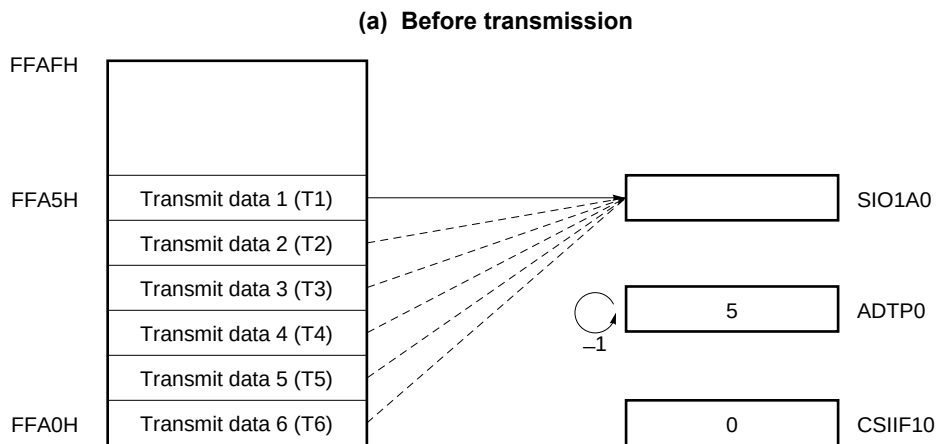
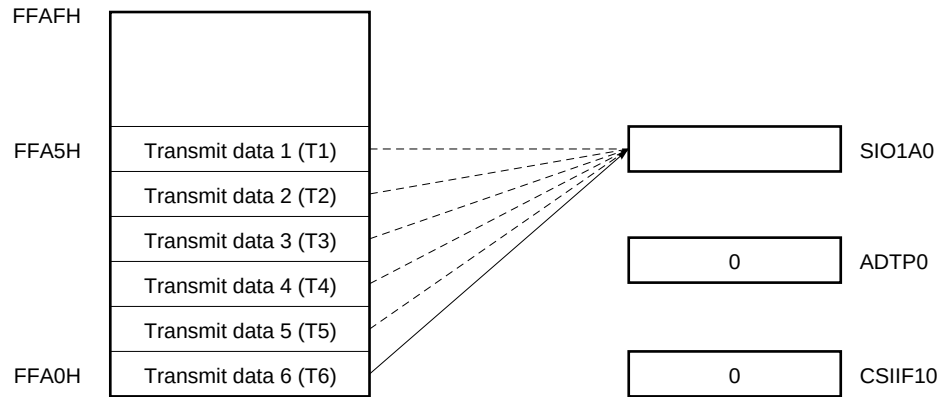
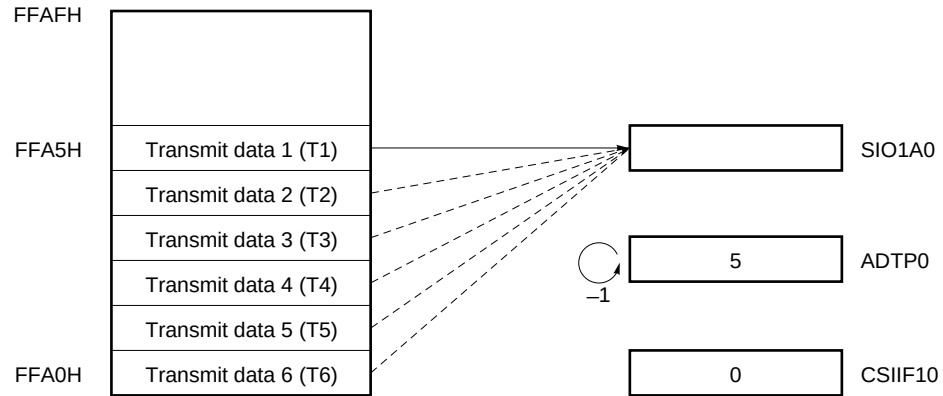


**Figure 12-15. Buffer RAM Operation in 6-Byte Transmission (in Repeat Transmit Mode) (2/2)****(c) Upon completion of transmission of 6 bytes****(d) 7th byte transmission point**

**(d) Automatic transmission/reception suspension and restart**

Automatic transmission/reception can be temporarily suspended by setting bit 7 (CSIE10) of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) to 0.

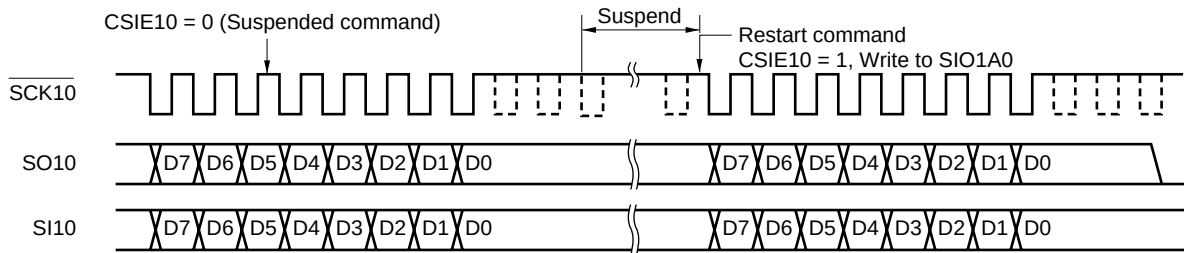
During 8-bit data transfer, the transmission/reception is not suspended if bit 7 (CSIE10) is set to 0. It is suspended upon completion of 8-bit data transfer.

When suspended, bit 3 (TRF0) of automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0) is set to 0 after transfer of the 8th bit, and all the port pins used alternately as serial interface pins (P23/SCK10, P24/SO10, P25/SI10) are set to the port mode.

During restart of transmission/reception, the remaining data can be transferred by setting CSIE10 to 1 and writing any data to serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0).

- Cautions**
1. If the HALT instruction is executed during automatic transmission/reception, transfer is suspended and the HALT mode is set even if 8-bit data is being transferred.
  2. When suspending automatic transmission/reception, do not change the operation mode to 3-wire serial mode while TRF0 = 1.

**Figure 12-16. Automatic Transmission/Reception Suspension and Restart**



CSIE10: Bit 7 of serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0)



**(4) Timing of interrupt request signal generation**

The interrupt request signal is generated in synchronization with the timing shown in Table 12-2.

**Table 12-2. Timing of Interrupt Request Signal Generation**

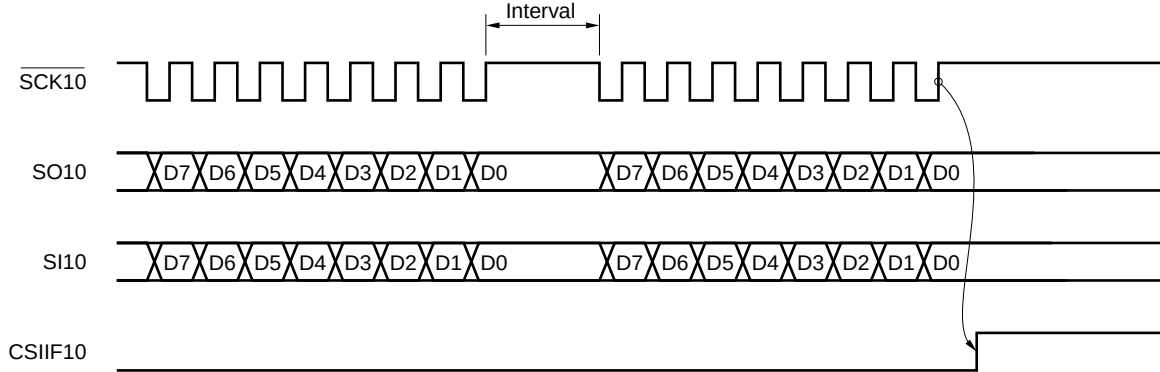
| Operation Mode       |             | Timing of Interrupt Request Signal   |
|----------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Single mode          | Master mode | 10th serial clock at end of transfer |
|                      | Slave mode  | 8th serial clock at end of transfer  |
| Repeat transmit mode |             | Not generated                        |

**(5) Interval time of automatic transmission/reception**

Because read/write to/from the buffer RAM using the automatic transmit/receive function is performed asynchronously to the CPU processing, the interval time is dependent on the CPU processing of the timing of the eighth rising of the serial clock and the set value of automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0). Whether the interval time is dependent on ADTI0 is selected by setting bit 7 (ADTI07) of ADTI0. If ADTI07 is reset to 0, the interval time is  $2/f_{\text{SCK}}$ . If ADTI07 is set to 1, whichever is greater of the interval time determined by the set contents of ADTI0 or the interval time ( $2/f_{\text{SCK}}$ ) determined by the CPU processing is selected.

Figure 12-17 shows the interval time of automatic transmission/reception.

**Remark**  $f_{\text{SCK}}$ : Serial clock frequency

**Figure 12-17. Interval Time of Automatic Transmission/Reception**

The following expression must be satisfied to access the buffer RAM.

$$1 \text{ transfer cycle} + \text{Interval time} \geq \text{Read access} + \text{Write access} + \text{CPU buffer RAM access (time)}$$

In the case of a “high-speed CPU & low-speed SCK”, the interval time is not necessary. In the case of a “low-speed CPU & high-speed SCK”, the interval time is necessary.

In this case, make sure that a sufficient interval time elapses, by using automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0), so that the above expression is satisfied.

## CHAPTER 13 LCD CONTROLLER/DRIVER

### 13.1 LCD Controller/Driver Functions

The functions of the LCD controller/driver of the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries are as follows.

- (1) Automatic output of segment and common signals based on automatic display data memory read
- (2) Two different display modes:
  - 1/3 duty (1/3 bias)
  - 1/4 duty (1/3 bias)
- (3) Four different frame frequencies, selectable in each display mode
- (4) 16 to 28 segment signal outputs (S0 to S15, S16 to S27<sup>Note</sup>)  
4 common signal outputs (COM0 to COM3)  
**Note** Usable mask option or port function register
- (5) Operation with subsystem clock is possible
- (6) On-chip voltage booster

The maximum number of displayable pixels is shown in Table 13-1 below.

**Table 13-1. Maximum Number of Display Pixels**

| Bias Method | Time Division | Common Signals Used | Maximum Number of Segments | Maximum Number of Display Pixels                       |
|-------------|---------------|---------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1/3         | 3             | COM0 to COM2        | 28                         | 84 (28 segments $\times$ 3 commons) <sup>Note 1</sup>  |
|             | 4             | COM0 to COM3        |                            | 112 (28 segments $\times$ 4 commons) <sup>Note 2</sup> |

- Notes**
1. The LCD panel of the figure  consists of 9 rows with 3 segments per row.
  2. The LCD panel of the figure  consists of 14 rows with 2 segments per row.

### 13.2 LCD Controller/Driver Configuration

The LCD controller/driver includes the following hardware.

**Table 13-2. Configuration of LCD Controller/Driver**

| Item              | Configuration                                                                                                                |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Display outputs   | Segment signals: 16 to 28<br>Common signals: 4 (COM0 to COM3)                                                                |
| Control registers | LCD display mode register 0 (LCDM0)<br>LCD clock control register 0 (LCDC0)<br>LCD voltage boost control register 0 (LCDVA0) |

The correspondence with the LCD display RAM is shown in Figure 13-1 below.

**Figure 13-1. Correspondence with LCD Display RAM**

| Address | Bit |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Segment               |
|---------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-----------------------|
|         | 7   | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |                       |
| FA1BH   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S27 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA1AH   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S26 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA19H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S25 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA18H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S24 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA17H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S23 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA16H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S22 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA15H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S21 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA14H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S20 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA13H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S19 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA12H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S18 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA11H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S17 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA10H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S16 <sup>Note</sup> |
| FA0FH   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S15                 |
| FA0EH   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S14                 |
| FA0DH   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S13                 |
| FA0CH   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S12                 |
| FA0BH   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S11                 |
| FA0AH   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S10                 |
| FA09H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S9                  |
| FA08H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S8                  |
| FA07H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S7                  |
| FA06H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S6                  |
| FA05H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S5                  |
| FA04H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S4                  |
| FA03H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S3                  |
| FA02H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S2                  |
| FA01H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S1                  |
| FA00H   | 0   | 0 | 0 | 0 |   |   |   |   | → S0                  |

Common

↑  
COM3

↑  
COM2

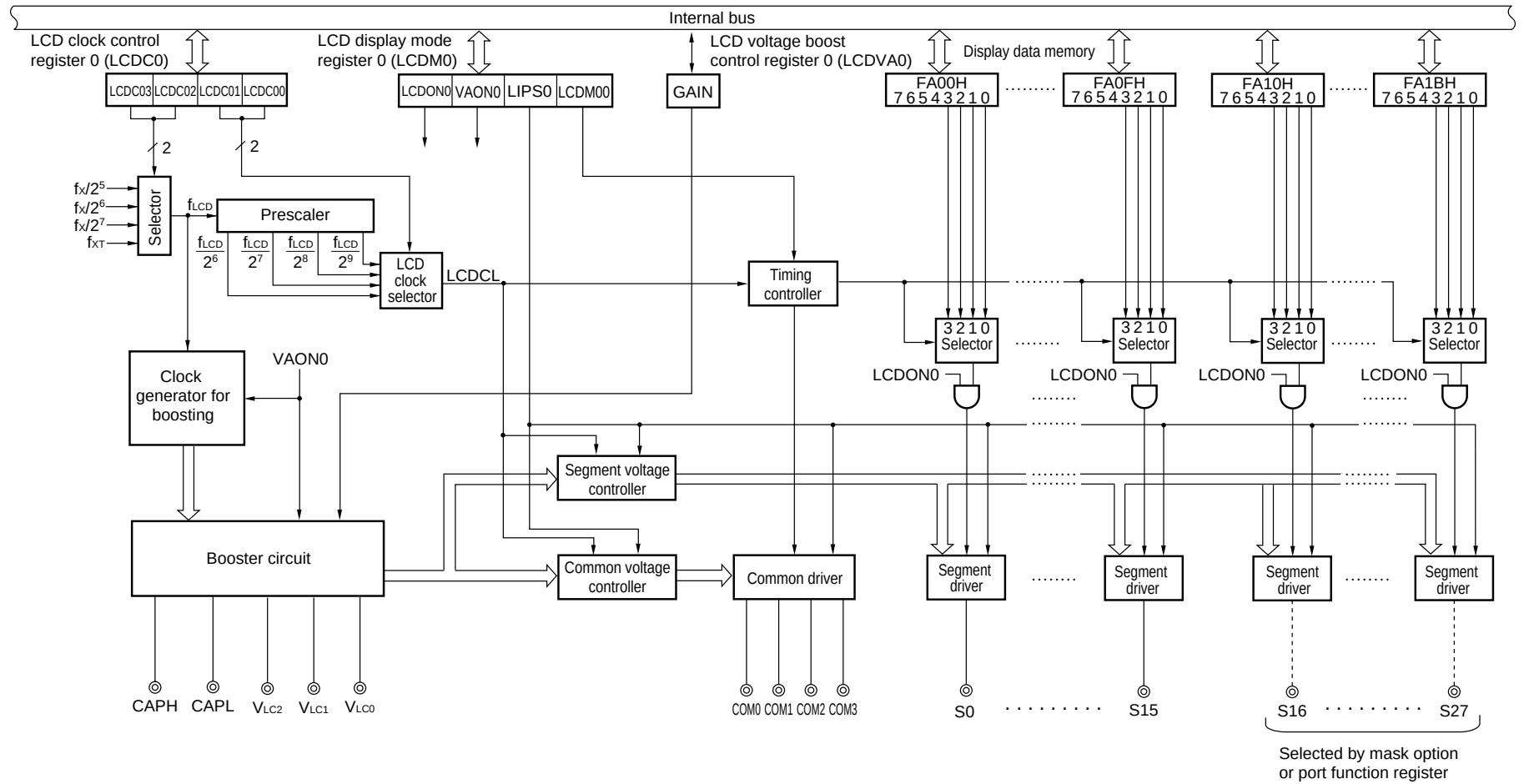
↑  
COM1

↑  
COM0

**Note** Segments S16 to S27 are selected in 1-bit units via a mask option or port function register (segment output pin/port pin).

**Remark** Bits 4 to 7 are fixed to 0.

Figure 13-2. LCD Controller/Driver Block Diagram



### 13.3 Registers Controlling LCD Controller/Driver

The LCD controller/driver is controlled by the following three registers.

- LCD display mode register 0 (LCDM0)
- LCD clock control register 0 (LCDC0)
- LCD voltage boost control register 0 (LCDVA0)

**(1) LCD display mode register 0 (LCDM0)**

LCDM0 specifies whether to enable display. It also specifies whether to enable booster circuit operation, segment pin/common pin output, and the display mode.

LCDM0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets LCDM0 to 00H.

**Figure 13-3. Format of LCD Display Mode Register 0**

|        |        |       |   |       |   |   |   |        |         |             |     |
|--------|--------|-------|---|-------|---|---|---|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | <7>    | <6>   | 5 | <4>   | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0      | Address | After reset | R/W |
| LCDM0  | LCDON0 | VAON0 | 0 | LIPS0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | LCDM00 | FFB0H   | 00H         | R/W |

|        |                                                               |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| LCDON0 | LCD display enable/disable                                    |
| 0      | Display off (all segment outputs are deselect signal outputs) |
| 1      | Display on                                                    |

|       |                                          |
|-------|------------------------------------------|
| VAON0 | Booster circuit operation enable/disable |
| 0     | No internal voltage boosting             |
| 1     | Internal voltage boosting enabled        |

|       |                                                                   |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LIPS0 | Segment pin/common pin output control <sup>Note</sup>             |
| 0     | Output ground level to segment/common pin                         |
| 1     | Output select level to segment pin and LCD waveform to common pin |

|        |                                              |           |
|--------|----------------------------------------------|-----------|
| LCDM00 | LCD controller/driver display mode selection |           |
|        | Number of time slices                        | Bias mode |
| 0      | 4                                            | 1/3       |
| 1      | 3                                            | 1/3       |

**Note** When the LCD display panel is not used, set VAON0 and LIPS0 to 0 to reduce power consumption.

**Cautions** 1. Bits 1 to 3 and 5 must be set to 0.

2. When operating VAON0, follow the procedure described below.

**A. To stop voltage boosting after switching display status from on to off:**

- 1) Set to display off status by setting LCDON0 = 0.
- 2) Disable outputs of all the segment buffers and common buffers by setting LIPS0 = 0.
- 3) Stop voltage boosting by setting VAON0 = 0.

**B. To stop voltage boosting during display on status:**

Setting prohibited. Be sure to stop voltage boosting after setting display off.

**C. To set display on from voltage boosting stop status:**

- 1) Start voltage boosting by setting VAON0 = 1, then wait for the voltage boost wait time (t<sub>VAWAIT</sub>) (refer to CHAPTER 22 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATION).
- 2) Set all the segment buffers and common buffers to non-display output status by setting LIPS0 = 1.
- 3) Set display on by setting LCDON0 = 1.

★

**(2) LCD clock control register 0 (LCDC0)**

LCDC0 specifies the LCD source clock and LCD clock. The frame frequency is determined according to the LCD clock and number of time slices.

LCDC0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets LCDC0 to 00H.

**Figure 13-4. Format of LCD Clock Control Register 0**

|        |   |   |   |   |        |        |        |        |         |             |     |
|--------|---|---|---|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3      | 2      | 1      | 0      | Address | After reset | R/W |
| LCDC0  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | LCDC03 | LCDC02 | LCDC01 | LCDC00 | FFB2H   | 00H         | R/W |

| LCDC03 | LCDC02 | LCD source clock ( $f_{LCD}$ ) selection <sup>Note</sup> |
|--------|--------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | $f_{XT}$ (32.768 kHz)                                    |
| 0      | 1      | $f_X/2^5$ (156.3 kHz)                                    |
| 1      | 0      | $f_X/2^6$ (78.1 kHz)                                     |
| 1      | 1      | $f_X/2^7$ (39.1 kHz)                                     |

| LCDC01 | LCDC00 | LCD clock (LCDCL) selection |
|--------|--------|-----------------------------|
| 0      | 0      | $f_{LCD}/2^6$               |
| 0      | 1      | $f_{LCD}/2^7$               |
| 1      | 0      | $f_{LCD}/2^8$               |
| 1      | 1      | $f_{LCD}/2^9$               |

**Note** Specify an LCD source clock ( $f_{LCD}$ ) frequency of at least 32 kHz.

**Cautions 1. Bits 4 to 7 must be set to 0.**

**2. Before changing the LCDC0 setting, be sure to stop voltage boosting (VAON0 = 0).**

**3. Set the frame frequency to 128 Hz or lower.**

**Remarks 1.**  $f_X$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

**2.**  $f_{XT}$ : Subsystem clock oscillation frequency

**3.** The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_X = 5.0$  MHz or  $f_{XT} = 32.768$  kHz.

As an example, Table 13-3 lists the frame frequencies used when  $f_{XT}$  (32.768 kHz) is supplied as the LCD source clock ( $f_{LCD}$ ).

**Table 13-3. Frame Frequencies (Hz)**

| LCD Clock (LCDCL) \ Time Slots | $f_{XT}/2^9$<br>(64 Hz) | $f_{XT}/2^8$<br>(128 Hz) | $f_{XT}/2^7$<br>(256 Hz) | $f_{XT}/2^6$<br>(512 Hz) |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 3                              | 21                      | 43                       | 85                       | 171 <sup>Note</sup>      |
| 4                              | 16                      | 32                       | 64                       | 128                      |

**Note** This setting is prohibited because it causes the frame frequency to exceed 128 Hz.

**(3) LCD voltage boost control register 0 (LCDVA0)**

LCDVA0 controls the voltage boost level during the voltage boost operation.

LCDVA0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets LCDVA0 to 00H.

**Figure 13-5. Format of LCD Voltage Boost Control Register 0**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | <0>  | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| LCDVA0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | GAIN | FFB3H   | 00H         | R/W |

| GAIN | Reference voltage ( $V_{LC2}$ ) level selection <sup>Note</sup> |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | 1.5 V (specification of the LCD panel used is 4.5 V.)           |
| 1    | 1.0 V (specification of the LCD panel used is 3 V.)             |

**Note** Select the settings according to the specifications of the LCD panel that is used.

**Caution** Before changing the LCDVA0 setting, be sure to stop voltage boosting (VAON0 = 0).

**Remark** The TYP. value is indicated as the reference voltage ( $V_{LC2}$ ) value.



### 13.4 Setting LCD Controller/Driver

Set the LCD controller/driver using the following procedure.

- <1> Set the LCD clock using LCD clock control register 0 (LCDC0).
- <2> Set the voltage boost level using LCD voltage boost control register 0 (LCDVA0).  
 GAIN = 0: VLC0 = 4.5 V, VLC1 = 3 V, VLC2 = 1.5 V  
 GAIN = 1: VLC0 = 3 V, VLC1 = 2 V, VLC2 = 1 V
- <3> Set the time slice using LCDM00 (bit 0 of LCD display mode register 0 (LCDM0)).
- <4> Enable voltage boost by setting VAON0 (bit 6 of LCDM0) (VAON0 = 1).
- ★ <5> Wait for the voltage boost wait time ( $t_{VWAIT}$ ) after setting VAON0 (refer to CHAPTER 22 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATION).
- <6> Set LIPS0 (bit 4 of LCDM0) (LIPS0 = 1) and output the deselect potential.
- <7> Start output corresponding to each data memory by setting LCDON0 (bit 7 of LCDM0) (LCDON0 = 1).

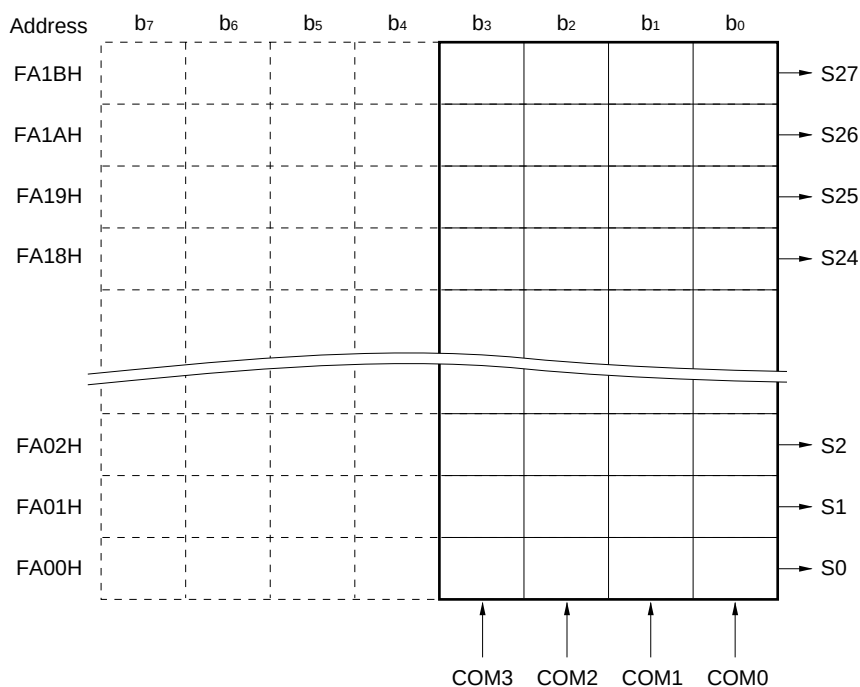
### 13.5 LCD Display Data Memory

The LCD display data memory is mapped at addresses FA00H to FA1BH. Data in the LCD display data memory can be displayed on the LCD panel using the LCD controller/driver.

Figure 13-6 shows the relationship between the contents of the LCD display data memory and the segment/common outputs.

That part of the display data memory which is not used for display can be used as ordinary RAM.

**Figure 13-6. Relationship Between LCD Display Data Memory Contents and Segment/Common Outputs (When Using S16 to S27)**



**Caution** No memory has been installed as the higher 4 bits of the LCD display data memory. Be sure to set them to 0.

## 13.6 Common and Segment Signals

Each pixel of the LCD panel turns on when the potential difference between the corresponding common and segment signals becomes higher than a specific voltage (LCD drive voltage,  $V_{LCD}$ ). It turns off when the potential difference becomes lower than  $V_{LCD}$ .

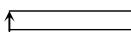
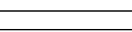
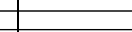
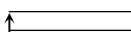
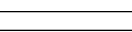
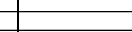
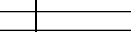
Applying DC voltage to the common and segment signals for an LCD panel would deteriorate it. To avoid this problem, this LCD panel is driven with AC voltage.

### (1) Common signals

Each common signal is selected sequentially according to the specified number of time slots at the timing listed in Table 13-4. In the static display mode, the same signal is output commonly to COM0 to COM3.

In the three-time-slice mode, leave the COM3 pin open.

**Table 13-4. COM Signals**

| COM Signal            | COM0                                                                              | COM1                                                                              | COM2                                                                               | COM3                                                                                |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of Time Slices |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |                                                                                     |
| Three-time-slice mode |  |  |  | Open                                                                                |
| Four-time-slice mode  |  |  |  |  |

### (2) Segment signals

The segment signals correspond to LCD display data memory. Bits 0, 1, 2, and 3 of each byte are read in synchronization with COM0, COM1, COM2, and COM3, respectively. If the contents of each bit are 1, that bit is converted to the select voltage, and if 0, it is converted to the deselect voltage. The conversion results are output to the segment pins.

Check, with the information given above, what combination of the front-surface electrodes (corresponding to the segment signals) and the rear-surface electrodes (corresponding to the common signals) forms display patterns in the LCD display data memory, and write the bit data that corresponds to the desired display pattern on a one-to-one basis.

Bit 3 of the LCD display data memory is not used for LCD display in the three-time-slice mode. So this bit can be used for purposes other than display.

LCD display data memory bits 4 to 7 are fixed to 0.

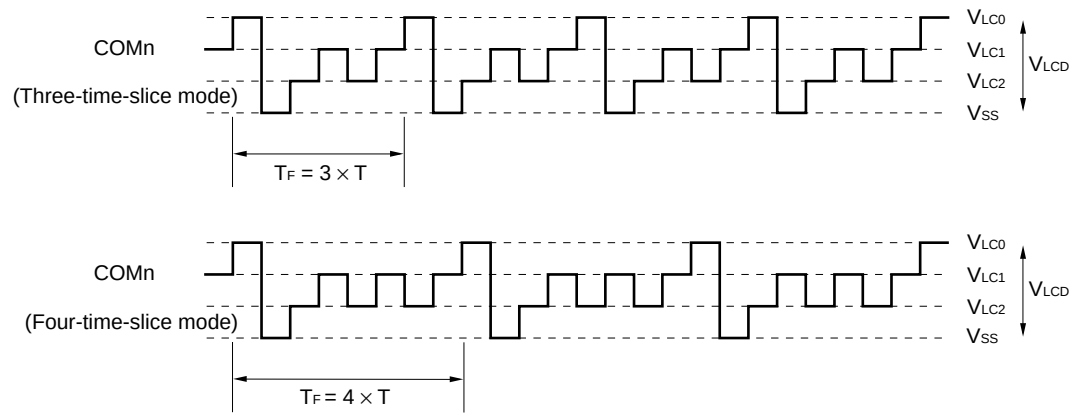
### (3) Output waveforms of common and segment signals

When both common and segment signals are at the select voltage, a display-on voltage of  $\pm V_{LCD}$  is obtained.

The other combinations of the signals correspond to the display-off voltage.

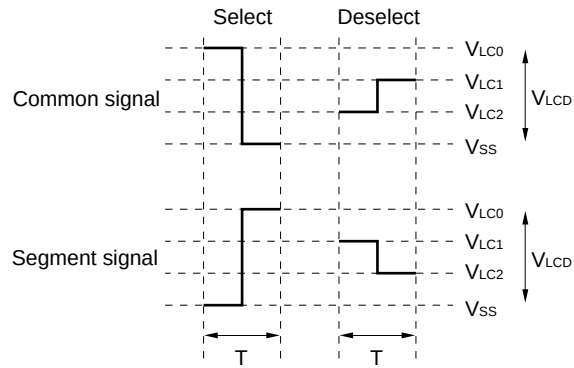
Figure 13-7 shows the common signal waveforms, and Figure 13-8 shows the voltages and phases of the common and segment signals.

**Figure 13-7. Common Signal Waveforms**



T: One LCD clock period       $T_F$ : Frame frequency

**Figure 13-8. Voltages and Phases of Common and Segment Signals**



T: One LCD clock period

## 13.7 Display Modes

### 13.7.1 Three-time-slice display example

Figure 13-10 shows how a nine-digit LCD panel having the display pattern shown in Figure 13-9 is connected to the segment signals (S0 to S26) and the common signals (COM0 to COM2) of the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries chip. This example displays the data "123456.789" in the LCD panel. The contents of the display data memory (addresses FA00H to FA1AH) correspond to this display.

The following description focuses on numeral "6." ( 6. ) displayed as the fourth digit from the right. To display "6." in the LCD panel, it is necessary to apply the select or deselect voltage to the S9 to S11 pins according to Table 13-5 at the timing of the common signals COM0 to COM2; see Figure 13-9 for the relationship between the segment signals and LCD segments.

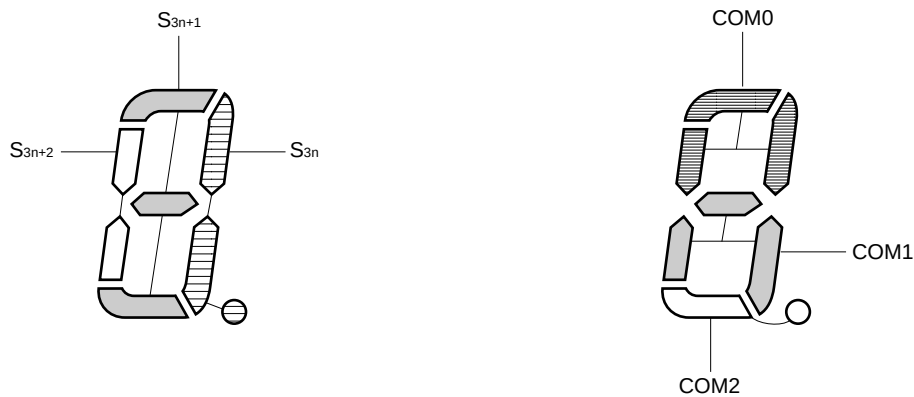
**Table 13-5. Select and Deselect Voltages (COM0 to COM2)**

| Segment<br>Common | S9       | S10    | S11    |
|-------------------|----------|--------|--------|
| COM0              | Deselect | Select | Select |
| COM1              | Select   | Select | Select |
| COM2              | Select   | Select | —      |

According to Table 13-5, it is determined that the display data memory location (FA09H) that corresponds to S9 must contain x110.

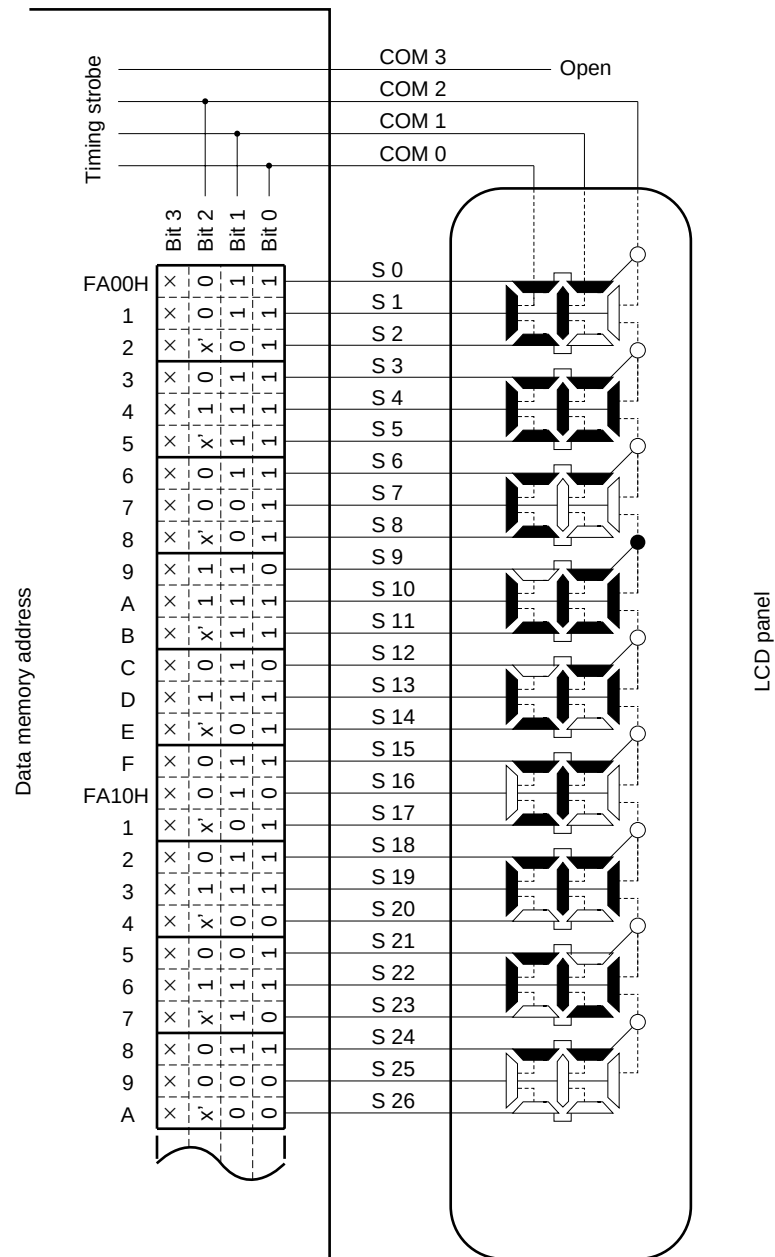
Figure 13-11 shows an example of LCD drive waveforms between the S9 signal and each common signal. When the select voltage is applied to S9 at the timing of COM1 or COM2, an alternate rectangle waveform,  $+V_{LCD}/-V_{LCD}$ , is generated to turn on the corresponding LCD segment.

**Figure 13-9. Three-Time-Slice LCD Display Pattern and Electrode Connections**



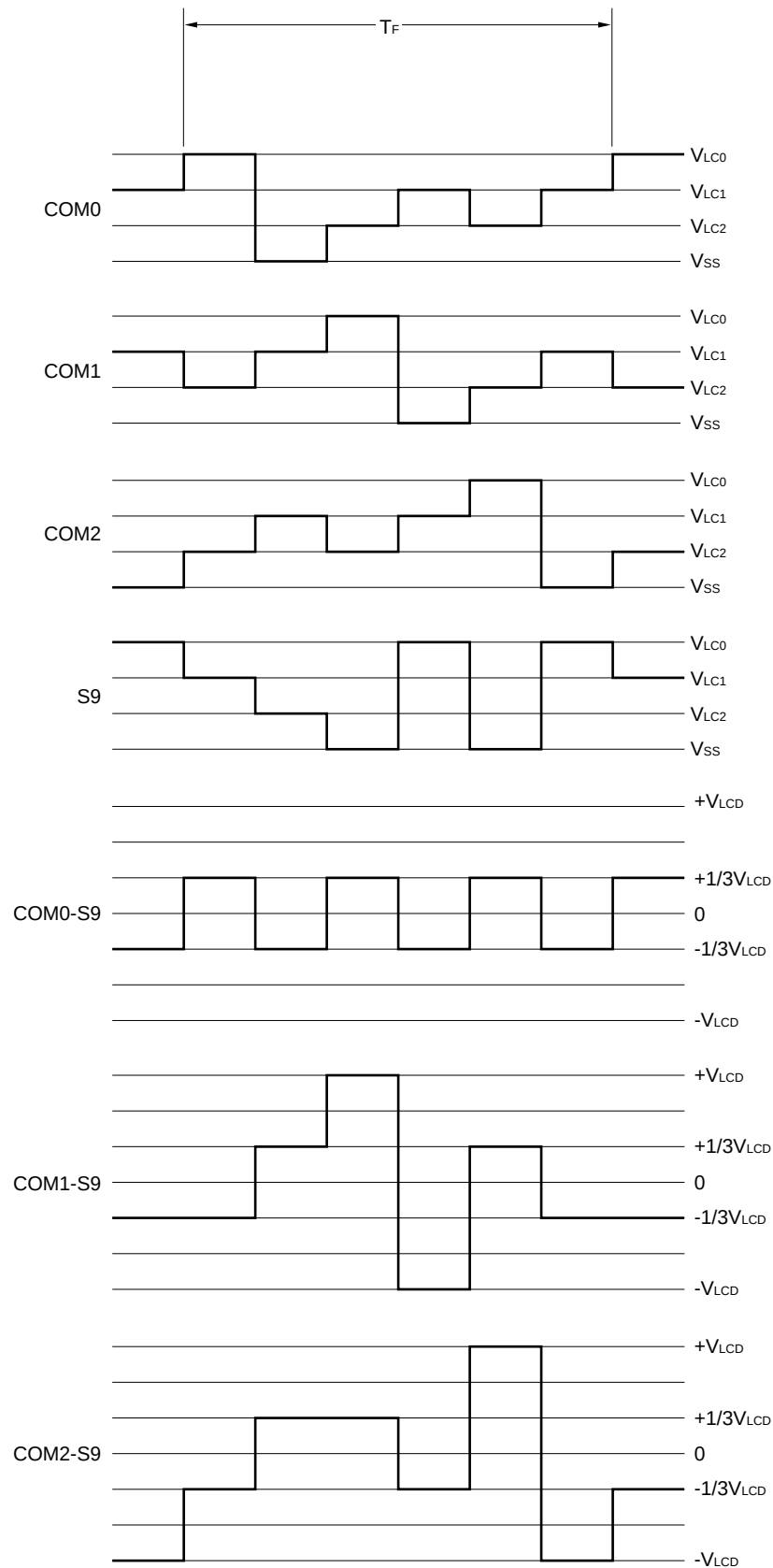
**Remark** n = 0 to 8

Figure 13-10. Example of Connecting Three-Time-Slice LCD Panel



x': Can be used to store any data because there is no corresponding segment in the LCD panel.

x: Can always be used to store any data because the three-time-slice mode is being used.

**Figure 13-11. Three-Time-Slice LCD Drive Waveform Examples (1/3 Bias Method)**

### 13.7.2 Four-time-slice display example

Figure 13-13 shows how a 14-digit LCD panel having the display pattern shown in Figure 13-12 is connected to the segment signals (S0 to S27) and the common signals (COM0 to COM3) of the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries chip. This example displays the data "123456.78901234" in the LCD panel. The contents of the display data memory (addresses FA00H to FA1BH) correspond to this display.

The following description focuses on numeral "6." (5.) displayed as the ninth digit from the right. To display "6." in the LCD panel, it is necessary to apply the select or deselect voltage to the S16 and S17 pins according to Table 13-6 at the timing of the common signals COM0 to COM3; see Figure 13-12 for the relationship between the segment signals and LCD segments.

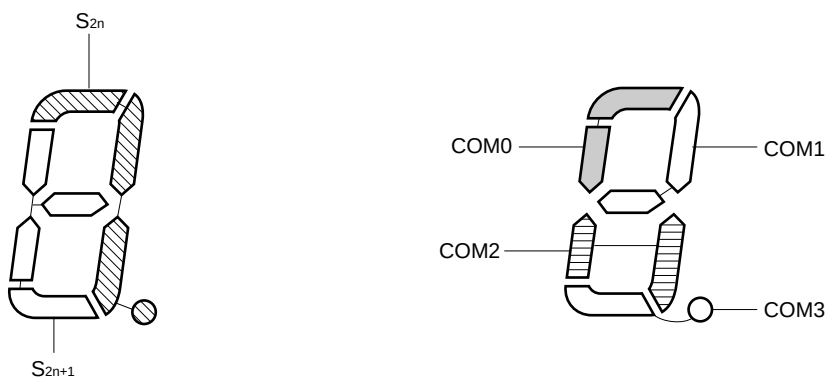
**Table 13-6. Select and Deselect Voltages (COM0 to COM3)**

| Segment \ Common | S16      | S17    |
|------------------|----------|--------|
| COM0             | Select   | Select |
| COM1             | Deselect | Select |
| COM2             | Select   | Select |
| COM3             | Select   | Select |

According to Table 13-7, it is determined that the display data memory location (FA10H) that corresponds to S16 must contain 1101.

Figure 13-14 shows examples of LCD drive waveforms between the S16 signal and the common signals. When the select voltage is applied to S16 at the timing of COM0, an alternate rectangle waveform,  $+V_{LCD}/-V_{LCD}$ , is generated to turn on the corresponding LCD segment.

**Figure 13-12. Four-Time-Slice LCD Display Pattern and Electrode Connections**



**Remark**  $n = 0$  to 13

Figure 13-13. Example of Connecting Four-Time-Slice LCD Panel

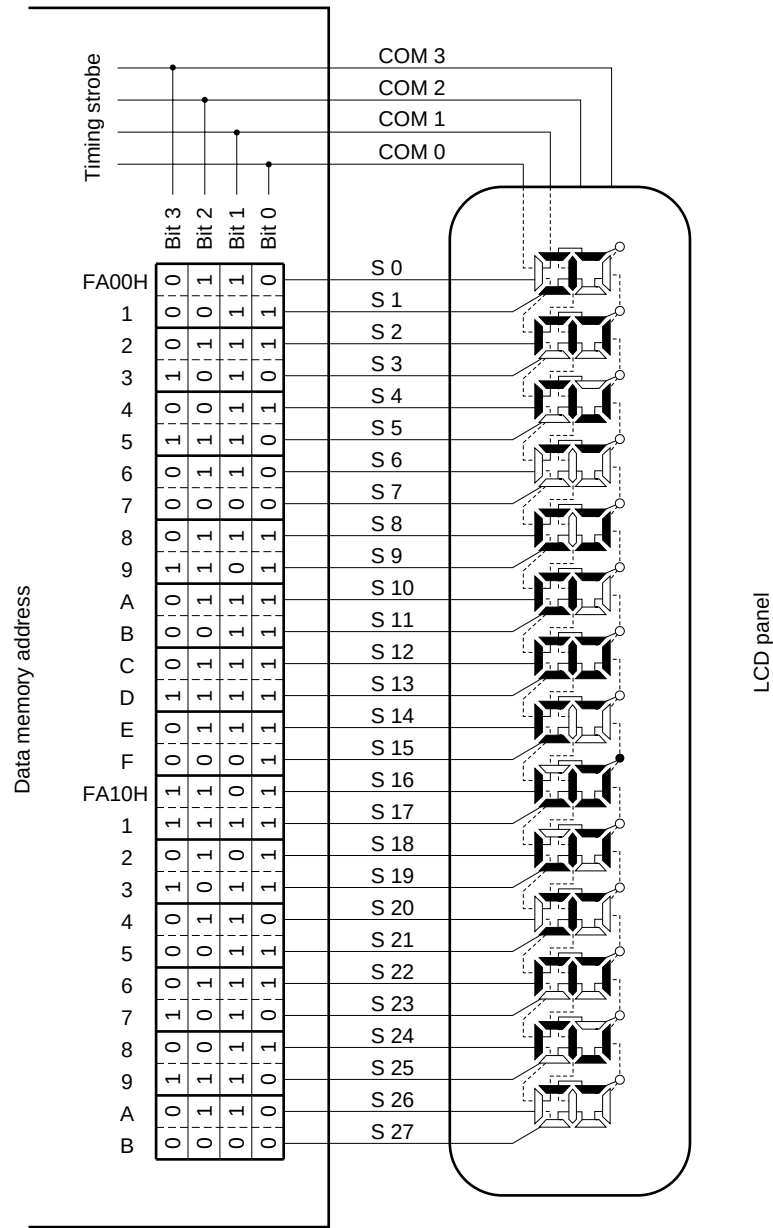
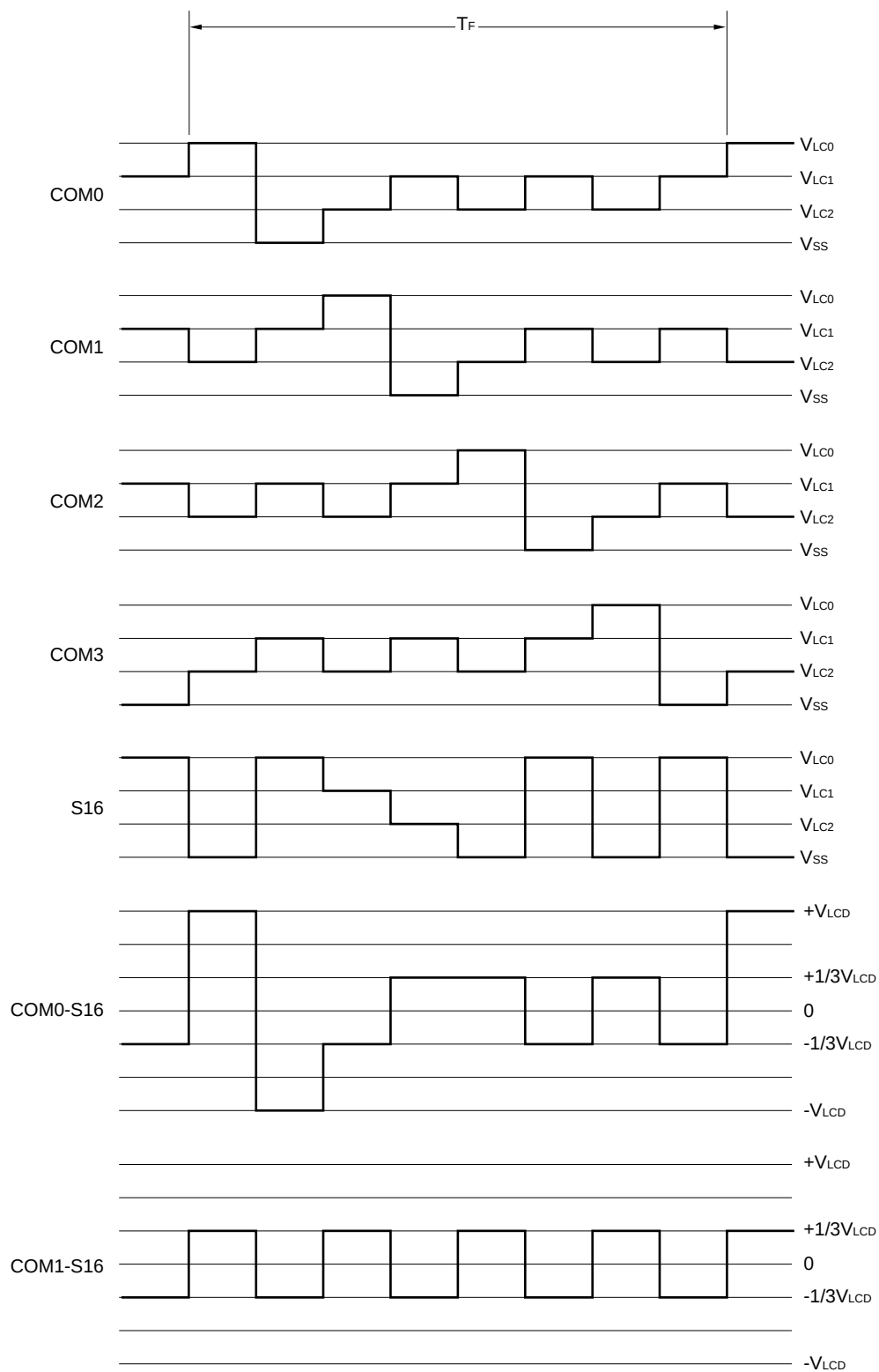




**Figure 13-14. Four-Time-Slice LCD Drive Waveform Examples (1/3 Bias Method)**

**Remark** The waveforms of COM2-S16 and COM3-S16 are omitted.

### 13.8 Supplying LCD Drive Voltages $V_{LC0}$ , $V_{LC1}$ , and $V_{LC2}$

The  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries contains a booster circuit ( $\times 3$  only) to generate a supply voltage to drive the LCD. The internal LCD reference voltage is output from the  $V_{LC2}$  pin. A voltage two times higher than that on  $V_{LC2}$  is output from the  $V_{LC1}$  pin and a voltage three times higher than that on  $V_{LC2}$  is output from the  $V_{LC0}$  pin.

The LCD reference voltage ( $V_{LC2}$ ) can be specified by setting LCD boost control register 0 (LCDVA0).

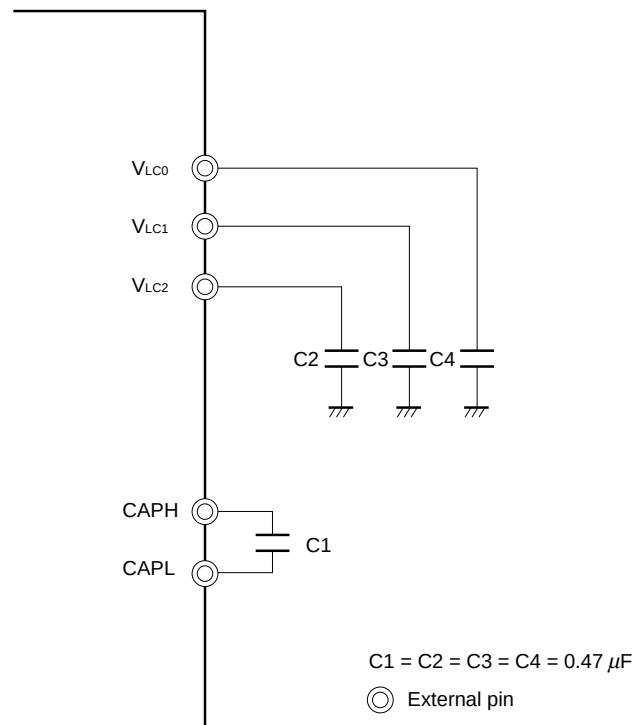
The  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries requires an external capacitor (recommended value:  $0.47\ \mu\text{F}$ ) because it employs a capacitance division method to generate a supply voltage to drive the LCD.

**Table 13-7. Output Voltages of  $V_{LC0}$  to  $V_{LC2}$  Pins**

| LCD drive power supply pin \ LCDVA0 | GAIN = 0 | GAIN = 1 |
|-------------------------------------|----------|----------|
| $V_{LC0}$                           | 4.5 V    | 3.0 V    |
| $V_{LC1}$                           | 3.0 V    | 2.0 V    |
| $V_{LC2}$ (LCD reference voltage)   | 1.5 V    | 1.0 V    |

- Cautions**
1. When using the LCD function, do not leave the  $V_{LC0}$ ,  $V_{LC1}$ , and  $V_{LC2}$  pins open. Refer to Figure 13-15 for connection.
  2. Since the LCD drive voltage is separate from the main power supply, a constant voltage can be supplied regardless of  $V_{DD}$  fluctuation.

**Figure 13-15. Example of Connecting Pins for LCD Driver**



**Remark** Use a capacitor with as little leakage as possible.  
In addition, make C1 a nonpolar capacitor.

### 14.1 Multiplier Function

The multiplier has the following function.

- Calculation of 8 bits  $\times$  8 bits = 16 bits

### 14.2 Multiplier Configuration

#### (1) 16-bit multiplication result storage register 0 (MUL0)

This register stores the 16-bit result of multiplication.

This register holds the result of multiplication after 16 CPU clocks have elapsed.

MUL0 is set with a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input makes this register undefined.

**Caution** Although this register is manipulated with a 16-bit memory manipulation instruction, it can also be manipulated with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction. When using an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction, however, access the register by means of direct addressing.

#### (2) Multiplication data registers A and B (MRA0 and MRB0)

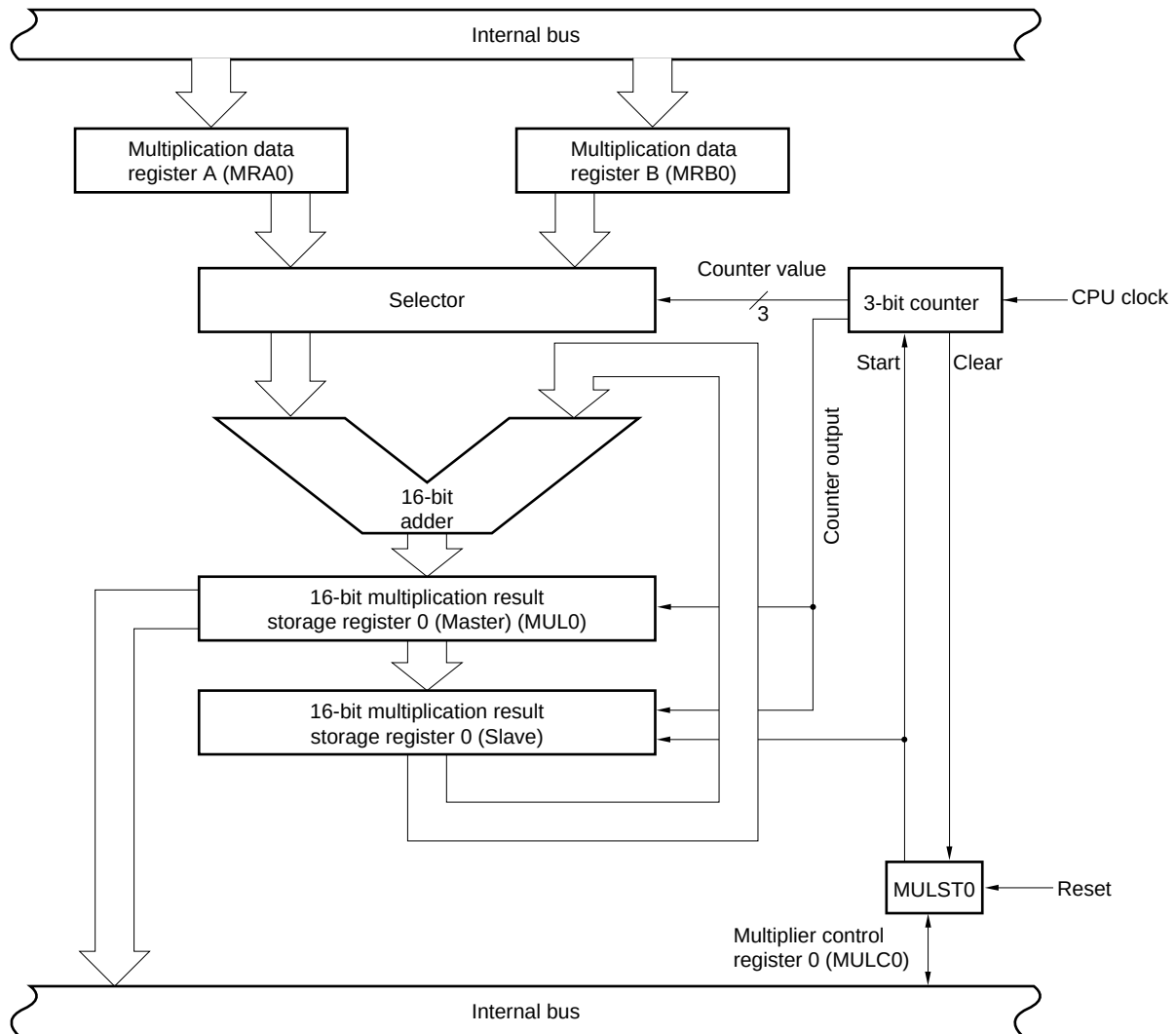
These are 8-bit multiplication data storage registers. The multiplier multiplies the values of MRA0 and MRB0.

MRA0 and MRB0 are set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instructions.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input makes these registers undefined.

Figure 14-1 shows the block diagram of the multiplier.

Figure 14-1. Block Diagram of Multiplier



### 14.3 Multiplier Control Register

The multiplier is controlled by the following register.

- Multiplier control register 0 (MULC0)

#### (1) Multiplier control register 0 (MULC0)

MULC0 indicates the operating status of the multiplier after operation, as well as controls the multiplier.

MULC0 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input clears this register to 00H.

**Figure 14-2. Format of Multiplier Control Register 0**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| MULC0  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | MULST0 | FFD2H   | 00H         | R/W |

| MULST0 | Multiplier operation start control bit       | Operating status of multiplier |
|--------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 0      | Stop operation after resetting counter to 0. | Operation stopped              |
| 1      | Enable operation                             | Operation in progress          |

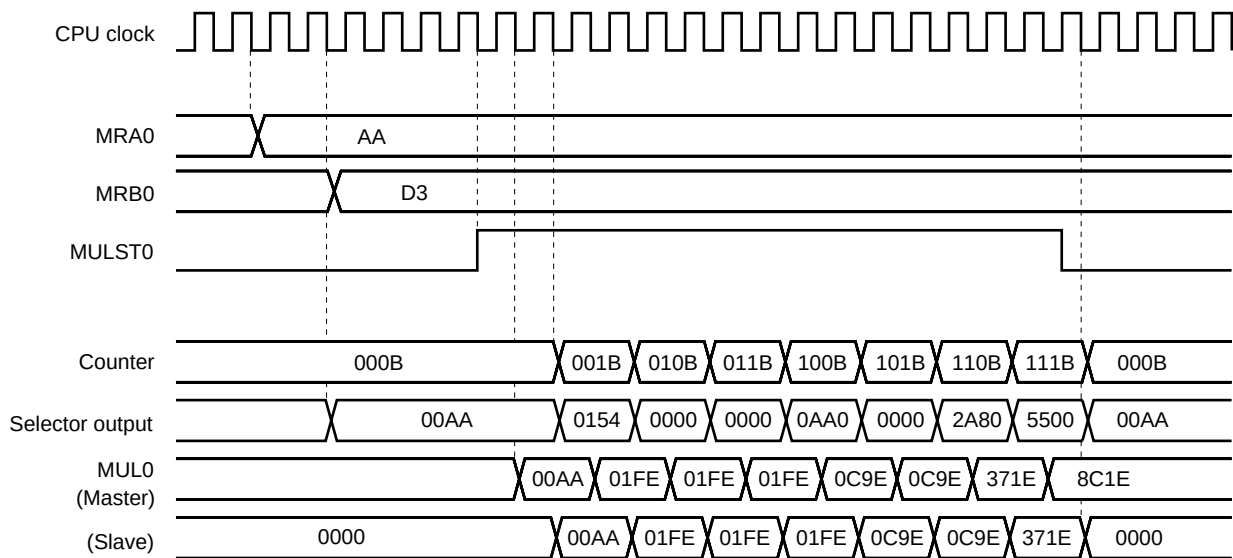
**Caution** Be sure to set bits 1 to 7 to 0.

## 14.4 Multiplier Operation

The multiplier of the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries can execute the calculation of 8 bits  $\times$  8 bits = 16 bits. Figure 14-3 shows the operation timing of the multiplier where MRA0 is set to AAH and MRB0 is set to D3H.

- <1> Counting is started by setting MULST0.
- <2> The data generated by the selector is added to the data of MUL0 at each CPU clock, and the counter value is incremented by one.
- <3> If MULST0 is cleared when the counter value is 111B, the operation is stopped. At this time, MUL0 holds the data.
- <4> While MULST0 is low, the counter and slave are cleared.

**Figure 14-3. Multiplier Operation Timing (Example of AAH  $\times$  D3H)**



## CHAPTER 15 REMOTE CONTROLLER RECEIVER (μPD789489, 78F9489 ONLY)

### 15.1 Remote Controller Receiver Functions

The remote controller receiver uses the following remote controller modes.

- Type A reception mode ... Guide pulse (half clock) provided

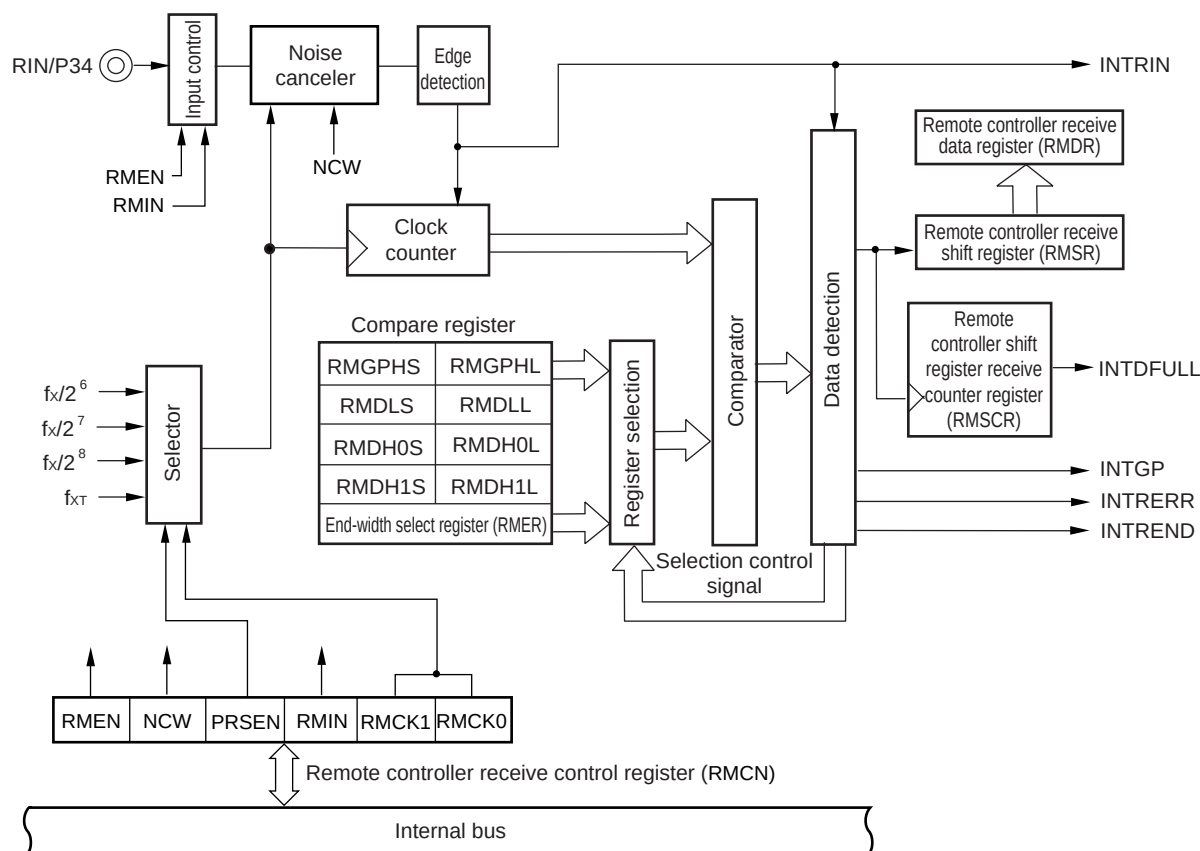
### 15.2 Remote Controller Receiver Configuration

The remote controller receiver includes the following hardware.

**Table 15-1. Remote Controller Receiver Configuration**

| Item             | Configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Registers        | Remote controller receive shift register (RMSR)<br>Remote controller receive data register (RMDR)<br>Remote controller shift register receive counter register (RMSCR)<br>Remote controller receive GPHS compare register (RMGPHS)<br>Remote controller receive GPHL compare register (RMGPHL)<br>Remote controller receive DLS compare register (RMDLS)<br>Remote controller receive DLL compare register (RMDLL)<br>Remote controller receive DH0S compare register (RMDH0S)<br>Remote controller receive DH0L compare register (RMDH0L)<br>Remote controller receive DH1S compare register (RMDH1S)<br>Remote controller receive DH1L compare register (RMDH1L)<br>Remote controller receive end width select register (RMER) |
| Control register | Remote controller receive control register (RMCN)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

Figure 15-1. Block Diagram of Remote Controller Receiver

**(1) Remote controller receive shift register (RMSR)**

This is an 8-bit register for reception of remote controller data.

Data is stored in bit 7 first. Each time new data is stored, the stored data is shifted to the lower bits. Therefore, the latest data is stored in bit 7, and the first data is stored in bit 0.

RMSR is read with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets RMSR to 00H.

Also, RMSR is cleared to 00H under any of the following conditions.

- Remote controller stops operation (RMEN = 0).
- Error is detected (INTRERR is generated).
- INTDFULL is generated.
- RMSR is read after INTREND has been generated.

**Caution** Reading RMSR is disabled during remote controller reception. Complete reception, then read RMSR. When the reading operation is complete, RMSR is cleared. Therefore, values once read are not guaranteed.



**(2) Remote controller receive data register (RMDR)**

This register holds the remote controller reception data. When the remote controller receive shift register (RMSR) overflows, the data in RMSR is transferred to RMDR. Bit 7 stores the last data, and bit 0 stores the first data. INTDFULL is generated at the same time as data is transferred from RMSR to RMDR.

RMDR is read with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets RMDR to 00H.

When the remote controller operation is disabled (RMEN = 0), RMDR is cleared to 00H.

**Caution** When INTDFULL has been generated, read RMDR before the next 8-bit data is received. If the next INTDFULL is generated before the read operation is complete, RMDR is overwritten.

**(3) Remote controller shift register receive counter register (RMSCR)**

This is an 8-bit counter register used to indicate the number of valid bits remaining in the remote controller receive shift register (RMSR) when remote controller reception is complete (INTREND is generated). Reading the values of this register allows confirmation of the number of bits, even if the received data is in a format other than an integral multiple of 8 bits.

RMSCR is read with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets RMSCR to 00H.

It is cleared to 00H under any of the following conditions.

- Remote controller stops operation (RMEN = 0).
- Error is detected (INTRERR is generated).
- RMSR is read after INTREND has been generated.

**Caution** When INTREND has been generated, immediately read RMSCR before reading RMSR. If reading occurs at another timing, the value is not guaranteed.

**Figure 15-2. Operation Examples of RMSR, RMSCR, and RMDR Registers**  
When Receiving 101010101111111B (16 Bits)

|                   | RMSR |     |     |     |     |     |     |     | RMSCR | RMDR      |
|-------------------|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----------|
|                   | 7    | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |       |           |
| After reset       | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 00H   | 00000000B |
| Receiving 1 bit   | 1    | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 01H   | 00000000B |
| Receiving 2 bits  | 0    | 1   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 02H   | 00000000B |
| Receiving 3 bits  | 1    | 0   | 1   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 03H   | 00000000B |
| ...               | ...  | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ...   | ...       |
| Receiving 7 bits  | 1    | 0   | 1   | 0   | 1   | 0   | 1   | 0   | 07H   | 00000000B |
| Receiving 8 bits  | 0    | 1   | 0   | 1   | 0   | 1   | 0   | 1   | 00H   | 00000000B |
| ↓                 | ↓    | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓     | ↓         |
| RMDR transfer     | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 00H   | 01010101B |
| Receiving 9 bits  | 1    | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 01H   | 01010101B |
| Receiving 10 bits | 1    | 1   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 02H   | 01010101B |
| ...               | ...  | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ...   | ...       |
| Receiving 16 bits | 1    | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 00H   | 01010101B |
| ↓                 | ↓    | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓   | ↓     | ↓         |
| RMDR transfer     | 0    | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 0   | 00H   | 11111111B |

**(4) Remote controller receive GPHS compare register (RMGPHS)**

This register is used to detect the high level of a remote controller guide pulse (short side).

RMGPHS is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

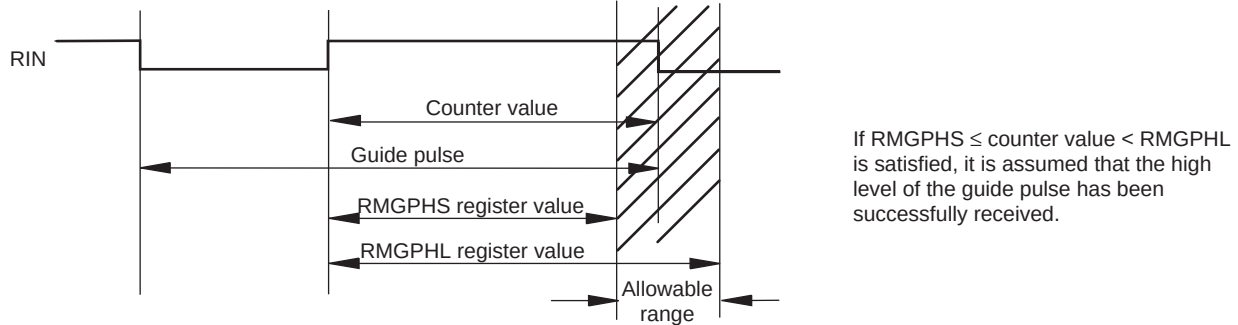
RESET input sets RMGPHS to 00H.

**(5) Remote controller receive GPHL compare register (RMGPHL)**

This register is used to detect the high level of a remote controller guide pulse (long side).

RMGPHL is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets RMGPHL to 00H.

**(6) Remote controller DLS compare register (RMDLS)**

This register is used to detect the low level of a remote controller data (short side).

RMDLS is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

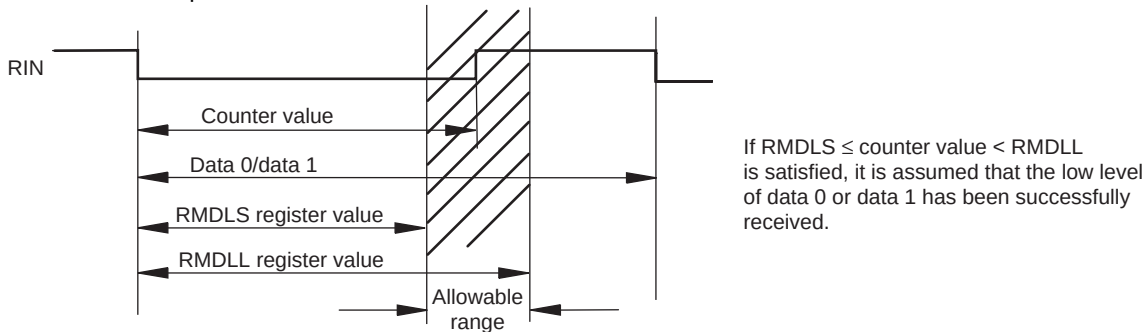
RESET input sets RMDLS to 00H.

**(7) Remote controller receive DLL compare register (RMDLL)**

This register is used to detect the low level of a remote controller data (long side).

RMDLL is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets RMDLL to 00H.



**(8) Remote controller receive DH0S compare register (RMDH0S)**

This register is used to detect the high level of remote controller data 0 (short side).

RMDH0S is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

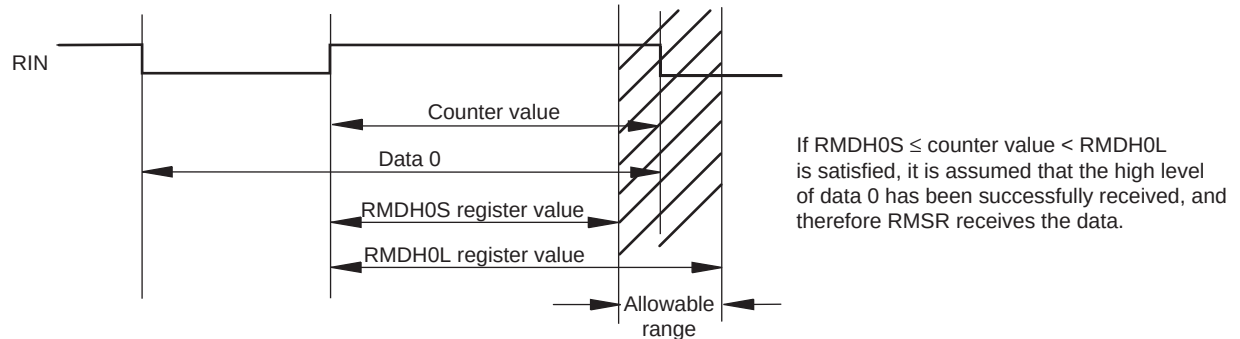
RESET input sets RMDH0S to 00H.

**(9) Remote controller receive DH0L compare register (RMDH0L)**

This register is used to detect the high level of remote controller data 0 (long side).

RMDH0L is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets RMDH0L to 00H.



**(10) Remote controller receive DH1S compare register (RMDH1S)**

This register is used to detect the high level of remote controller data 1 (short side).

RMDH1S is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

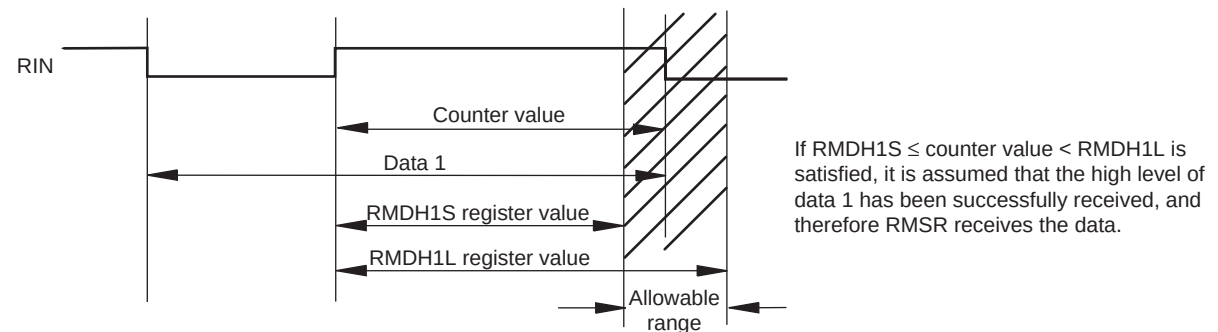
$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets RMDH1S to 00H.

**(11) Remote controller receive DH1L compare register (RMDH1L)**

This register is used to detect the high level of remote controller data 1 (long side).

RMDH1L is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets RMDH1L to 00H.

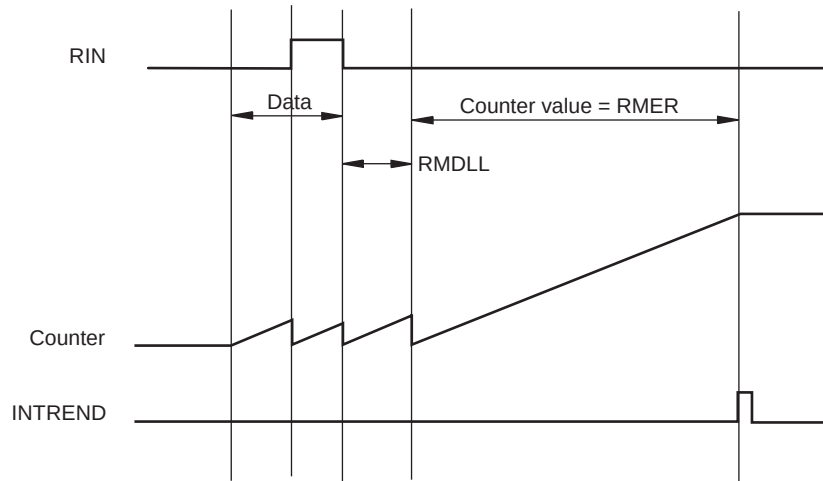


**(12) Remote controller receive end-width select register (RMER)**

This register determines the interval between the timing at which the INTREND signal is output.

RMER is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets RMER to 00H.



**Caution** For RMER and all the remote controller receive compare registers (RMGPHS, RMGPHL, RMDLS, RMDLL, RMDH0S, RMDH0L, RMDH1S, and RMDH1L), disable remote controller reception (bit 7 (RMEN) of the remote controller receive control register (RMCN) = 0) first, and then change the value.

### 15.3 Registers to Control Remote Controller Receiver

The remote controller receiver is controlled by the following register.

- Remote controller receive control register (RMCN)

#### (1) Remote controller receive control register (RMCN)

This register is used to enable/disable remote controller reception and to set the noise elimination width, clock internal division, input invert signal, and source clock.

RMCN is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets RMCN to 00H.

**Figure 15-3. Format of Remote Controller Receive Control Register (1/2)**

| Symbol | 7    | 6   | 5     | 4    | 3 | 2 | 1     | 0     | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|------|-----|-------|------|---|---|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| RMCN   | RMEN | NCW | PRSEN | RMIN | 0 | 0 | RMCK1 | RMCK0 | FF60H   | 00H         | R/W |

|      |                                                |
|------|------------------------------------------------|
| RMEN | Control of remote controller receive operation |
| 0    | Disable remote controller reception            |
| 1    | Enable remote controller reception             |

|     |                                              |
|-----|----------------------------------------------|
| NCW | Noise elimination width control signal       |
| 0   | Eliminate noise less than $1/f_{\text{PRS}}$ |
| 1   | Eliminate noise less than $2/f_{\text{PRS}}$ |

|       |                                                                           |
|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRSEN | Internal clock division control signal                                    |
| 0     | Clock not divided internally ( $f_{\text{PRS}} = f_{\text{REM}}$ )        |
| 1     | Clock internally divided into two ( $f_{\text{PRS}} = f_{\text{REM}}/2$ ) |

|      |                                       |
|------|---------------------------------------|
| RMIN | Remote controller input invert signal |
| 0    | Input positive phase                  |
| 1    | Input negative phase                  |

**Cautions** 1. Always set bits 2 and 3 to 0.

2. To change the values of NCW, PRSEN, RMIN, RMCK1, and RMCK0, disable remote controller reception (RMEN = 0) first.

**Remarks** 1.  $f_{\text{REM}}$ : Source clock of remote controller counter (selected by bits 0 and 1 (RMCK0 and RMCK1))

2.  $f_{\text{PRS}}$ : Operation clock inside remote controller receiver

**Figure 15-3. Format of Remote Controller Receive Control Register (2/2)**

| Symbol | 7    | 6   | 5     | 4    | 3 | 2 | 1     | 0     | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|------|-----|-------|------|---|---|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| RMCKN  | RMEN | NCW | PRSEN | RMIN | 0 | 0 | RMCK1 | RMCK0 | FF60H   | 00H         | R/W |

| RMCK1 | RMCK0 | Selection of source clock ( $f_{REM}$ ) of remote controller counter |
|-------|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0     | 0     | $f_x/2^6$ (625 kHz)                                                  |
| 0     | 1     | $f_x/2^7$ (313 kHz)                                                  |
| 1     | 0     | $f_x/2^8$ (156 kHz)                                                  |
| 1     | 1     | $f_{XT}$ (32.768 kHz)                                                |

**Cautions** 1. Always set bits 2 and 3 to 0.

2. To change the values of NCW, PRSEN, RMIN, RMCK1, and RMCK0, disable remote controller reception (RMEN = 0) first.

**Remarks** 1.  $f_x$ : Oscillation frequency of main system clock

2.  $f_{XT}$ : Oscillation frequency of subsystem clock

3. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 4.0$  MHz and  $f_{XT} = 32.768$  kHz.

## 15.4 Operation of Remote Controller Receiver

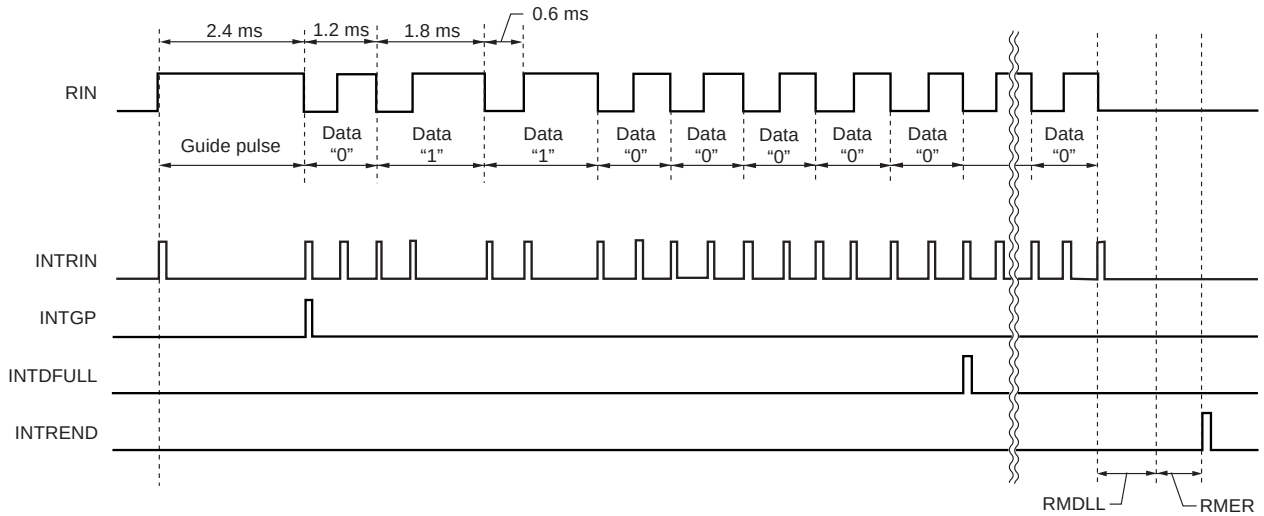
The following remote controller reception mode is used for this remote controller receiver.

- Type A reception mode with guide pulse (half clock)

### 15.4.1 Format of type A reception mode

Figure 15-4 shows the data format for type A.

**Figure 15-4. Example of Type A Data Format**

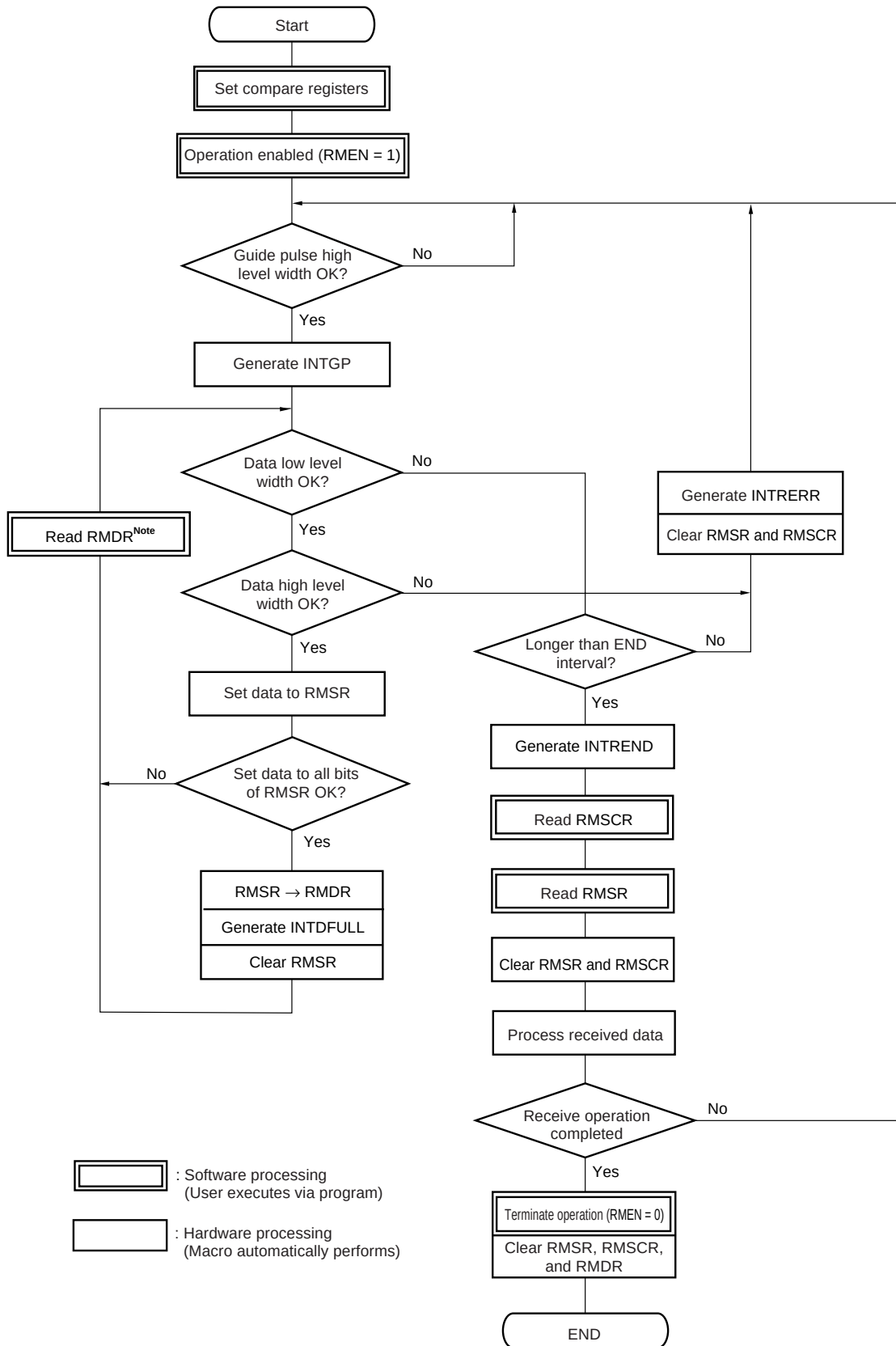


### 15.4.2 Operation flow of type A reception mode

Figure 15-5 shows the operation flow.

- Cautions**
1. When INTRERR is generated, RMSR and RMSCR are automatically cleared immediately.
  2. When data has been set to all the bits of RMSR, the following processing is automatically performed.
    - The value of RMSR is transferred to RMDR.
    - INTDFULL is generated.
    - RMSR is cleared.
 RMDR must then be read before the next data is set to all the bits of RMSR.
  3. When INTREND has been generated, read RMSCR first followed by RMSR. When RMSR has been read, RMSCR and RMSR are automatically cleared. If INTREND is generated, the next data cannot be received until RMSR is read.
  4. RMSR, RMSCR, and RMDR are cleared simultaneously to operation termination (RMEN = 0).

Figure 15-5. Operation Flow of Type A Reception Mode



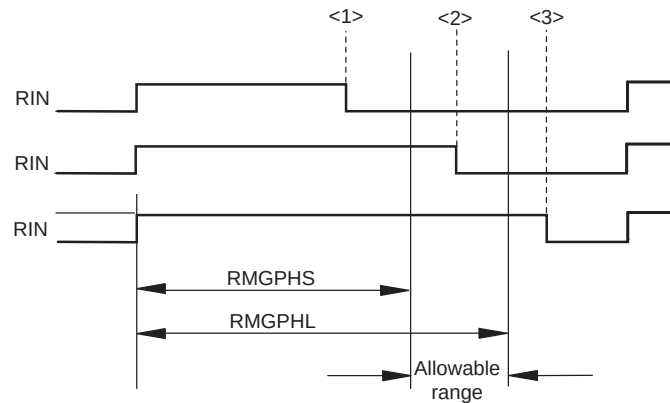
**Note** Read RMDR before data has been set to all the bits of RMSR.



### 15.4.3 Timing

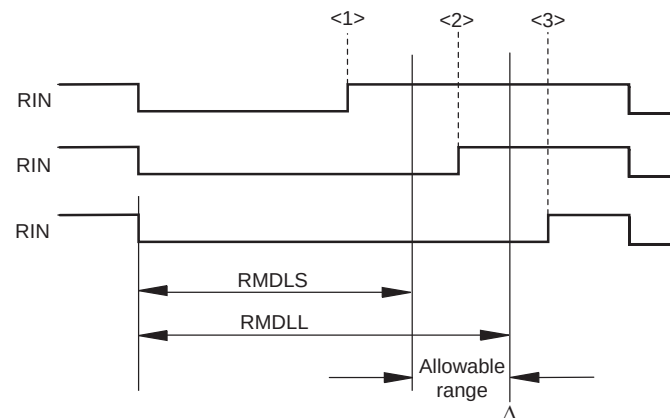
Operation varies depending on the positions of the RIN input waveform below.

#### (1) Guide pulse high level width determination



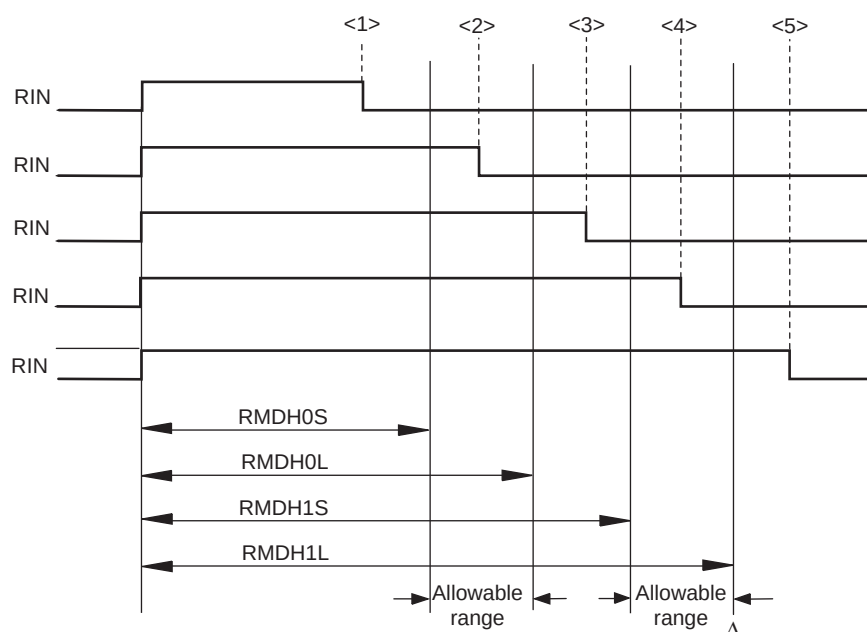
| Relationship Between RMGPHS/RMGPHL/Counter | Position of Waveform  | Corresponding Operation                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Counter < PMGPHS                           | <1>: Short            | Measuring guide pulse high-level width is started from the next rising edge. |
| PMGPHS ≤ counter < PMGPHL                  | <2>: Within the range | INTGP is generated.<br>Data measurement is started.                          |
| PMGPHL ≤ counter                           | <3>: Long             | Measuring guide pulse high-level width is started from the next rising edge. |

#### (2) Data low level width determination

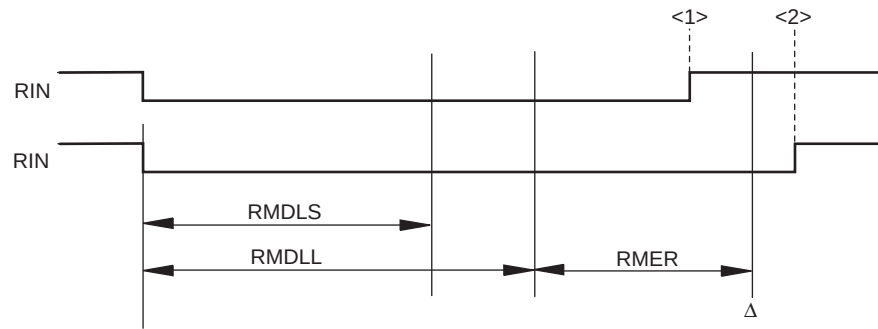


| Relationship Between RMDLS/RMDLL/Counter | Position of Waveform  | Corresponding Operation                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Counter < RMDLS                          | <1>: Short            | Error interrupt INTRERR is generated.<br>Measuring guide pulse high-level width is started. |
| RMDLS ≤ counter < RMDLL                  | <2>: Within the range | Measuring data high-level width is started.                                                 |
| RMDLL ≤ counter                          | <3>: Long             | Measuring the end width is started from the Δ point.                                        |

## (3) Data high level width determination



| Relationship Between RMDH0S/RMDH0L/RMDH1S/RMDH1L/Counter | Position of Waveform      | Corresponding Operation                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Counter < RMDH0S                                         | <1>: Short                | Error interrupt INTRERR is generated.<br>Measuring the guide pulse high-level width is started at the next rising edge.                |
| $\text{RMDH0S} \leq \text{counter} < \text{RMDH0L}$      | <2>: Within the range     | Data 0 is received.<br>Measuring data low-level width is started.                                                                      |
| $\text{RMDH0L} \leq \text{counter} < \text{RMDH1S}$      | <3>: Outside of the range | Error interrupt INTRERR is generated.<br>Measuring the guide pulse high-level width is started at the next rising edge.                |
| $\text{RMDH1S} \leq \text{counter} < \text{RMDH1L}$      | <4>: Within the range     | Data 1 is received.<br>Measuring the data low-level width is started.                                                                  |
| $\text{RMDH1L} \leq \text{counter}$                      | <5>: Long                 | Error interrupt INTRERR is generated at the Δ point.<br>Measuring the guide pulse high-level width is started at the next rising edge. |

**(4) End width determination**

| Relationship Between RMER/Counter | Position of Waveform | Corresponding Operation                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Counter < RMER                    | <1>: Short           | Error interrupt INTRERR is generated.<br>Measuring the guide pulse high-level width is started. |
| RMER ≤ counter                    | <2>: Long            | INTREND is generated at the Δ point.<br>Reception via circuit stops until RMSR is read.         |

**15.4.4 Compare register setting**

This remote controller receiver has the following 9 types of compare registers.

- Remote controller receive GPHS compare register (RMGPHS)
- Remote controller receive GPHL compare register (RMGPHL)
- Remote controller receive DLS compare register (RMDLS)
- Remote controller receive DLL compare register (RMDLL)
- Remote controller receive DH0S compare register (RMDH0S)
- Remote controller receive DH0L compare register (RMDH0L)
- Remote controller receive DH1S compare register (RMDH1S)
- Remote controller receive DH1L compare register (RMDH1L)
- Remote controller receive end width select register (RMER)

Use formulas (1) to (3) below to set the value of each compare register.

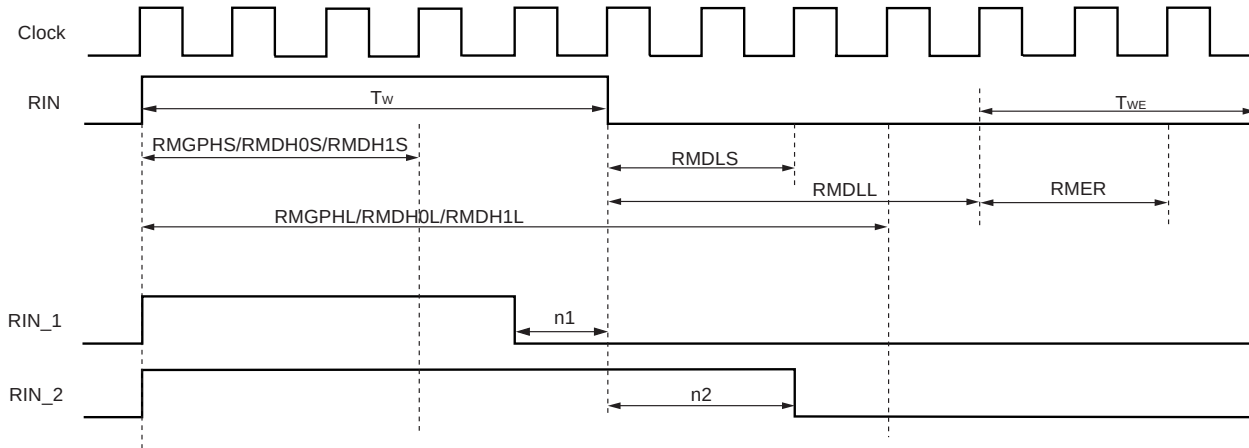
Making allowances for tolerance enables a normal reception operation, even if the RIN input waveform is RIN\_1 or RIN\_2 shown in Figure 15-6 due to the effect of noise.

**Cautions** 1. Always set each compare register while remote controller reception is disabled (RMEN = 0).

2. Set the set values so that they satisfy all the following three conditions.

- $RMGPHS < RMGPHL$
- $RMDLS < RMDLL$
- $RMDH0S < RMDH0L \leq RMDH1S < RMDH1L$

Figure 15-6. Setting Example (Where n1 = 1, n2 = 2)



## (1) Formula for RMGPHS, RMDLS, RMDH0S, and RMDH1S

$$\left( \frac{T_w \times (1 - a/100)}{1/f_{PRS}} \right)_{INT} - 2 - n1$$

## (2) Formula for RMGPHL, RMDLL, RMDH0L, and RMDH1L

$$\left( \frac{T_w \times (1 + a/100)}{1/f_{PRS}} \right)_{INT} + 1 + n2$$

## (3) Formula for RMER

$$\left( \frac{T_{WE} \times (1 - a/100)}{1/f_{PRS}} \right)_{INT} - 1$$

$T_w$ : Width of RIN input waveform

$1/f_{PRS}$ : Width of internal operation clock cycle after division control by PRSEN

$a$ : Tolerance (%)

[ ]<sub>INT</sub>: Round down the fractional portion of the value produced by the formula in the brackets.

$n1, n2$ : Variables of waveform change caused by noise<sup>Note1</sup>

$T_{WE}$ : End width of RIN input<sup>Note2</sup>

**Notes 1.** Set the values of  $n1$  and  $n2$  as required to meet the user's system specification.

**2.** This end width is counted after RMDLL.

The low-level width actually required after the last data has been received is as follows:

$(RMDLL + 1 + RMER + 1) \times (\text{width of internal operation clock cycle after division control by PRSEN})$

#### 15.4.5 Error interrupt generation timing

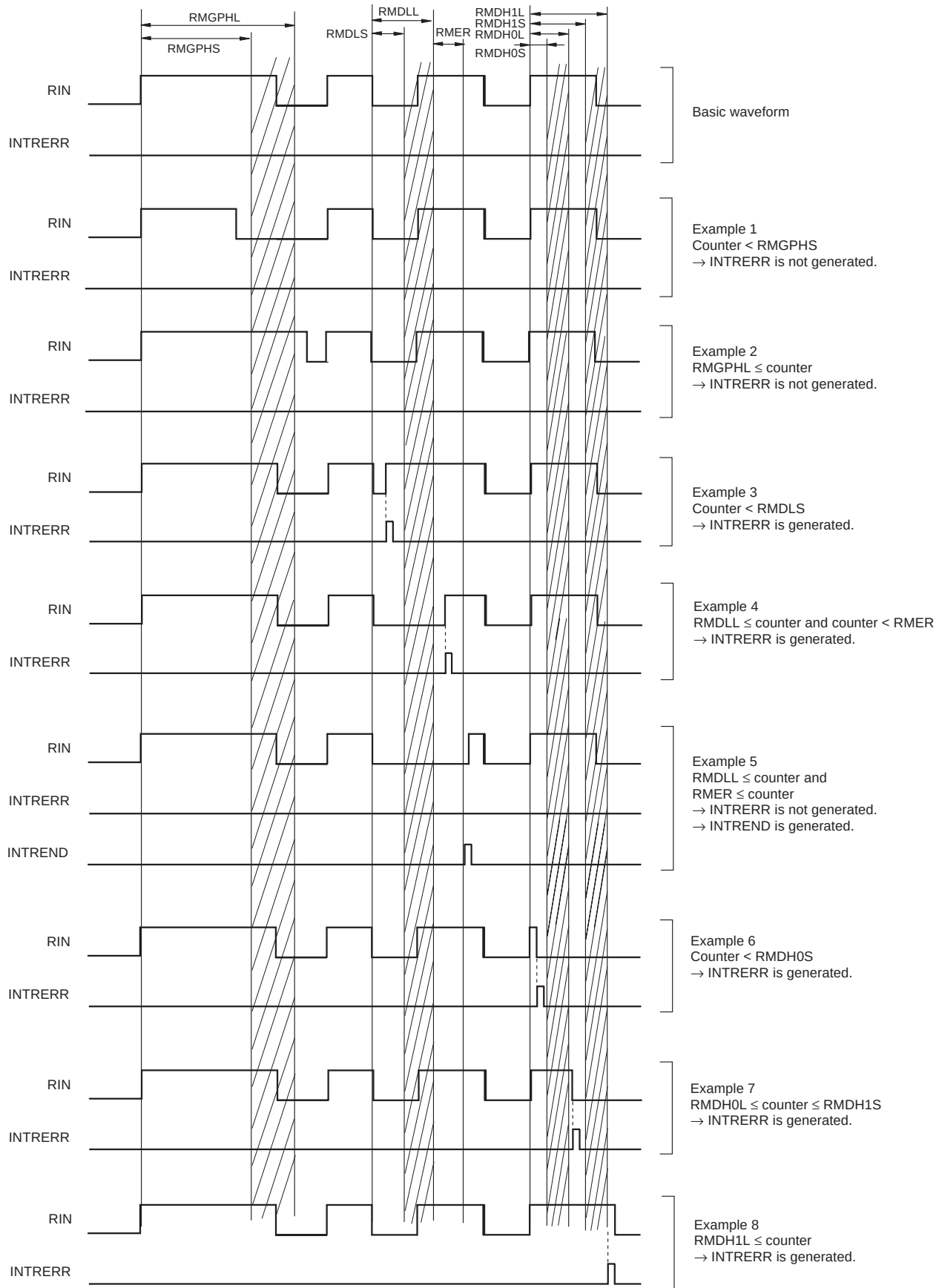
After the guide pulse has been detected normally, the INTRERR signal is generated under any of the following conditions.

- Counter < RMDLS at the rising edge of RIN
- $\text{RMDLL} \leq \text{counter}$  and counter after  $\text{RMDLL} < \text{RMER}$  at the rising edge of RIN
- Counter < RMDH0S at the falling edge of RIN
- $\text{RMDH0L} \leq \text{counter} < \text{RMDH1S}$  at the falling edge of RIN
- Register changes so that  $\text{RMDH1L} \leq \text{counter}$  while RIN is at high level

The INTRERR signal is not generated until the guide pulse is detected.

Once the INTRERR signal has been generated, it will not be generated again until the next guide pulse is detected. The generation timing of the INTRERR signal is shown in Figure 15-7.

Figure 15-7. Generation Timing of INTRERR Signal



### 15.4.6 Noise elimination

This remote controller receiver provides a function that supplies the signals input from the outside to the RIN pin after eliminating noise.

Noise width can be eliminated by setting bit 5 (PRSEN) and bit 6 (NCW) of the remote controller receive control register (RMCN) as shown in Figure 15-2.

**Table 15-2. Noise Elimination Width**

| PRSEN Division Control Signal | NCW Noise Elimination Width Control Signal | Internal Operation Clock Cycle After Division Control by PRSEN ( $1/f_{PRS}$ ) | Eliminatable Noise Width |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 0                             | 0                                          | $1/f_{REM}$                                                                    | Less than $1/f_{REM}$    |
| 0                             | 1                                          | $1/f_{REM}$                                                                    | Less than $2/f_{REM}$    |
| 1                             | 0                                          | $2/f_{REM}$                                                                    | Less than $2/f_{REM}$    |
| 1                             | 1                                          | $2/f_{REM}$                                                                    | Less than $4/f_{REM}$    |

**Remark**  $f_{REM}$ : Source clock of remote controller counter

A noise elimination operation is performed by using the internal operation clock after division control by PRSEN.

Then, after the external input signal from RIN pin has been synchronized with the clock,

If NCW = 0, the signal after sampling is performed twice is processed as a RIN input in the circuit.

If NCW = 1, the signal after sampling is performed three times is processed as a RIN input in the circuit.

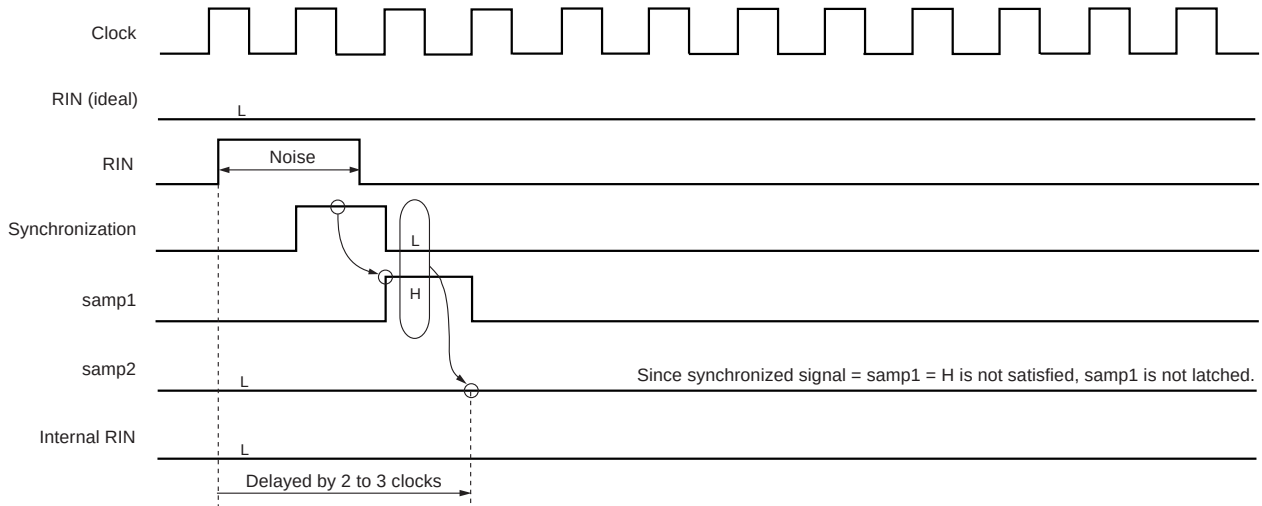
The following shows the flow of a noise elimination operation.

- <1> Select whether or not the internal operation clock is divided by PRSEN.  
 PRSEN = 0: Not divided ( $f_{PRS} = f_{REM}$ )  
 PRSEN = 1: Divided ( $f_{PRS} = f_{REM}/2$ )
- <2> Synchronize the external input signal from the RIN pin with the internal operation clock.
- <3> Generate a signal (samp1) sampling the synchronized signal for the first time.  
 (The signal is later than the synchronized signal by one clock.)
- <4> Generate a signal (samp2) sampling the synchronized signal and samp1 for the second time.  
 (When synchronized signal = samp1 = H, samp1 is latched.)
- <5> Generate a signal (samp3) sampling the synchronized signal and samp2 for the third time.  
 (When synchronized signal = samp2 = H, samp2 is latched.)
- <6> Select a signal to be the RIN input in the circuit using NCW.  
 NCW = 0: samp2 is processed as the RIN input in the circuit.  
 NCW = 1: samp3 is processed as the RIN input in the circuit.

Figure 15-8 shows an example of a noise elimination operation.

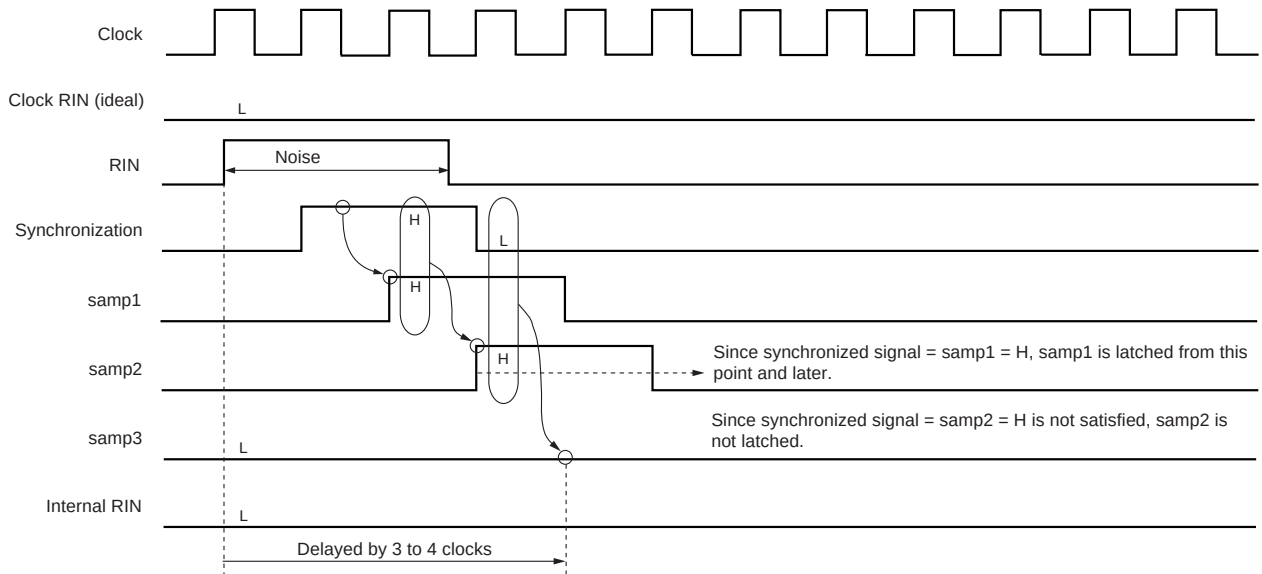
Figure 15-8. Noise Elimination Operation Example (1/2)

## (a) 1-clock noise elimination (PRSEN = 0, NCW = 0)



**Remark** Internal RIN is a signal after synchronization and sampling are performed twice, and is therefore later than the actual signal input from the outside to the RIN pin by two to three clocks.

## (b) 2-clock noise elimination (PRSEN = 0, NCW = 1)

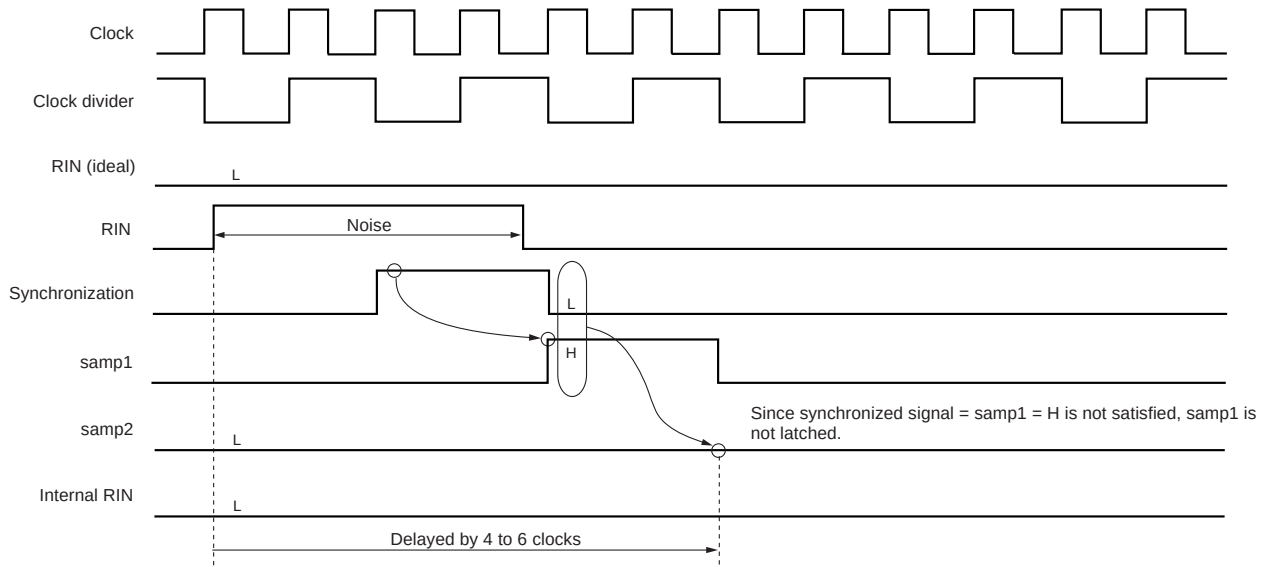


**Remark** Internal RIN is a signal after synchronization and sampling are performed three times, and is therefore later than the actual signal input from the outside to the RIN pin by 3 to 4 clocks.



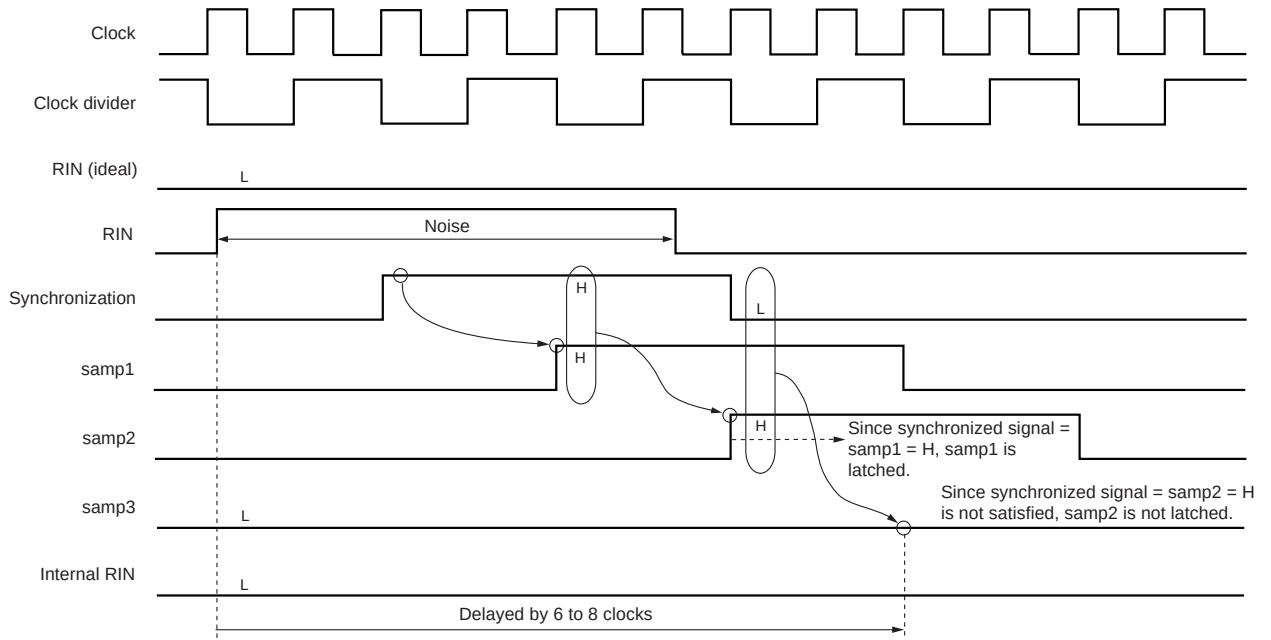
Figure 15-8. Noise Elimination Operation Example (2/2)

## (c) 2-clock noise elimination (PRSEN = 1, NCW = 0)



**Remark** Internal RIN is a signal after synchronization and sampling are performed twice, and is therefore later than the actual signal input from the outside to the RIN pin by 4 to 6 clocks.

## (d) 4-clock noise elimination (PRSEN = 1, NCW = 1)



**Remark** Internal RIN is a signal after synchronization and sampling are performed three times, and is therefore later than the actual signal input from the outside to the RIN pin by 6 to 8 clocks.

## CHAPTER 16 INTERRUPT FUNCTIONS

### 16.1 Interrupt Function Types

The following two types of interrupt functions are used.

#### (1) Non-maskable interrupt

This interrupt is acknowledged unconditionally. It does not undergo interrupt priority control and is given top priority over all other interrupt requests.

A standby release signal is generated.

One interrupt source from the watchdog timer is incorporated as a non-maskable interrupt.

#### (2) Maskable interrupt

This interrupt undergoes mask control. If two or more interrupts with the same priority are simultaneously generated, each interrupt has a predetermined priority as shown in Tables 16-1 and 16-2.

A standby release signal is generated.

For the  $\mu$ PD789488 and 78F9488, 5 external and 11 internal interrupt sources are incorporated as maskable interrupts.

For the  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489, 6 external and 16 internal interrupt sources are incorporated as maskable interrupts.

### 16.2 Interrupt Sources and Configuration

A total of 17 non-maskable and maskable interrupts are incorporated as interrupt sources for the  $\mu$ PD789488 and 78F9488, and a total of 23 for the  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 (**Tables 16-1** and **16-2**).

Table 16-1. Interrupt Sources ( $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488)

| Interrupt Type | Priority <sup>Note 1</sup> | Interrupt Source |                                                                                                                   | Internal/<br>External | Vector Table<br>Address | Basic<br>Configuration<br>Type <sup>Note 2</sup> |
|----------------|----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
|                |                            | Name             | Trigger                                                                                                           |                       |                         |                                                  |
| Non-maskable   | –                          | INTWDT           | Watchdog timer overflow (with watchdog timer mode 1 selected)                                                     | Internal              | 0004H                   | (A)                                              |
| Maskable       | 0                          | INTWDT           | Watchdog timer overflow (with interval timer mode selected)                                                       |                       |                         | (B)                                              |
|                | 1                          | INTP0            | Pin (INTP0) input edge detection                                                                                  | External              | 0006H                   | (C)                                              |
|                | 2                          | INTP1            | Pin (INTP1) input edge detection                                                                                  |                       | 0008H                   |                                                  |
|                | 3                          | INTP2            | Pin (INTP2) input edge detection                                                                                  |                       | 000AH                   |                                                  |
|                | 4                          | INTP3            | Pin (INTP3) input edge detection                                                                                  |                       | 000CH                   |                                                  |
|                | –                          | –                | –                                                                                                                 | –                     | 000EH                   | <b>Note 3</b>                                    |
|                | 5                          | INTSR20          | UART reception completion                                                                                         | Internal              | 0010H                   | (B)                                              |
|                |                            | INTCSI20         | End of 3-wire SIO transfer for serial interface 20                                                                |                       |                         |                                                  |
|                | 6                          | INTCSI10         | End of 3-wire SIO transfer for serial interface 1A0                                                               |                       | 0012H                   |                                                  |
|                | 7                          | INTST20          | End of UART transmission for serial interface 20                                                                  |                       | 0014H                   |                                                  |
|                | 8                          | INTWTI           | Reference time interval signal of watch timer (WT)                                                                |                       | 0016H                   |                                                  |
|                | 9                          | INTTM20          | Match between TM20 and CR20                                                                                       |                       | 0018H                   |                                                  |
|                | 10                         | INTTM50          | Match between TM50 and CR50                                                                                       |                       | 001AH                   |                                                  |
|                | 11                         | INTTM60          | Match between TM60 and CR60 (in 8-bit counter mode), and between TM50, TM60 and CR50, CR60 (in 16-bit timer mode) |                       | 001CH                   |                                                  |
|                | 12                         | INTTM61          | Match between TM61 and CR61                                                                                       |                       | 001EH                   |                                                  |
|                | 13                         | INTAD0           | End of A/D conversion                                                                                             |                       | 0020H                   |                                                  |
|                | 14                         | INTWT            | Watch timer (WT) overflow                                                                                         |                       | 0022H                   |                                                  |
|                | 15                         | INTKR00          | Key return signal detection                                                                                       | External              | 0024H                   | (C)                                              |
|                | –                          | –                | –                                                                                                                 | –                     | 0026H to 002CH          | <b>Note 3</b>                                    |

- Notes**
1. Priority is the priority order when more than one maskable interrupt request is generated at the same time. 0 is the highest priority and 15 is the lowest.
  2. Basic configuration types (A), (B), and (C) correspond to (A), (B), and (C) in Figure 16-1.
  3. There is no interrupt source that applies to 000EH and 0026H to 002CH of vector table address.

**Remark** Only one of the two watchdog timer interrupt (INTWDT) sources, non-maskable or maskable (internal), can be selected.

Table 16-2. Interrupt Sources ( $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489)

| Interrupt Type | Priority <sup>Note 1</sup> | Interrupt Source |                                                                                                                   | Internal/<br>External | Vector Table<br>Address | Basic<br>Configuration<br>Type <sup>Note 2</sup> |
|----------------|----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
|                |                            | Name             | Trigger                                                                                                           |                       |                         |                                                  |
| Non-maskable   | –                          | INTWDT           | Watchdog timer overflow (with watchdog timer mode 1 selected)                                                     | Internal              | 0004H                   | (A)                                              |
| Maskable       | 0                          | INTWDT           | Watchdog timer overflow (with interval timer mode selected)                                                       |                       |                         | (B)                                              |
|                | 1                          | INTP0            | Pin (INTP0) input edge detection                                                                                  | External              | 0006H                   | (C)                                              |
|                | 2                          | INTP1            | Pin (INTP1) input edge detection                                                                                  |                       | 0008H                   |                                                  |
|                | 3                          | INTP2            | Pin (INTP2) input edge detection                                                                                  |                       | 000AH                   |                                                  |
|                | 4                          | INTP3            | Pin (INTP3) input edge detection                                                                                  |                       | 000CH                   |                                                  |
|                | 5                          | INTRIN           | Remote controller edge detection                                                                                  | Internal              | 000EH                   | (B)                                              |
|                | 6                          | INTSR20          | UART reception completion                                                                                         |                       | 0010H                   |                                                  |
|                |                            | INTCSI20         | End of 3-wire SIO transfer for serial interface 20                                                                |                       |                         |                                                  |
|                | 7                          | INTCSI10         | End of 3-wire SIO transfer for serial interface 1A0                                                               |                       | 0012H                   |                                                  |
|                | 8                          | INTST20          | End of UART transmission for serial interface 20                                                                  |                       | 0014H                   |                                                  |
|                | 9                          | INTWTI           | Reference time interval signal of watch timer (WT)                                                                |                       | 0016H                   |                                                  |
|                | 10                         | INTTM20          | Match between TM20 and CR20                                                                                       |                       | 0018H                   |                                                  |
|                | 11                         | INTTM50          | Match between TM50 and CR50                                                                                       |                       | 001AH                   |                                                  |
|                | 12                         | INTTM60          | Match between TM60 and CR60 (in 8-bit counter mode), and between TM50, TM60 and CR50, CR60 (in 16-bit timer mode) |                       | 001CH                   |                                                  |
|                | 13                         | INTTM61          | Match between TM61 and CR61                                                                                       |                       | 001EH                   |                                                  |
|                | 14                         | INTAD0           | End of A/D conversion                                                                                             |                       | 0020H                   |                                                  |
|                | 15                         | INTWT            | Watch timer (WT) overflow                                                                                         |                       | 0022H                   |                                                  |
|                | 16                         | INTKR00          | Key return signal detection                                                                                       | External              | 0024H                   | (C)                                              |
|                | 17                         | INTRERR          | Remote controller reception error occurrence                                                                      | Internal              | 0026H                   | (B)                                              |
|                | 18                         | INTGP            | Remote controller guide pulse detection                                                                           |                       | 0028H                   |                                                  |
|                | 19                         | INTREND          | Remote controller data reception completion                                                                       |                       | 002AH                   |                                                  |
|                | 20                         | INTDFULL         | Read request for remote controller 8-bit shift data                                                               |                       | 002CH                   |                                                  |
|                | 21                         | INTKR01          | Key return signal detection                                                                                       | External              | 002EH                   | (C)                                              |

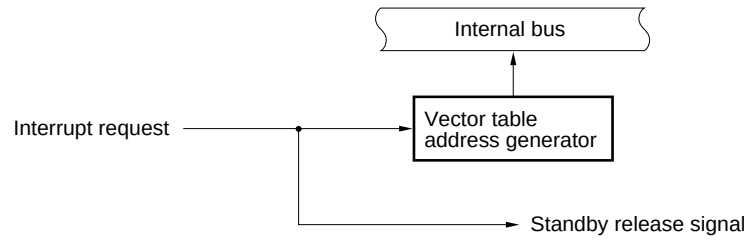
**Notes 1.** Priority is the priority order when more than one maskable interrupt request is generated at the same time. 0 is the highest priority and 21 is the lowest.

**2.** Basic configuration types (A), (B), and (C) correspond to (A), (B), and (C) in Figure 16-1.

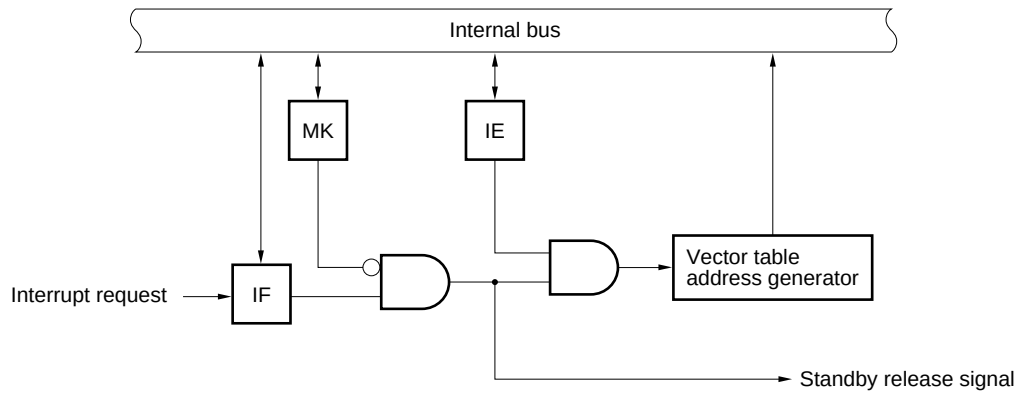
**Remark** Only one of the two watchdog timer interrupt (INTWDT) sources, non-maskable or maskable (internal), can be selected.

Figure 16-1. Basic Configuration of Interrupt Function

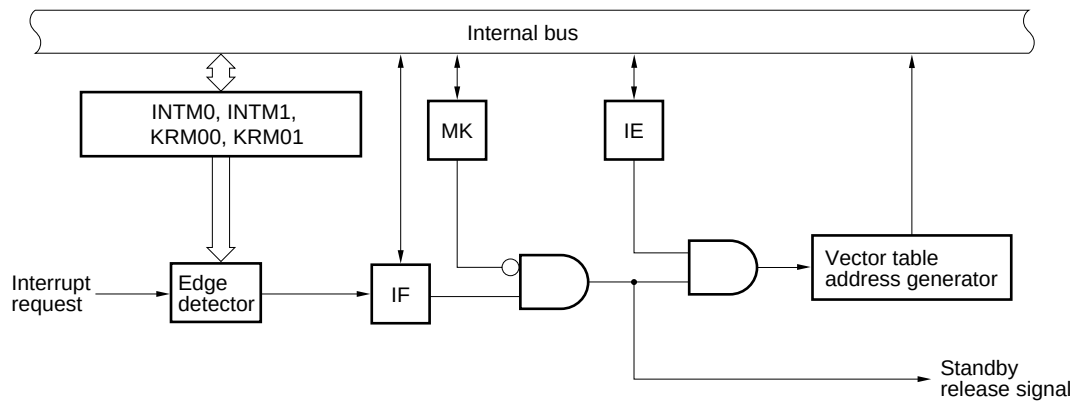
(A) Internal non-maskable interrupt



(B) Internal maskable interrupt



(C) External maskable interrupt



INTM0: External interrupt mode register 0  
 INTM1: External interrupt mode register 1  
 KRM00: Key return mode register 00  
 KRM01: Key return mode register 01  
 IF: Interrupt request flag  
 IE: Interrupt enable flag  
 MK: Interrupt mask flag

### 16.3 Registers Controlling Interrupt Function

The following five types of registers are used to control the interrupt functions.

- Interrupt request flag registers (IF0 to IF2)
- Interrupt mask flag registers (MK0 to MK2)
- External interrupt mode registers (INTM0 and INTM1)
- Program status word (PSW)
- Key return mode registers (KRM00, KRM01)

Table 16-3 gives a listing of interrupt request flag and interrupt mask flag names corresponding to interrupt requests.

**Table 16-3. Flags Corresponding to Interrupt Request Signal Names**

| Interrupt Request Signal Name | Interrupt Request Flag  | Interrupt Mask Flag     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| INTWDT                        | WDTIF                   | WDTMK                   |
| INTP0                         | PIF0                    | PMK0                    |
| INTP1                         | PIF1                    | PMK1                    |
| INTP2                         | PIF2                    | PMK2                    |
| INTP3                         | PIF3                    | PMK3                    |
| INTRIN <sup>Note</sup>        | RINIF <sup>Note</sup>   | RINMK <sup>Note</sup>   |
| INTSR20/INTCSI20              | SRIF20                  | SRMK20                  |
| INTCSI10                      | CSIF10                  | CSIMK10                 |
| INTST20                       | STIF20                  | STMK20                  |
| INTWTI                        | WTIIF                   | WTIMK                   |
| INTTM20                       | TMIF20                  | TMMK20                  |
| INTTM50                       | TMIF50                  | TMMK50                  |
| INTTM60                       | TMIF60                  | TMMK60                  |
| INTTM61                       | TMIF61                  | TMMK61                  |
| INTAD0                        | ADIF0                   | ADMK0                   |
| INTWT                         | WTIF                    | WTMK                    |
| INTKR00                       | KRIF00                  | KRMK00                  |
| INTRERR <sup>Note</sup>       | RERRIF <sup>Note</sup>  | RERRMK <sup>Note</sup>  |
| INTGP <sup>Note</sup>         | GPIF <sup>Note</sup>    | GPMK <sup>Note</sup>    |
| INTREND <sup>Note</sup>       | RENDIF <sup>Note</sup>  | RENDMK <sup>Note</sup>  |
| INTDFULL <sup>Note</sup>      | DFULLIF <sup>Note</sup> | DFULLMK <sup>Note</sup> |
| INTKR01 <sup>Note</sup>       | KRIF01 <sup>Note</sup>  | KRMK01 <sup>Note</sup>  |

**Note**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

**(1) Interrupt request flag registers (IF0 to IF2)**

An interrupt request flag is set (1) when the corresponding interrupt request is generated, or when an instruction is executed. It is cleared (0) when the interrupt request is acknowledged, when the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal is input, or when an instruction is executed.

IF0 to IF2 are set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets these registers to 00H.

**Figure 16-2. Format of Interrupt Request Flag Registers**

| Symbol | <7>    | <6>    | <5>                   | <4>  | <3>  | <2>  | <1>  | <0>   | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|--------|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| IF0    | CSIF10 | SRIF20 | RINIF <sup>Note</sup> | PIF3 | PIF2 | PIF1 | PIF0 | WDTIF | FFE0H   | 00H         | R/W |

| Symbol | <7>  | <6>   | <5>    | <4>    | <3>    | <2>    | <1>   | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| IF1    | WTIF | ADIF0 | TMIF61 | TMIF60 | TMIF50 | TMIF20 | WTIIF | STIF20 | FFE1H   | 00H         | R/W |

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | <5>                                 | <4>                                  | <3>                    | <2>                  | <1>                    | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| IF2    | 0 | 0 | KRIF01 <sup>Note</sup> <sub>e</sub> | DFULLIF <sup>Note</sup> <sub>e</sub> | RENDIF <sup>Note</sup> | GPIF <sup>Note</sup> | RERRIF <sup>Note</sup> | KRIF00 | FFE2H   | 00H         | R/W |

| ×IF× | Interrupt request flag                                                 |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | No interrupt request signal generated                                  |
| 1    | An interrupt request signal is generated and an interrupt request made |

**Note**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

- Cautions**
1. The WDTIF flag can be read/written only when the watchdog timer is being used as an interval timer. It must be cleared to 0 if the watchdog timer is used in watchdog timer mode 1 or 2.
  2. Because P30 to P33 function alternately as external interrupts, when the output level changes after the output mode of the port function is specified, the interrupt request flag will be inadvertently set. Therefore, be sure to preset the interrupt mask flag (PMK0 to PMK3) before using the port in output mode.

**(2) Interrupt mask flag registers (MK0 to MK2)**

Interrupt mask flags are used to enable and disable the corresponding maskable interrupts.

MK0 to MK2 are set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets these registers to FFH.

**Figure 16-3. Format of Interrupt Mask Flag Registers**

| Symbol | <7>     | <6>    | <5>                   | <4>  | <3>  | <2>  | <1>  | <0>   | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---------|--------|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| MK0    | CSIMK10 | SRMK20 | RINMK <sup>Note</sup> | PMK3 | PMK2 | PMK1 | PMK0 | WDTMK | FFE4H   | FFH         | R/W |

| Symbol | <7>  | <6>   | <5>    | <4>    | <3>    | <2>    | <1>   | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| MK1    | WTMK | ADMK0 | TMMK61 | TMMK60 | TMMK50 | TMMK20 | WTIMK | STMK20 | FFE5H   | FFH         | R/W |

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | <5>                    | <4>                         | <3>                        | <2>                  | <1>                        | <0>    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| MK2    | 1 | 1 | KRMK01 <sup>Note</sup> | DFULLMK <sup>Not</sup><br>• | RENDMK <sup>Not</sup><br>• | GPMK <sup>Note</sup> | RERRMK <sup>Not</sup><br>• | KRMK00 | FFE6H   | FFH         | R/W |

| xxMKx | Interrupt servicing control  |
|-------|------------------------------|
| 0     | Interrupt servicing enabled  |
| 1     | Interrupt servicing disabled |

**Note**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

- Cautions**
1. When the watchdog timer is being used in watchdog timer mode 1 or 2, any attempt to read the WDTMK flag results in an undefined value being detected.
  2. Because P30 to P33 function alternately as external interrupts, when the output level changes after the output mode of the port function is specified, the interrupt request flag will be inadvertently set. Therefore, be sure to preset the interrupt mask flag (PMK0 to PMK3) before using the port in output mode.



**(3) External interrupt mode registers (INTM0, INTM1)**

These registers are used to specify the valid edge for INTP0 to INTP3.

INTM0 and INTM1 are set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets these registers to 00H.

**Figure 16-4. Format of External Interrupt Mode Registers**

| Symbol | 7    | 6    | 5    | 4    | 3    | 2    | 1 | 0 | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|------|------|------|------|------|------|---|---|---------|-------------|-----|
| INTM0  | ES21 | ES20 | ES11 | ES10 | ES01 | ES00 | 0 | 0 | FFECH   | 00H         | R/W |

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1    | 0    | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|---|------|------|---------|-------------|-----|
| INTM1  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | ES31 | ES30 | FFEDH   | 00H         | R/W |

| ESn1 | ESn0 | INTPn valid edge selection    |
|------|------|-------------------------------|
| 0    | 0    | Falling edge                  |
| 0    | 1    | Rising edge                   |
| 1    | 0    | Setting prohibited            |
| 1    | 1    | Both rising and falling edges |

**Remark** n = 0, 1, 2, and 3

- Cautions**
1. Always set bits 0 and 1 of INTM0, and 2 to 7 of INTM1 to 0.
  2. Before setting INTM0 and INTM1, set (1) the interrupt mask flags (PMK0 to PMK3) to disable interrupts.  
To enable interrupts, clear (0) the interrupt request flags (PIF0 to PIF3), then clear (0) the interrupt mask flags (PMK0 to PMK3).

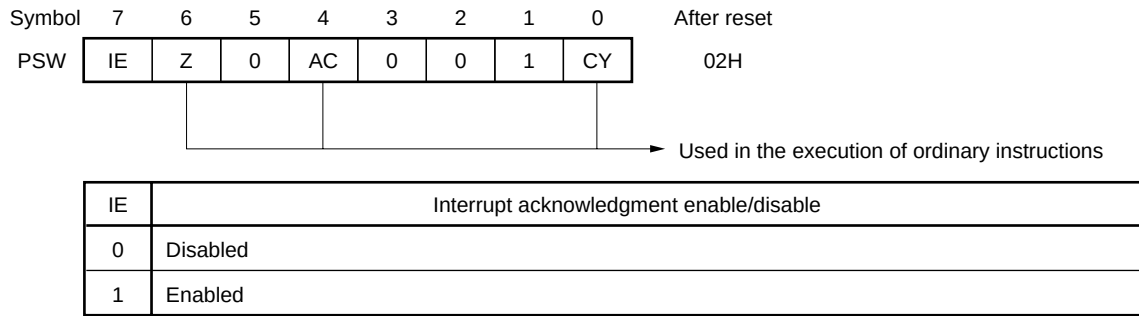
**(4) Program status word (PSW)**

The program status word is used to hold the instruction execution results and the current status of the interrupt requests. The IE flag, used to enable and disable maskable interrupts, is mapped to the PSW.

The PSW can be read and written in 8-bit units, and can be manipulated by using bit manipulation instructions and dedicated instructions (EI and DI). When a vectored interrupt is acknowledged, the PSW is automatically saved to the stack, and the IE flag is reset (0).

RESET input sets the PSW to 02H.

**Figure 16-5. Program Status Word Configuration**



(5) **Key return mode register 00 (KRM00)**

This register is used to set the pin that is to detect the key return signal (rising edge of port 0).

KRM00 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to 00H.

**Figure 16-6. Format of Key Return Mode Register 00**

| Symbol | 7      | 6      | 5      | 4      | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0      | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---|---|---|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| KRM00  | KRM007 | KRM006 | KRM005 | KRM004 | 0 | 0 | 0 | KRM000 | FFF5H   | 00H         | R/W |

| KRM000 | Control of key return signal detection                         |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | Key return signal not detected                                 |
| 1      | Key return signal detected (P00 to P03 falling edge detection) |

| KRM00n | Control of key return signal detection                  |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | Key return signal not detected                          |
| 1      | Key return signal detected (P0n falling edge detection) |

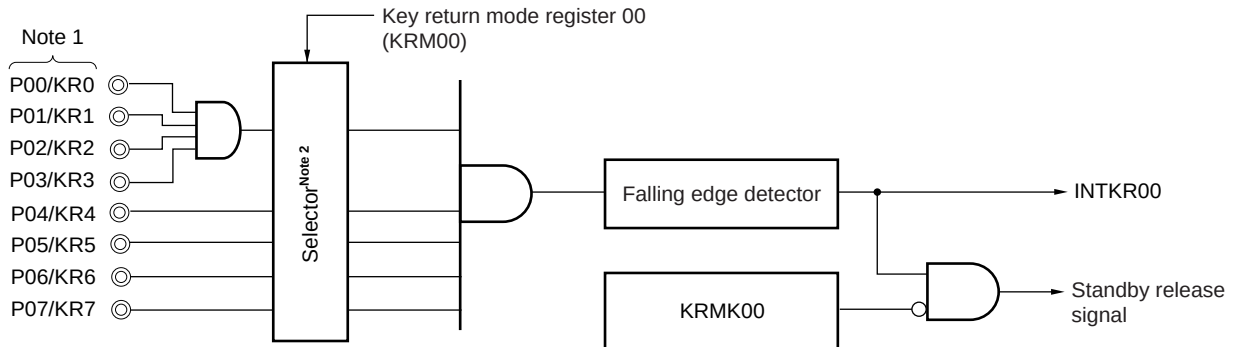
**Remark** n = 4 to 7

**Cautions** 1. Always set bits 1 to 3 to 0.

2. Before setting KRM00, set (1) bit 0 (KRMK00) of MK2 to disable interrupts. To enable interrupts, clear (0) KRMK00 after clearing (0) bit 0 (KRIF00) of IF2.

3. On-chip pull-up resistors are not automatically connected in input mode even when key return signal detection is specified. Therefore, when detecting the key return signal, connect the pull-up resistor of the corresponding bit using pull-up resistor option register B0 (PUB0). Although these resistors are disconnected when the mode changes to output, key return signal detection continues unchanged.

**Figure 16-7. Block Diagram of Falling Edge Detector**



**Notes** 1. The pin names one P00/KR00 to P07/KR07 in the  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489.

2. For selecting the pin to be used as falling edge input.

**(6) Key return mode register 01 (KRM01) ( $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 only)**

This register is used to set the pin that is to detect the key return signal (falling edge of port 6).

KRM01 is set with a 1-bit or 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

RESET input sets this register to 00H.

**Figure 16-8. Format of Key Return Mode Register 01**

| Symbol | 7      | 6      | 5      | 4      | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0      | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---|---|---|--------|---------|-------------|-----|
| KRM01  | KRM017 | KRM016 | KRM015 | KRM014 | 0 | 0 | 0 | KRM010 | FFF4H   | 00H         | R/W |

| KRM010 | Control of key return signal detection                         |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | Key return signal not detected                                 |
| 1      | Key return signal detected (P60 to P63 falling edge detection) |

| KRM01n | Control of key return signal detection                  |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 0      | Key return signal not detected                          |
| 1      | Key return signal detected (P6n falling edge detection) |

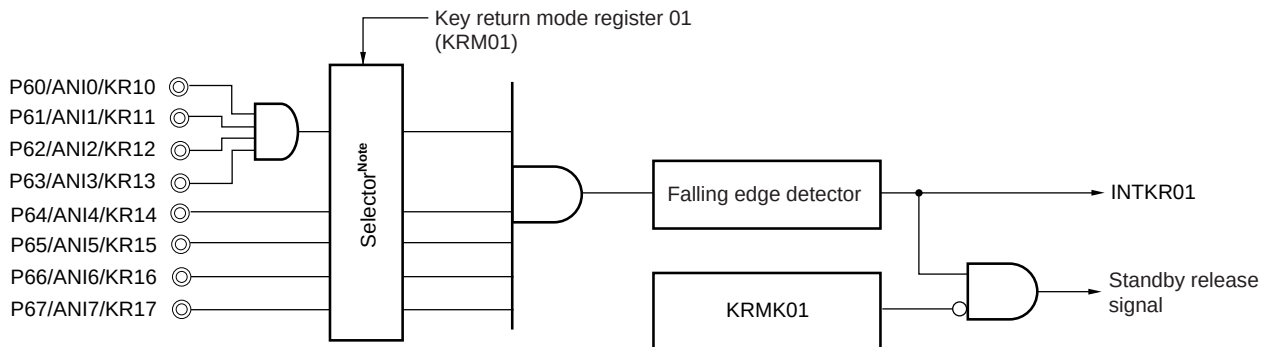
**Remark** n = 4 to 7

**Cautions** 1. Always set bits 1 to 3 to 0.

2. Before setting KRM01, set bit 5 of MK2 (KRMK01 = 1) to disable interrupts. To enable interrupts, clear KRMK01 after clearing bit 5 of IF2 (KRIF01 = 0)

3. If any of the pins specified for key return signal detection is low level, the key return signal cannot be detected even if a falling edge is generated at other key return pins.

4. When even one of the P60/ANI0/KR10 to P67/ANI7/KR17 pins is used as an A/D input, set KRM010 and KRM014 to KRM017 to 0.

**Figure 16-9. Block Diagram of Falling Edge Detector**

**Note** For selecting the pin to be used as falling edge input

## 16.4 Interrupt Servicing Operation

### 16.4.1 Non-maskable interrupt request acknowledgment operation

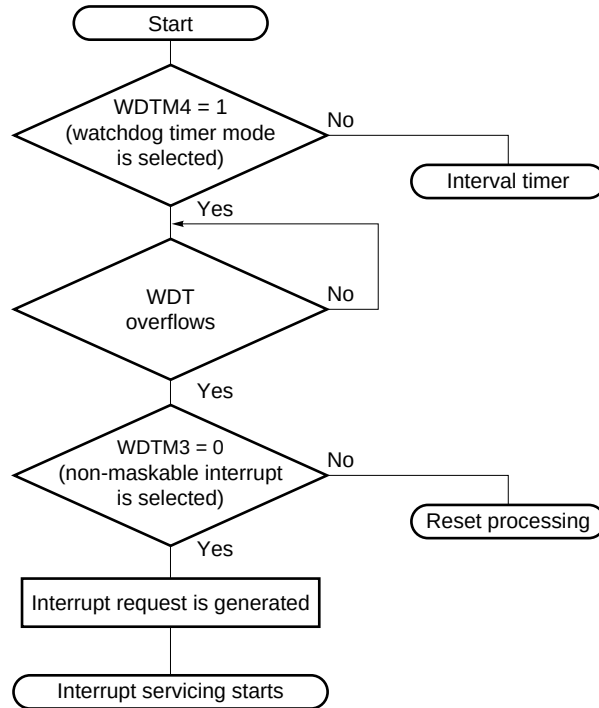
The non-maskable interrupt request is unconditionally acknowledged even when interrupts are disabled. It is not subject to interrupt priority control and takes precedence over all other interrupts.

When the non-maskable interrupt request is acknowledged, the PSW and PC are saved to the stack in that order, the IE flag is reset to 0, the contents of the vector table are loaded to the PC, and then program execution branches.

Figure 16-10 shows the flow from non-maskable interrupt request generation to acknowledgment, Figure 16-11 shows the timing of non-maskable interrupt acknowledgment, and Figure 16-12 shows the acknowledgment operation when a number of non-maskable interrupts are generated.

**Caution** During non-maskable interrupt service program execution, do not input another non-maskable interrupt request; if it is input, the service program will be interrupted and the new non-maskable interrupt request will be acknowledged.

**Figure 16-10. Flow from Generation of Non-Maskable Interrupt Request to Acknowledgment**



WDTM: Watchdog timer mode register

WDT: Watchdog timer

**Figure 16-11. Timing of Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Acknowledgment**

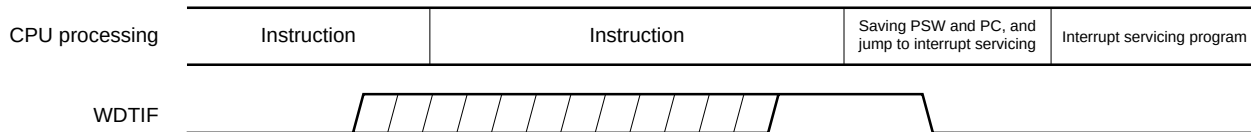
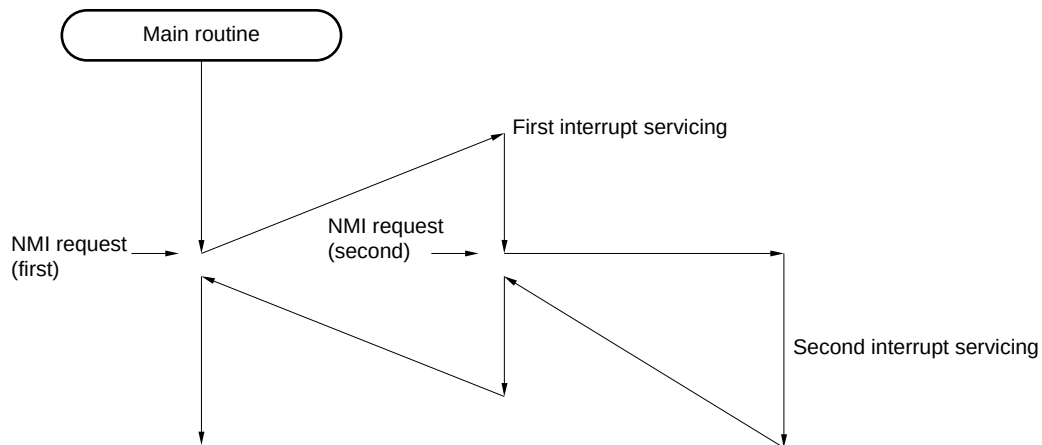


**Figure 16-12. Non-Maskable Interrupt Request Acknowledgment**



### 16.4.2 Maskable interrupt request acknowledgment operation

A maskable interrupt request can be acknowledged when the interrupt request flag is set to 1 and the corresponding interrupt mask flag is cleared to 0. A vectored interrupt is acknowledged in the interrupt enabled status (when the IE flag is set to 1).

The time required to start the interrupt servicing after a maskable interrupt request has been generated is shown in Table 16-4.

Refer to Figures 16-14 and 16-15 for the timing of interrupt request acknowledgement.

**Table 16-4. Time from Generation of Maskable Interrupt Request to Servicing**

| Minimum Time | Maximum Time <sup>Note</sup> |
|--------------|------------------------------|
| 9 clocks     | 19 clocks                    |

**Note** The wait time is maximum when an interrupt request is generated immediately before the BT or BF instruction.

**Remark** 1 clock:  $\frac{1}{f_{\text{CPU}}}$  ( $f_{\text{CPU}}$ : CPU clock)

When two or more maskable interrupt requests are generated at the same time, they are acknowledged starting from the one assigned the highest priority by the priority specification flag.

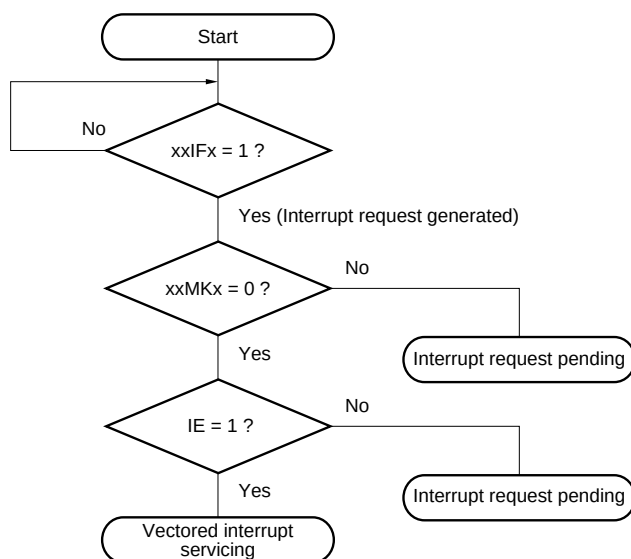
A pending interrupt is acknowledged when the status in which it can be acknowledged is set.

Figure 16-13 shows the algorithm of interrupt request acknowledgment.

When a maskable interrupt request is acknowledged, the PSW and PC are saved to the stack in that order, the IE flag is reset to 0, the data in the vector table determined for each interrupt request is loaded to the PC, and execution branches.

To return from interrupt servicing, use the RETI instruction.

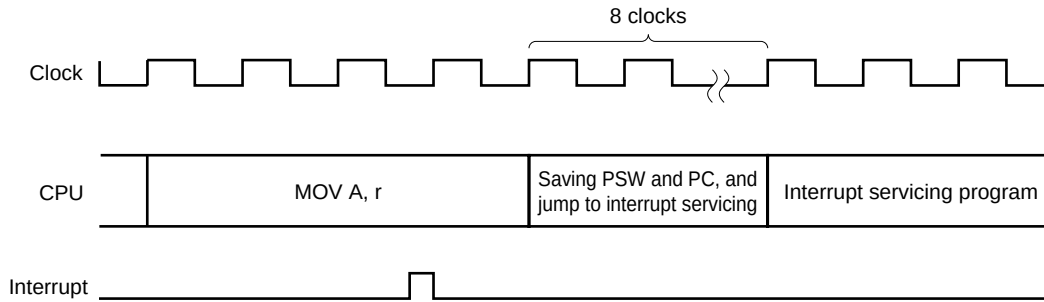
**Figure 16-13. Interrupt Request Acknowledgment Program Algorithm**



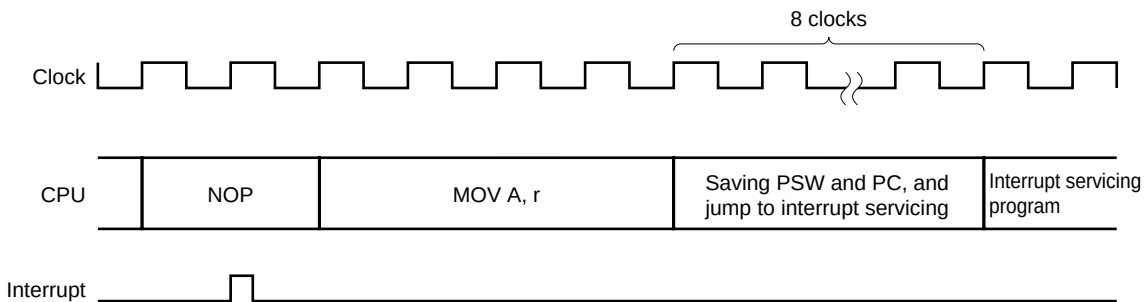
xxIFx: Interrupt request flag

xxMKx: Interrupt mask flag

IE: Flag to control maskable interrupt request acknowledgment (1 = enable, 0 = disable)

**Figure 16-14. Interrupt Request Acknowledgment Timing (Example: MOV A, r)**

If the interrupt request has generated an interrupt request flag (xxIFx) by the time the instruction clocks under execution,  $n$  clocks ( $n = 4$  to  $10$ ), are  $n - 1$ , interrupt request acknowledgment processing will start following the completion of the instruction under execution. Figure 16-14 shows an example using the 8-bit data transfer instruction MOV A, r. Because this instruction is executed in 4 clocks, if an interrupt request is generated between the start of execution and the 3rd clock, interrupt request acknowledgment processing will take place following the completion of MOV A, r.

**Figure 16-15. Interrupt Request Acknowledgment Timing  
(When Interrupt Request Flag Is Generated in Final Clock Under Execution)**

If the interrupt request flag (xxIFx) is generated in the final clock of the instruction, interrupt request acknowledgment processing will begin after execution of the next instruction is complete.

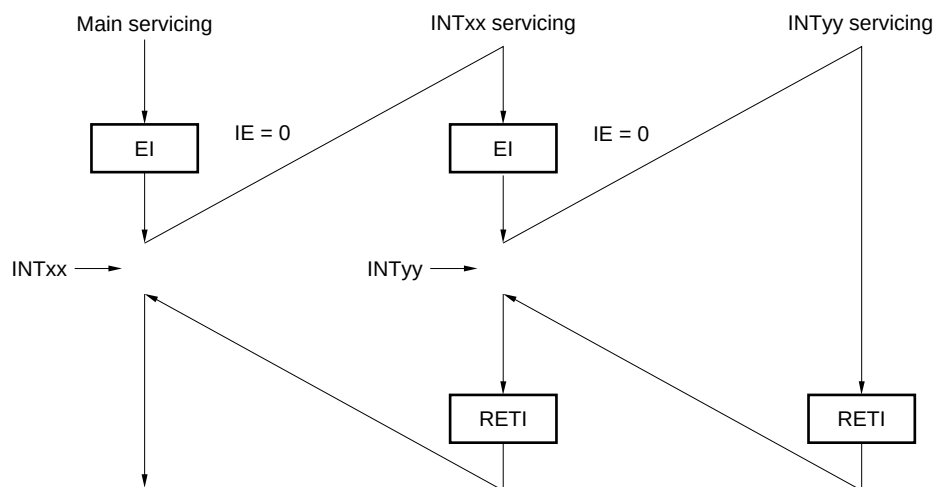
Figure 16-15 shows an example whereby an interrupt request was generated in the 2nd clock of NOP (a 2-clock instruction). In this case, the interrupt request will be processed after execution of MOV A, r, which follows NOP, is complete.

**Caution** When interrupt request flag registers (IF0 to IF2), or interrupt mask flag registers (MK0 to MK2) are being accessed, interrupt requests will be held pending.

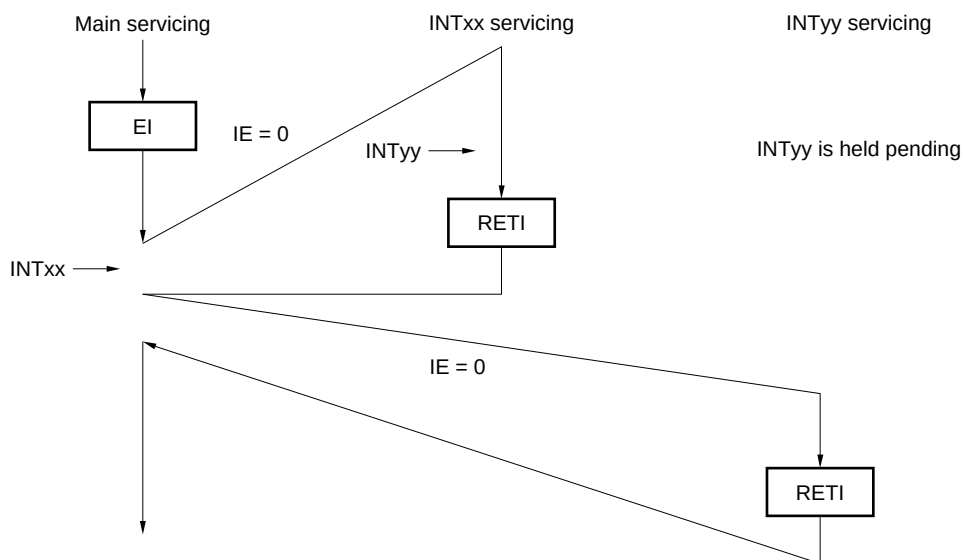
### 16.4.3 Multiple interrupt servicing

Multiple interrupt servicing, in which an interrupt request is acknowledged while another interrupt request being serviced, can be executed using the priority order. If multiple interrupts are generated at the same time, they are serviced in the order according to the priority assigned to each interrupt request in advance (refer to **Tables 16-1** and **16-2**).



**Figure 16-16. Example of Multiple Interrupt Servicing****Example 1. Acknowledging multiple interrupts**

The interrupt request INTyy is acknowledged during the servicing of interrupt INTxx and multiple interrupts are performed. Before each interrupt request is acknowledged, the EI instruction is issued and the interrupt request is enabled.

**Example 2. Multiple interrupt servicing is not performed because interrupts are disabled**

Because interrupt requests are disabled (the EI instruction has not been issued) in the INTxx interrupt servicing, the interrupt request INTyy is not acknowledged and multiple interrupt servicing is not performed. INTyy is held pending and is acknowledged after INTxx servicing is completed.

IE = 0: Interrupt requests disabled

#### 16.4.4 Putting interrupt requests on hold

If an interrupt request (such as a maskable, non-maskable, or external interrupt) is generated when a certain type of instruction is being executed, the interrupt request will not be acknowledged until the instruction is completed. Such instructions (interrupt request pending instructions) are as follows.

- Instructions that manipulate interrupt request flag registers (IF0 to IF2)
- Instructions that manipulate interrupt mask flag registers (MK0 to MK2)

## CHAPTER 17 STANDBY FUNCTION

### 17.1 Standby Function and Configuration

#### 17.1.1 Standby function

The standby function is used to reduce the power consumption of the system and can be effected in the following two modes.

**(1) HALT mode**

This mode is set when the HALT instruction is executed. The HALT mode stops the operation clock of the CPU. The system clock oscillator continues oscillating. This mode does not reduce the power consumption as much as the STOP mode, but is useful for resuming processing immediately when an interrupt request is generated, or for intermittent operations.

**(2) STOP mode**

This mode is set when the STOP instruction is executed. The STOP mode stops the main system clock oscillator and stops the entire system. The power consumption of the CPU can be substantially reduced in this mode.

The data memory can be retained at a low voltage ( $V_{DD} = 1.8\text{ V}$ ). Therefore, this mode is useful for retaining the contents of the data memory at an extremely low current.

The STOP mode can be released by an interrupt request, so that this mode can be used for intermittent operation. However, some time is required until the system clock oscillator stabilizes after the STOP mode has been released. If processing must be resumed immediately by using an interrupt request, therefore, use the HALT mode.

In both modes, the previous contents of the registers, flags, and data memory before setting the standby mode are all retained. In addition, the statuses of the output latches of the I/O ports and output buffers are also retained.

**Caution** To set the STOP mode, be sure to stop the operations of the peripheral hardware, and then execute the STOP instruction.

### 17.1.2 Register controlling standby function

The wait time after the STOP mode is released upon interrupt request generation until oscillation stabilizes is controlled by the oscillation stabilization time selection register (OSTS).

OSTS is set with an 8-bit memory manipulation instruction.

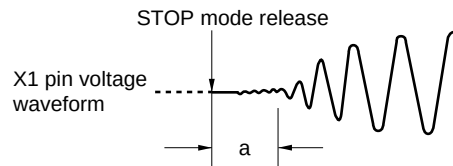
$\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input sets OSTS to 04H. However, it takes  $2^{15}/f_x$ , not  $2^{17}/f_x$ , to stabilize oscillation after  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

**Figure 17-1. Format of Oscillation Stabilization Time Selection Register**

| Symbol | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2     | 1     | 0     | Address | After reset | R/W |
|--------|---|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|-----|
| OSTS   | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | OSTS2 | OSTS1 | OSTS0 | FFFAH   | 04H         | R/W |

| OSTS2            | OSTS1 | OSTS0 | Oscillation stabilization time selection |
|------------------|-------|-------|------------------------------------------|
| 0                | 0     | 0     | $2^{12}/f_x$ (819 $\mu\text{s}$ )        |
| 0                | 1     | 0     | $2^{15}/f_x$ (6.55 ms)                   |
| 1                | 0     | 0     | $2^{17}/f_x$ (26.2 ms)                   |
| Other than above |       |       | Setting prohibited                       |

**Caution** The wait time after the STOP mode is released does not include the time from STOP mode release to clock oscillation start (“a” in the figure below), regardless of whether STOP mode is released by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input or by interrupt generation.



- Remarks**
1.  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency
  2. The parenthesized values apply to operation at  $f_x = 5.0$  MHz.

## 17.2 Standby Function Operation

### 17.2.1 HALT mode

#### (1) HALT mode

The HALT mode is set by executing the HALT instruction.

The operation statuses in the HALT mode are shown in the following table.

**Table 17-1. Operation Statuses in HALT Mode**

| Item                                         | HALT Mode Operation Status During Main System Clock Operation                                          |                                | HALT Mode Operation Status During Subsystem Clock Operation |                                |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|                                              | Subsystem Clock Operating                                                                              | Subsystem Clock Stopped        | Main System Clock Operating                                 | Main System Clock Stopped      |
| Clock generator                              | Oscillation enabled for both main system clock and subsystem clock, but clock supply to CPU is stopped |                                |                                                             |                                |
| Subsystem clock ×4 multiplication circuit    | Operation stopped                                                                                      |                                |                                                             |                                |
| CPU                                          | Operation stopped                                                                                      |                                |                                                             |                                |
| Ports (output latches)                       | Status before HALT mode setting retained                                                               |                                |                                                             |                                |
| 16-bit timer 20                              | Operable                                                                                               |                                |                                                             | Operable <sup>Note 1</sup>     |
| 8-bit timer 50                               | Operable                                                                                               |                                |                                                             | Operable <sup>Note 2</sup>     |
| 8-bit timer 60                               | Operable                                                                                               |                                |                                                             | Operable <sup>Note 3</sup>     |
| 8-bit timer 61                               | Operable                                                                                               |                                |                                                             | Operable <sup>Note 3</sup>     |
| Watch timer                                  | Operable                                                                                               | Operable <sup>Note 4</sup>     | Operable                                                    | Operable <sup>Note 5</sup>     |
| Watchdog timer                               | Operable                                                                                               |                                | Operation stopped                                           |                                |
| Key return circuit                           | Operable                                                                                               |                                |                                                             |                                |
| Serial interface 20                          | Operable                                                                                               |                                |                                                             | Operable <sup>Note 6</sup>     |
| Serial interface 1A0                         | Operable                                                                                               |                                |                                                             | Operable <sup>Note 6</sup>     |
| LCD controller/driver                        | Operable <sup>Note 7</sup>                                                                             | Operable <sup>Notes 4, 7</sup> | Operable <sup>Note 7</sup>                                  | Operable <sup>Notes 5, 7</sup> |
| A/D converter                                | Operation stopped                                                                                      |                                |                                                             |                                |
| Multiplier                                   | Operation stopped                                                                                      |                                |                                                             |                                |
| Remote controller receiver <sup>Note 8</sup> | Operable                                                                                               | Operable <sup>Note 4</sup>     | Operable                                                    | Operable <sup>Note 5</sup>     |
| External interrupts                          | Operable <sup>Note 9</sup>                                                                             |                                |                                                             |                                |

**Notes** 1. Operation is enabled when the 24-bit counter mode is selected.

2. Operation is enabled when either the subsystem clock or the input signal from timer 60 (when timer 60 is operable) is selected as the count clock.

3. Operation is enabled only when the external input clock is selected as the count clock.

4. Operation is enabled when the main system clock is selected.

5. Operation is enabled when the subsystem clock is selected.

6. Operation is enabled only when an external clock is selected.

7. The HALT instruction can be set after display instruction execution.

8.  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only.

9. Operation is enabled only for a maskable interrupt that is not masked.

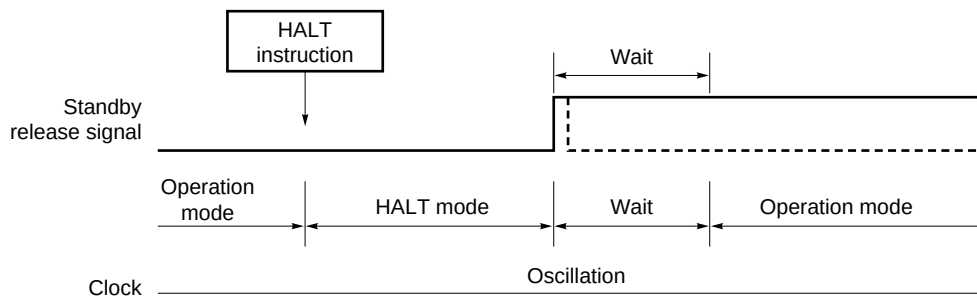
**(2) Releasing HALT mode**

The HALT mode can be released by the following three sources.

**(a) Release by unmasked interrupt request**

The HALT mode is released by an unmasked interrupt request. In this case, if interrupts are enabled to be acknowledged, vectored interrupt servicing is performed. If interrupts are disabled, the instruction at the next address is executed.

**Figure 17-2. Releasing HALT Mode by Interrupt**



**Remarks 1.** The broken lines indicate the case where the interrupt request that released the standby mode is acknowledged.

**2.** The wait time is as follows:

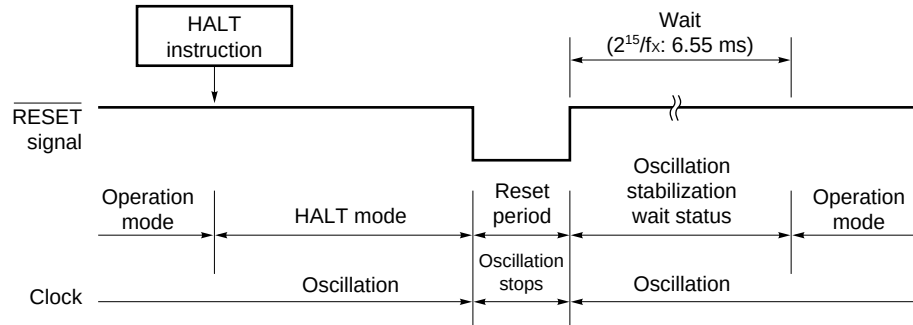
- When vectored interrupt servicing is performed: 9 to 10 clocks
- When vectored interrupt servicing is not performed: 1 to 2 clocks

**(b) Release by non-maskable interrupt request**

The HALT mode is released regardless of whether interrupts are enabled or disabled, and vectored interrupt servicing is performed.

**(c) Release by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input**

When the HALT mode is released by the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal, execution branches to the reset vector address in the same manner as the ordinary reset operation, and program execution is started.

**Figure 17-3. Releasing HALT Mode by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  Input**

**Remark**  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

**Table 17-2. Operation After Releasing HALT Mode**

| Releasing Source                | MKxx | IE | Operation                         |
|---------------------------------|------|----|-----------------------------------|
| Maskable interrupt request      | 0    | 0  | Executes next address instruction |
|                                 | 0    | 1  | Executes interrupt servicing      |
|                                 | 1    | x  | Retains HALT mode                 |
| Non-maskable interrupt request  | —    | x  | Executes interrupt servicing      |
| $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input | —    | —  | Reset processing                  |

x: don't care

**Caution** Some constraints apply when the flash version ( $\mu\text{PD78F9488}$  and  $78\text{F9489}$ ) is used in the HALT mode with the subclock multiplied by 4 as the CPU clock. For details, refer to 19.2 Cautions on  $\mu\text{PD78F9488}$  and  $78\text{F9489}$ .

## 17.2.2 STOP mode

## (1) Setting and operation status of STOP mode

The STOP mode is set by executing the STOP instruction.

**Caution** Because the standby mode can be released by an interrupt request signal, the standby mode is released as soon as it is set if there is an interrupt source whose interrupt request flag is set and interrupt mask flag is reset. When the STOP mode is set, therefore, the HALT mode is set immediately after the STOP instruction has been executed, the wait time set by the oscillation stabilization time selection register (OSTS) elapses, and then the operation mode is set.

The operation statuses in the STOP mode are shown in the following table.

Table 17-3. Operation Statuses in STOP Mode

| Item                                         | STOP Mode Operation Status During Main System Clock Operation |                            |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
|                                              | Subsystem Clock Operating                                     | Subsystem Clock Stopped    |
| Main system clock                            | Oscillation stopped                                           |                            |
| Subsystem clock ×4 multiplication circuit    | Operation stopped                                             |                            |
| CPU                                          | Operation stopped                                             |                            |
| Ports (output latches)                       | Status before STOP mode setting retained                      |                            |
| 16-bit timer 20                              | Operation stopped                                             |                            |
| 8-bit timer 50                               | Operable <sup>Note 1</sup>                                    | Operable <sup>Note 2</sup> |
| 8-bit timer 60                               | Operable <sup>Note 3</sup>                                    |                            |
| 8-bit timer 61                               | Operable <sup>Note 3</sup>                                    |                            |
| Watch timer                                  | Operable <sup>Note 4</sup>                                    | Operation stopped          |
| Watchdog timer                               | Operation stopped                                             |                            |
| Key return circuit                           | Operable                                                      |                            |
| Serial interface 20                          | Operable <sup>Note 5</sup>                                    |                            |
| Serial interface 1A0                         | Operable <sup>Note 5</sup>                                    |                            |
| LCD controller/driver                        | Operable <sup>Note 4</sup>                                    | Operation stopped          |
| A/D converter                                | Operation stopped                                             |                            |
| Multiplier                                   | Operation stopped                                             |                            |
| Remote controller receiver <sup>Note 6</sup> | Operable <sup>Note 4</sup>                                    | Operation stopped          |
| External interrupts                          | Operable <sup>Note 7</sup>                                    |                            |

**Notes** 1. Operation is enabled when either the subsystem clock or the input signal from the timer 60 (when timer 60 is operable) is selected as the count clock.

2. Operation is enabled when the input signal from timer 60 (when timer 60 is operable) is selected as the count clock.

3. Operation is enabled when the external input clock is selected as the count clock.

4. Operation is enabled when the subsystem clock is selected.

5. Operation is enabled only for a maskable interrupt that is not masked.

6.  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

7. Operation is enabled only for a maskable interrupt that is not masked.



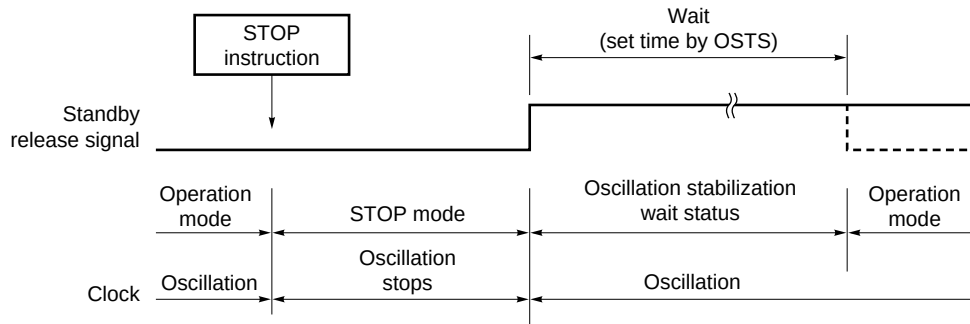
**(2) Releasing STOP mode**

The STOP mode can be released by the following two sources.

**(a) Release by unmasked interrupt request**

The STOP mode can be released by an unmasked interrupt request. In this case, if interrupts are enabled to be acknowledged, vectored interrupt servicing is performed, after the oscillation stabilization time has elapsed. If interrupts are disabled, the instruction at the next address is executed.

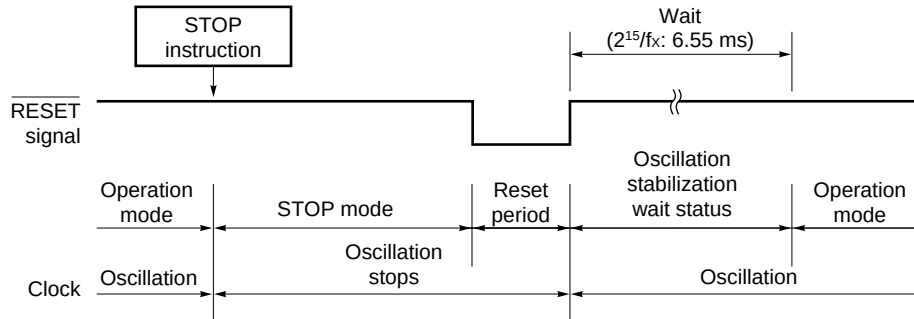
**Figure 17-4. Releasing STOP Mode by Interrupt**



**Remark** The broken lines indicate the case where the interrupt request that released the standby mode is acknowledged.

**(b) Release by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input**

When the STOP mode is released by the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal, the reset operation is performed after the oscillation stabilization time has elapsed.

**Figure 17-5. Releasing STOP Mode by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  Input**

**Remark**  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency

**Table 17-4. Operation After Releasing STOP Mode**

| Releasing Source                | MKxx | IE | Operation                         |
|---------------------------------|------|----|-----------------------------------|
| Maskable interrupt request      | 0    | 0  | Executes next address instruction |
|                                 | 0    | 1  | Executes interrupt servicing      |
|                                 | 1    | x  | Retains STOP mode                 |
| $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ input | —    | —  | Reset processing                  |

x: don't care

## CHAPTER 18 RESET FUNCTION

The following two operations are available to generate reset signals.

- (1) External reset input by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin
- (2) Internal reset by watchdog timer program loop time detection

External and internal reset have no functional differences. In both cases, program execution starts at the address at 0000H and 0001H by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

When a low level is input to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin or the watchdog timer overflows, a reset is applied and each hardware is set to the status shown in Table 18-1. Each pin is high impedance during reset input or during oscillation stabilization time just after reset release.

When a high level is input to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin, the reset is released and program execution is started after the oscillation stabilization time ( $2^{15}/f_x$ ) has elapsed. The reset applied by the watchdog timer overflow is automatically released after reset, and program execution is started after the oscillation stabilization time ( $2^{15}/f_x$ ) has elapsed (see Figures 18-2 to 18-4.)

- Cautions**
1. For an external reset, input a low level for 10  $\mu\text{s}$  or more to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin.
  2. When the STOP mode is released by reset, the STOP mode contents are held during reset input. However, the port pins become high impedance.

Figure 18-1. Block Diagram of Reset Function

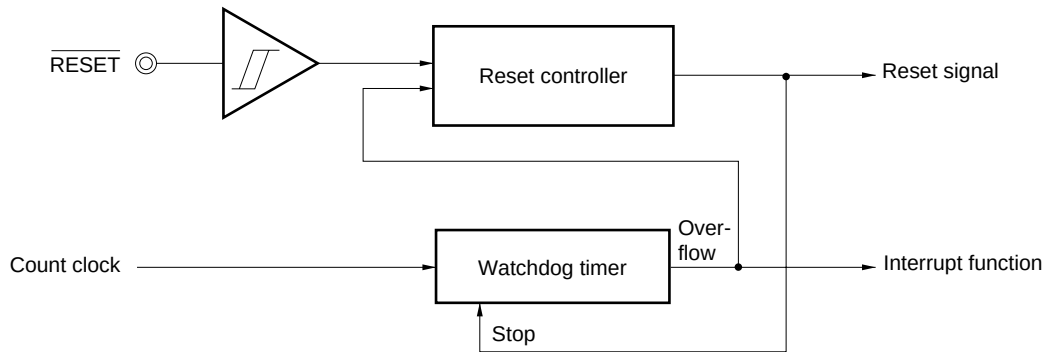


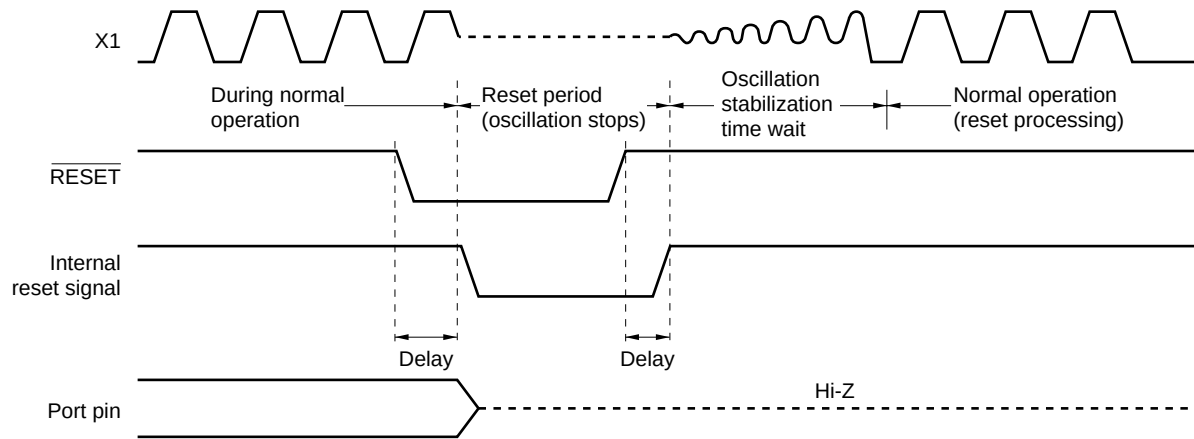
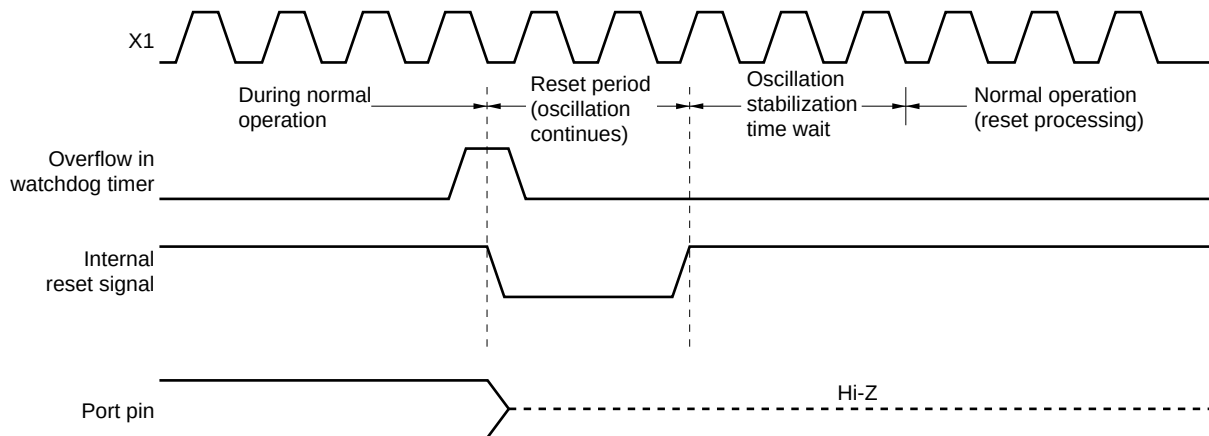
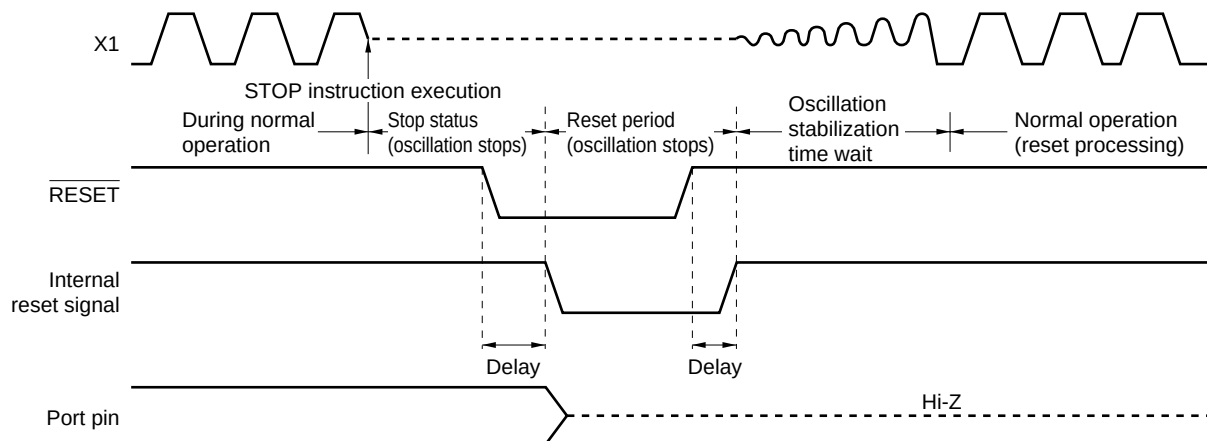
**Figure 18-2. Reset Timing by RESET Input****Figure 18-3. Reset Timing by Overflow in Watchdog Timer****Figure 18-4. Reset Timing by RESET Input in STOP Mode**

Table 18-1. Status of Hardware After Reset (1/2)

| Hardware                                                      |                                                        | Status After Reset                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Program counter (PC) <sup>Note 1</sup>                        |                                                        | Contents of reset vector table (0000H, 0001H) set |
| Stack pointer (SP)                                            |                                                        | Undefined                                         |
| Program status word (PSW)                                     |                                                        | 02H                                               |
| RAM                                                           | Data memory                                            | Undefined <sup>Note 2</sup>                       |
|                                                               | General-purpose registers                              | Undefined <sup>Note 2</sup>                       |
| Ports (P0 to P3, P5, P8 <sup>Note 3</sup> ) (output latches)  |                                                        | 00H                                               |
| Port mode registers (PM0 to PM3, PM5, PM8 <sup>Note 3</sup> ) |                                                        | FFH                                               |
| Port function registers (PF7, PF8)                            |                                                        | 00H                                               |
| Pull-up resistor option registers (PUB0 to PUB3)              |                                                        | 00H                                               |
| Processor clock control register (PCC)                        |                                                        | 02H                                               |
| Subclock oscillation mode register (SCKM)                     |                                                        | 00H                                               |
| Subclock selection register (SSCK)                            |                                                        | Retained <sup>Note 4</sup>                        |
| Subclock control register (CSS)                               |                                                        | 00H                                               |
| Oscillation stabilization time selection register (OSTS)      |                                                        | 04H                                               |
| 16-bit timer 20                                               | Timer counter (TM20)                                   | 0000H                                             |
|                                                               | Compare register (CR20)                                | FFFFH                                             |
|                                                               | Mode control register (TMC20)                          | 00H                                               |
|                                                               | Capture register (TCP20)                               | Undefined                                         |
| 8-bit timer 50, 60, 61                                        | Timer counters (TM50, TM60, TM61)                      | 00H                                               |
|                                                               | Compare registers (CR50, CR60, CRH60, CR61, CRH61)     | Undefined                                         |
|                                                               | Mode control registers (TMC50, TMC60, TMC61)           | 00H                                               |
|                                                               | Carrier generator output control register (TCA60)      | 00H                                               |
| Watch timer                                                   | Mode control register (WTM)                            | 00H                                               |
|                                                               | Interrupt time selection register (WTIM)               | 00H                                               |
| Watchdog timer                                                | Clock selection register (WDCS)                        | 00H                                               |
|                                                               | Mode register (WDTM)                                   | 00H                                               |
| Serial interface 20                                           | Serial operation mode register (CSIM20)                | 00H                                               |
|                                                               | Asynchronous serial interface mode register (ASIM20)   | 00H                                               |
|                                                               | Asynchronous serial interface status register (ASIS20) | 00H                                               |
|                                                               | Baud rate generator control register (BRGC20)          | 00H                                               |
|                                                               | Transmit shift register (TXS20)                        | FFH                                               |
|                                                               | Receive buffer register (RXB20)                        | Undefined                                         |

**Notes** 1. While a reset signal is being input, and during the oscillation stabilization period, only the contents of the PC will be undefined; the remainder of the hardware will be the same state as after reset.

2. In standby mode, RAM enters the hold state after reset.

3. Port 8 is used only when the port function is specified by a mask option or port function register (refer to **CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS** and **4.3 (3) Port function registers**).

4. The register is set to 00H only by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  input.

Table 18-1. Status of Hardware After Reset (2/2)

| Hardware                                   |                                                                                  | Status After Reset |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Serial interface 1A0                       | Operation mode register (CSIM1A0)                                                | 00H                |
|                                            | Shift register (SIO1A0)                                                          | 00H                |
|                                            | Buffer memory (SBMEM0 to SBMEMF)                                                 | Undefined          |
|                                            | Automatic data transmit/receive control register (ADTC0)                         | 00H                |
|                                            | Automatic data transmit/receive address pointer (ADTP0)                          | Undefined          |
|                                            | Automatic data transmit/receive transfer interval specification register (ADTI0) | 00H                |
| A/D converter                              | Mode register (ADML0)                                                            | 00H                |
|                                            | Input channel specification register (ADS0)                                      | 00H                |
|                                            | Conversion result register (ADCRL0)                                              | 0000H              |
| LCD controller/driver                      | Display mode register (LCDM0)                                                    | 00H                |
|                                            | Clock control register (LCDC0)                                                   | 00H                |
|                                            | Voltage boost control register (LCDVA0)                                          | 00H                |
| Multiplier                                 | 16-bit result storage register (MUL0)                                            | Undefined          |
|                                            | Data register (MRA0, MRB0)                                                       | Undefined          |
|                                            | Control register (MULC0)                                                         | 00H                |
| Remote controller receiver <sup>Note</sup> | Control register (RMCN)                                                          | 00H                |
|                                            | Data register (RMDR)                                                             | 00H                |
|                                            | Shift register reception counter register (RMSCR)                                | 00H                |
|                                            | Shift register (RMSR)                                                            | 00H                |
|                                            | Compare registers (RMGPHS, RMGPHL, RMDLS, RMDLL, RMDH0S, RMDH0L, RMDH1S, RMDH1L) | 00H                |
|                                            | End width selection register (RMER)                                              | 00H                |
| Interrupts                                 | Request flag register (IF0 to IF2)                                               | 00H                |
|                                            | Mask flag register (MK0 to MK2)                                                  | FFH                |
|                                            | External interrupt mode register (INTM0, INTM1)                                  | 00H                |
|                                            | Key return mode registers (KRM00, KRM01 <sup>Note</sup> )                        | 00H                |

**Note**  $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 only

## CHAPTER 19 FLASH MEMORY VERSION

The  $\mu$ PD78F9488 is available as the flash memory version of the  $\mu$ PD789488 (mask ROM version).

The  $\mu$ PD78F9489 is available as the flash memory version of the  $\mu$ PD789489 (mask ROM version).

The differences between the  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489, and the mask ROM version are shown in Table 19-1.

**Table 19-1. Differences Between  $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489, and Mask ROM Version**

| Item                                                                                                              |                 | Flash Memory Version                                                                                      |                                                      | Mask ROM Version                           |                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                   |                 | $\mu$ PD78F9488                                                                                           | $\mu$ PD78F9489                                      | $\mu$ PD789488                             | $\mu$ PD789489                                       |
| Internal memory                                                                                                   | ROM             | 32 KB (flash memory)                                                                                      | 48 KB (flash memory)                                 | 32 KB                                      | 48 KB                                                |
|                                                                                                                   | Internal RAM    | 1024 bytes                                                                                                | 1536 bytes                                           | 1024 bytes                                 | 1536 bytes                                           |
|                                                                                                                   | LCD display RAM | 28 × 4 bits                                                                                               |                                                      |                                            |                                                      |
| Pin function selection<br>S16 to S27 (LCD segment output) or<br>P70 to P73 and P80 to P87 (general-purpose ports) |                 | Selectable by a port function register (PF7 and PF8) in bit units                                         |                                                      | Selectable by a mask option in bit units   |                                                      |
| Circuit to multiply subsystem clock by ×4                                                                         |                 | Use enabled/disabled by subclock select register (SSCK)                                                   |                                                      | Use enabled/disabled by a mask option      |                                                      |
| Pull-up resistor of port 5                                                                                        |                 | None                                                                                                      |                                                      | Selectable by a mask option in 1-bit units |                                                      |
| Remote controller receiver                                                                                        |                 | Not provided                                                                                              | Provided                                             | Not provided                               | Provided                                             |
| Key return signal detection pins                                                                                  |                 | P00/KR0 to P07/KR7                                                                                        | P00/KR00 to P07/KR07, P60/ANI0/KR10 to P67/ANI7/KR17 | P00/KR0 to P07/KR7                         | P00/KR00 to P07/KR07, P60/ANI0/KR10 to P67/ANI7/KR17 |
| Restrictions in HALT mode when using subclock ×4 clock                                                            |                 | Refer to <b>19.2 Cautions on <math>\mu</math>PD78F9488 and 78F9489</b>                                    |                                                      | None                                       |                                                      |
| IC0 pin                                                                                                           |                 | Not provided                                                                                              |                                                      | Provided                                   |                                                      |
| V <sub>PP</sub> pin                                                                                               |                 | Provided                                                                                                  |                                                      | Not Provided                               |                                                      |
| Electrical specifications                                                                                         |                 | Refer to <b>CHAPTER 22 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (<math>\mu</math>PD789488, 78F9488, 789489, 78F9489)</b> |                                                      |                                            |                                                      |

**Caution** There are differences in noise immunity and noise radiation between the flash memory and mask ROM versions. When pre-producing an application set with the flash memory version and then mass-producing it with the mask ROM version, be sure to conduct sufficient evaluations for the commercial samples (not engineering samples) of the mask ROM version.

## 19.1 Flash Memory Characteristics

Flash memory programming is performed by connecting a dedicated flash programmer (Flashpro III (part no. FL-PR3, PG-FP3)/Flashpro IV (part no. FL-PR4, PG-FP4)) to the target system with the  $\mu$ PD78F9488 or 78F9489 mounted on the target system (on-board). A flash memory program adapter (FA adapter), which is a target board used exclusively for programming, is also provided.

**Remark** FL-PR3, FL-PR4, and the program adapter are products of Naito Densai Machida Mfg. Co., Ltd. (TEL +81-45-475-4191).

Programming using flash memory has the following advantages.

- Software can be modified after the microcontroller is solder-mounted on the target system.
- Distinguishing software facilities low-quantity, varied model production
- Easy data adjustment when starting mass production

### 19.1.1 Programming environment

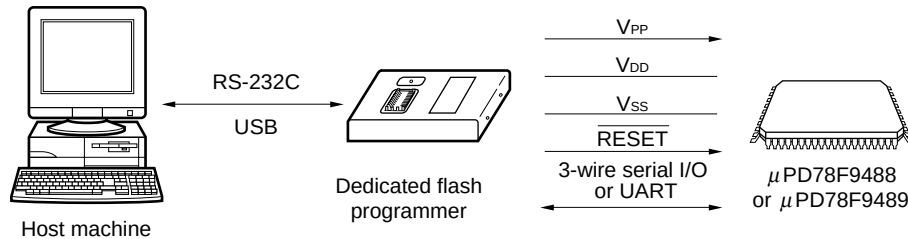
The following shows the environment required for  $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489 flash memory programming.

When Flashpro III (part no. FL-PR3, PG-FP3) or Flashpro IV (part no. FL-PR4, PG-FP4) is used as a dedicated flash programmer, a host machine is required to control the dedicated flash programmer. Communication between the host machine and flash programmer is performed via RS-232C/USB (Rev. 1.1).

For details, refer the manuals of Flashpro III/Flashpro IV.

**Remark** USB is supported by Flashpro IV only.

**Figure 19-1. Environment for Writing Program to Flash Memory**





### 19.1.2 Communication mode

Use the communication mode shown in Table 19-2 to perform communication between the dedicated flash programmer and  $\mu$ PD78F9488 or 78F9489.

**Table 19-2. Communication Mode List**

| Communication<br>Mode               | TYPE Setting <sup>Note 1</sup>  |                                            |                                     |                                    |                  | Pins Used                                                            | Number of V <sub>PP</sub><br>Pulses |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|                                     | COMM<br>PORT                    | SIO Clock                                  | CPU Clock                           |                                    | Multiple<br>Rate |                                                                      |                                     |
|                                     |                                 |                                            | In Flashpro                         | On Target Board                    |                  |                                                                      |                                     |
| 3-wire serial I/O                   | SIO ch-0<br>(3-wired,<br>sync.) | 100 Hz to<br>1.25<br>MHz <sup>Note 2</sup> | 1, 2, 4, 5<br>MHz <sup>Note 3</sup> | 1 to 5 MHz <sup>Note<br/>2</sup>   | 1.0              | SI20/RxD20/P22<br>SO20/TxD20/P21<br>SCK20/ASCK20/<br>P20             | 0                                   |
| 3-wire serial I/O<br>with handshake | SIO ch-3<br>+ handshake         |                                            |                                     |                                    |                  | SI20/RxD20/P22<br>SO20/TxD20/P21<br>SCK20/ASCK20/<br>P20<br>P11 (HS) | 3                                   |
| UART                                | UART ch-0<br>(Async.)           | 4,800 to<br>76,800 bps<br>Notes 2, 4       | 5 MHz <sup>Note 5</sup>             | 4.91 or<br>5 MHz <sup>Note 2</sup> | 1.0              | RxD20/SI20/P22<br>TxD20/SO20/P21                                     | 8                                   |

- Notes**
1. Selection items for TYPE settings on the dedicated flash programmer (Flashpro III (part no. FL-PR3, PG-FP3)/Flashpro IV (part no. FL-PR4, PG-FP4)).
  2. The possible setting range differs depending on the voltage. For details, refer to **CHAPTER 22 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS ( $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488, 789489, 78F9489)**.
  3. Only 2 MHz or 4 MHz can be selected for Flashpro III.
  4. Because signal wave slew also affects UART communication, in addition to the baud rate error, thoroughly evaluate the slew.
  5. Flashpro IV only. However, when using Flashpro III, be sure to select the clock of the resonator on the board. UART cannot be used with the clock supplied by Flashpro III.

**Figure 19-2. Communication Mode Selection Format**

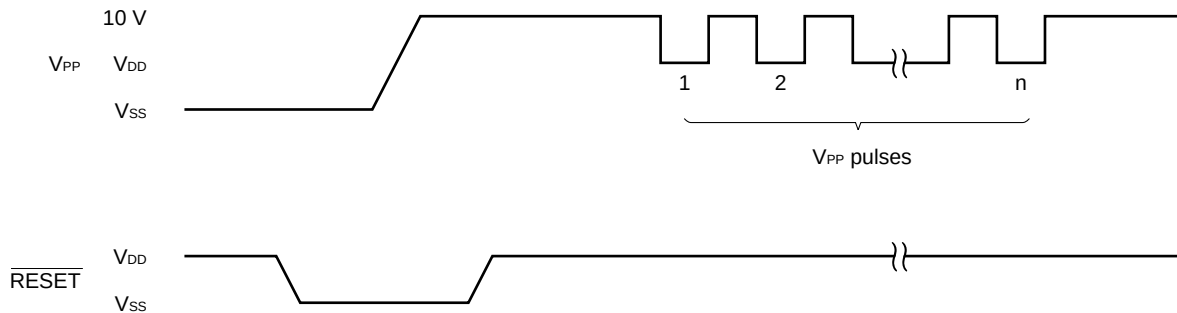
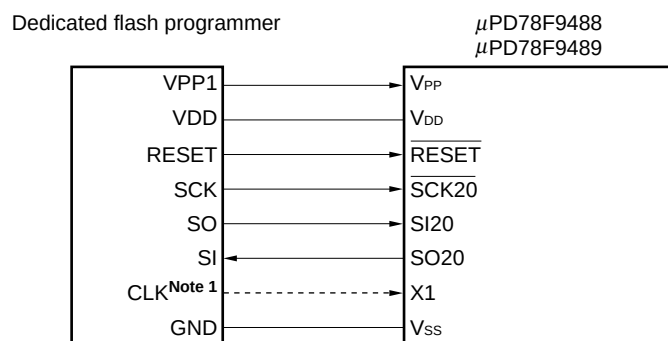
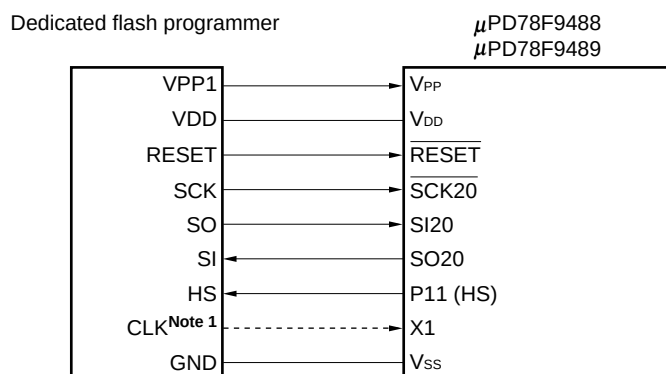


Figure 19-3. Example of Connection with Dedicated Flash Programmer

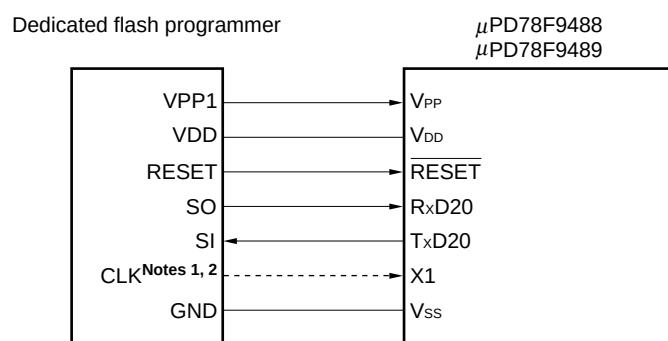
## (a) 3-wire serial I/O



## (b) 3-wire serial I/O with handshake



## (c) UART



- Notes**
1. When the system clock is supplied from the dedicated flash programmer, connect the CLK pin with X1 pin and disconnect the on-board resonator. When using the clock of the on-board resonator, do not connect the CLK pin.
  2. When using UART with Flashpro III, the clock of the resonator connected to the X1 pin must be used, do not connect the CLK pin.

**Caution** The V<sub>DD</sub> pin, if already connected to the power supply, must be connected to the VDD pin of the dedicated flash programmer. Before using the power supply connected to the V<sub>DD</sub> pin, supply voltage before starting programming.

If Flashpro III/Flashpro IV is used as a dedicated flash programmer, the following signals are generated for the  $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489. For details, refer to the manual of Flashpro III/Flashpro IV.

**Table 19-3. Pin Connection List**

| Signal Name | I/O    | Pin Function                                              | Pin Name                  | 3-Wire Serial I/O | 3-Wire Serial I/O with Handshake | UART              |
|-------------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| VPP1        | Output | Write voltage                                             | V <sub>PP</sub>           | ◎                 | ◎                                | ◎                 |
| VPP2        | —      | —                                                         | —                         | ×                 | ×                                | ×                 |
| VDD         | I/O    | V <sub>DD</sub> voltage generation/<br>voltage monitoring | V <sub>DD</sub>           | ◎ <sup>Note</sup> | ◎ <sup>Note</sup>                | ◎ <sup>Note</sup> |
| GND         | —      | Ground                                                    | V <sub>SS</sub>           | ◎                 | ◎                                | ◎                 |
| CLK         | Output | Clock output                                              | X1                        | ○                 | ○                                | ○                 |
| RESET       | Output | Reset signal                                              | $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ | ◎                 | ◎                                | ◎                 |
| SI          | Input  | Receive signal                                            | SO20/TxD20                | ◎                 | ◎                                | ◎                 |
| SO          | Output | Transmit signal                                           | SI20/RxD20                | ◎                 | ◎                                | ◎                 |
| SCK         | Output | Transfer clock                                            | $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ | ◎                 | ◎                                | ×                 |
| HS          | Input  | Handshake signal                                          | P11 (HS)                  | ×                 | ◎                                | ×                 |

**Note** V<sub>DD</sub> voltage must be supplied before programming is started.

**Remark** ◎: Pin must be connected.

○: If the signal is supplied on the target board, pin does not need to be connected.

×: Pin does not need to be connected.

### 19.1.3 On-board pin processing

When performing programming on the target system, provide a connector on the target system to connect the dedicated flash programmer.

An on-board function that allows switching between normal operation mode and flash memory programming mode may be required in some cases.

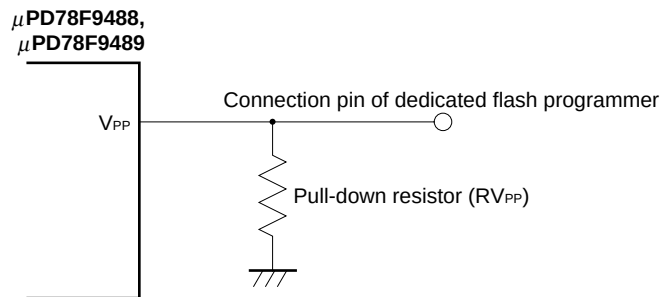
#### <V<sub>PP</sub> pin>

In normal operation mode, input 0 V to the V<sub>PP</sub> pin. In flash memory programming mode, a write voltage of 10.0 V (TYP.) is supplied to the V<sub>PP</sub> pin, so perform either of the following.

- (1) Connect a pull-down resistor (RV<sub>PP</sub> = 10 kΩ) to the V<sub>PP</sub> pin.
- (2) Use the jumper on the board to switch the V<sub>PP</sub> pin input to either the programmer or directly to GND.

A V<sub>PP</sub> pin connection example is shown below.

**Figure 19-4. V<sub>PP</sub> Pin Connection Example**



#### <Serial interface pin>

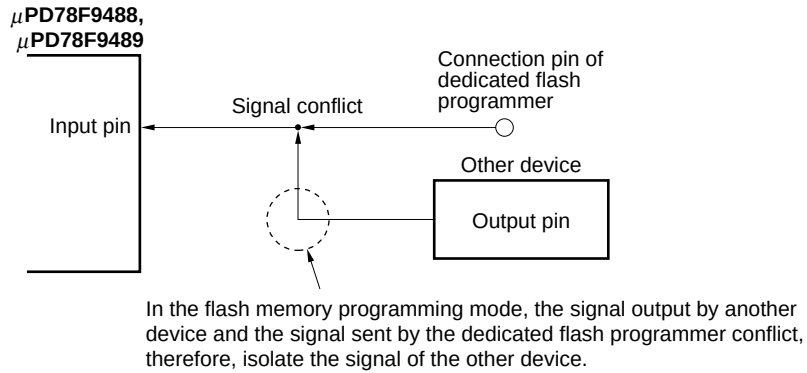
The following shows the pins used by the serial interface.

| Serial Interface                 | Pins Used                                        |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 3-wire serial I/O                | SI20, SO20, $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$            |
| 3-wire serial I/O with handshake | SI20, SO20, $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ , P11 (HS) |
| UART                             | RxD20, TxD20                                     |

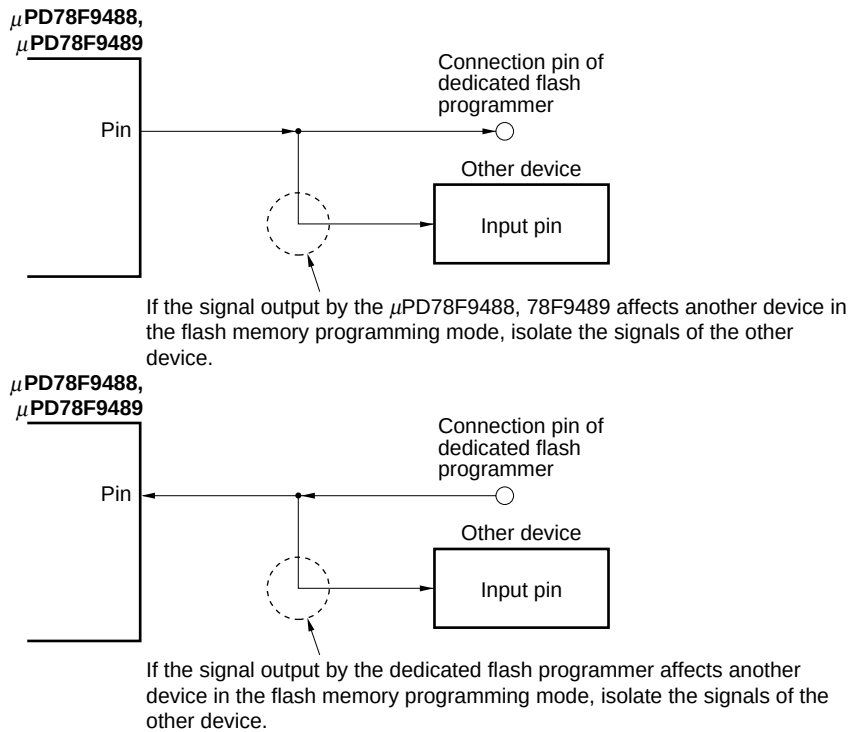
When connecting the dedicated flash programmer to a serial interface pin that is connected to another device on-board, signal conflict or abnormal operation of the other device may occur. Care must therefore be taken with such connections.

**(1) Signal conflict**

If the dedicated flash programmer (output) is connected to a serial interface pin (input) that is connected to another device (output), a signal conflict occurs. To prevent this, isolate the connection with the other device or set the other device to the output high impedance status.

**Figure 19-5. Signal Conflict (Input Pin of Serial Interface)****(2) Abnormal operation of other device**

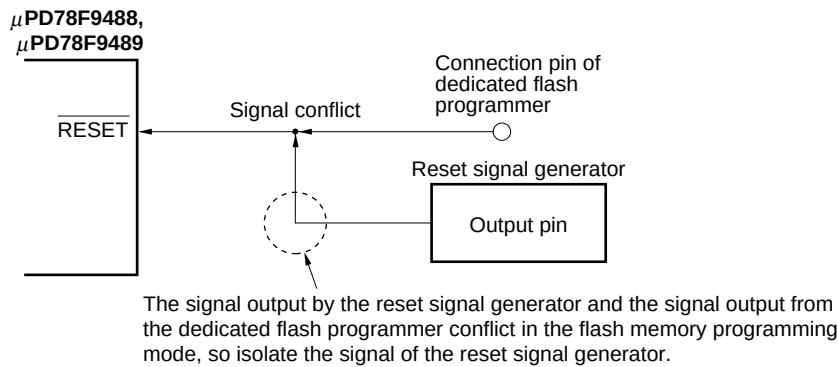
If the dedicated flash programmer (output or input) is connected to a serial interface pin (input or output) that is connected to another device (input), a signal is output to the device, and this may cause an abnormal operation. To prevent this abnormal operation, isolate the connection with the other device or set so that the input signals to the other device are ignored.

**Figure 19-6. Abnormal Operation of Other Device**

## &lt;RESET pin&gt;

If the reset signal of the dedicated flash programmer is connected to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin connected to the reset signal generator on-board, a signal conflict occurs. To prevent this, isolate the connection with the reset signal generator. If the reset signal is input from the user system in the flash memory programming mode, a normal programming operation cannot be performed. Therefore, do not input reset signals from other than the dedicated flash programmer.

Figure 19-7. Signal Conflict (RESET Pin)



## &lt;Port pins&gt;

When the  $\mu\text{PD78F9488}$  or  $\mu\text{PD78F9489}$  enters the flash memory programming mode, all the pins other than those that communicate with flash programmer are in the same status as immediately after reset.

If the external device does not recognize initial statuses such as the output high impedance status, therefore, connect the external device to  $V_{DD}$  or  $V_{SS}$  via a resistor.

## &lt;Resonator&gt;

When using the on-board clock, connect X1, X2, XT1, and XT2 as required in the normal operation mode.

When using the clock output of the flash programmer, connect it directly to X1, disconnecting the main resonator on-board, and leave the X2 pin open. The subsystem clock conforms to the normal operation mode.

## &lt;Power supply&gt;

To use the power output from the flash programmer, connect the  $V_{DD}$  pin to VDD of the flash programmer, and  $V_{SS}$  pin to GND of the flash programmer, respectively.

To use the on-board power supply, make connection in accordance with the normal operation mode. However, because the voltage is monitored by the flash programmer, be sure to connect VDD of the flash programmer.

Supply the same power as in the normal operation mode to the other power pins ( $AV_{DD}$  and  $AV_{SS}$ ).

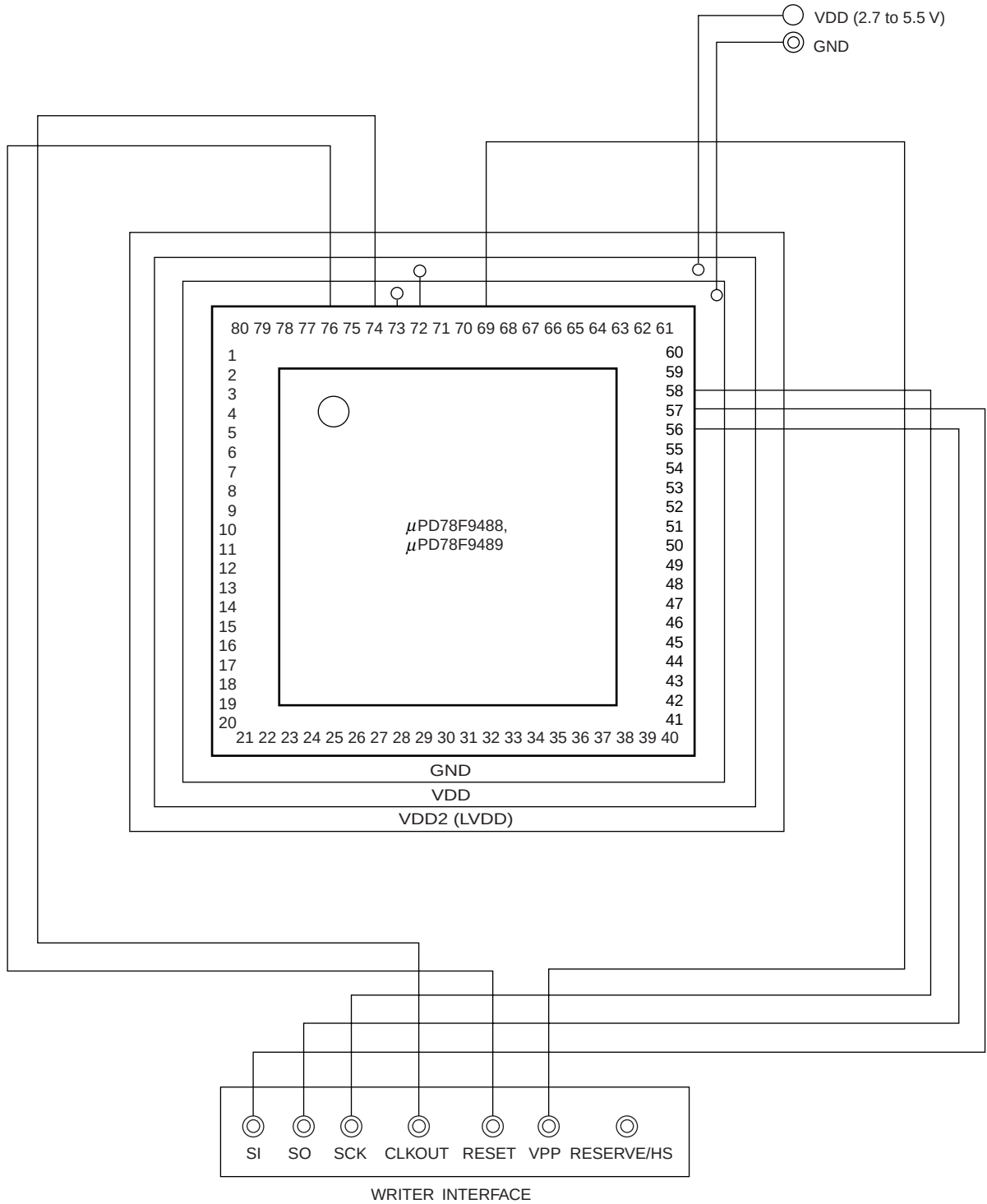
## &lt;Other pins&gt;

Process the other pins (S0 to S27, COM0 to COM3,  $V_{LC0}$  to  $V_{LC2}$ , CAPH, and CAPL) in the same manner as in the normal operation mode.

#### 19.1.4 Connection of adapter for flash writing

The following figure shows an example of recommended connection when the adapter for flash writing is used.

**Figure 19-8. Wiring Example for Flash Writing Adapter with 3-Wire Serial I/O**



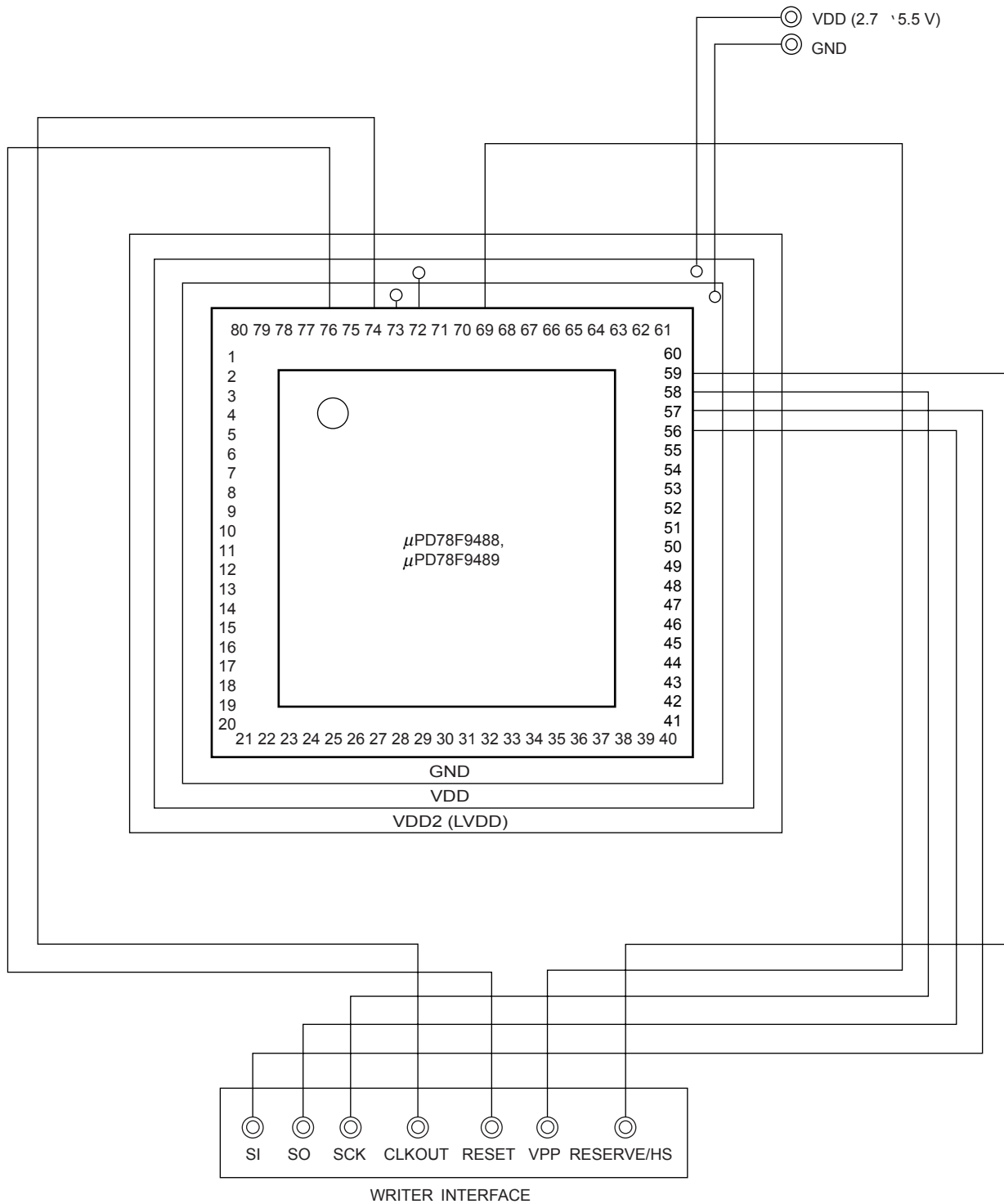
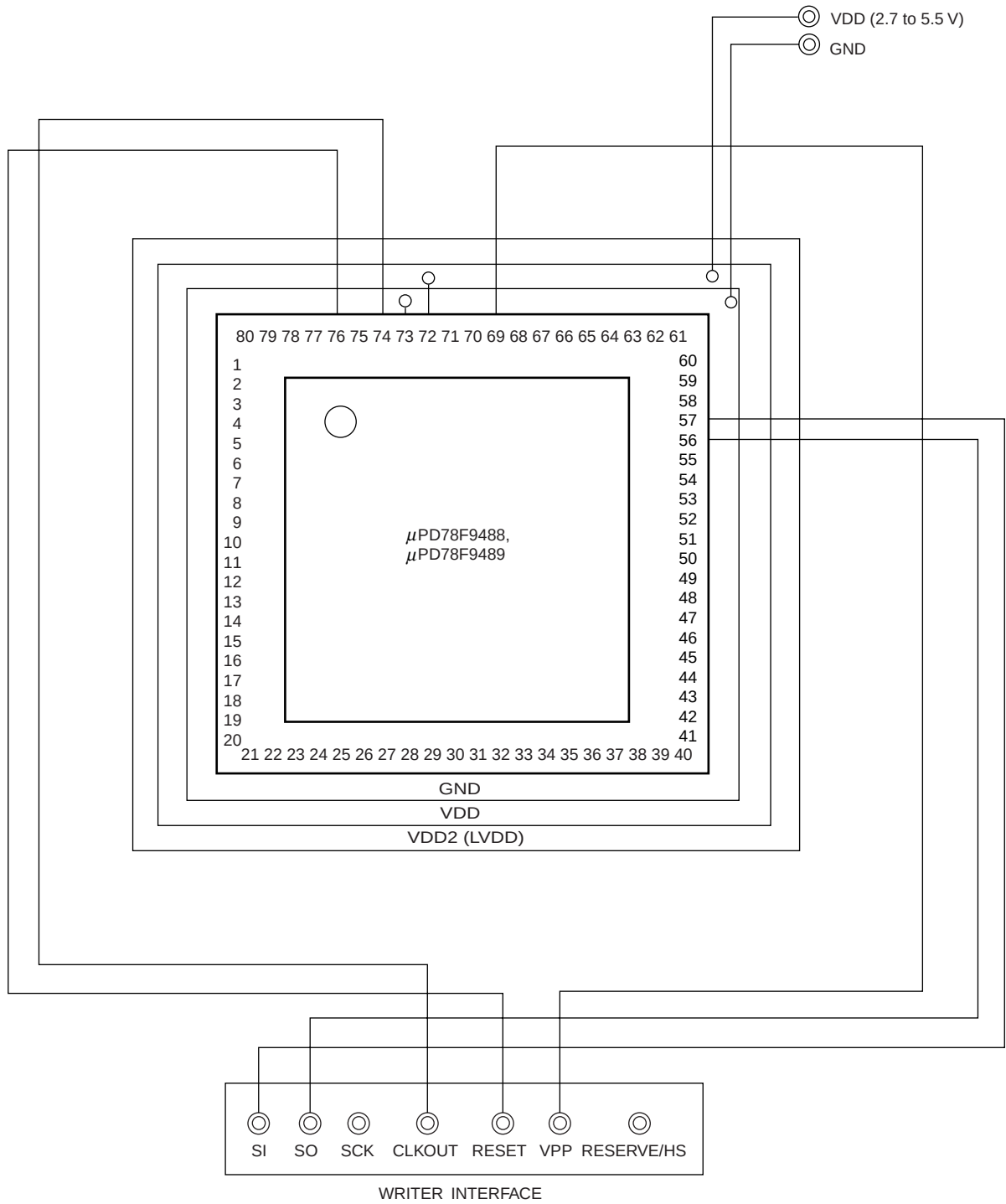
★ **Figure 19-9. Wiring Example for Flash Writing Adapter with 3-Wire Serial I/O with Handshake**



**Figure 19-10. Wiring Example for Flash Writing Adapter with UART**

## 19.2 Cautions on $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489

### (1) When using HALT mode with subclock multiplied by four

Observe the following constraints when using the flash version ( $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489) in the HALT mode with the subclock multiplied by 4 as the CPU clock.

- Be sure to insert the following number of NOP instructions immediately after the HALT instruction.

| Operating Temperature              | Number of NOP Instructions |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| $T_A = -40$ to $+45^\circ\text{C}$ | 2                          |
| $T_A = -40$ to $+80^\circ\text{C}$ | 3                          |
| $T_A = -40$ to $+85^\circ\text{C}$ | 4                          |

- Save the value of the A register to the internal high-speed RAM area before the HALT instruction is executed (because the value of the A register may be changed when the HALT mode is released).

## CHAPTER 20 MASK OPTIONS

The  $\mu$ PD789488 and 789489 have the following mask options.

- Pin function

The segment pins of the LCD and port 7 (input port) can be selected in 1-bit units.

<1> S (16 + n)

<2> P7n (n = 0 to 3)

The segment pins of the LCD and port 8 (I/O port) can be selected in 1-bit units.

<1> S (20 + m)

<2> P8m (m = 0 to 7)

- Subsystem clock x4 multiplication circuit

The use of a circuit to multiply the subsystem clock (32.768 kHz) by 4 (131 kHz) is selected.

<1> x4 multiplication circuit is used

<2> x4 multiplication circuit is not used

- Pull-up resistor

The connection of on-chip pull-up resistors for port 5 (I/O port) can be switched in 1-bit units.

<1> Pull-up resistor is connected

<2> Pull-up resistor is not connected

**Caution** The flash memory products ( $\mu$ PD78F9488 and 78F9489) do not have mask options.

## CHAPTER 21 INSTRUCTION SET

This chapter lists the instruction set of the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries. For details of the operation and machine language (instruction code) of each instruction, refer to **78K/0S Series Instructions User's Manual (U11047E)**.

### 21.1 Operation

#### 21.1.1 Operand identifiers and description methods

Operands are described in the "Operand" column of each instruction in accordance with the description method of the instruction operand identifier (refer to the assembler specifications for details). When there are two or more description methods, select one of them. Uppercase letters and the symbols #, !, \$, and [ ] are keywords and are described as they are. Each symbol has the following meaning.

- #: Immediate data specification
- \$: Relative address specification
- !: Absolute address specification
- [ ]: Indirect address specification

In the case of immediate data, describe an appropriate numeric value or a label. When using a label, be sure to describe the #, !, \$ and [ ] symbols.

For operand register identifiers, r and rp, either functional names (X, A, C, etc.) or absolute names (names in parenthesis in the table below, R0, R1, R2, etc.) can be used for description.

**Table 21-1. Operand Identifiers and Description Methods**

| Identifier          | Description Method                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| r<br>rp<br>sfr      | X (R0), A (R1), C (R2), B (R3), E (R4), D (R5), L (R6), H (R7)<br>AX (RP0), BC (RP1), DE (RP2), HL (RP3)<br>Special function register symbol                         |
| saddr<br>saddrp     | FE20H to FF1FH Immediate data or labels<br>FE20H to FF1FH Immediate data or labels (even addresses only)                                                             |
| addr16<br>addr5     | 0000H to FFFFH Immediate data or labels (only even addresses for 16-bit data transfer instructions)<br>0040H to 007FH Immediate data or labels (even addresses only) |
| word<br>byte<br>bit | 16-bit immediate data or label<br>8-bit immediate data or label<br>3-bit immediate data or label                                                                     |

**Remark** See **Table 3-4 Special Function Registers** for symbols of special function registers.

**21.1.2 Description of “Operation” column**

|                                   |                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A:                                | A register; 8-bit accumulator                                            |
| X:                                | X register                                                               |
| B:                                | B register                                                               |
| C:                                | C register                                                               |
| D:                                | D register                                                               |
| E:                                | E register                                                               |
| H:                                | H register                                                               |
| L:                                | L register                                                               |
| AX:                               | AX register pair; 16-bit accumulator                                     |
| BC:                               | BC register pair                                                         |
| DE:                               | DE register pair                                                         |
| HL:                               | HL register pair                                                         |
| PC:                               | Program counter                                                          |
| SP:                               | Stack pointer                                                            |
| PSW:                              | Program status word                                                      |
| CY:                               | Carry flag                                                               |
| AC:                               | Auxiliary carry flag                                                     |
| Z:                                | Zero flag                                                                |
| IE:                               | Interrupt request enable flag                                            |
| ( ):                              | Memory contents indicated by address or register contents in parenthesis |
| X <sub>H</sub> , X <sub>L</sub> : | Higher 8 bits and lower 8 bits of 16-bit register                        |
| ∧:                                | Logical product (AND)                                                    |
| ∨:                                | Logical sum (OR)                                                         |
| ⊕:                                | Exclusive logical sum (exclusive OR)                                     |
| ¬:                                | Inverted data                                                            |
| addr16:                           | 16-bit immediate data or label                                           |
| jdsp8:                            | Signed 8-bit data (displacement value)                                   |

**21.1.3 Description of “Flag” column**

|          |                                     |
|----------|-------------------------------------|
| (Blank): | Unchanged                           |
| 0:       | Cleared to 0                        |
| 1:       | Set to 1                            |
| x:       | Set/cleared according to the result |
| R:       | Previously saved value is restored  |

## 21.2 Operation List

| Mnemonic | Operands                   | Bytes | Clocks | Operation                                     | Flag    |
|----------|----------------------------|-------|--------|-----------------------------------------------|---------|
|          |                            |       |        |                                               | Z AC CY |
| MOV      | r, #byte                   | 3     | 6      | $r \leftarrow \text{byte}$                    |         |
|          | saddr, #byte               | 3     | 6      | $(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow \text{byte}$       |         |
|          | sfr, #byte                 | 3     | 6      | $\text{sfr} \leftarrow \text{byte}$           |         |
|          | A, r <small>Note 1</small> | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow r$                              |         |
|          | r, A <small>Note 1</small> | 2     | 4      | $r \leftarrow A$                              |         |
|          | A, saddr                   | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow (\text{saddr})$                 |         |
|          | saddr, A                   | 2     | 4      | $(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow A$                 |         |
|          | A, sfr                     | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow \text{sfr}$                     |         |
|          | sfr, A                     | 2     | 4      | $\text{sfr} \leftarrow A$                     |         |
|          | A, laddr16                 | 3     | 8      | $A \leftarrow (\text{laddr16})$               |         |
|          | laddr16, A                 | 3     | 8      | $(\text{laddr16}) \leftarrow A$               |         |
|          | PSW, #byte                 | 3     | 6      | $\text{PSW} \leftarrow \text{byte}$           | x x x   |
|          | A, PSW                     | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow \text{PSW}$                     |         |
|          | PSW, A                     | 2     | 4      | $\text{PSW} \leftarrow A$                     | x x x   |
|          | A, [DE]                    | 1     | 6      | $A \leftarrow (\text{DE})$                    |         |
|          | [DE], A                    | 1     | 6      | $(\text{DE}) \leftarrow A$                    |         |
|          | A, [HL]                    | 1     | 6      | $A \leftarrow (\text{HL})$                    |         |
|          | [HL], A                    | 1     | 6      | $(\text{HL}) \leftarrow A$                    |         |
|          | A, [HL+byte]               | 2     | 6      | $A \leftarrow (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$      |         |
|          | [HL+byte], A               | 2     | 6      | $(\text{HL} + \text{byte}) \leftarrow A$      |         |
| XCH      | A, X                       | 1     | 4      | $A \leftrightarrow X$                         |         |
|          | A, r <small>Note 2</small> | 2     | 6      | $A \leftrightarrow r$                         |         |
|          | A, saddr                   | 2     | 6      | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{saddr})$            |         |
|          | A, sfr                     | 2     | 6      | $A \leftrightarrow \text{sfr}$                |         |
|          | A, [DE]                    | 1     | 8      | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{DE})$               |         |
|          | A, [HL]                    | 1     | 8      | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL})$               |         |
|          | A, [HL+byte]               | 2     | 8      | $A \leftrightarrow (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$ |         |

**Notes** 1. Except r = A.

2. Except r = A, X.

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one CPU clock cycle ( $f_{\text{CPU}}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

| Mnemonic | Operands                   | Bytes | Clocks | Operation                                                         | Flag |    |    |
|----------|----------------------------|-------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------|----|----|
|          |                            |       |        |                                                                   | Z    | AC | CY |
| MOVW     | rp, #word                  | 3     | 6      | $rp \leftarrow \text{word}$                                       |      |    |    |
|          | AX, saddrp                 | 2     | 6      | $AX \leftarrow (\text{saddrp})$                                   |      |    |    |
|          | saddrp, AX                 | 2     | 8      | $(\text{saddrp}) \leftarrow AX$                                   |      |    |    |
|          | AX, rp <small>Note</small> | 1     | 4      | $AX \leftarrow rp$                                                |      |    |    |
|          | rp, AX <small>Note</small> | 1     | 4      | $rp \leftarrow AX$                                                |      |    |    |
| XCHW     | AX, rp <small>Note</small> | 1     | 8      | $AX \leftrightarrow rp$                                           |      |    |    |
| ADD      | A, #byte                   | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + \text{byte}$                                | x    | x  | x  |
|          | saddr, #byte               | 3     | 6      | $(\text{saddr}), CY \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) + \text{byte}$      | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, r                       | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + r$                                          | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, saddr                   | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (\text{saddr})$                             | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, !addr16                 | 3     | 8      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (\text{addr16})$                            | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL]                    | 1     | 6      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL)$                                       | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL+byte]               | 2     | 6      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL + \text{byte})$                         | x    | x  | x  |
| ADDC     | A, #byte                   | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + \text{byte} + CY$                           | x    | x  | x  |
|          | saddr, #byte               | 3     | 6      | $(\text{saddr}), CY \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) + \text{byte} + CY$ | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, r                       | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + r + CY$                                     | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, saddr                   | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (\text{saddr}) + CY$                        | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, !addr16                 | 3     | 8      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (\text{addr16}) + CY$                       | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL]                    | 1     | 6      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL) + CY$                                  | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL+byte]               | 2     | 6      | $A, CY \leftarrow A + (HL + \text{byte}) + CY$                    | x    | x  | x  |
| SUB      | A, #byte                   | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - \text{byte}$                                | x    | x  | x  |
|          | saddr, #byte               | 3     | 6      | $(\text{saddr}), CY \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) - \text{byte}$      | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, r                       | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - r$                                          | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, saddr                   | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{saddr})$                             | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, !addr16                 | 3     | 8      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{addr16})$                            | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL]                    | 1     | 6      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - (HL)$                                       | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL+byte]               | 2     | 6      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - (HL + \text{byte})$                         | x    | x  | x  |

**Note** Only when rp = BC, DE, or HL.

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one CPU clock cycle ( $f_{\text{CPU}}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

| Mnemonic | Operands     | Bytes | Clocks | Operation                                           | Flag |    |    |
|----------|--------------|-------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------|------|----|----|
|          |              |       |        |                                                     | Z    | AC | CY |
| SUBC     | A, #byte     | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - \text{byte} - CY$             | x    | x  | x  |
|          | saddr, #byte | 3     | 6      | $(saddr), CY \leftarrow (saddr) - \text{byte} - CY$ | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, r         | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - r - CY$                       | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, saddr     | 2     | 4      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - (saddr) - CY$                 | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, laddr16   | 3     | 8      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - (\text{laddr16}) - CY$        | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL]      | 1     | 6      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - (HL) - CY$                    | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL+byte] | 2     | 6      | $A, CY \leftarrow A - (HL + \text{byte}) - CY$      | x    | x  | x  |
| AND      | A, #byte     | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow A \wedge \text{byte}$                 | x    |    |    |
|          | saddr, #byte | 3     | 6      | $(saddr) \leftarrow (saddr) \wedge \text{byte}$     | x    |    |    |
|          | A, r         | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow A \wedge r$                           | x    |    |    |
|          | A, saddr     | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow A \wedge (saddr)$                     | x    |    |    |
|          | A, laddr16   | 3     | 8      | $A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{laddr16})$            | x    |    |    |
|          | A, [HL]      | 1     | 6      | $A \leftarrow A \wedge (HL)$                        | x    |    |    |
|          | A, [HL+byte] | 2     | 6      | $A \leftarrow A \wedge (HL + \text{byte})$          | x    |    |    |
| OR       | A, #byte     | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow A \vee \text{byte}$                   | x    |    |    |
|          | saddr, #byte | 3     | 6      | $(saddr) \leftarrow (saddr) \vee \text{byte}$       | x    |    |    |
|          | A, r         | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow A \vee r$                             | x    |    |    |
|          | A, saddr     | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (saddr)$                       | x    |    |    |
|          | A, laddr16   | 3     | 8      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{laddr16})$              | x    |    |    |
|          | A, [HL]      | 1     | 6      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (HL)$                          | x    |    |    |
|          | A, [HL+byte] | 2     | 6      | $A \leftarrow A \vee (HL + \text{byte})$            | x    |    |    |
| XOR      | A, #byte     | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow A \nabla \text{byte}$                 | x    |    |    |
|          | saddr, #byte | 3     | 6      | $(saddr) \leftarrow (saddr) \nabla \text{byte}$     | x    |    |    |
|          | A, r         | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow A \nabla r$                           | x    |    |    |
|          | A, saddr     | 2     | 4      | $A \leftarrow A \nabla (saddr)$                     | x    |    |    |
|          | A, laddr16   | 3     | 8      | $A \leftarrow A \nabla (\text{laddr16})$            | x    |    |    |
|          | A, [HL]      | 1     | 6      | $A \leftarrow A \nabla (HL)$                        | x    |    |    |
|          | A, [HL+byte] | 2     | 6      | $A \leftarrow A \nabla (HL + \text{byte})$          | x    |    |    |

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).



| Mnemonic | Operands     | Bytes | Clocks | Operation                                                                 | Flag |    |    |
|----------|--------------|-------|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|----|----|
|          |              |       |        |                                                                           | Z    | AC | CY |
| CMP      | A, #byte     | 2     | 4      | A – byte                                                                  | x    | x  | x  |
|          | saddr, #byte | 3     | 6      | (saddr) – byte                                                            | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, r         | 2     | 4      | A – r                                                                     | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, saddr     | 2     | 4      | A – (saddr)                                                               | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, !addr16   | 3     | 8      | A – (addr16)                                                              | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL]      | 1     | 6      | A – (HL)                                                                  | x    | x  | x  |
|          | A, [HL+byte] | 2     | 6      | A – (HL + byte)                                                           | x    | x  | x  |
| ADDW     | AX, #word    | 3     | 6      | AX, CY $\leftarrow$ AX + word                                             | x    | x  | x  |
| SUBW     | AX, #word    | 3     | 6      | AX, CY $\leftarrow$ AX – word                                             | x    | x  | x  |
| CMPW     | AX, #word    | 3     | 6      | AX – word                                                                 | x    | x  | x  |
| INC      | r            | 2     | 4      | $r \leftarrow r + 1$                                                      | x    | x  |    |
|          | saddr        | 2     | 4      | $(saddr) \leftarrow (saddr) + 1$                                          | x    | x  |    |
| DEC      | r            | 2     | 4      | $r \leftarrow r - 1$                                                      | x    | x  |    |
|          | saddr        | 2     | 4      | $(saddr) \leftarrow (saddr) - 1$                                          | x    | x  |    |
| INCW     | rp           | 1     | 4      | $rp \leftarrow rp + 1$                                                    |      |    |    |
| DECW     | rp           | 1     | 4      | $rp \leftarrow rp - 1$                                                    |      |    |    |
| ROR      | A, 1         | 1     | 2      | $(CY, A_7 \leftarrow A_0, A_{m-1} \leftarrow A_m) \times 1$               |      |    | x  |
| ROL      | A, 1         | 1     | 2      | $(CY, A_0 \leftarrow A_7, A_{m+1} \leftarrow A_m) \times 1$               |      |    | x  |
| RORC     | A, 1         | 1     | 2      | $(CY \leftarrow A_0, A_7 \leftarrow CY, A_{m-1} \leftarrow A_m) \times 1$ |      |    | x  |
| ROLC     | A, 1         | 1     | 2      | $(CY \leftarrow A_7, A_0 \leftarrow CY, A_{m+1} \leftarrow A_m) \times 1$ |      |    | x  |
| SET1     | saddr.bit    | 3     | 6      | $(saddr.bit) \leftarrow 1$                                                |      |    |    |
|          | sfr.bit      | 3     | 6      | $sfr.bit \leftarrow 1$                                                    |      |    |    |
|          | A.bit        | 2     | 4      | $A.bit \leftarrow 1$                                                      |      |    |    |
|          | PSW.bit      | 3     | 6      | $PSW.bit \leftarrow 1$                                                    | x    | x  | x  |
|          | [HL].bit     | 2     | 10     | $(HL).bit \leftarrow 1$                                                   |      |    |    |
| CLR1     | saddr.bit    | 3     | 6      | $(saddr.bit) \leftarrow 0$                                                |      |    |    |
|          | sfr.bit      | 3     | 6      | $sfr.bit \leftarrow 0$                                                    |      |    |    |
|          | A.bit        | 2     | 4      | $A.bit \leftarrow 0$                                                      |      |    |    |
|          | PSW.bit      | 3     | 6      | $PSW.bit \leftarrow 0$                                                    | x    | x  | x  |
|          | [HL].bit     | 2     | 10     | $(HL).bit \leftarrow 0$                                                   |      |    |    |
| SET1     | CY           | 1     | 2      | $CY \leftarrow 1$                                                         |      |    | 1  |
| CLR1     | CY           | 1     | 2      | $CY \leftarrow 0$                                                         |      |    | 0  |
| NOT1     | CY           | 1     | 2      | $CY \leftarrow \overline{CY}$                                             |      |    | x  |

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

| Mnemonic | Operands            | Bytes | Clocks | Operation                                                                                                                                                                                | Flag    |
|----------|---------------------|-------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
|          |                     |       |        |                                                                                                                                                                                          | Z AC CY |
| CALL     | !addr16             | 3     | 6      | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow (PC + 3)_H, (SP - 2) \leftarrow (PC + 3)_L,$<br>$PC \leftarrow \text{addr16}, SP \leftarrow SP - 2$                                                                 |         |
| CALLT    | [addr5]             | 1     | 8      | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow (PC + 1)_H, (SP - 2) \leftarrow (PC + 1)_L,$<br>$PC_H \leftarrow (00000000, \text{addr5} + 1),$<br>$PC_L \leftarrow (00000000, \text{addr5}), SP \leftarrow SP - 2$ |         |
| RET      |                     | 1     | 6      | $PC_H \leftarrow (SP + 1), PC_L \leftarrow (SP), SP \leftarrow SP + 2$                                                                                                                   |         |
| RETI     |                     | 1     | 8      | $PC_H \leftarrow (SP + 1), PC_L \leftarrow (SP),$<br>$PSW \leftarrow (SP + 2), SP \leftarrow SP + 3$                                                                                     | R R R   |
| PUSH     | PSW                 | 1     | 2      | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow PSW, SP \leftarrow SP - 1$                                                                                                                                          |         |
|          | rp                  | 1     | 4      | $(SP - 1) \leftarrow rp_H, (SP - 2) \leftarrow rp_L, SP \leftarrow SP - 2$                                                                                                               |         |
| POP      | PSW                 | 1     | 4      | $PSW \leftarrow (SP), SP \leftarrow SP + 1$                                                                                                                                              | R R R   |
|          | rp                  | 1     | 6      | $rp_H \leftarrow (SP + 1), rp_L \leftarrow (SP), SP \leftarrow SP + 2$                                                                                                                   |         |
| MOVW     | SP, AX              | 2     | 8      | $SP \leftarrow AX$                                                                                                                                                                       |         |
|          | AX, SP              | 2     | 6      | $AX \leftarrow SP$                                                                                                                                                                       |         |
| BR       | !addr16             | 3     | 6      | $PC \leftarrow \text{addr16}$                                                                                                                                                            |         |
|          | \$addr16            | 2     | 6      | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$                                                                                                                                                   |         |
|          | AX                  | 1     | 6      | $PC_H \leftarrow A, PC_L \leftarrow X$                                                                                                                                                   |         |
| BC       | \$saddr16           | 2     | 6      | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if CY = 1                                                                                                                                         |         |
| BNC      | \$saddr16           | 2     | 6      | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if CY = 0                                                                                                                                         |         |
| BZ       | \$saddr16           | 2     | 6      | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if Z = 1                                                                                                                                          |         |
| BNZ      | \$saddr16           | 2     | 6      | $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if Z = 0                                                                                                                                          |         |
| BT       | saddr.bit, \$addr16 | 4     | 10     | $PC \leftarrow PC + 4 + \text{jdisp8}$ if (saddr.bit) = 1                                                                                                                                |         |
|          | sfr.bit, \$addr16   | 4     | 10     | $PC \leftarrow PC + 4 + \text{jdisp8}$ if sfr.bit = 1                                                                                                                                    |         |
|          | A.bit, \$addr16     | 3     | 8      | $PC \leftarrow PC + 3 + \text{jdisp8}$ if A.bit = 1                                                                                                                                      |         |
|          | PSW.bit, \$addr16   | 4     | 10     | $PC \leftarrow PC + 4 + \text{jdisp8}$ if PSW.bit = 1                                                                                                                                    |         |
| BF       | saddr.bit, \$addr16 | 4     | 10     | $PC \leftarrow PC + 4 + \text{jdisp8}$ if (saddr.bit) = 0                                                                                                                                |         |
|          | sfr.bit, \$addr16   | 4     | 10     | $PC \leftarrow PC + 4 + \text{jdisp8}$ if sfr.bit = 0                                                                                                                                    |         |
|          | A.bit, \$addr16     | 3     | 8      | $PC \leftarrow PC + 3 + \text{jdisp8}$ if A.bit = 0                                                                                                                                      |         |
|          | PSW.bit, \$addr16   | 4     | 10     | $PC \leftarrow PC + 4 + \text{jdisp8}$ if PSW.bit = 0                                                                                                                                    |         |
| DBNZ     | B, \$addr16         | 2     | 6      | $B \leftarrow B - 1$ , then $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if B $\neq$ 0                                                                                                         |         |
|          | C, \$addr16         | 2     | 6      | $C \leftarrow C - 1$ , then $PC \leftarrow PC + 2 + \text{jdisp8}$ if C $\neq$ 0                                                                                                         |         |
|          | saddr, \$addr16     | 3     | 8      | $(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) - 1$ , then<br>$PC \leftarrow PC + 3 + \text{jdisp8}$ if (saddr) $\neq$ 0                                                                      |         |
| NOP      |                     | 1     | 2      | No Operation                                                                                                                                                                             |         |
| EI       |                     | 3     | 6      | $IE \leftarrow 1$ (Enable interrupt)                                                                                                                                                     |         |
| DI       |                     | 3     | 6      | $IE \leftarrow 0$ (Disable interrupt)                                                                                                                                                    |         |
| HALT     |                     | 1     | 2      | Set HALT mode                                                                                                                                                                            |         |
| STOP     |                     | 1     | 2      | Set STOP mode                                                                                                                                                                            |         |

**Remark** One instruction clock cycle is one CPU clock cycle ( $f_{CPU}$ ) selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).

## 21.3 Instructions Listed by Addressing Type

### (1) 8-bit instructions

MOV, XCH, ADD, ADDC, SUB, SUBC, AND, OR, XOR, CMP, INC, DEC, ROR, ROL, RORC, ROLC, PUSH, POP, DBNZ

| 2nd Operand<br>1st Operand | #byte                                                        | A   | r                                                                                                   | sfr        | saddr                                                               | !addr16                                                      | PSW | [DE]       | [HL]                                                                | [HL+byte]                                                           | \$addr16 | 1                          | None        |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|-------------|
| A                          | ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP        |     | MOV <sup>Note</sup><br>XCH <sup>Note</sup><br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV<br>XCH | MOV<br>XCH<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV | MOV<br>XCH | MOV<br>XCH<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV<br>XCH<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP |          | ROR<br>ROL<br>RORC<br>ROLC |             |
| r                          | MOV                                                          | MOV |                                                                                                     |            |                                                                     |                                                              |     |            |                                                                     |                                                                     |          |                            | INC<br>DEC  |
| B, C                       |                                                              |     |                                                                                                     |            |                                                                     |                                                              |     |            |                                                                     |                                                                     | DBNZ     |                            |             |
| sfr                        | MOV                                                          | MOV |                                                                                                     |            |                                                                     |                                                              |     |            |                                                                     |                                                                     |          |                            |             |
| saddr                      | MOV<br>ADD<br>ADDC<br>SUB<br>SUBC<br>AND<br>OR<br>XOR<br>CMP | MOV |                                                                                                     |            |                                                                     |                                                              |     |            |                                                                     |                                                                     | DBNZ     |                            | INC<br>DEC  |
| !addr16                    |                                                              | MOV |                                                                                                     |            |                                                                     |                                                              |     |            |                                                                     |                                                                     |          |                            |             |
| PSW                        | MOV                                                          | MOV |                                                                                                     |            |                                                                     |                                                              |     |            |                                                                     |                                                                     |          |                            | PUSH<br>POP |
| [DE]                       |                                                              | MOV |                                                                                                     |            |                                                                     |                                                              |     |            |                                                                     |                                                                     |          |                            |             |
| [HL]                       |                                                              | MOV |                                                                                                     |            |                                                                     |                                                              |     |            |                                                                     |                                                                     |          |                            |             |
| [HL+byte]                  |                                                              | MOV |                                                                                                     |            |                                                                     |                                                              |     |            |                                                                     |                                                                     |          |                            |             |

**Note** Except r = A.

**(2) 16-bit instructions**

MOVW, XCHW, ADDW, SUBW, CMPW, PUSH, POP, INCW, DECW

| 2nd Operand<br>1st Operand | #word                | AX                   | rp <sup>Note</sup> | saddrp | SP   | None                        |
|----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------|------|-----------------------------|
| AX                         | ADDW<br>SUBW<br>CMPW |                      | MOVW<br>XCHW       | MOVW   | MOVW |                             |
| rp                         | MOVW                 | MOVW <sup>Note</sup> |                    |        |      | INCW<br>DECW<br>PUSH<br>POP |
| saddrp                     |                      | MOVW                 |                    |        |      |                             |
| sp                         |                      | MOVW                 |                    |        |      |                             |

**Note** Only when rp = BC, DE, or HL.**(3) Bit manipulation instructions**

SET1, CLR1, NOT1, BT, BF

| 2nd Operand<br>1st Operand | \$addr16 | None                 |
|----------------------------|----------|----------------------|
| A.bit                      | BT<br>BF | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| sfr.bit                    | BT<br>BF | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| saddr.bit                  | BT<br>BF | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| PSW.bit                    | BT<br>BF | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| [HL].bit                   |          | SET1<br>CLR1         |
| CY                         |          | SET1<br>CLR1<br>NOT1 |

**(4) Call instructions/branch instructions**

CALL, CALLT, BR, BC, BNC, BZ, BNZ, DBNZ

| 2nd Operand<br>1st Operand | AX | !addr16    | [addr5] | \$addr16                     |
|----------------------------|----|------------|---------|------------------------------|
| Basic Instructions         | BR | CALL<br>BR | CALLT   | BR<br>BC<br>BNC<br>BZ<br>BNZ |
| Compound Instructions      |    |            |         | DBNZ                         |

**(5) Other instructions**

RET, RETI, NOP, EI, DI, HALT, STOP

**Absolute Maximum Ratings ( $T_A = 25^\circ\text{C}$ )**

| Parameter                     | Symbol    | Conditions                                                                                                                                                          | Ratings                                  | Unit                                     |
|-------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Power supply voltage          | $V_{DD}$  | $V_{DD} = AV_{DD}$                                                                                                                                                  | −0.3 to +6.5                             | V                                        |
|                               | $AV_{DD}$ |                                                                                                                                                                     |                                          |                                          |
|                               | $V_{PP}$  | $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 only, <b>Note 1</b>                                                                                                                        | −0.3 to +10.5                            | V                                        |
| Input voltage                 | $V_{I1}$  | P00 to P07, P10, P11, P20 to P25, P30 to P34, P60 to P67, P70 to P73 <sup>Note 2</sup> , P80 to P87 <sup>Note 2</sup> , X1, X2, XT1, XT2, $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ | −0.3 to $V_{DD} + 0.3$ <sup>Note 3</sup> | V                                        |
|                               | $V_{I2}$  | P50 to P53                                                                                                                                                          | N-ch open drain                          | −0.3 to +13                              |
|                               |           |                                                                                                                                                                     | On-chip pull-up resistor                 | −0.3 to $V_{DD} + 0.3$ <sup>Note 3</sup> |
| Output voltage                | $V_O$     | P00 to P07, P10, P11, P20 to P25, P30 to P34, P50 to P53, P80 to P87 <sup>Note 2</sup>                                                                              | −0.3 to $V_{DD} + 0.3$ <sup>Note 3</sup> | V                                        |
|                               |           | S0 to S15, S16 to S27 <sup>Note 2</sup> , COM0 to COM3                                                                                                              | −0.3 to $V_{LCO} + 0.3$                  | V                                        |
| Output current, high          | $I_{OH}$  | Per pin                                                                                                                                                             | −10                                      | mA                                       |
|                               |           | Total for all pins                                                                                                                                                  | −30                                      | mA                                       |
| Output current, low           | $I_{OL}$  | Per pin                                                                                                                                                             | 30                                       | mA                                       |
|                               |           | Total for all pins                                                                                                                                                  | 160                                      | mA                                       |
| Operating ambient temperature | $T_A$     | Normal operation                                                                                                                                                    | −40 to +85                               | $^\circ\text{C}$                         |
|                               |           | Flash memory programming                                                                                                                                            | 10 to 40                                 | $^\circ\text{C}$                         |
| Storage temperature           | $T_{stg}$ | $\mu$ PD789488, 789489                                                                                                                                              | −65 to +150                              | $^\circ\text{C}$                         |
|                               |           | $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489                                                                                                                                            | −40 to +125                              | $^\circ\text{C}$                         |

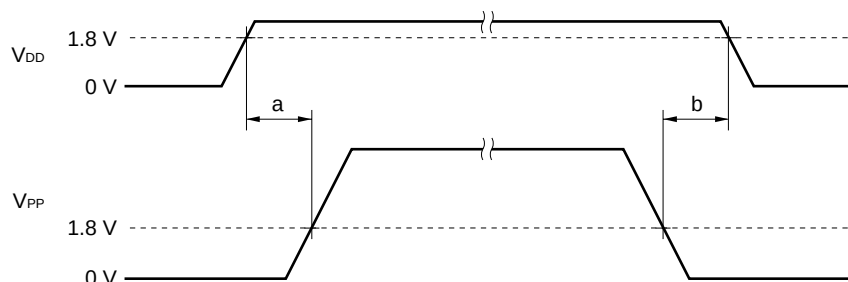
**Notes** 1. Make sure that the following conditions of the  $V_{PP}$  voltage application timing are satisfied when the flash memory is written.

• **When supply voltage rises**

$V_{PP}$  must exceed  $V_{DD}$  10  $\mu\text{s}$  or more after  $V_{DD}$  has reached the lower-limit value (1.8 V) of the operating voltage range (see a in the figure below).

• **When supply voltage drops**

$V_{DD}$  must be lowered 10  $\mu\text{s}$  or more after  $V_{PP}$  falls below the lower-limit value (1.8 V) of the operating voltage range of  $V_{DD}$  (see b in the figure below).

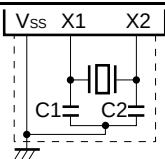
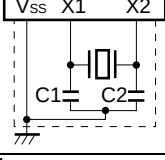
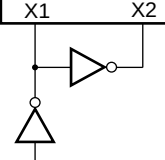
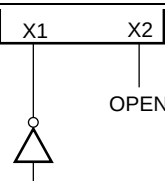


2. Only when selected by a mask option or port function register
3. 6.5 V or less

**Caution** Product quality may suffer if the absolute maximum rating is exceeded even momentarily for any parameter. That is, the absolute maximum ratings are rated values at which the product is on the verge of suffering physical damage, and therefore the product must be used under conditions that ensure that the absolute maximum ratings are not exceeded.

**Remark** Unless otherwise specified, the characteristics of alternate-function pins are the same as those of port pins.

**Main System Clock Oscillator Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V)**

| Resonator         | Recommended Circuit                                                               | Parameter                                              | Conditions                                             | MIN. | TYP. | MAX.     | Unit |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------|------|----------|------|
| Ceramic resonator |  | Oscillation frequency ( $f_x$ ) <sup>Note 1</sup>      |                                                        | 1.0  |      | 5.0      | MHz  |
|                   |                                                                                   | Oscillation stabilization time <sup>Note 2</sup>       | After $V_{DD}$ reaches oscillation voltage range MIN.  |      |      | 4        | ms   |
| Crystal resonator |  | Oscillation frequency( $f_x$ ) <sup>Note 1</sup>       |                                                        | 1.0  |      | 5.0      | MHz  |
|                   |                                                                                   | Oscillation stabilization time <sup>Note 2</sup>       | $V_{DD} = 4.5$ to $5.5$ V<br>$V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V |      |      | 10<br>30 | ms   |
| External clock    |  | X1 input frequency ( $f_x$ ) <sup>Note 1</sup>         |                                                        | 1.0  |      | 5.0      | MHz  |
|                   |                                                                                   | X1 input high-/low-level width ( $t_{xH}$ , $t_{xL}$ ) |                                                        | 85   |      | 500      | ns   |
|                   |  | X1 input frequency ( $f_x$ ) <sup>Note 1</sup>         | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                              | 1.0  |      | 5.0      | MHz  |
|                   |                                                                                   | X1 input high-/low-level width ( $t_{xH}$ , $t_{xL}$ ) | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                              | 85   |      | 500      | ns   |

**Notes** 1. Indicates only oscillator characteristics. Refer to **AC Characteristics** for instruction execution time.

2. Time required to stabilize oscillation after reset or STOP mode release.

**Cautions** 1. When using the main system clock oscillator, wire as follows in the area enclosed by the broken lines in the above figures to avoid an adverse effect from wiring capacitance.

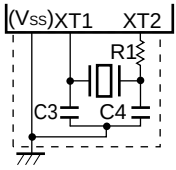
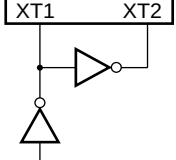
- Keep the wiring length as short as possible.
- Do not cross the wiring with the other signal lines.
- Do not route the wiring near a signal line through which a high fluctuating current flows.
- Always make the ground point of the oscillator capacitor the same potential as  $V_{SS}$ .
- Do not ground the capacitor to a ground pattern through which a high current flows.
- Do not fetch signals from the oscillator.

2. When the main system clock is stopped and the device is operating on the subsystem clock, wait until the oscillation stabilization time has been secured by the program before switching back to the main system clock.

**Remark** For the resonator selection and oscillator constant, customers are required to either evaluate the oscillation themselves or apply to the resonator manufacturer for evaluation.



**Subsystem Clock Oscillator Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V)**

| Resonator         | Recommended Circuit                                                               | Parameter                                                 | Conditions                | MIN. | TYP.   | MAX. | Unit          |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------|--------|------|---------------|
| Crystal resonator |  | Oscillation frequency ( $f_{XT}$ ) <sup>Note 1</sup>      |                           | 32   | 32.768 | 35   | kHz           |
|                   |                                                                                   | Oscillation stabilization time <sup>Note 2</sup>          | $V_{DD} = 4.5$ to $5.5$ V |      | 1.2    | 2    | s             |
|                   |                                                                                   |                                                           | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V |      |        | 10   |               |
| External clock    |  | XT1 input frequency ( $f_{XT}$ ) <sup>Note 1</sup>        |                           | 32   |        | 35   | kHz           |
|                   |                                                                                   | XT1 input high-/low-level width ( $t_{XTH}$ , $t_{XTL}$ ) |                           | 14.3 |        | 15.6 | $\mu\text{s}$ |

- Notes**
1. Indicates only oscillator characteristics. Refer to **AC Characteristics** for instruction execution time.
  2. Time required to stabilize oscillation after  $V_{DD}$  reaches oscillation voltage range MIN.

**Cautions**

1. When using the subsystem clock oscillator, wire as follows in the area enclosed by the broken lines in the above figure to avoid an adverse effect from wiring capacitance.

- Keep the wiring length as short as possible.
  - Do not cross the wiring with the other signal lines.
  - Do not route the wiring near a signal line through which a high fluctuating current flows.
  - Always make the ground point of the oscillator capacitor the same potential as  $V_{SS}$ .
  - Do not ground the capacitor to a ground pattern through which a high current flows.
  - Do not fetch signals from the oscillator.
2. The subsystem clock oscillator is designed as a low-amplitude circuit for reducing current consumption, and is more prone to malfunction due to noise than the main system clock oscillator. Particular care is therefore required with the wiring method when the subsystem clock is used.

**Remark** For the resonator selection and oscillator constant, customers are required to either evaluate the oscillation themselves or apply to the resonator manufacturer for evaluation.

**DC Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V) (1/6)**

| Parameter            | Symbol    | Conditions                                                                                         |                                                   | MIN.                      | TYP.        | MAX.        | Unit |
|----------------------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|-------------|------|
| Output current, low  | $I_{OL}$  | Per pin                                                                                            |                                                   |                           |             | 10          | mA   |
|                      |           | All pins                                                                                           |                                                   |                           |             | 80          | mA   |
| Output current, high | $I_{OH}$  | Per pin                                                                                            |                                                   |                           |             | -1          | mA   |
|                      |           | All pins                                                                                           |                                                   |                           |             | -15         | mA   |
| Input voltage, high  | $V_{IH1}$ | P10, P11, P60 to P67                                                                               | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | $0.7V_{DD}$               |             | $V_{DD}$    | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | $0.9V_{DD}$               |             | $V_{DD}$    | V    |
|                      | $V_{IH2}$ | P50 to P53                                                                                         | N-ch open drain                                   | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V | $0.7V_{DD}$ | 12          | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    |                                                   | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V | $0.9V_{DD}$ | 12          | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | On-chip pull-up resistor                          | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V |             | $V_{DD}$    | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    |                                                   | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V | $0.9V_{DD}$ | $V_{DD}$    | V    |
|                      | $V_{IH3}$ | RESET, P00 to P07, P20 to P25, P30 to P34, P70 to P73 <sup>Note</sup> , P80 to P87 <sup>Note</sup> | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | $0.8V_{DD}$               |             | $V_{DD}$    | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | $0.9V_{DD}$               |             | $V_{DD}$    | V    |
|                      | $V_{IH4}$ | X1, X2, XT1, XT2                                                                                   | $V_{DD} = 4.5$ to $5.5$ V                         | $V_{DD} - 0.5$            |             | $V_{DD}$    | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | $V_{DD} - 0.1$            |             | $V_{DD}$    | V    |
| Input voltage, low   | $V_{IL1}$ | P10, P11, P60 to P67                                                                               | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 0                         |             | $0.3V_{DD}$ | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 0                         |             | $0.1V_{DD}$ | V    |
|                      | $V_{IL2}$ | P50 to P53                                                                                         | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 0                         |             | $0.3V_{DD}$ | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 0                         |             | $0.1V_{DD}$ | V    |
|                      | $V_{IL3}$ | RESET, P00 to P07, P20 to P25, P30 to P34, P70 to P73 <sup>Note</sup> , P80 to P87 <sup>Note</sup> | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 0                         |             | $0.2V_{DD}$ | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 0                         |             | $0.1V_{DD}$ | V    |
|                      | $V_{IL4}$ | X1, X2, XT1, XT2                                                                                   | $V_{DD} = 4.5$ to $5.5$ V                         | 0                         |             | 0.4         | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 0                         |             | 0.1         | V    |
| Output voltage, high | $V_{OH}$  | $V_{DD} = 4.5$ to $5.5$ V, $I_{OH} = -1$ mA                                                        |                                                   | $V_{DD} - 1.0$            |             |             | V    |
|                      |           | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V, $I_{OH} = -100$ $\mu$ A                                                 |                                                   | $V_{DD} - 0.5$            |             |             | V    |
| Output voltage, low  | $V_{OL1}$ | P00 to P07, P10, P11, P20 to P25, P30 to P34, P80 to P87 <sup>Note</sup>                           | $4.5 \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5$ V, $I_{OL} = 10$ mA    |                           |             | 1.0         | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | $1.8 \leq V_{DD} < 4.5$ V, $I_{OL} = 400$ $\mu$ A |                           |             | 0.5         | V    |
|                      | $V_{OL2}$ | P50 to P53                                                                                         | $4.5 \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5$ V, $I_{OL} = 10$ mA    |                           |             | 1.0         | V    |
|                      |           |                                                                                                    | $1.8 \leq V_{DD} < 4.5$ V, $I_{OL} = 1.6$ mA      |                           |             | 0.4         | V    |

**Note** Only when selected by a mask option or port function register**Remark** Unless otherwise specified, the characteristics of alternate-function pins are the same as those of port pins.

**DC Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V) (2/6)**

| Parameter                                      | Symbol     | Conditions     |                                                                                                                               | MIN. | TYP. | MAX.                 | Unit             |
|------------------------------------------------|------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|----------------------|------------------|
| Input leakage current, high                    | $I_{LH1}$  | $V_I = V_{DD}$ | P00 to P07, P10, P11, P20 to P25, P30 to P34, P60 to P67, P70 to P73 <sup>Note 1</sup> , P80 to P87 <sup>Note 1</sup> , RESET |      |      | 3                    | $\mu\text{A}$    |
|                                                | $I_{LH2}$  |                | X1, X2, XT1, XT2                                                                                                              |      |      | 20                   | $\mu\text{A}$    |
|                                                | $I_{LH3}$  | $V_I = 12$ V   | P50 to P53 (N-ch open drain)                                                                                                  |      |      | 20                   | $\mu\text{A}$    |
| Input leakage current, low                     | $I_{LIL1}$ | $V_I = 0$ V    | P00 to P07, P10, P11, P20 to P25, P30 to P34, P60 to P67, P70 to P73 <sup>Note 1</sup> , P80 to P87 <sup>Note 1</sup> , RESET |      |      | -3                   | $\mu\text{A}$    |
|                                                | $I_{LIL2}$ |                | X1, X2, XT1, XT2                                                                                                              |      |      | -20                  | $\mu\text{A}$    |
|                                                | $I_{LIL3}$ |                | P50 to P53 (N-ch open drain)                                                                                                  |      |      | -3 <sup>Note 2</sup> | $\mu\text{A}$    |
| Output leakage current, high                   | $I_{LOH}$  | $V_O = V_{DD}$ |                                                                                                                               |      |      | 3                    | $\mu\text{A}$    |
| Output leakage current, low                    | $I_{LOL}$  | $V_O = 0$ V    |                                                                                                                               |      |      | -3                   | $\mu\text{A}$    |
| Software pull-up resistor                      | $R_1$      | $V_I = 0$ V    | P00 to P07, P10, P11, P20 to P25, P30 to P34                                                                                  | 50   | 100  | 200                  | $\text{k}\Omega$ |
| Mask option pull-up resistor <sup>Note 3</sup> | $R_2$      | $V_I = 0$ V    | P50 to P53                                                                                                                    | 10   | 30   | 60                   | $\text{k}\Omega$ |

- Notes**
1. Only when selected by a mask option or port function register
  2. If there is no on-chip pull-up resistor for P50 to P53 (specified by a mask option) and if P50 to P53 have been set to input mode when a read instruction is executed to read from P50 to P53, a low-level input leakage current of up to  $-60 \mu\text{A}$  flows during only one cycle. At all other times, the maximum leakage current is  $-3 \mu\text{A}$ .
  3. Mask ROM version only

**Remark** Unless otherwise specified, the characteristics of alternate-function pins are the same as those of port pins.

**DC Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V) (3/6)**

| Parameter                                                   | Symbol    | Conditions                                                                                                                                          | MIN.                                                               | TYP. | MAX. | Unit    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|---------|
| Power supply current <sup>Note 1</sup><br>( $\mu$ PD789488) | $I_{DD1}$ | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation operation mode<br>( $C1 = C2 = 22$ pF)                                                                                  | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 2</sup>                      | 2    | 3.5  | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.4  | 1    | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.2  | 0.5  | mA      |
|                                                             | $I_{DD2}$ | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation HALT mode <sup>Note 4</sup><br>( $C1 = C2 = 22$ pF)                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 2</sup>                      | 0.96 | 1.92 | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.26 | 0.76 | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.1  | 0.34 | mA      |
|                                                             | $I_{DD3}$ | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation operation mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>( $C3 = C4 = 22$ pF, $R1 = 220$ k $\Omega$ )                                     | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 33   | 67   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 10   | 31   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 5    | 16   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation operation $\times 4$ multiplication operation mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>( $C3 = C4 = 22$ pF, $R1 = 220$ k $\Omega$ ) | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 130  | 200  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 50   | 110  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                    |      |      |         |
|                                                             | $I_{DD4}$ | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation HALT mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>( $C3 = C4 = 22$ pF, $R1 = 220$ k $\Omega$ )                                          | LCD not operating <sup>Note 4</sup><br>$V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ | 25   | 60   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 8    | 28   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 5    | 13   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           | LCD operating <sup>Note 7</sup>                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 28   | 69   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 10   | 36   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 7    | 20   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation $\times 4$ multiplication HALT mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>( $C3 = C4 = 22$ pF, $R1 = 220$ k $\Omega$ )                | LCD not operating <sup>Note 4</sup><br>$V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ | 25   | 60   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 8    | 28   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | LCD operating <sup>Note 7</sup><br>$V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$     | 28   | 69   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 10   | 36   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             | $I_{DD5}$ | STOP mode <sup>Note 6</sup>                                                                                                                         | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 0.1  | 10   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 0.05 | 5    | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 0.05 | 3    | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             | $I_{DD6}$ | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation A/D operating mode <sup>Note 8</sup><br>( $C1 = C2 = 22$ pF)                                                            | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 2</sup>                      | 3    | 5.2  | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 1.1  | 2    | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.7  | 1.5  | mA      |

- Notes**
1. The port current (including the current that flows to on-chip pull-up resistors) is not included.
  2. High-speed mode operation (when the processor clock control register (PCC) is set to 00H)
  3. Low-speed mode operation (when PCC is set to 02H)
  4. When the LCD is not operating and the booster circuit is operating (LCDON0 = 0, VAON0 = 1, LIPS0 = 1).
  5. When the main system clock is stopped
  6. When the LCD is not operating (LCDON0 = 0, VAON0 = 0, LIPS0 = 0)
  7. Then the LCD is operating (LCDON0 = 1, VAON0 = 1, LIPS0 = 1)
  8. This is the total current that flows to  $V_{DD}$  and  $AV_{DD}$ .

**Remark** Unless otherwise specified, the characteristics of alternate-function pins are the same as those of port pins.

**DC Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V) (4/6)**

| Parameter                                                    | Symbol           | Conditions                                                                                                                                    |                                     | MIN.                                                 | TYP. | MAX. | Unit |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|------|------|------|---------|
| Power supply current <sup>Note 1</sup><br>( $\mu$ PD78F9488) | I <sub>DD1</sub> | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation operation mode<br>(C1 = C2 = 22 pF)                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 2</sup> |      | 5.5  | 9.0  | mA      |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup> |      | 1.3  | 2.3  | mA      |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup> |      | 0.8  | 1.6  | mA      |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD2</sub> | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation HALT mode <sup>Note 4</sup><br>(C1 = C2 = 22 pF)                                                                  |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 2</sup> |      | 1.5  | 2.1  | mA      |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup> |      | 0.41 | 0.85 | mA      |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup> |      | 0.2  | 0.43 | mA      |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD3</sub> | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation operation mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>(C3 = C4 = 22 pF, R1 = 220k $\Omega$ )                                     |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 115  | 200  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 85   | 140  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 70   | 110  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation operation $\times$ 4 multiplication operation mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>(C3 = C4 = 22 pF, R1 = 220k $\Omega$ ) |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 315  | 480  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 200  | 300  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                      |      |      |      |         |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD4</sub> | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation HALT mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>(C3 = C4 = 22 pF, R1 = 220k $\Omega$ )                                          | LCD not operating <sup>Note 4</sup> | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 25   | 65   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 8    | 29   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 5    | 20   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               | LCD operating <sup>Note 7</sup>     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 28   | 70   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 10   | 34   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 7    | 25   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation $\times$ 4 multiplication HALT mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>(C3 = C4 = 22 pF, R1 = 220k $\Omega$ )                | LCD not operating <sup>Note 4</sup> | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 25   | 65   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 8    | 29   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               | LCD operating <sup>Note 7</sup>     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 28   | 70   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 10   | 34   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                      |      |      |      |         |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                      |      |      |      |         |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD5</sub> | STOP mode <sup>Note 6</sup>                                                                                                                   |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 0.1  | 10   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 0.05 | 5    | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm 10\%$                   |      | 0.05 | 3    | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD6</sub> | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation A/D operating mode <sup>Note 8</sup><br>(C1 = C2 = 22 pF)                                                         |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 2</sup> |      | 6.5  | 10.2 | mA      |
| V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>         |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                      | 2.0  | 3.3  | mA   |         |
| V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>         |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                      | 1.3  | 2.6  | mA   |         |

- Notes**
1. The port current (including the current that flows to on-chip pull-up resistors) is not included.
  2. High-speed mode operation (when the processor clock control register (PCC) is set to 00H)
  3. Low-speed mode operation (when PCC is set to 02H)
  4. When the LCD is not operating and the booster circuit is operating (LCDON0 = 0, VAON0 = 1, LIPS0 = 1).
  5. When the main system clock is stopped
  6. When the LCD is not operating (LCDON0 = 0, VAON0 = 0, LIPS0 = 0)
  7. Then the LCD is operating (LCDON0 = 1, VAON0 = 1, LIPS0 = 1)
  8. This is the total current that flows to V<sub>DD</sub> and AV<sub>DD</sub>.

**Remark** Unless otherwise specified, the characteristics of alternate-function pins are the same as those of port pins.

**DC Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V) (5/6)**

| Parameter                                                   | Symbol    | Conditions                                                                                                                                          | MIN.                                                               | TYP. | MAX. | Unit    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|---------|
| Power supply current <sup>Note 1</sup><br>( $\mu$ PD789489) | $I_{DD1}$ | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation operation mode<br>( $C1 = C2 = 22$ pF)                                                                                  | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 2</sup>                      | 2.5  | 5.0  | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.5  | 1.2  | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.3  | 0.6  | mA      |
|                                                             | $I_{DD2}$ | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation HALT mode <sup>Note 4</sup><br>( $C1 = C2 = 22$ pF)                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 2</sup>                      | 1.0  | 2.0  | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.35 | 0.8  | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.1  | 0.4  | mA      |
|                                                             | $I_{DD3}$ | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation operation mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>( $C3 = C4 = 22$ pF, $R1 = 220$ k $\Omega$ )                                     | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 38   | 100  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 13   | 50   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 7    | 25   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation operation $\times 4$ multiplication operation mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>( $C3 = C4 = 22$ pF, $R1 = 220$ k $\Omega$ ) | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 150  | 250  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 75   | 160  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                    |      |      |         |
|                                                             | $I_{DD4}$ | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation HALT mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>( $C3 = C4 = 22$ pF, $R1 = 220$ k $\Omega$ )                                          | LCD not operating <sup>Note 4</sup><br>$V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ | 25   | 70   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 8    | 32   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 5    | 15   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           | LCD operating <sup>Note 7</sup>                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 28   | 79   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 10   | 40   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 7    | 27   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation $\times 4$ multiplication HALT mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>( $C3 = C4 = 22$ pF, $R1 = 220$ k $\Omega$ )                | LCD not operating <sup>Note 4</sup><br>$V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ | 25   | 70   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 8    | 32   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | LCD operating <sup>Note 7</sup><br>$V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$     | 28   | 79   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 10   | 40   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             | $I_{DD5}$ | STOP mode <sup>Note 6</sup>                                                                                                                         | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 0.1  | 10   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 0.05 | 5    | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$                                        | 0.05 | 3    | $\mu$ A |
|                                                             | $I_{DD6}$ | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation A/D operating mode <sup>Note 8</sup><br>( $C1 = C2 = 22$ pF)                                                            | $V_{DD} = 5.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 2</sup>                      | 5.0  | 6.7  | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 3.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 1.5  | 2.2  | mA      |
|                                                             |           |                                                                                                                                                     | $V_{DD} = 2.0$ V $\pm 10\%$ <sup>Note 3</sup>                      | 0.8  | 1.6  | mA      |

- Notes**
1. The port current (including the current that flows to on-chip pull-up resistors) is not included.
  2. High-speed mode operation (when the processor clock control register (PCC) is set to 00H)
  3. Low-speed mode operation (when PCC is set to 02H)
  4. When the LCD is not operating and the booster circuit is operating (LCDON0 = 0, VAON0 = 1, LIPS0 = 1).
  5. When the main system clock is stopped
  6. When the LCD is not operating (LCDON0 = 0, VAON0 = 0, LIPS0 = 0)
  7. Then the LCD is operating (LCDON0 = 1, VAON0 = 1, LIPS0 = 1)
  8. This is the total current that flows to  $V_{DD}$  and  $AV_{DD}$ .

**Remark** Unless otherwise specified, the characteristics of alternate-function pins are the same as those of port pins.

**DC Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V) (6/6)**

| Parameter                                                    | Symbol           | Conditions                                                                                                                                    |                                     | MIN.                                                | TYP. | MAX. | Unit |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------|------|------|---------|
| Power supply current <sup>Note 1</sup><br>( $\mu$ PD78F9489) | I <sub>DD1</sub> | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation operation mode<br>(C1 = C2 = 22 pF)                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10% <sup>Note 2</sup> |      | 6.0  | 12.0 | mA      |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10% <sup>Note 3</sup> |      | 1.6  | 3.2  | mA      |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm$ 10% <sup>Note 3</sup> |      | 1.0  | 2.5  | mA      |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD2</sub> | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation HALT mode <sup>Note 4</sup><br>(C1 = C2 = 22 pF)                                                                  |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10% <sup>Note 2</sup> |      | 1.6  | 3.0  | mA      |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10% <sup>Note 3</sup> |      | 0.5  | 1.2  | mA      |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm$ 10% <sup>Note 3</sup> |      | 0.3  | 0.6  | mA      |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD3</sub> | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation operation mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>(C3 = C4 = 22 pF, R1 = 220k $\Omega$ )                                     |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 130  | 250  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 90   | 180  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 80   | 160  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation operation $\times$ 4 multiplication operation mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>(C3 = C4 = 22 pF, R1 = 220k $\Omega$ ) |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 330  | 550  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 250  | 400  | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                     |      |      |      |         |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD4</sub> | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation HALT mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>(C3 = C4 = 22 pF, R1 = 220k $\Omega$ )                                          | LCD not operating <sup>Note 4</sup> | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 25   | 70   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 8    | 32   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 5    | 15   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               | LCD operating <sup>Note 7</sup>     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 28   | 79   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 10   | 40   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 7    | 27   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  | 32.768 kHz crystal oscillation $\times$ 4 multiplication HALT mode <sup>Note 5</sup><br>(C3 = C4 = 22 pF, R1 = 220k $\Omega$ )                | LCD not operating <sup>Note 4</sup> | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 25   | 70   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 8    | 32   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               | LCD operating <sup>Note 7</sup>     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 28   | 79   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 10   | 40   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                     |      |      |      |         |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                     |      |      |      |         |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD5</sub> | STOP mode <sup>Note 6</sup>                                                                                                                   |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 0.1  | 10   | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 0.05 | 5    | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm$ 10%                   |      | 0.05 | 3    | $\mu$ A |
|                                                              | I <sub>DD6</sub> | 5.0 MHz crystal oscillation A/D operating mode <sup>Note 8</sup><br>(C1 = C2 = 22 pF)                                                         |                                     | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0 V $\pm$ 10% <sup>Note 2</sup> |      | 7.0  | 14.0 | mA      |
| V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0 V $\pm$ 10% <sup>Note 3</sup>          |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                     | 2.3  | 4.2  | mA   |         |
| V <sub>DD</sub> = 2.0 V $\pm$ 10% <sup>Note 3</sup>          |                  |                                                                                                                                               |                                     |                                                     | 1.5  | 3.5  | mA   |         |

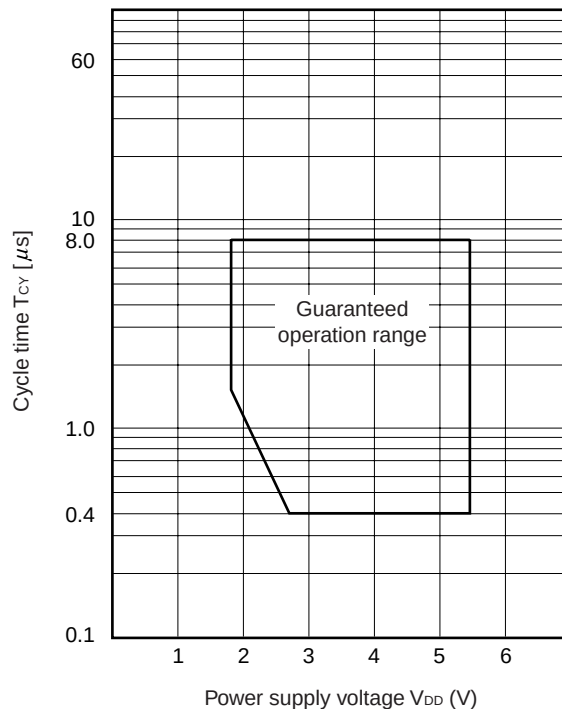
- Notes**
1. The port current (including the current that flows to on-chip pull-up resistors) is not included.
  2. High-speed mode operation (when the processor clock control register (PCC) is set to 00H)
  3. Low-speed mode operation (when PCC is set to 02H)
  4. When the LCD is not operating and the booster circuit is operating (LCDON0 = 0, VAON0 = 1, LIPS0 = 1).
  5. When the main system clock is stopped
  6. When the LCD is not operating (LCDON0 = 0, VAON0 = 0, LIPS0 = 0)
  7. Then the LCD is operating (LCDON0 = 1, VAON0 = 1, LIPS0 = 1)
  8. This is the total current that flows to  $V_{DD}$  and  $AV_{DD}$ .

**Remark** Unless otherwise specified, the characteristics of alternate-function pins are the same as those of port pins.

## AC Characteristics

(1) Basic operation ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V)

| Parameter                                       | Symbol                     | Conditions                                          |                                                                  | MIN.  | TYP. | MAX. | Unit          |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|------|------|---------------|
| Cycle time (minimum instruction execution time) | $T_{CY}$                   | Operating with main system clock                    | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                                        | 0.4   |      | 8.0  | $\mu\text{s}$ |
|                                                 |                            |                                                     | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                                        | 1.6   |      | 8.0  | $\mu\text{s}$ |
|                                                 |                            | Operating with subsystem clock                      | Original oscillation operation<br>$V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V      | 114   | 122  | 125  | $\mu\text{s}$ |
|                                                 |                            |                                                     | $\times 4$ multiplication operation<br>$V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V | 14.3  | 15.3 | 15.6 | $\mu\text{s}$ |
| Capture input high-/low-level width             | $t_{CPTH}$ ,<br>$t_{CPTL}$ | CPT20                                               |                                                                  | 10    |      |      | $\mu\text{s}$ |
| TMI60, TMI61 input frequency                    | $f_{TI}$                   | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                           |                                                                  | 0     |      | 4    | MHz           |
|                                                 |                            | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                           |                                                                  | 0     |      | 275  | kHz           |
| TMI60, TMI61 input high-/low-level width        | $t_{TTH}$ ,<br>$t_{TTL}$   | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                           |                                                                  | 0.125 |      |      | $\mu\text{s}$ |
|                                                 |                            | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                           |                                                                  | 1.8   |      |      | $\mu\text{s}$ |
| Interrupt input high-/low-level width           | $t_{INTH}$ ,<br>$t_{INTL}$ | INTP0 to INTP3                                      |                                                                  | 10    |      |      | $\mu\text{s}$ |
| Key return input low-level width                | $t_{KRL}$                  | KR0 to KR7 ( $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488)               |                                                                  | 10    |      |      | $\mu\text{s}$ |
|                                                 |                            | KR00 to KR07, KR10 to KR17 ( $\mu$ 789489, 78F9489) |                                                                  | 10    |      |      | $\mu\text{s}$ |
| RESET low-level width                           | $t_{RSL}$                  |                                                     |                                                                  | 10    |      |      | $\mu\text{s}$ |

 $T_{CY}$  vs.  $V_{DD}$  (main system clock)



(2) Serial interface 20 (SIO20) ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V)

## (a) 3-wire serial I/O mode (internal clock output)

| Parameter                                                          | Symbol                           | Conditions                                        | MIN.                      | TYP. | MAX. | Unit |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------|------|------|
| $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ cycle time                               | $t_{\text{KCY1}}$                | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 800                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 3200                      |      |      | ns   |
| $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ high-/low-level width                    | $t_{\text{KH1}}, t_{\text{KL1}}$ | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | $t_{\text{KCY1}}/2-50$    |      |      | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | $t_{\text{KCY1}}/2-150$   |      |      | ns   |
| SI20 setup time (to $\overline{\text{SCK20}}\uparrow$ )            | $t_{\text{SIK1}}$                | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 150                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 500                       |      |      | ns   |
| SI20 hold time (from $\overline{\text{SCK20}}\uparrow$ )           | $t_{\text{SH1}}$                 | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 400                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 600                       |      |      | ns   |
| Delay time from $\overline{\text{SCK20}}\downarrow$ to SO20 output | $t_{\text{KSO1}}$                | $R = 1$ k $\Omega$ , $C = 100$ pF <sup>Note</sup> | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V | 0    | 250  | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  |                                                   | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V | 0    | 1000 | ns   |

**Note** R and C are the load resistance and load capacitance of the SO20 output line.

## (b) 3-wire serial I/O mode (external clock input)

| Parameter                                                          | Symbol                           | Conditions                                        | MIN.                      | TYP. | MAX. | Unit |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------|------|------|
| $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ cycle time                               | $t_{\text{KCY2}}$                | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 800                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 3200                      |      |      | ns   |
| $\overline{\text{SCK20}}$ high-/low-level width                    | $t_{\text{KH2}}, t_{\text{KL2}}$ | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 400                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 1600                      |      |      | ns   |
| SI20 setup time (to $\overline{\text{SCK20}}\uparrow$ )            | $t_{\text{SIK2}}$                | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 100                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 150                       |      |      | ns   |
| SI20 hold time (from $\overline{\text{SCK20}}\uparrow$ )           | $t_{\text{SH2}}$                 | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                         | 400                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                         | 600                       |      |      | ns   |
| Delay time from $\overline{\text{SCK20}}\downarrow$ to SO20 output | $t_{\text{KSO2}}$                | $R = 1$ k $\Omega$ , $C = 100$ pF <sup>Note</sup> | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V | 0    | 300  | ns   |
|                                                                    |                                  |                                                   | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V | 0    | 1000 | ns   |

**Note** R and C are the load resistance and load capacitance of the SO20 output line.

## (c) UART mode (dedicated baud rate generator output)

| Parameter     | Symbol | Conditions                | MIN. | TYP. | MAX.  | Unit |
|---------------|--------|---------------------------|------|------|-------|------|
| Transfer rate |        | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V |      |      | 78125 | bps  |
|               |        | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V |      |      | 19531 | bps  |

## (d) UART mode (external clock input)

| Parameter                    | Symbol                  | Conditions                               | MIN. | TYP. | MAX.  | Unit    |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------------|------|------|-------|---------|
| ASCK20 cycle time            | $t_{KCY3}$              | $V_{DD} = 2.7 \text{ to } 5.5 \text{ V}$ | 800  |      |       | ns      |
|                              |                         | $V_{DD} = 1.8 \text{ to } 5.5 \text{ V}$ | 3200 |      |       | ns      |
| ASCK20 high-/low-level width | $t_{KH3},$<br>$t_{KL3}$ | $V_{DD} = 2.7 \text{ to } 5.5 \text{ V}$ | 400  |      |       | ns      |
|                              |                         | $V_{DD} = 1.8 \text{ to } 5.5 \text{ V}$ | 1600 |      |       | ns      |
| Transfer rate                |                         | $V_{DD} = 2.7 \text{ to } 5.5 \text{ V}$ |      |      | 39063 | bps     |
|                              |                         | $V_{DD} = 1.8 \text{ to } 5.5 \text{ V}$ |      |      | 9766  | bps     |
| ASCK20 rise/fall time        | $t_R,$<br>$t_F$         |                                          |      |      | 1     | $\mu$ s |

**(3) Serial interface 1A0 (SIO1A0) ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V)****(a) 3-wire serial I/O mode, 3-wire serial I/O mode with automatic transmit/receive function  
(internal clock output)**

| Parameter                                            | Symbol                   | Conditions                                    | MIN.                      | TYP. | MAX. | Unit |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------|------|------|
| SCK10 cycle time                                     | $t_{KCY4}$               | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                     | 800                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                      |                          | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                     | 3200                      |      |      | ns   |
| SCK10 high-/low-level width                          | $t_{KH4}$ ,<br>$t_{KL4}$ | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                     | $t_{KCY4}/2-50$           |      |      | ns   |
|                                                      |                          | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                     | $t_{KCY4}/2-150$          |      |      | ns   |
| SI10 setup time<br>(to SCK10 $\uparrow$ )            | $t_{SIK4}$               | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                     | 150                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                      |                          | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                     | 500                       |      |      | ns   |
| SI10 hold time<br>(from SCK10 $\uparrow$ )           | $t_{KSI4}$               | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                     | 400                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                      |                          | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                     | 600                       |      |      | ns   |
| Delay time from SCK10 $\downarrow$<br>to SO10 output | $t_{KSO4}$               | R = 1 k $\Omega$ , C = 100 pF <sup>Note</sup> | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V | 0    | 250  | ns   |
|                                                      |                          |                                               | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V | 0    | 1000 | ns   |

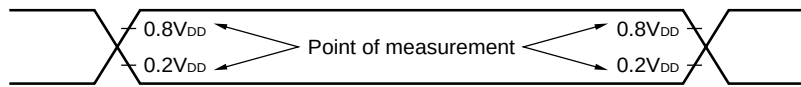
**Note** R and C are the load resistance and load capacitance of the SO10 output line.

**(b) 3-wire serial I/O mode, 3-wire serial I/O mode with automatic transmit/receive function  
(external clock input)**

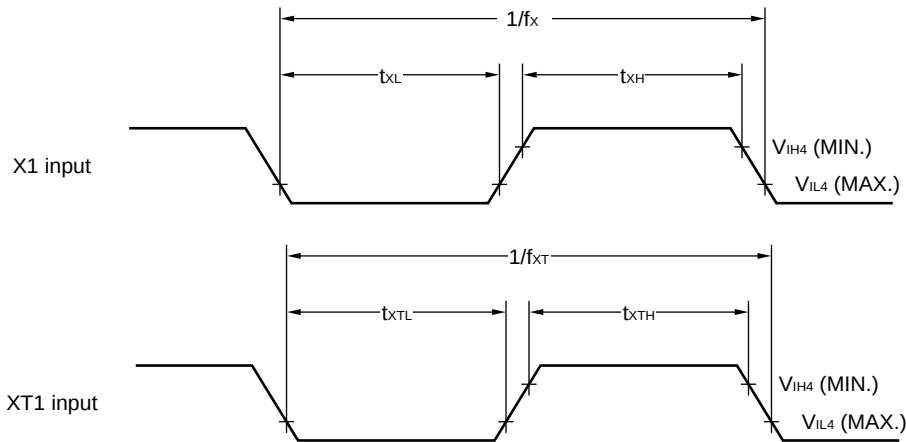
| Parameter                                            | Symbol                   | Conditions                                    | MIN.                      | TYP. | MAX. | Unit |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------|------|------|
| SCK10 cycle time                                     | $t_{KCY5}$               | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                     | 800                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                      |                          | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                     | 3200                      |      |      | ns   |
| SCK10 high-/low-level width                          | $t_{KH5}$ ,<br>$t_{KL5}$ | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                     | 400                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                      |                          | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                     | 1600                      |      |      | ns   |
| SI10 setup time<br>(to SCK10 $\uparrow$ )            | $t_{SIK5}$               | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                     | 100                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                      |                          | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                     | 150                       |      |      | ns   |
| SI10 hold time<br>(from SCK10 $\uparrow$ )           | $t_{KSI5}$               | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V                     | 400                       |      |      | ns   |
|                                                      |                          | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V                     | 600                       |      |      | ns   |
| Delay time from SCK10 $\downarrow$<br>to SO10 output | $t_{KSO5}$               | R = 1 k $\Omega$ , C = 100 pF <sup>Note</sup> | $V_{DD} = 2.7$ to $5.5$ V | 0    | 300  | ns   |
|                                                      |                          |                                               | $V_{DD} = 1.8$ to $5.5$ V | 0    | 1000 | ns   |

**Note** R and C are the load resistance and load capacitance of the SO10 output line.

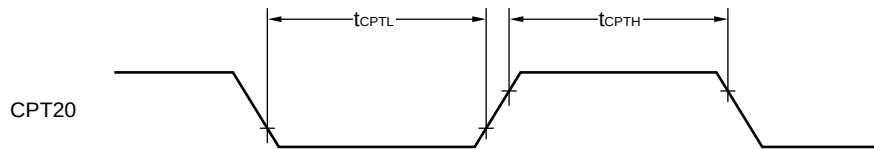
### AC Timing Measurement Points (Excluding X1 and XT1 Inputs)



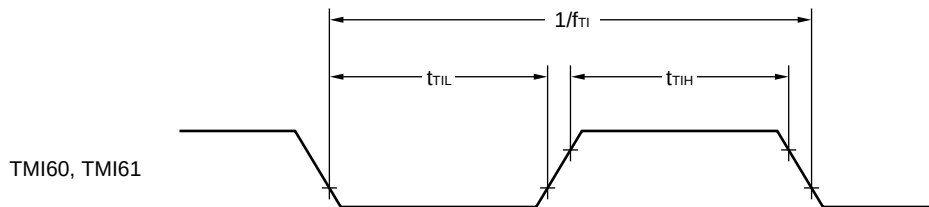
### Clock Timing



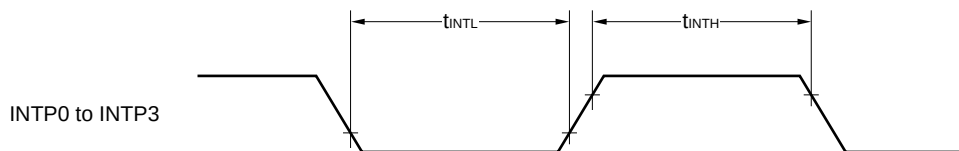
### Capture Input Timing



### TMI Timing

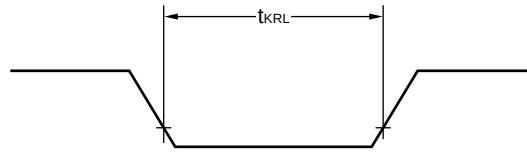


### Interrupt Input Timing

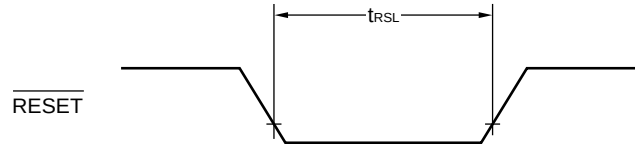


### Key Return Input Timing

KR0 to KR7  
( $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488),  
KR00 to KR07, KR10 to KR17  
( $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489)

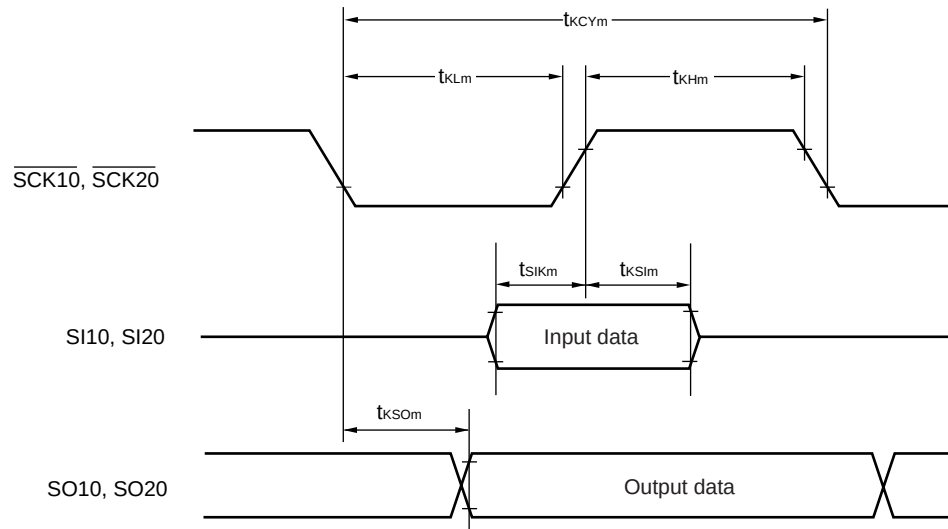


### RESET Input Timing



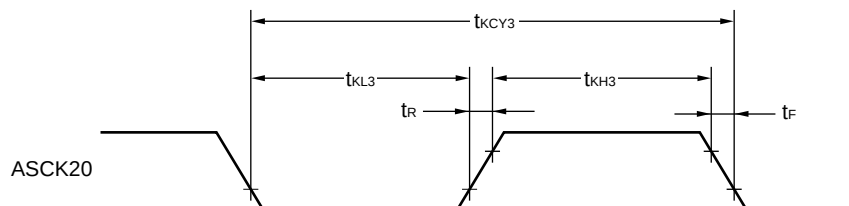
### Serial Transfer Timing

3-wire serial I/O mode:



**Remark**  $m = 1, 2, 4, 5$

UART mode (external clock input):



**10-Bit A/D Converter Characteristics****( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $1.8\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} = V_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$ ,  $AV_{SS} = V_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$ )**

| Parameter                                  | Symbol     | Conditions                                    | MIN. | TYP.      | MAX.      | Unit          |
|--------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------|------|-----------|-----------|---------------|
| Resolution                                 |            |                                               | 10   | 10        | 10        | bit           |
| Overall error <sup>Note</sup>              |            | $4.5\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$ |      | $\pm 0.2$ | $\pm 0.4$ | %FSR          |
|                                            |            | $2.7\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 4.5\text{ V}$    |      | $\pm 0.4$ | $\pm 0.6$ | %FSR          |
|                                            |            | $1.8\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 2.7\text{ V}$    |      | $\pm 0.8$ | $\pm 1.2$ | %FSR          |
| Conversion time                            | $t_{CONV}$ | $4.5\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$ | 14   |           | 100       | $\mu\text{s}$ |
|                                            |            | $2.7\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 4.5\text{ V}$    | 14   |           | 100       | $\mu\text{s}$ |
|                                            |            | $1.8\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 2.7\text{ V}$    | 28   |           | 100       | $\mu\text{s}$ |
| Zero-scale error <sup>Note</sup>           | AINL       | $4.5\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$ |      |           | $\pm 0.4$ | %FSR          |
|                                            |            | $2.7\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 4.5\text{ V}$    |      |           | $\pm 0.6$ | %FSR          |
|                                            |            | $1.8\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 2.7\text{ V}$    |      |           | $\pm 1.2$ | %FSR          |
| Full-scale error <sup>Note</sup>           | AINL       | $4.5\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$ |      |           | $\pm 0.4$ | %FSR          |
|                                            |            | $2.7\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 4.5\text{ V}$    |      |           | $\pm 0.6$ | %FSR          |
|                                            |            | $1.8\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 2.7\text{ V}$    |      |           | $\pm 1.2$ | %FSR          |
| Non-integral linearity <sup>Note</sup>     | INL        | $4.5\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$ |      |           | $\pm 2.5$ | LSB           |
|                                            |            | $2.7\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 4.5\text{ V}$    |      |           | $\pm 4.5$ | LSB           |
|                                            |            | $1.8\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 2.7\text{ V}$    |      |           | $\pm 8.5$ | LSB           |
| Non-differential linearity <sup>Note</sup> | DNL        | $4.5\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$ |      |           | $\pm 1.5$ | LSB           |
|                                            |            | $2.7\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 4.5\text{ V}$    |      |           | $\pm 2.0$ | LSB           |
|                                            |            | $1.8\text{ V} \leq AV_{DD} < 2.7\text{ V}$    |      |           | $\pm 3.5$ | LSB           |
| Analog input voltage                       | $V_{IAN}$  |                                               | 0    |           | $AV_{DD}$ | V             |

**Note** Excludes quantization error ( $\pm 0.05\%$ )**Remark** FSR: Full scale range

**LCD Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V)**

| Parameter                                                   | Symbol       | Conditions                                       |                                      | MIN.               | TYP.        | MAX.        | Unit |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------|-------------|------|
| LCD output voltage variation range                          | $V_{LCD2}$   | C1 to C4 <sup>Note 1</sup> = $0.47\ \mu\text{F}$ | GAIN = 1                             | 0.84               | 1.0         | 1.165       | V    |
|                                                             |              |                                                  | GAIN = 0                             | 1.26               | 1.5         | 1.74        | V    |
| Doubler output                                              | $V_{LCD1}$   | C1 to C4 <sup>Note 1</sup> = $0.47\ \mu\text{F}$ |                                      | $2V_{LCD2} - 0.1$  | $2V_{LCD2}$ | $2V_{LCD2}$ | V    |
| Tripler output                                              | $V_{LCD0}$   | C1 to C4 <sup>Note 1</sup> = $0.47\ \mu\text{F}$ |                                      | $3V_{LCD2} - 0.15$ | $3V_{LCD2}$ | $3V_{LCD2}$ | V    |
| Voltage boost wait time <sup>Note 2</sup>                   | $t_{VAWAIT}$ | GAIN = 0                                         | $1.8 \leq V_{DD} < 5.5\ \text{V}$    | 0.5                |             |             | s    |
|                                                             |              |                                                  | $5.0 \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5\ \text{V}$ | 2.0                |             |             | s    |
|                                                             |              | GAIN = 1                                         | $4.5 \leq V_{DD} < 5.0\ \text{V}$    | 1.0                |             |             | s    |
|                                                             |              |                                                  | $1.8 \leq V_{DD} < 4.5\ \text{V}$    | 0.5                |             |             | s    |
| LCD output voltage differential <sup>Note 3</sup> (common)  | $V_{ODC}$    | $I_O = \pm 5\ \mu\text{A}$                       |                                      | 0                  |             | $\pm 0.2$   | V    |
| LCD output voltage differential <sup>Note 3</sup> (segment) | $V_{ODS}$    | $I_O = \pm 1\ \mu\text{A}$                       |                                      | 0                  |             | $\pm 0.2$   | V    |

**Notes** 1. This is a capacitor that is connected between voltage pins used to drive the LCD.

C1: A capacitor connected between CAPH and CAPL

C2: A capacitor connected between  $V_{LC0}$  and  $V_{SS}$

C3: A capacitor connected between  $V_{LC1}$  and  $V_{SS}$

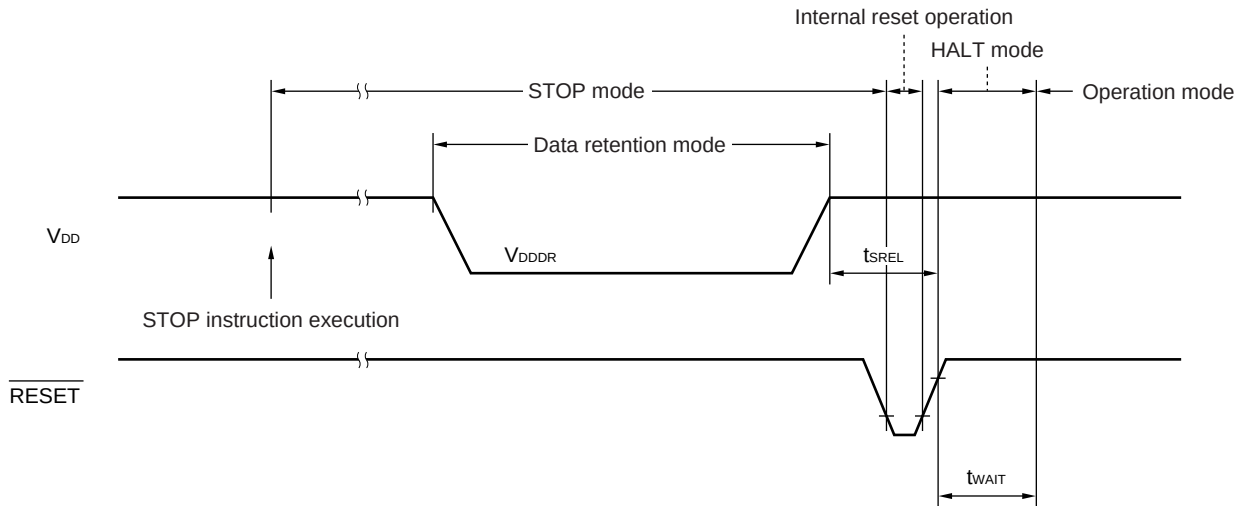
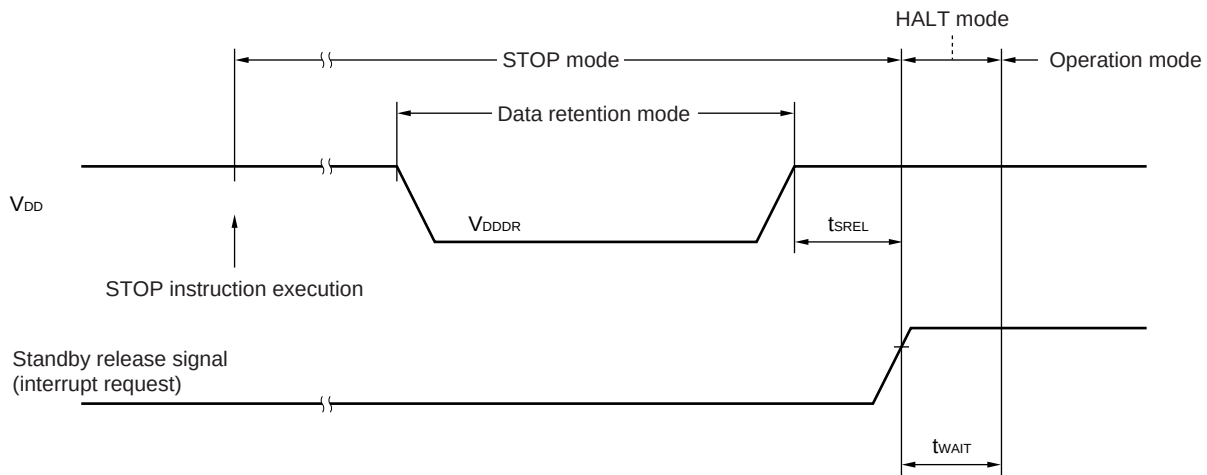
C4: A capacitor connected between  $V_{LC2}$  and  $V_{SS}$

2. This is the wait time from when voltage boosting is started ( $VAON0 = 1$ ) until display is enabled ( $LCDON0 = 1$ ).

3. The voltage differential is the difference between the segment and common signal output's actual and ideal output voltages.

**Data Memory STOP Mode Low Supply Voltage Data Retention Characteristics ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ )**

| Parameter                           | Symbol     | Conditions | MIN. | TYP. | MAX. | Unit          |
|-------------------------------------|------------|------------|------|------|------|---------------|
| Data retention power supply voltage | $V_{DDDR}$ |            | 1.8  |      | 5.5  | V             |
| Release signal set time             | $t_{SREL}$ |            | 0    |      |      | $\mu\text{s}$ |

**Data Retention Timing (STOP Mode Release by  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ )**

**Data Retention Timing (Standby Release Signal: STOP Mode Release by Interrupt Request Signal)**

**Oscillation Stabilization Wait Time ( $T_A = -40$  to  $+85^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V)**

| Parameter                                             | Symbol            | Conditions                           | MIN. | TYP.          | MAX. | Unit |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|------|---------------|------|------|
| Oscillation stabilization wait time <sup>Note 1</sup> | $t_{\text{WAIT}}$ | Release by $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ |      | $2^{15}/f_x$  |      | s    |
|                                                       |                   | Release by interrupt                 |      | <b>Note 2</b> |      | s    |

**Notes** 1. Use a resonator whose oscillation stabilizes within the oscillation stabilization wait time.

2. Selection of  $2^{12}/f_x$ ,  $2^{15}/f_x$ , or  $2^{17}/f_x$  is possible with bits 0 to 2 (OSTS0 to OSTS2) of the oscillation stabilization time selection register (OSTS).

**Remark**  $f_x$ : Main system clock oscillation frequency



**Flash Memory Writing and Erasing Characteristics ( $T_A = 10$  to  $40^\circ\text{C}$ ,  $V_{DD} = 1.8$  to  $5.5$  V)****( $\mu$ PD78F9488, 78F9489 only)**

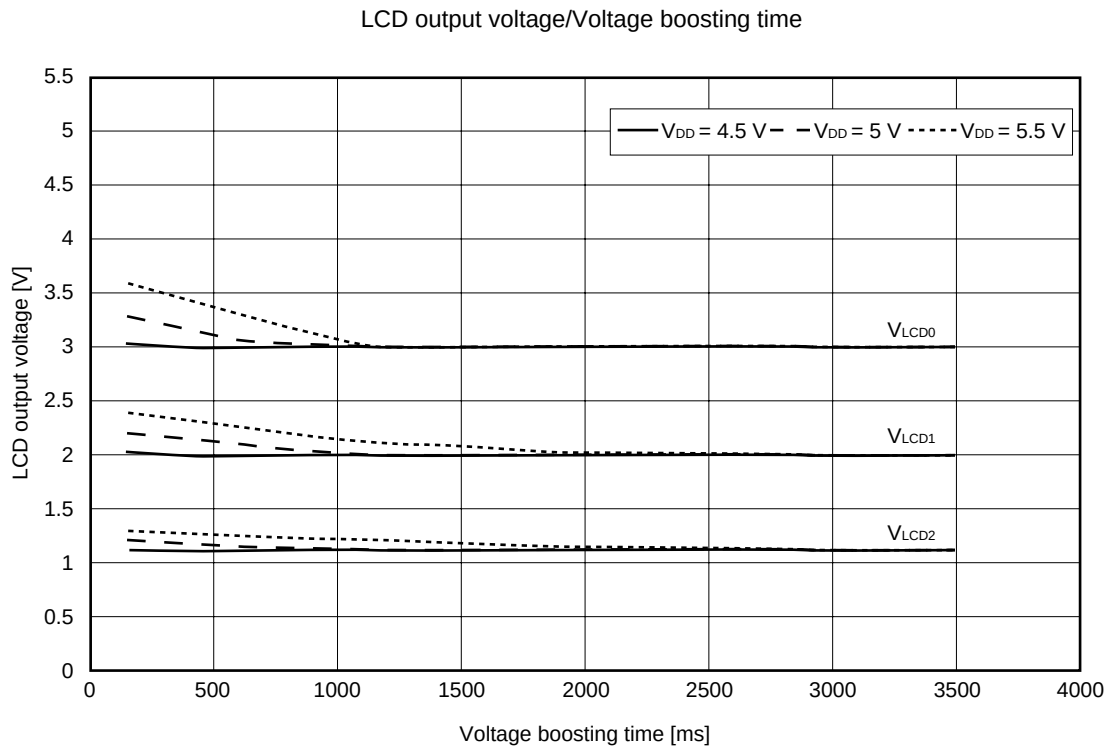
| Parameter                                     | Symbol    | Conditions                                                         | MIN. | TYP. | MAX.        | Unit  |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|-------------|-------|
| Write/erase operating frequency               | $f_x$     | $2.7\text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$                       | 1.0  |      | 5           | MHz   |
|                                               |           | $1.8\text{ V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$                       | 1.0  |      | 1.25        | MHz   |
| Write current ( $V_{DD}$ pin) <sup>Note</sup> | $I_{DDW}$ | When $V_{PP}$ supply voltage = $V_{PP1}$<br>(at 5.0 MHz operation) |      |      | 7           | mA    |
| Write current ( $V_{PP}$ pin) <sup>Note</sup> | $I_{PPW}$ | When $V_{PP}$ supply voltage = $V_{PP1}$                           |      |      | 13          | mA    |
| Erase current ( $V_{DD}$ pin) <sup>Note</sup> | $I_{DDE}$ | When $V_{PP}$ supply voltage = $V_{PP1}$<br>(at 5.0 MHz operation) |      |      | 7           | mA    |
| Erase current ( $V_{PP}$ pin) <sup>Note</sup> | $I_{PPE}$ | When $V_{PP}$ supply voltage = $V_{PP1}$                           |      |      | 100         | mA    |
| Unit erase time                               | $t_{er}$  |                                                                    | 0.5  | 1    | 1           | s     |
| Total erase time                              | $t_{era}$ |                                                                    |      |      | 20          | s     |
| Number of overwrites                          |           | Erase and write is considered as 1 cycle                           |      |      | 20          | Times |
| $V_{PP}$ supply voltage                       | $V_{PP0}$ | Normal operation                                                   | 0    |      | $0.2V_{DD}$ | V     |
|                                               | $V_{PP1}$ | Flash memory programming                                           | 9.7  | 10.0 | 10.3        | V     |

**Note** Excludes current flowing through ports (including on-chip pull-up resistors)

## CHAPTER 23 CHARACTERISTICS CURVES OF LCD CONTROLLER/DRIVER (REFERENCE VALUES)

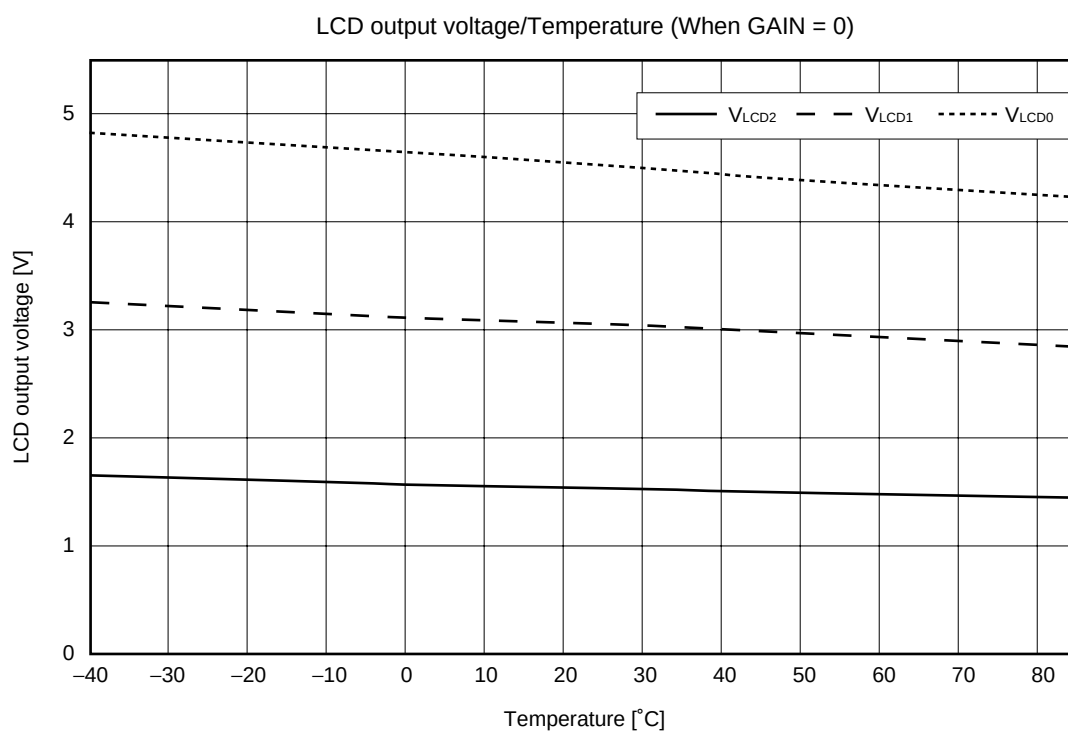
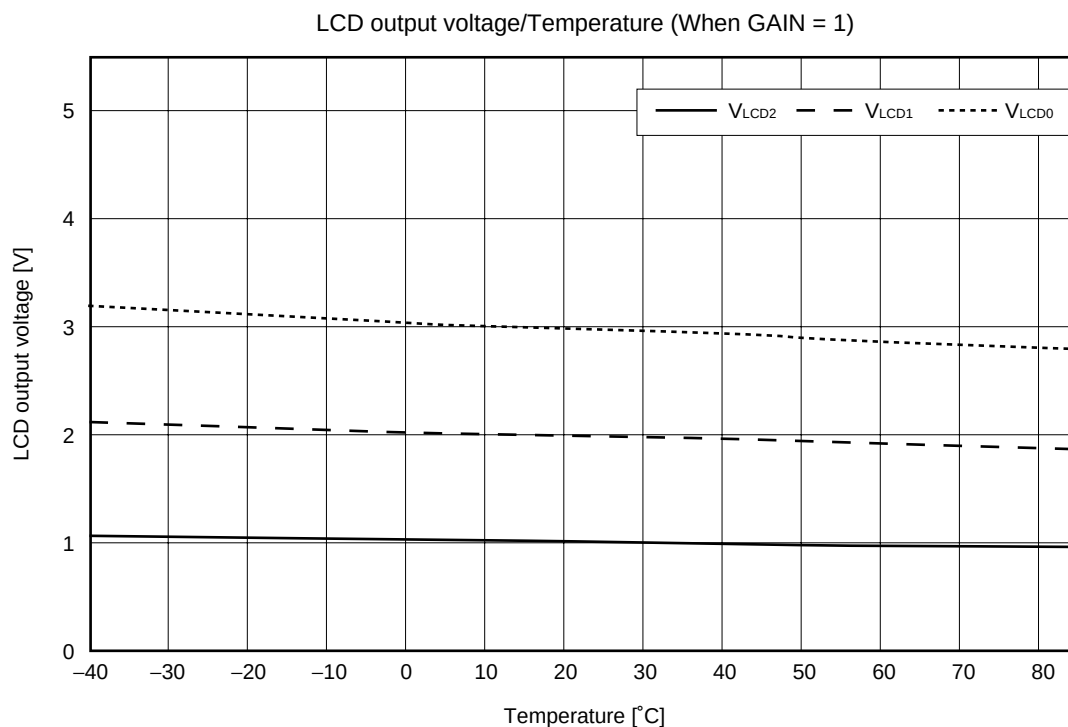
### (1) Characteristics curves of voltage boosting stabilization time

The following shows the characteristics curves of the time from the start of voltage boosting (VAON0 = 1) and the changes in the LCD output voltage (when GAIN is set as 1 (using the 3 V display panel)).



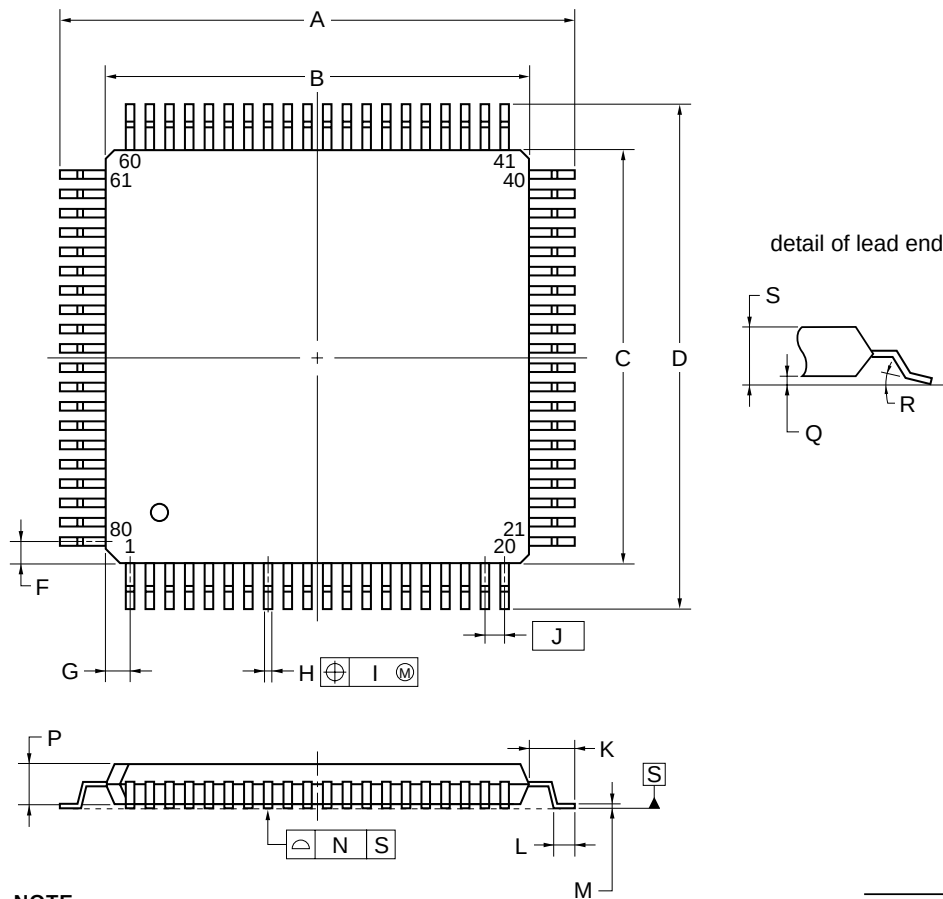
**(2) Temperature characteristics of LCD output voltage**

The following shows the temperature characteristics curves of LCD output voltage.



## CHAPTER 24 PACKAGE DRAWINGS

### 80-PIN PLASTIC QFP (14x14)



| ITEM | MILLIMETERS                            |
|------|----------------------------------------|
| A    | 17.20±0.20                             |
| B    | 14.00±0.20                             |
| C    | 14.00±0.20                             |
| D    | 17.20±0.20                             |
| F    | 0.825                                  |
| G    | 0.825                                  |
| H    | 0.32±0.06                              |
| I    | 0.13                                   |
| J    | 0.65 (T.P.)                            |
| K    | 1.60±0.20                              |
| L    | 0.80±0.20                              |
| M    | 0.17 <sup>+0.03</sup> <sub>-0.07</sub> |
| N    | 0.10                                   |
| P    | 1.40±0.10                              |
| Q    | 0.125±0.075                            |
| R    | 3° <sup>+7°</sup> <sub>-3°</sub>       |
| S    | 1.70 MAX.                              |

P80GC-65-8BT-1



## CHAPTER 25 RECOMMENDED SOLDERING CONDITIONS

The  $\mu$ PD789489 subseries should be soldered and mounted under the following recommended conditions.

For soldering methods and conditions other than those recommended below, contact an NEC Electronics sales representative.

For technical information, see the following website.

Semiconductor Device Mount Manual (<http://www.necel.com/pkg/en/mount/index.html>)

**Table 25-1. Surface Mounting Type Soldering Conditions (1/3)**

(1)  $\mu$ PD789488GC-xxx-8BT: 80-pin plastic QFP (14x14)

$\mu$ PD78F9488GC-8BT: 80-pin plastic QFP (14x14)

★  $\mu$ PD789489GC-xxx-8BT: 80-pin plastic QFP (14x14)

| Soldering Method | Soldering Conditions                                                                                                                      | Recommended Condition Symbol |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Infrared reflow  | Package peak temperature: 235°C, Time: 30 seconds max. (at 210°C or higher), Count: Twice or less                                         | IR35-00-2                    |
| VPS              | Package peak temperature: 215°C, Time: 40 seconds max. (at 200°C or higher), Count: Twice or less                                         | VP15-00-2                    |
| Wave soldering   | Solder bath temperature: 260°C max., Time: 10 seconds max., Count: Once, Preheating temperature: 120°C max. (package surface temperature) | WS60-00-1                    |
| Partial heating  | Pin temperature: 350°C max., Time: 3 seconds max. (per pin row)                                                                           | —                            |

**Caution** Do not use different soldering methods together (except for partial heating).

(2)  $\mu$ PD789488GK-xxx-9EU: 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12x12)

$\mu$ PD78F9488GK-9EU: 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12x12)

★  $\mu$ PD789489GK-xxx-9EU: 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12x12)

| Soldering Method | Soldering Conditions                                                                                                                                                                  | Recommended Condition Symbol |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Interface reflow | Package peak temperature: 235°C, Time: 30 seconds max. (at 210°C or higher), Count: Twice or less, Exposure limit: 7 days <sup>Note</sup> (after that, prebake at 125°C for 10 hours) | IR35-107-2                   |
| VPS              | Package peak temperature: 215°C, Time: 40 seconds max. (at 200°C or higher), Count: Twice or less, Exposure limit: 7 days <sup>Note</sup> (after that, prebake at 125°C for 10 hours) | VP15-107-2                   |
| Partial heating  | Pin temperature: 350°C max., Time: 3 seconds max. (per pin row)                                                                                                                       | —                            |

**Note** After opening the dry peak, store it at 25°C or less and 65% RH or less for the allowable storage period.

**Caution** Do not use different soldering methods together (except for partial heating).

Table 25-1. Surface Mounting Type Soldering Conditions (2/3)

★ (3)  $\mu$ PD78F9489GC-8BT: 80-pin plastic QFP (14x14)

| Soldering Method | Soldering Conditions                                                                                                                                                                 | Recommended Condition Symbol |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Interface reflow | Package peak temperature: 235°C, Time:30 seconds max. (at 210°C or higher), Count: Twice or less, Exposure limit: 7 days <sup>Note</sup> (after that, prebake at 125°C for 10 hours) | IR35-107-2                   |
| VPS              | Package peak temperature: 215°C, Time:40 seconds max. (at 200°C or higher), Count: Twice or less, Exposure limit: 7 days <sup>Note</sup> (after that, prebake at 125°C for 10 hours) | VP15-107-2                   |
| Wave soldering   | Solder bath temperature: 260°C max., Time: 10 seconds max., Count: Once, Preheating temperature: 120°C max. (package surface temperature)                                            | WS60-107-1                   |
| Partial heating  | Pin temperature: 350°C max., Time: 3 seconds max. (per pin row)                                                                                                                      | —                            |

**Note** After opening the dry peak, store it at 25°C or less and 65% RH or less for the allowable storage period.

**Caution** Do not use different soldering methods together (except for partial heating).

★ (4)  $\mu$ PD78F9489GK-9EU: 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12x12)

| Soldering Method | Soldering Conditions                                                                                                                                                                 | Recommended Condition Symbol |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Interface reflow | Package peak temperature: 235°C, Time:30 seconds max. (at 210°C or higher), Count: Twice or less, Exposure limit: 3 days <sup>Note</sup> (after that, prebake at 125°C for 10 hours) | IR35-103-2                   |
| VPS              | Package peak temperature: 215°C, Time:40 seconds max. (at 200°C or higher), Count: Twice or less, Exposure limit: 3 days <sup>Note</sup> (after that, prebake at 125°C for 10 hours) | VP15-103-2                   |
| Partial heating  | Pin temperature: 350°C max., Time: 3 seconds max. (per pin row)                                                                                                                      | —                            |

**Note** After opening the dry peak, store it at 25°C or less and 65% RH or less for the allowable storage period.

**Caution** Do not use different soldering methods together (except for partial heating).

★

**Table 25-1. Surface Mounting Type Soldering Conditions (3/3)**

- (5)  $\mu$ PD789488GC-xxx-8BT-A: 80-pin plastic QFP (14x14)  
 $\mu$ PD78F9488GC-8BT-A: 80-pin plastic QFP (14x14)  
 $\mu$ PD789489GC-xxx-8BT-A: 80-pin plastic QFP (14x14)  
 $\mu$ PD78F9489GC-8BT-A: 80-pin plastic QFP (14x14)  
 $\mu$ PD789488GK-xxx-9EU-A: 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12x12)  
 $\mu$ PD78F9488GK-9EU-A: 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12x12)  
 $\mu$ PD789489GK-xxx-9EU-A: 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12x12)  
 $\mu$ PD78F9489GK-9EU-A: 80-pin plastic TQFP (fine pitch) (12x12)

| Soldering Method | Soldering Conditions                                                                                                                                                                              | Recommended Condition Symbol |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Infrared reflow  | Package peak temperature: 260°C, Time: 60 seconds max. (at 220°C or higher), Count: Three times or less, Exposure limit: 7 days <sup>Note</sup> (after that, prebake at 125°C for 20 to 72 hours) | IR60-207-3                   |
| Wave soldering   | When the pin pitch of the package is 0.65 mm or more, wave soldering can also be performed.<br>For details, contact an NEC Electronics sales representative.                                      | —                            |
| Partial heating  | Pin temperature: 350°C max., Time: 3 seconds max. (per pin row)                                                                                                                                   | —                            |

**Note** After opening the dry pack, store it at 25°C or less and 65% RH or less for the allowable storage period.

**Caution** Do not use different soldering methods together (except for partial heating).

- Remarks**
- Products that have the part numbers suffixed by "-A" are lead-free products.
  - For soldering methods and conditions other than those recommended above, contact an NEC Electronics sales representative.



## APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT TOOLS

The following development tools are available for development of systems using the  $\mu$ PD789489 Subseries. Figure A-1 shows development tools.

- Support for PC98-NX Series

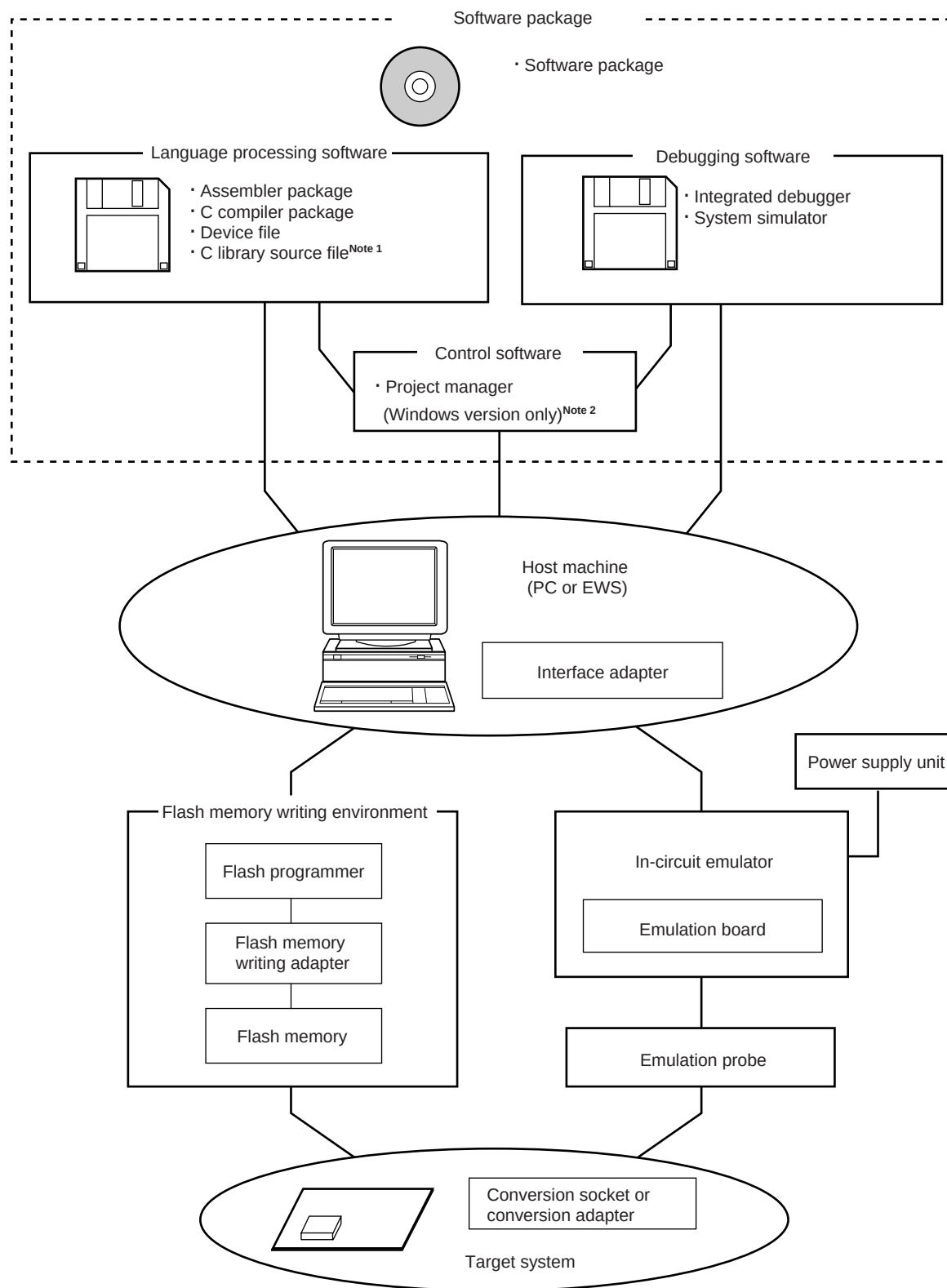
Unless specified otherwise, the products supported by IBM PC/AT™ compatibles can be used in the PC98-NX Series. When using the PC98-NX Series, refer to the explanation of IBM PC/AT compatibles.

- Windows™

Unless specified otherwise, "Windows" indicates the following operating systems.

- Windows 3.1
- Windows 95
- Windows 98
- Windows 2000
- Windows NT™ Ver.4.0
- Windows XP

Figure A-1. Development Tools



**Notes** 1. C library source file is not included in the software package.

2. The project manager is included in the assembler package.

The project manager is used only in the Windows environment.

## A.1 Software Package

|                             |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SP78K0S<br>Software package | Software tools for development of the 78K/0S Series are combined in this package.<br>The following tools are included.<br>RA78K0S, CC78K0S, ID78K0S-NS, SM78K0S, and device files |
|                             | Part number: $\mu$ SxxxxSP78K0S                                                                                                                                                   |

**Remark** xxxx in the part number differs depending on the OS used

$\mu$ SxxxxSP78K0S

| xxxx | Host Machine                             | OS               | Supply Medium |
|------|------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| AB17 | PC-9800 series, IBM PC/AT<br>compatibles | Japanese Windows | CD-ROM        |
| BB17 |                                          | English Windows  |               |

## A.2 Language Processing Software

|                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RA78K0S<br>Assembler package                         | Program that converts program written in mnemonic into object codes that can be executed by a microcontroller.<br>In addition, automatic functions to generate symbol tables and optimize branch instructions are also provided.<br>Used in combination with a device file (DF789488) (sold separately).<br><b>&lt;Caution when used in PC environment&gt;</b><br>The assembler package is a DOS-based application but may be used in the Windows environment by using the project manager of Windows (included in the assembler package). |
|                                                      | Part number: $\mu$ SxxxxRA78K0S                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| CC78K0S<br>C compiler package                        | Program that converts program written in C language into object codes that can be executed by a microcontroller.<br>Used in combination with an assembler package (RA78K0S) and device file (DF789488) (both sold separately).<br><b>&lt;Caution when used in PC environment&gt;</b><br>The C compiler package is a DOS-based application but may be used in the Windows environment by using the project manager of Windows (included in the assembler package).                                                                          |
|                                                      | Part number: $\mu$ SxxxxCC78K0S                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| DF789488 <sup>Note 1</sup><br>Device file            | File containing information inherent to the device.<br>Used in combination with the RA78K0S, CC78K0S, ID78K0S-NS, and SM78K0S (all sold separately).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                      | Part number: $\mu$ SxxxxDF789488                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| CC78K0S-L <sup>Note 2</sup><br>C library source file | Source file of functions for generating object library included in the C compiler package.<br>Necessary for changing the object library included in the C compiler package according to the customer's specifications. Since this is a source file, its working environment does not depend on any particular operating system.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                      | Part number: $\mu$ SxxxxCC78K0S-L                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Notes** 1. DF789488 is a common file that can be used with the RA78K0S, CC78K0S, ID78K0S-NS, and SM78K0S.

2. CC78K0S-L is not included in the software package (SP78K0S).

**Remark** xxxx in the part number differs depending on the host machine and operating system to be used.

μSxxxxRA78K0S

μSxxxxCC78K0S

| xxxx | Host Machine                            | OS                                            | Supply Medium |
|------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------|
| AB13 | PC-9800 series,<br>IBM PC/AT compatible | Japanese Windows                              | 3.5" 2HD FD   |
| BB13 |                                         | English Windows                               |               |
| AB17 |                                         | Japanese Windows                              | CD-ROM        |
| BB17 |                                         | English Windows                               |               |
| 3P17 | HP9000 series 700™                      | HP-UX™ (Rel. 10.10)                           |               |
| 3K17 | SPARCstation™                           | SunOS™ (Rel. 4.1.4),<br>Solaris™ (Rel. 2.5.1) |               |

μSxxxxDF789488

μSxxxxCC78K0S-L

| xxxx | Host Machine                            | OS                    | Supply Medium |
|------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| AB13 | PC-9800 series,<br>IBM PC/AT compatible | Japanese Windows      | 3.5" 2HD FD   |
| BB13 |                                         | Japanese Windows      |               |
| 3P16 | HP9000 series 700                       | HP-UX™ (Rel. 10.10)   | DAT           |
| 3K13 | SPARCstation                            | SunOS™ (Rel. 4.1.4),  | 3.5" 2HD FD   |
| 3K15 |                                         | Solaris™ (Rel. 2.5.1) | 1/4-inch CGMT |

### A.3 Control Software

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PM plus<br>Project manager | Control software created for efficient development of the user program in the Windows environment. User program development operations such as editor startup, build, and debugger startup can be performed from the PM plus.<br><Caution><br>The PM plus is included in the assembler package (RA78K0S).<br>The PM plus is used only in the Windows environment. |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### A.4 Flash Memory Writing Tools

|                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Flashpro III (FL-PR3, PG-FP3)<br>Flashpro IV (FL-PR4, PG-FP4)<br>Flash programmer | Dedicated flash programmer for microcontrollers incorporating flash memory                                                                                                                                                                           |
| FA-80GC-8BT<br>FA-80GK-9EU<br>Flash memory writing adapter                        | Adapter for writing to flash memory and connected to Flashpro III or Flashpro IV.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FA-80GC-8BT: For 80-pin plastic QFP (GC-8BT type)</li> <li>FA-80GK-9EU: For 80-pin plastic TQFP (GK-9EU type)</li> </ul> |

**Remark** The FL-PR3, FL-PR4, FA-80GC-8BT, and FA-80GK-9EU are products made by Naito Densai Machida Mfg. Co., Ltd. (TEL +81-45-475-4191).

## A.5 Debugging Tools (Hardware)

|                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IE-78K0S-NS<br>In-circuit emulator           | In-circuit emulator for debugging hardware and software of an application system using the 78K/0S Series. Can be used with the integrated the debugger ID78K0S-NS. Used in combination with an AC adapter, emulation probe, and interface adapter for connecting the host machine. |
| IE-78K0S-NS-A<br>In-circuit emulator         | The IE-78K0S-NS-A provides a coverage function in addition to the IE-78K0S-NS functions, thus enhancing the debug functions, including the tracer and timer functions.                                                                                                             |
| IE-70000-MC-PS-B<br>AC adapter               | Adapter for supplying power from AC 100 to 240 V outlet.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| IE-70000-98-IF-C<br>Interface adapter        | Adapter necessary when using a PC-9800 series PC (except notebook type) as the host machine (C bus supported)                                                                                                                                                                      |
| IE-70000-CD-IF-A<br>PC card interface        | PC card and interface cable necessary when using a notebook PC as the host machine (PCMCIA socket supported)                                                                                                                                                                       |
| IE-70000-PC-IF-C<br>Interface adapter        | Interface adapter necessary when using an IBM PC/AT compatible as the host machine (ISA bus supported)                                                                                                                                                                             |
| IE-70000-PCI-IF-A<br>Interface adapter       | Adapter necessary when using a personal computer incorporating a PCI bus as the host machine                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| IE-789488-NS-EM1<br>Emulation board          | Board for emulating the peripheral hardware inherent to the device. Used in combination with an in-circuit emulator.                                                                                                                                                               |
| NP-80GC<br>Emulation probe                   | Cable to connect the in-circuit emulator and target system.<br>Used in combination with the EV-9200GC-80.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| EV-9200GC-80<br>Conversion socket            | Conversion socket to connect the NP-80GC and a target system board on which an 80-pin plastic QFP (GC-8BT type) can be mounted.                                                                                                                                                    |
| NP-80GC-TQ<br>NP-H80GC-TQ<br>Emulation prove | Cable to connect the in-circuit emulator and target system.<br>Used in combination with the TGC-080SBP.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| TGC-080SBP<br>Conversion adapter             | Conversion adapter to connect the NP-80GC-TQ or NP-H80GC-TQ and a target system board on which an 80-pin plastic QFP (GC-8BT type) can be mounted.                                                                                                                                 |
| NP-80GK<br>NP-H80GK-TQ<br>Emulation prove    | Cable to connect the in-circuit emulator and target system.<br>Used in combination with the TGK-080SDW.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| TGK-080SDW<br>Conversion adapter             | Conversion adapter to connect the NP-80GK or NP-H80GK-TQ and a target system board on which an 80-pin plastic TQFP (GK-9EU type) can be mounted                                                                                                                                    |

- Remarks**
1. The NP-80GC, NP-80GC-TQ, NP-H80GC-TQ, NP-80GK, and NP-H80GK-TQ are products of Naito Densei Machida Mfg. Co., Ltd. (TEL +81-45-475-4191).
  2. The TGC-080SBP and TGK-080SDW are products of TOKYO ELETECH CORPORATION.  
For further information, contact: Daimaru Kogyo, Ltd.  
Tokyo Electronics Department (TEL +81-3-3820-7112)  
Osaka Electronics Department (TEL +81-6-6244-6672)

## A.6 Debugging Tools (Software)

|                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ID78K0S-NS<br>Integrated debugger       | This debugger supports the in-circuit emulators IE-78K0S-NS and IE-78K0S-NS-A for the 78K/0S Series. The ID78K0S-NS is Windows-based software.<br>It has improved C-compatible debugging functions and can display the results of tracing with the source program using an integrating window function that associates the source program, disassemble display, and memory display with the trace result.<br>Used in combination with a device file (DF789488) (sold separately).                                                                                                    |
|                                         | Part number: $\mu S \times \times \times \times$ ID78K0S-NS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| SM78K0S<br>System simulator             | This is a system simulator for the 78K/0S Series. The SM78K0S is Windows-based software.<br>It can be used to debug the target system at C source level or assembler level while simulating the operation of the target system on the host machine.<br>Using SM78K0S, the logic and performance of the application can be verified independently of hardware development. Therefore, the development efficiency can be enhanced and the software quality can be improved. <span style="float: right;">Used</span><br>in combination with a device file (DF789488) (sold separately). |
|                                         | Part number: $\mu S \times \times \times \times$ SM78K0S                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| DF789488 <sup>Note</sup><br>Device file | File containing the information inherent to the device.<br>Used in combination with the RA78K0S, CC78K0S, ID78K0S-NS, and SM78K0S (all sold separately).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                         | Part number: $\mu S \times \times \times \times$ DF789488                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

**Note** DF789488 is a common file that can be used with the RA78K0S, CC78K0S, ID78K0S-NS, and SM78K0S.

**Remark**  $\times \times \times \times$  in the part number differs depending on the operating system and supply medium to be used.

$\mu S \times \times \times \times$  ID78K0S-NS

$\mu S \times \times \times \times$  SM78K0S

| $\times \times \times \times$ | Host Machine                            | OS               | Supply Media |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| AB13                          | PC-9800 series<br>IBM PC/AT compatibles | Japanese Windows | 3.5" 2HD FD  |
| BB13                          |                                         | English Windows  |              |
| AB17                          |                                         | Japanese Windows | CD-ROM       |
| BB17                          |                                         | English Windows  |              |

## APPENDIX B NOTES ON TARGET SYSTEM DESIGN

Figures B-1 to B-6 show the conditions when connecting the emulation probe to the conversion adapter or conversion socket. Follow the configuration below and consider the shape of parts to be mounted on the target system when designing a system.

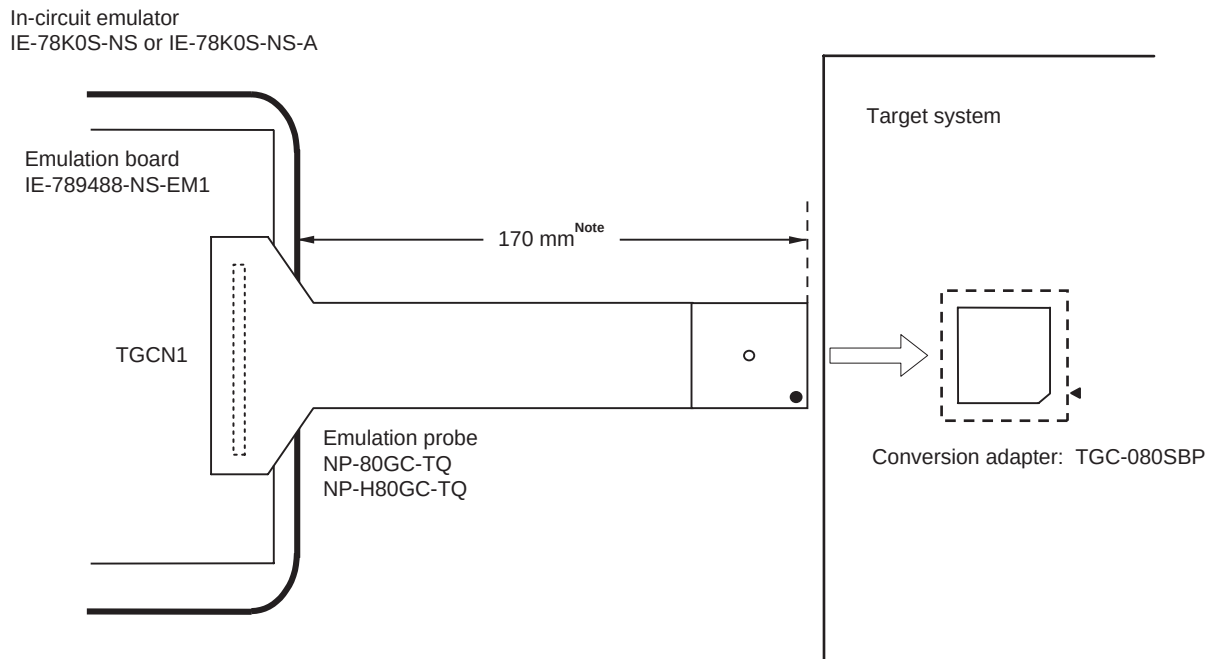
Of the products described in this chapter, the NP-80GC, NP-80GC-TQ, NP-H80GC-TQ, NP-80GK and NP-H80GK-TQ are products of Naito Densei Machida Mfg. Co., Ltd, and the TGC-080SBP and TGC-080SDP are products of TOKYO ELETECH CORPORATION.

**Table B-1. Distance Between IE System and Conversion Adapter**

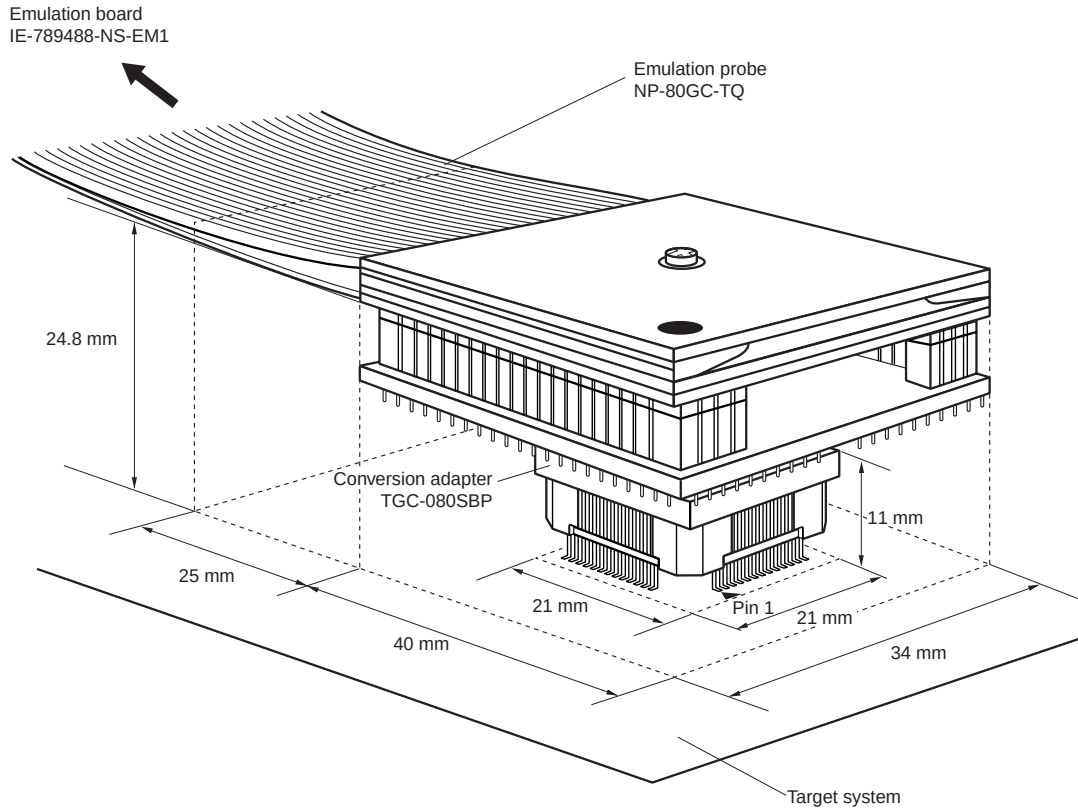
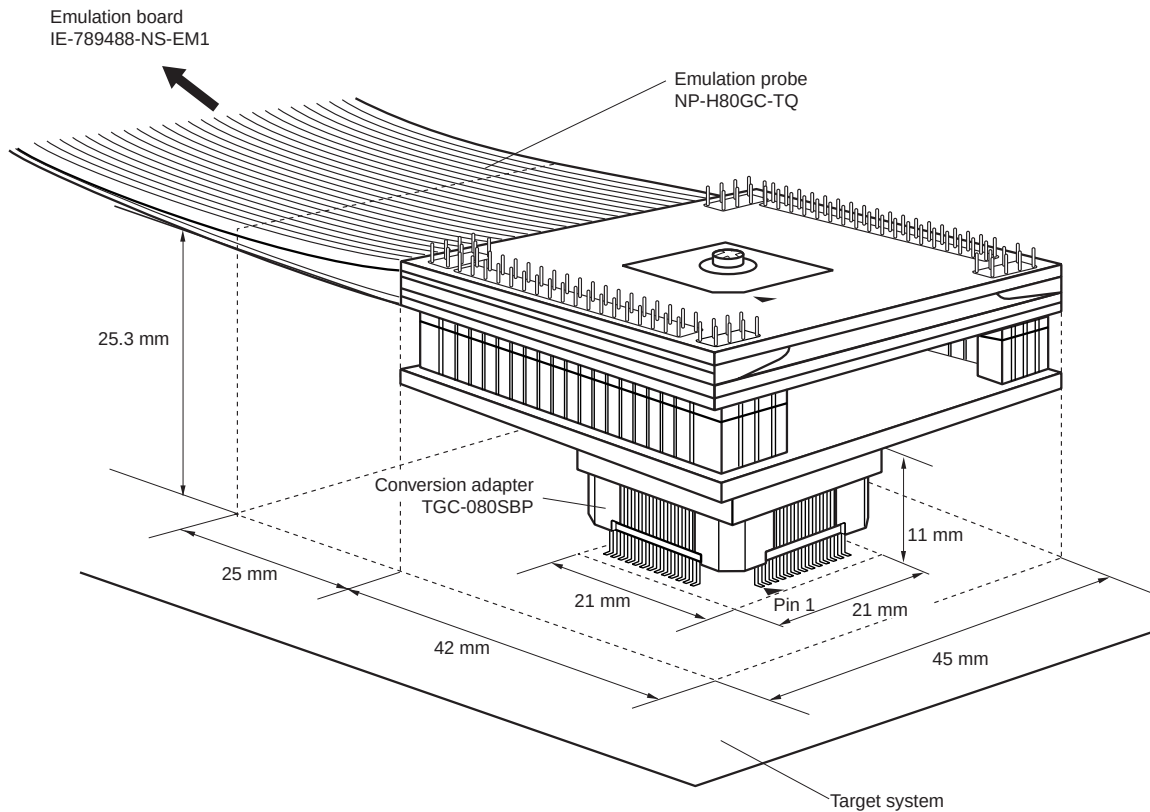
| Emulation Probe | Conversion Adapter | Distance Between IE System and Conversion Adapter |
|-----------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| NP-80GC-TQ      | TGC-080SBP         | 170 mm                                            |
| NP-H80GC-TQ     |                    | 370 mm                                            |
| NP-80GK         | TGC-080SDP         | 170 mm                                            |
| NP-H80GK-TQ     |                    | 370 mm                                            |

### (1) NP-80GC, NP-80GC-TQ, NP-H80GC-TQ

**Figure B-1. Distance Between In-Circuit Emulator and Conversion Socket (80GC)**

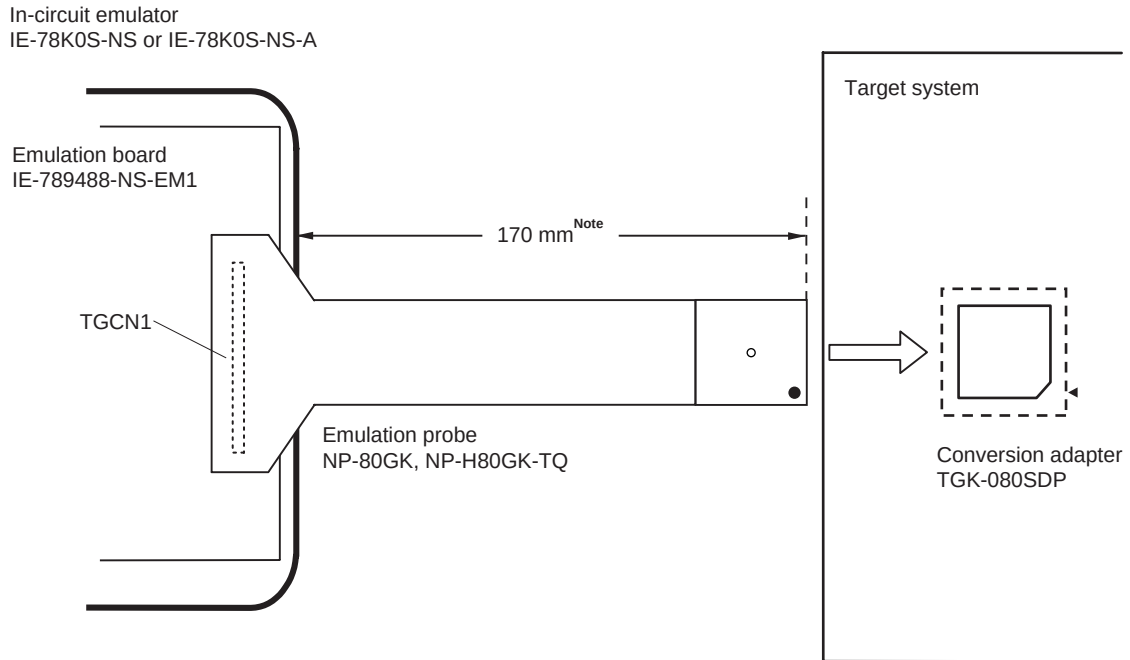


**Note** Distance when NP-80GC-TQ is used. When NP-H80GC-TQ is used, the distance is 370 mm.

**Figure B-2. Connection Conditions of Target System (When NP-80GC-TQ Is Used)****Figure B-3. Connection Conditions of Target System (When NP-H80GC-TQ Is Used)**



## (2) NP-80GK, NP-H80GK-TQ

**Figure B-4. Distance Between In-Circuit Emulator and Conversion Adapter (80GK)**

**Note** Distance when NP-80GK is used. When NP-H80GK-TQ is used, the distance is 370 mm.

**Figure B-5. Connection Conditions of Target System (When NP-80GK Is Used)**

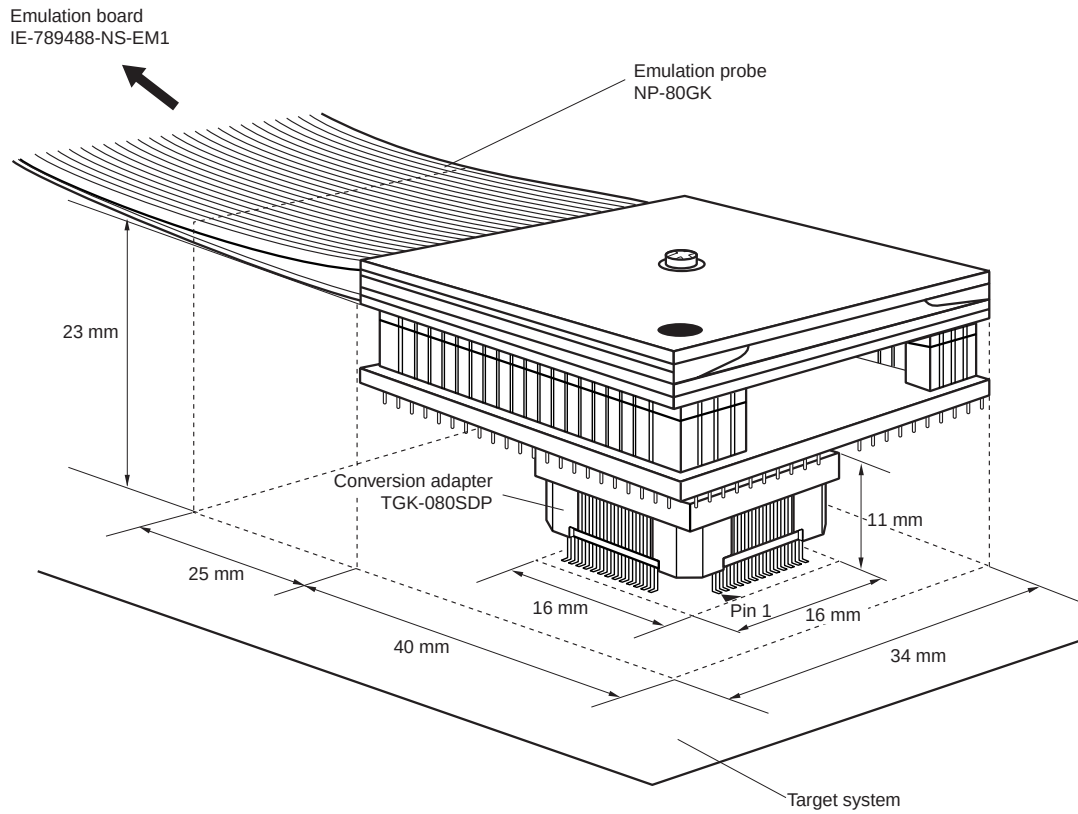
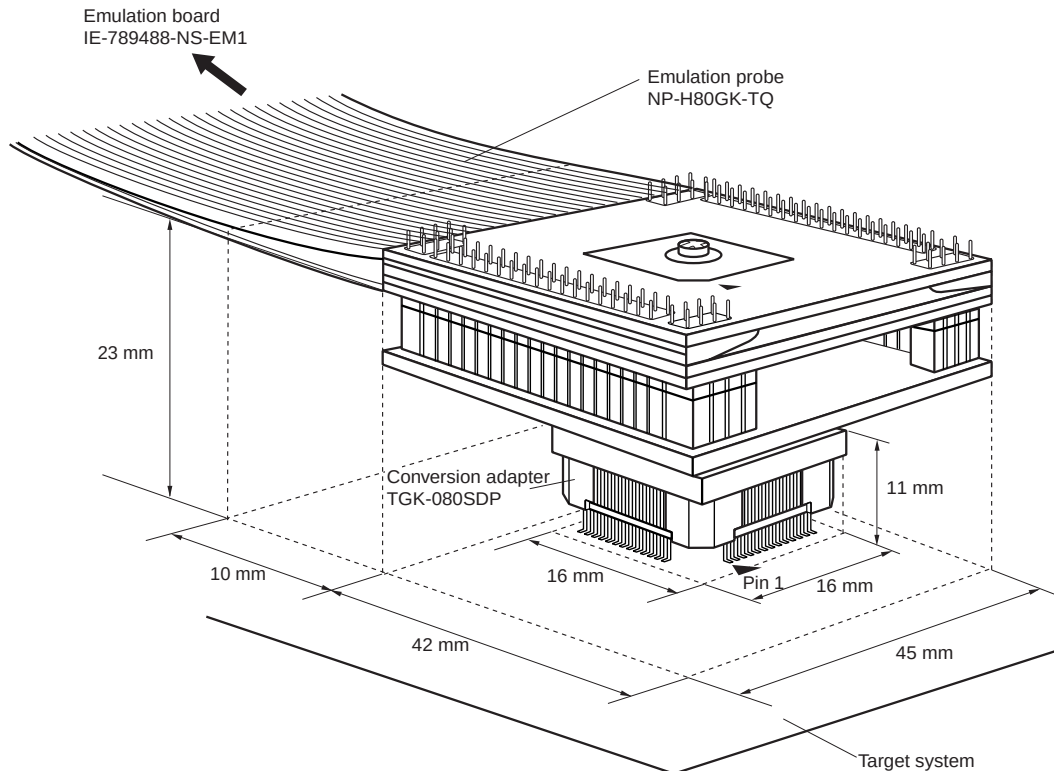


**Figure B-6. Connection Conditions of Target System (When NP-H80GK-TQ Is Used)**



## APPENDIX C REGISTER INDEX

### C.1 Register Index (Register Names in Alphabetic Order)

#### [A]

|                                                                                 |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0) .....                                 | 174 |
| A/D converter mode register 0 (ADML0) .....                                     | 176 |
| Analog input channel specification register 0 (ADS0) .....                      | 177 |
| Asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 (ASIM20) .....                   | 191 |
| Asynchronous serial interface status register 20 (ASIS20) .....                 | 193 |
| Automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0 (ADTP0) .....                 | 218 |
| Automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 (ADTC0) .....                | 221 |
| Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 (ADTI0) ..... | 222 |

#### [B]

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Baud rate generator control register 20 (BRGC20) ..... | 194 |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|

#### [C]

|                                                            |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Carrier generator output control register 60 (TCA60) ..... | 131 |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|

#### [E]

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 8-bit compare register 50 (CR50) .....             | 126 |
| 8-bit compare register 60 (CR60) .....             | 126 |
| 8-bit compare register 61 (CR61) .....             | 126 |
| 8-bit H width compare register 60 (CRH60) .....    | 127 |
| 8-bit H width compare register 61 (CRH61) .....    | 127 |
| 8-bit timer counter 50 (TM50) .....                | 127 |
| 8-bit timer counter 60 (TM60) .....                | 127 |
| 8-bit timer counter 61 (TM61) .....                | 127 |
| 8-bit timer mode control register 50 (TMC50) ..... | 128 |
| 8-bit timer mode control register 60 (TMC60) ..... | 129 |
| 8-bit timer mode control register 61 (TMC61) ..... | 130 |
| External interrupt mode register 0 (INTM0) .....   | 297 |
| External interrupt mode register 1 (INTM1) .....   | 297 |

#### [I]

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Interrupt mask flag register 0 (MK0) .....    | 296 |
| Interrupt mask flag register 1 (MK1) .....    | 296 |
| Interrupt mask flag register 2 (MK2) .....    | 296 |
| Interrupt request flag register 0 (IF0) ..... | 295 |
| Interrupt request flag register 1 (IF1) ..... | 295 |
| Interrupt request flag register 2 (IF2) ..... | 295 |

#### [K]

|                                           |     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| Key return mode register 00 (KRM00) ..... | 299 |
| Key return mode register 01 (KRM01) ..... | 300 |

**[L]**

|                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| LCD clock control register 0 (LCDC0) .....          | 256 |
| LCD display mode register 0 (LCDM0) .....           | 256 |
| LCD voltage boost control register 0 (LCDVA0) ..... | 256 |

**[M]**

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Multiplication data register A0 (MRA0) ..... | 267 |
| Multiplication data register B0 (MRB0) ..... | 267 |
| Multiplier control register 0 (MULC0) .....  | 269 |

**[O]**

|                                                             |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Oscillation stabilization time select register (OSTS) ..... | 308 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|

**[P]**

|                                                  |              |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Port 0 (P0) .....                                | 77           |
| Port 1 (P1) .....                                | 78           |
| Port 2 (P2) .....                                | 79           |
| Port 3 (P3) .....                                | 84           |
| Port 5 (P5) .....                                | 86           |
| Port 6 (P6) .....                                | 87           |
| Port 7 (P7) .....                                | 89           |
| Port 8 (P8) .....                                | 90           |
| Port function register 7 (PF7) .....             | 93           |
| Port function register 8 (PF8) .....             | 93           |
| Port mode register 0 (PM0) .....                 | 91           |
| Port mode register 1 (PM1) .....                 | 91           |
| Port mode register 2 (PM2) .....                 | 91           |
| Port mode register 3 (PM3) .....                 | 91, 112, 133 |
| Port mode register 5 (PM5) .....                 | 91           |
| Port mode register 8 (PM8) .....                 | 91           |
| Processor clock control register (PCC) .....     | 98           |
| Pull-up resistor option register B0 (PUB0) ..... | 93           |
| Pull-up resistor option register B1 (PUB1) ..... | 93           |
| Pull-up resistor option register B2 (PUB2) ..... | 93           |
| Pull-up resistor option register B3 (PUB3) ..... | 93           |

**[R]**

|                                                                |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Receive buffer register 20 (RXB20) .....                       | 189 |
| Remote controller DH0L compare register (RMDH0L) .....         | 275 |
| Remote controller DH1L compare register (RMDH1L) .....         | 275 |
| Remote controller receive control register (RMCN) .....        | 277 |
| Remote controller receive data register (RMDR) .....           | 273 |
| Remote controller receive DH0S compare register (RMDH0S) ..... | 275 |
| Remote controller receive DH1S compare register (RMDH1S) ..... | 275 |
| Remote controller receive DLS compare register (RMDLS) .....   | 274 |
| Remote controller receive DLL compare register (RMDLL) .....   | 274 |
| Remote controller receive GPHS compare register (RMGPHS) ..... | 274 |
| Remote controller receive GPHL compare register (RMGPHL) ..... | 274 |

|                                                                         |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Remote controller receive end width select register (RMER) .....        | 276 |
| Remote controller receive shift receive (RMSR).....                     | 272 |
| Remote controller shift register receive counter register (RMSCR) ..... | 273 |

**[S]**

|                                                               |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 16-bit capture register 20 (TCP20) .....                      | 109 |
| 16-bit compare register 20 (CR20) .....                       | 109 |
| 16-bit multiplication result storage register H (MUL0H) ..... | 267 |
| 16-bit multiplication result storage register L (MUL0L) ..... | 267 |
| 16-bit timer counter 20 (TM20) .....                          | 109 |
| 16-bit timer mode control register 20 (TMC20).....            | 109 |
| Serial I/O shift register 1A0 (SIO1A0).....                   | 218 |
| Serial operation mode register 1A0 (CSIM1A0) .....            | 219 |
| Serial operation mode register 20 (CSIM20) .....              | 190 |
| Subclock control register (CSS) .....                         | 99  |
| Subclock oscillation mode register (SCKM).....                | 99  |
| Subclock selection register (SSCK).....                       | 100 |

**[T]**

|                                         |     |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| Transmit shift register 20 (TXS20)..... | 189 |
|-----------------------------------------|-----|

**[W]**

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Watch timer interrupt selection register (WTIM) ..... | 164 |
| Watch timer mode control register (WTM).....          | 163 |
| Watchdog timer clock selection register (WDCS).....   | 169 |
| Watchdog timer mode register (WDTM).....              | 170 |

**C.2 Register Index (Register Symbols Alphabetic Order)****[A]**

|         |                                                                         |     |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| ADCRL0: | A/D conversion result register 0 .....                                  | 174 |
| ADML0:  | A/D converter mode register 0 .....                                     | 176 |
| ADS0:   | Analog input channel specification register 0 .....                     | 177 |
| ADTC0:  | Automatic data transmit/receive control register 0 .....                | 221 |
| ADTI0:  | Automatic data transmit/receive interval specification register 0 ..... | 222 |
| ADTP0:  | Automatic data transmit/receive address pointer 0 .....                 | 218 |
| ASIM20: | Asynchronous serial interface mode register 20 .....                    | 191 |
| ASIS20: | Asynchronous serial interface status register 20 .....                  | 193 |

**[B]**

|         |                                               |     |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| BRGC20: | Baud rate generator control register 20 ..... | 194 |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------|-----|

**[C]**

|          |                                          |     |
|----------|------------------------------------------|-----|
| CR20:    | 16-bit compare register 20 .....         | 109 |
| CR50:    | 8-bit compare register 50 .....          | 126 |
| CR60:    | 8-bit compare register 60 .....          | 126 |
| CR61:    | 8-bit compare register 61 .....          | 126 |
| CRH60:   | 8-bit H width compare register 60 .....  | 127 |
| CRH61:   | 8-bit H width compare register 61 .....  | 127 |
| CSIM1A0: | Serial operation mode register 1A0 ..... | 219 |
| CSIM20:  | Serial operation mode register 20 .....  | 190 |
| CSS:     | Subclock control register .....          | 99  |

**[I]**

|        |                                          |     |
|--------|------------------------------------------|-----|
| IF0:   | Interrupt request flag register 0 .....  | 295 |
| IF1:   | Interrupt request flag register 1 .....  | 295 |
| IF2:   | Interrupt request flag register 2 .....  | 295 |
| INTM0: | External interrupt mode register 0 ..... | 297 |
| INTM1: | External interrupt mode register 1 ..... | 297 |

**[K]**

|        |                                   |     |
|--------|-----------------------------------|-----|
| KRM00: | Key return mode register 00 ..... | 299 |
| KRM01: | Key return mode register 01 ..... | 300 |

**[L]**

|         |                                            |     |
|---------|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| LCDC0:  | LCD clock control register 0 .....         | 255 |
| LCDM0:  | LCD display mode register 0 .....          | 254 |
| LCDVA0: | LCD voltage boost control register 0 ..... | 256 |

**[M]**

|       |                                       |     |
|-------|---------------------------------------|-----|
| MK0:  | Interrupt mask flag register 0 .....  | 296 |
| MK1:  | Interrupt mask flag register 1 .....  | 296 |
| MK2:  | Interrupt mask flag register 2 .....  | 296 |
| MRA0: | Multiplication data register A0 ..... | 297 |
| MRB0: | Multiplication data register B0 ..... | 297 |

|        |                                                      |     |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| MUL0H: | 16-bit multiplication result storage register H..... | 267 |
| MUL0L: | 16-bit multiplication result storage register L..... | 267 |
| MULC0: | Multiplier control register 0.....                   | 269 |

**[O]**

|       |                                                      |     |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| OSTS: | Oscillation stabilization time select register ..... | 308 |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------|-----|

**[P]**

|       |                                          |              |
|-------|------------------------------------------|--------------|
| P0:   | Port 0 .....                             | 77           |
| P1:   | Port 1 .....                             | 78           |
| P2:   | Port 2 .....                             | 79           |
| P3:   | Port 3 .....                             | 84           |
| P5:   | Port 5 .....                             | 86           |
| P6:   | Port 6 .....                             | 87           |
| P7:   | Port 7 .....                             | 89           |
| P8:   | Port 8 .....                             | 90           |
| PCC:  | Processor clock control register.....    | 98           |
| PF7:  | Port function register 7.....            | 93           |
| PF8:  | Port function register 8.....            | 93           |
| PM0:  | Port mode register 0 .....               | 91           |
| PM1:  | Port mode register 1 .....               | 91           |
| PM2:  | Port mode register 2 .....               | 91           |
| PM3:  | Port mode register 3 .....               | 91, 112, 133 |
| PM5:  | Port mode register 5 .....               | 91           |
| PM8:  | Port mode register 8 .....               | 91           |
| PUB0: | Pull-up resistor option register B0..... | 93           |
| PUB1: | Pull-up resistor option register B1..... | 93           |
| PUB2: | Pull-up resistor option register B2..... | 93           |
| PUB3: | Pull-up resistor option register B3..... | 93           |

**[R]**

|         |                                                                |     |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| RMCN:   | Remote controller receive control register .....               | 277 |
| RMDH0L: | Remote controller DH0L compare register .....                  | 275 |
| RMDH0S: | Remote controller receive DH0S compare register.....           | 275 |
| RMDH1L: | Remote controller DH1L compare register .....                  | 275 |
| RMDH1S: | Remote controller receive DH1S compare register.....           | 275 |
| RMDLL:  | Remote controller receive DLL compare register.....            | 274 |
| RMDLS:  | Remote controller receive DLS compare register .....           | 274 |
| RMDR:   | Remote controller receive data register .....                  | 273 |
| RMER:   | Remote controller receive end width select register .....      | 276 |
| RMGPHL: | Remote controller receive GPHL compare register .....          | 274 |
| RMGPHS: | Remote controller receive GPHS compare register .....          | 274 |
| RMSCR:  | Remote controller shift register receive counter register..... | 273 |
| RMSR:   | Remote controller receive shift register .....                 | 272 |
| RXB20:  | Receive buffer register 20.....                                | 189 |

**[S]**

|       |                                         |    |
|-------|-----------------------------------------|----|
| SCKM: | Subclock oscillation mode register..... | 99 |
|-------|-----------------------------------------|----|

|         |                                     |     |
|---------|-------------------------------------|-----|
| SIO1A0: | Serial I/O shift register 1A0 ..... | 218 |
| SSCK:   | Subclock selection register .....   | 100 |

**[T]**

|        |                                                    |     |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| TCA60: | Carrier generator output control register 60 ..... | 131 |
| TCP20: | 16-bit capture register 20 .....                   | 109 |
| TM20:  | 16-bit timer counter 20 .....                      | 109 |
| TM50:  | 8-bit timer counter 50 .....                       | 127 |
| TM60:  | 8-bit timer counter 60 .....                       | 127 |
| TM61:  | 8-bit timer counter 61 .....                       | 127 |
| TMC20: | 16-bit timer mode control register 20 .....        | 110 |
| TMC50: | 8-bit timer mode control register 50 .....         | 128 |
| TMC60: | 8-bit timer mode control register 60 .....         | 129 |
| TMC61: | 8-bit timer mode control register 61 .....         | 132 |
| TXS20: | Transmit shift register 20 .....                   | 189 |

**[W]**

|       |                                                |     |
|-------|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| WDCS: | Watchdog timer clock selection register .....  | 169 |
| WDTM: | Watchdog timer mode register .....             | 170 |
| WTIM: | Watch timer interrupt selection register ..... | 164 |
| WTM:  | Watch timer mode control register .....        | 163 |



## APPENDIX D REVISION HISTORY

The following table shows the revision history up to this edition. The “Applied to:” column indicates the chapters of each edition in which the revision was applied.

(1/4)

| Edition | Major Revision from Previous Edition                                                                                                                                                    | Applied to:                                                                   |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2nd     | Correction of number of vectored interrupt sources in 1.7<br><b>Overview of Functions</b>                                                                                               | CHAPTER 1 GENERAL                                                             |
|         | Change of $V_{PP}$ pin handling                                                                                                                                                         | CHAPTER 2 PIN FUNCTIONS                                                       |
|         | Change of block diagrams of P23 and P24                                                                                                                                                 | CHAPTER 4 PORT FUNCTIONS                                                      |
|         | Addition of <b>Note</b> on feedback resistor                                                                                                                                            | CHAPTER 5 CLOCK GENERATOR                                                     |
|         | Correction of bit name of bit 0 of timer mode control registers 60 and 61 (TMC60, TMC61)                                                                                                | CHAPTER 7 8-BIT TIMERS 50, 60, AND 61                                         |
|         | Addition of <b>Caution</b> on carrier generator output control register 60 (TCA60)                                                                                                      |                                                                               |
|         | Correction of values in <b>Table 7-8 Square-Wave Output Range of Timer 61</b>                                                                                                           |                                                                               |
|         | Change of <b>Figure 10-4 Basic Operation of 10-Bit A/D Converter</b> and <b>Figure 10-5 Relationship Between Analog Input Voltage and A/D Conversion Result</b>                         | CHAPTER 10 10-BIT A/D CONVERTER                                               |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 11-1 Block Diagram of Serial Interface 20</b>                                                                                                                 | CHAPTER 11 SERIAL INTERFACE 20                                                |
|         | Modification of description on PE20 flag in <b>Figure 11-5 Format of Asynchronous Serial Interface Status Register 20</b>                                                               |                                                                               |
|         | Addition of description on UART receive data read                                                                                                                                       |                                                                               |
|         | Change of <b>Figure 13-2 LCD Controller/Driver Block Diagram</b>                                                                                                                        | CHAPTER 13 LCD CONTROLLER/DRIVER                                              |
|         | Addition of <b>13.8 Supplying LCD Drive Voltages <math>V_{LC0}</math>, <math>V_{LC1}</math>, and <math>V_{LC2}</math></b>                                                               |                                                                               |
|         | Modification of description on serial interface 20 in <b>Table 17-1 Status of Hardware After Reset</b>                                                                                  | CHAPTER 17 RESET FUNCTION                                                     |
|         | Addition of description on subsystem clock $\times 4$ multiplier and pull-up resistor of port 5 in <b>Table 18-1 Differences Between <math>\mu</math>PD78F9488 and Mask ROM Version</b> | CHAPTER 18 $\mu$ PD78F9488                                                    |
|         | Revision of contents about flash memory programming as <b>18.1 Flash Memory Characteristics</b>                                                                                         |                                                                               |
|         | Addition of <b>18.2 Cautions on <math>\mu</math>PD78F9488</b>                                                                                                                           |                                                                               |
|         | Addition of electrical specifications                                                                                                                                                   | CHAPTER 21 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS                                          |
|         | Addition of characteristics curves of LCD controller/driver (reference values)                                                                                                          | CHAPTER 22 CHARACTERISTICS CURVES OF LCD CONTROLLER/DRIVER (REFERENCE VALUES) |
|         | Addition of package drawings                                                                                                                                                            | CHAPTER 23 PACKAGE DRAWINGS                                                   |
|         | Addition of recommended soldering conditions                                                                                                                                            | CHAPTER 24 RECOMMENDED SOLDERING CONDITIONS                                   |
|         | Revision of <b>APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT TOOLS</b>                                                                                                                                         | APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT TOOLS                                                  |
|         | Deletion of description on embedded software                                                                                                                                            |                                                                               |
|         | Addition of revision history                                                                                                                                                            | APPENDIX C REVISION HISTORY                                                   |

(2/4)

| Edition | Major Revision from Previous Edition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Applied to:                                                              |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3rd     | Addition of descriptions of $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 (under development) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Key return detection function added to port 6 (<math>\mu</math>PD789489, 78F9489 only)</li> <li>• Key return pin name of port 0 changed (<math>\mu</math>PD789489, 78F9489 only)</li> <li>• Remote controller receiver added (<math>\mu</math>PD789489, 78F9489 only)</li> </ul> | Throughout                                                               |
|         | Addition of description in <b>2.2.20 V<sub>PP</sub> (Flash Memory Version Only)</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | CHAPTER 2 PIN FUNCTIONS                                                  |
|         | Addition of description about AV <sub>DD</sub> , AV <sub>SS</sub> in <b>Table 2-1 Types of Pin I/O Circuits</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                          |
|         | Addition of internal low-speed RAM to <b>3.1.2 Internal data memory space</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | CHAPTER 3 CPU ARCHITECTURE                                               |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 4-2 Block Diagram of P00 to P07</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | CHAPTER 4 PORT FUNCTIONS                                                 |
|         | Addition of <b>5.4.6 Subsystem clock x4 multiplication circuit</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | CHAPTER 5 CLOCK GENERATOR                                                |
|         | Modification of descriptions in <b>6.4.1 Operation as timer interrupt</b> and <b>6.4.2 Operation as timer output</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | CHAPTER 6 16-BIT TIMER 20                                                |
|         | Addition of <b>6.5 Cautions on 16-bit timer 20</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                          |
|         | Correction of maximum intervals in <b>Table 7-4 Interval Time of Timer 60</b> and <b>Table 7-5 Interval Time of Timer 61</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | CHAPTER 7 8-BIT TIMERS 50, 60, 61                                        |
|         | Correction of maximum pulse widths in <b>Table 7-7 Square-Wave Output Range of Timer 60</b> and <b>Table 7-8 Square-Wave Output Range of Timer 61</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Caution</b> in <b>Figure 8-4 Watch Timer/Interval Timer Operation Timing</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | CHAPTER 8 WATCH TIMER                                                    |
|         | Addition of descriptions in <b>(2) A/D conversion result register 0 (ADCRL0)</b> in <b>10.2 10-Bit A/D Converter Configuration</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | CHAPTER 10 10-BIT A/D CONVERTER                                          |
|         | Addition of <b>(8) Input impedance of ANI0 to ANI7 pins</b> in <b>10.5 Cautions Related to 10-Bit A/D Converter</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                          |
|         | Addition of the remote controller receiver chapter                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | CHAPTER 15 REMOTE CONTROLLER RECEIVER ( $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 ONLY)    |
|         | Modification of <b>Caution</b> in <b>Figure 16-6 Format of Key Return Mode Register 00</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | CHAPTER 16 INTERRUPT FUNCTIONS                                           |
|         | Addition of descriptions about remote controller receiver and key return signal detection pin in <b>Table 19-1 Difference Between <math>\mu</math>PD78F9488, 78F9489, and Mask ROM Version</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                    | CHAPTER 19 FLASH MEMORY VERSION                                          |
|         | Modification of descriptions about CPU Clock in <b>Table 19-2 Communication Mode List</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Notes</b> in <b>Figure 19-3 Example of connection with Dedicated Flash Programmer</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                          |
|         | Addition of <b>Note</b> to <b>Absolute Maximum Ratings</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | CHAPTER 22 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS ( $\mu$ PD789488, 78F9488)          |
|         | Addition of <b>electrical specifications of <math>\mu</math>PD789489, 78F9489 (target)</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | CHAPTER 23 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (TARGET) ( $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489) |
|         | Modification of <b>A.5 Debugging Tools (Hardware)</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | APPENDIX A DEVELOPMENT TOOLS                                             |
|         | Addition of <b>cautions on designing target system</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | APPENDIX B NOTES ON TARGET SYSTEM DESIGN                                 |

(3/4)

| Edition | Major Revision from Previous Edition                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Applied to:                              |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 4th     | Change of descriptions of $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change of status from under development to development completed</li> <li>• Change of the subseries name to "<math>\mu</math>PD789489 subseries"</li> </ul> | Throughout                               |
|         | Update of <b>1.5 78K/0S Series Lineup</b> to latest version                                                                                                                                                                                            | <b>CHAPTER 1 GENERAL</b>                 |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 7-2 Block Diagram of Timer 50</b>                                                                                                                                                                                            | <b>CHAPTER 7 8-BIT TIMERS 50, 60, 61</b> |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 7-3 Block Diagram of Timer 60</b>                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 7-5 Block Diagram of Output control circuit (Timer 60)</b>                                                                                                                                                                   |                                          |
|         | Addition of descriptions in <b>7.2 (2) 8-bit compare register 60</b>                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                          |
|         | Addition of descriptions in <b>7.2 (4) 8-bit H width compare registers 60 and 61</b>                                                                                                                                                                   |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 7-11 8-bit Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (Basic Operation)</b>                                                                                                                                    |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 7-13. Timing of Interval Timer Operation with 8-Bit Resolution (When CRnm Is Set to FFH)</b>                                                                                                                                 |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 7-17. Timing of Operation of External Event Counter with 8-Bit Resolution</b>                                                                                                                                                |                                          |
|         | Addition of descriptions of setting sequence in <b>7.4.3 Operation as carrier generator</b>                                                                                                                                                            |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 7-22. Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = N, CRH60 = M (M &gt; N))</b>                                                                                                                                        |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 7-23. Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = N, CRH60 = M (M &lt; N))</b>                                                                                                                                        |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 7-24. Timing of Carrier Generator Operation (When CR60 = CRH60 = N)</b>                                                                                                                                                      |                                          |
|         | Modification of the mode name in <b>7.4.4 PWM output mode operation (timer 50)</b>                                                                                                                                                                     |                                          |
|         | Modification of the mode name in <b>7.4.5 PPG output mode operation (timer 60 and 61)</b>                                                                                                                                                              |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>(1) Error on starting timer</b> in <b>7.5 Cautions on Using 8-Bit Timers 50, 60, and 61</b>                                                                                                                                         |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 10-1. Block Diagram of 10-bit A/D converter</b>                                                                                                                                                                              | <b>CHAPTER 10 10-BIT A/D CONVERTER</b>   |
|         | Modification of <b>(1) Current consumption in standby mode</b> in <b>10.5 Cautions Related to 10-Bit A/D Converter</b>                                                                                                                                 |                                          |
|         | Modification of <b>Figure 11-1. Block Diagram of Serial Interface 20</b>                                                                                                                                                                               | <b>CHAPTER 11 SERIAL INTERFACE 20</b>    |
|         | Addition of <b>Caution</b> in <b>Figure 11-3 Format of Serial Operation Mode Register 20</b>                                                                                                                                                           |                                          |
|         | Addition of descriptions about remote controller receiver and key return signal detection pin in <b>Figure 11-6 Format of Baud Rate Generator Control Register 20</b>                                                                                  |                                          |
|         | Modification of descriptions about CPU Clock in <b>Table 11-3 and 11-5. Example of Relationship Between System Clock and Baud Rate</b>                                                                                                                 |                                          |

(4/4)

| Edition                   | Major Revision from Previous Edition                                                                                            | Applied to:                                                                                      |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4th                       | Modification of descriptions in <b>Figure 12-4. Format of Automatic Data Transmit/Receive Interval Specification Register 0</b> | <b>CHAPTER 12 SERIAL INTERFACE 1A0</b>                                                           |
|                           | Addition of formal specifications of $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489 to $\mu$ PD789489, 78F9489                                      | <b>CHAPTER 22 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS (<math>\mu</math>PD789488, 78F9488, 789489, 78F9489)</b> |
|                           | Addition of recommended conditions for $\mu$ PD789489 and 78F9489                                                               | <b>CHAPTER 25 RECOMMENDED SOLDERING CONDITIONS</b>                                               |
| 4th<br>(Modified version) | Addition of the lead-free products                                                                                              | Throughout                                                                                       |
|                           | Modification of descriptions of the voltage boost wait time                                                                     | <b>CHAPTER 13 LCD CONTROLLER/DRIVER</b>                                                          |
|                           | Modification of <b>Figure 19-9. Wiring Example for Flash Writing Adapter with 3-Wire Serial I/O with Handshake</b>              | <b>CHAPTER 19 FLASH MEMORY VERSION</b>                                                           |